



US Army Corps  
Of Engineers  
Savannah District

# Fort Liberty, North Carolina

**Solicitation Number**

**W912HN-23-B-3001**

**Automated Multipurpose Training Range (MPTR)**

**Volume 2 of 3: Specifications Divisions 21 - 33**

**PN 96182**

**June 2023**

U.S. ARMY ENGINEER DISTRICT, SAVANNAH  
CORPS OF ENGINEERS  
100 WEST OGLETHORPE AVENUE  
SAVANNAH, GEORGIA 31401-3640

**PROJECT TABLE OF CONTENTS**

\*3

~~DIVISION 00 - BID SCHEDULES~~

~~00 41 00 - BID SCHEDULES~~

**DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01 11 00	SUMMARY OF WORK
01 30 00	ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS
01 32 01.00 10	PROJECT SCHEDULE
01 33 00	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 33 29	SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING
01 35 26	GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
01 42 00	SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
01 45 00.00 10	QUALITY CONTROL
01 45 00.15 10	RESIDENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CONTRACTOR MODE (RMS CM)
01 45 35	SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
01 45 50	LINE OF SIGHT VERIFICATION
01 50 00	TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
01 57 19	TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS
01 58 00	PROJECT IDENTIFICATION
01 74 19	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
01 78 00	CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
01 78 23	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

**DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

03 30 00	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
----------	------------------------

**DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

04 20 00	UNIT MASONRY
----------	--------------

**DIVISION 05 - METALS**

05 05 23.16	STRUCTURAL WELDING
05 12 00	STRUCTURAL STEEL
05 30 00	STEEL DECKS
05 40 00	COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
05 50 13	MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS
05 51 00	METAL STAIRS

\*3

05 51 40      METAL BLEACHERS

05 52 00      METAL RAILINGS

**DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

06 10 00	ROUGH CARPENTRY
06 20 00	FINISH CARPENTRY
06 61 16	SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

**DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07 22 00	ROOF AND DECK INSULATION
07 27 10.00 10	BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM
07 27 19.01	SELF-ADHERING AIR BARRIERS
07 27 26	FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

\*3

<u>07 31 13</u>	<u>ASPHALT SHINGLES</u>
07 42 13	METAL WALL PANELS
07 60 00	FLASHING AND SHEET METAL
07 61 14.00 20	STEEL STANDING SEAM ROOFING
07 84 00	FIRESTOPPING
07 92 00	JOINT SEALANTS

**DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

08 11 13	STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES
<u>*2</u>	
<u>08 14 00</u>	<u>WOOD DOORS</u>
08 33 23	OVERHEAD COILING DOORS
08 51 13	ALUMINUM WINDOWS
08 71 00	DOOR HARDWARE
08 81 00	GLAZING

**DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

09 06 00	SCHEDULES FOR FINISHES
09 22 00	SUPPORTS FOR PLASTER AND GYPSUM BOARD
09 29 00	GYPSUM BOARD
09 51 00	ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS
09 65 00	RESILIENT FLOORING
09 90 00	PAINTS AND COATINGS

**DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

10 22 39	FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS
10 44 16	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

**DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

12 21 00	WINDOW BLINDS
----------	---------------

**DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION**

21 21 00	FIRE EXTINGUISHING SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (RESIDENTIAL)
----------	--

**DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

23 03 00.00 20	BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS
23 05 15	COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC
23 05 48.19	BRACING FOR HVAC
23 05 93	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
23 07 00	THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
23 09 00	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC
23 09 13	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
23 23 00	REFRIGERANT PIPING
23 30 00	HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION
23 81 00	DECENTRALIZED UNITARY HVAC EQUIPMENT
23 82 46.00 40	ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS

**DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION**

25 05 11	CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS
25 05 11.21	CYBERSECURITY FOR FIRE ALARM CONTROL SYSTEMS

**DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL**

26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM  
26 28 01.00 10 COORDINATED POWER SYSTEM PROTECTION  
26 41 00 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM  
26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING  
26 56 00 EXTERIOR LIGHTING

**DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS**

27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM

**DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

28 31 70 INTERIOR FIRE ALARM SYSTEM, ADDRESSABLE

**DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK**

31 00 00 EARTHWORK  
31 05 19.13 GEOTEXTILES FOR EARTHWORK  
31 11 00 CLEARING AND GRUBBING  
31 31 16.13 CHEMICAL TERMITE CONTROL

**DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

32 01 19.61 SEALING OF JOINTS IN RIGID PAVEMENT  
32 11 23 AGGREGATE BASE COURSES  
32 13 13.06 PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT FOR ROADS AND SITE  
FACILITIES  
32 16 19 CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS AND SIDEWALKS  
32 31 13.53 HIGH-SECURITY FENCES (CHAIN LINK AND ORNAMENTAL) AND GATES  
32 32 23.13 SEGMENTAL CONCRETE BLOCK RETAINING WALL  
32 92 19 SEEDING

**DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES**

33 40 00 STORMWATER UTILITIES  
33 46 16 SUBDRAINAGE PIPING  
33 48 00 BIORETENTION AREAS  
33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION  
33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP)

**APPENDICES**

APPENDIX A STANDARD FORMS

\*3

APPENDIX B ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION

-- End of Project Table of Contents --

SECTION 21 21 00

FIRE EXTINGUISHING SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (RESIDENTIAL)

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C651 (2014) Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide  
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 13D (2022) Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL Fire Prot Dir (2012) Fire Protection Equipment Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Design and provide new automatic wet pipe fire extinguishing sprinkler systems for complete fire protection coverage throughout the Control Tower, except sprinklers may be omitted from areas as allowed by NFPA 13D.

1.3 SPRINKLER SYSTEM DESIGN

Design automatic wet pipe fire extinguishing sprinkler systems in accordance with the required and advisory provisions of NFPA 13D by hydraulic calculations, except as modified herein. Each system shall include materials, accessories, and equipment inside and outside the building to provide each system complete and ready for use. Design and provide each system to give full consideration to blind spaces, piping, electrical equipment, ducts, and other construction and equipment in accordance with detailed working drawings to be submitted for approval. Locate sprinkler heads in a consistent pattern with ceiling grid, lights, and air supply diffusers. Provide sprinkler heads and piping system layout. Devices and equipment for fire protection service shall be UL Fire Prot Dir listed or FM APP GUIDE approved for use in wet pipe sprinkler systems.

1.3.1 Location of Sprinkler Heads

Location of heads in relation to the ceiling and the spacing of sprinkler heads shall comply with that permitted by NFPA 13D.

### 1.3.2 Design Discharge

Design Discharge shall be in accordance with NFPA 13D, Chapter 10.

### 1.3.3 Number of Design Sprinklers

The number of design sprinklers shall include sprinklers within a compartment to a maximum of two for an NFPA 13D system.

### 1.3.4 Friction Losses

Calculate losses in piping in accordance with the Hazen-Williams formula with 'C' value of 120 for steel piping, 150 for copper tubing, and 150 for plastic piping, except that friction loss may be based upon available manufacturer's data for specially listed piping products.

### 1.3.5 Water Supply

Base hydraulic calculations on operation of the FEMA Tank and Pump System (TPS).

### 1.3.6 Detail Working Plan Drawings

Provide one set of full size paper as-built drawings and schematics. The drawings must be prepared electronically and sized no less than the contract drawings. Detail working plan drawings shall show sprinkler heads and piping system layout in accordance with NFPA 13D. Show data essential for proper installation of each system. Show details, plan view, elevations, and sections of the systems supply and piping. Show piping schematic of systems supply, devices, valves, pipe, and fittings. Show point to point electrical wiring diagrams. Submit working plan drawings signed by a Registered Fire Protection Engineer.

### 1.3.7 As-Built Drawings

After completion, but before final acceptance, submit complete set of as-built drawings of each system for record purposes. Submit 24 by 36 inch drawings on reproducible mylar film with title block similar to full size contract drawings. Furnish the as-built (record) working drawings in addition to as-built contract drawings required by Division 1, "General Requirements."

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

The Designated Fire Protection Engineer (DFPE), will review and approve submittals in this section requiring Government approval.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Sprinkler Heads and Piping System Layout; G, DO

Electrical Wiring Diagrams; G, DO

#### SD-03 Product Data

Piping; G, DO

Valves, including gate, check, and globe; G, DO

Sprinkler Heads; G, DO

Pipe Hangers and Supports; G, DO

Flow Switch; G, DO

Alarm Bells; G, DO

Mechanical Couplings; G, DO

FEMA Tank and Pump System; G, DO

Annotate descriptive data to show the specific model, type, and size of each item.

#### SD-05 Design Data

Sprinkler System Design; G, DO

Submit computer program generated hydraulic calculations to substantiate compliance with hydraulic design requirements. Submit name of software program used.

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Preliminary tests on piping system; G, DO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Qualifications of Installer; G, DO

#### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

#### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

As-built Drawings of Each System; G, DO

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.5.1 Qualifications of Installer

Prior to installation, submit data showing that the Contractor has

successfully installed systems of the same type and design as specified herein, or that Contractor has a firm contractual agreement with a subcontractor having such required experience. Data shall include names and locations of at least two installations where the Contractor, or the subcontractor referred to above, has installed such systems. Indicate type and design of each system and certify that each system has performed satisfactorily in the manner intended for not less than 18 months.

Qualifications of System Technician: Installation drawings, shop drawings, and as-built drawings shall be prepared, by or under the supervision of, an individual who is experienced with the types of work specified herein, and is currently certified by the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) as an engineering technician with minimum Level-III certification in the automatic sprinkler system program. The Contractor shall submit data for approval showing the name and certification of involved individuals with such qualifications at or prior to submittal of drawings.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ABOVEGROUND PIPING SYSTEMS

Provide fittings for changes in direction of piping and for connections. Make changes in piping sizes through tapered reducing pipe fittings; bushings shall not be permitted. Perform welding in the shop; field welding shall not be permitted. Conceal piping in areas with suspended ceiling.

#### 2.1.1 Sprinkler Piping

NFPA 13D, except as modified herein. Steel piping shall be Schedule 40 for sizes less than 2.5 inches, and Schedule 10 for sizes 2.5 to 8 inches. Fittings into which sprinkler heads, sprinkler head riser nipples, or drop nipples are threaded shall be welded, threaded, or grooved-end type. Plain-end fittings with mechanical couplings and fittings which use steel gripping devices to bite into the pipe when pressure is applied shall not be permitted. Rubber gasketed grooved-end pipe and fittings with mechanical couplings shall be permitted in pipe sizes 1.5 inches and larger. Fittings shall be UL Fire Prot Dir listed or FM APP GUIDE approved for use in wet pipe sprinkler systems. Fittings, mechanical couplings, and rubber gaskets shall be supplied by the same manufacturer. Steel piping with wall thickness less than Schedule 40 shall not be threaded. Sprinkler piping shall be metal.

#### 2.1.2 Sprinkler Heads

Release element of each head shall be of the ordinary temperature rating or higher as suitable for the specific application. Provide polished stainless steel ceiling plates or chromium-plated finish on copper alloy ceiling plates, and chromium-plated pendent sprinklers below suspended ceilings. Provide UL listed residential quick response sprinkler heads in accordance with NFPA 13D. No o-rings will be permitted in sprinkler heads.

#### 2.1.3 Cabinet

Provide metal cabinet with extra sprinkler heads and sprinkler head wrench adjacent to the system riser. The number and types of extra sprinkler heads shall be as specified in NFPA 13D.



#### 2.1.1.4 Flow Switch

Provide switch with circuit opener or closer for automatic transmittal of an alarm over the facility fire alarm system. Connection of switch shall be under Section 28 31 70 INTERIOR FIRE ALARM SYSTEM, ADDRESSABLE.

#### 2.1.1.5 Alarm Bells

Provide surface mounted 8 inch diameter weatherproof vibrating bell having a sound output rating of at least 88 decibels at 10 feet. Mount on exterior surface of an exterior wall. Mounting height shall be at least 10 feet above finished grade. Provide for local alarm only.

#### 2.1.1.6 Pipe Hangers and Supports

Provide in accordance with NFPA 13D. Attach to steel joists with Type 19 or 23 clamps and retaining straps. Attach to Steel W or S beams with Type 21, 28, 29, or 30 clamps. Attach to steel angles and vertical web steel channels with Type 20 clamp with beam clamp channel adapter. Attach to horizontal web steel channel and wood with drilled hole on centerline and double nut and washer.

#### 2.1.1.7 Valves

NFPA 13D. Provide indicating valves of types listed for fire service. Gate valves shall open by counterclockwise rotation. Check valves shall be flanged clear opening swing-check type with flanged inspection and access cover plate for sizes 2.5 inches and larger.

#### 2.1.1.8 Identification Signs

NFPA 13D. Attach properly lettered and approved metal signs to each valve and alarm device. Permanently affix hydraulic design data nameplates to the riser of each system.

#### 2.1.1.9 Inspector's Test Connection

Provide test connections approximately 6 feet above the floor for each sprinkler system or portion of each sprinkler system equipped with an alarm device; locate at the hydraulically most remote part of each system. Provide test connection piping to a location where the discharge shall be readily visible and where water may be discharged without property damage. Provide discharge orifice of same size as corresponding sprinkler orifice.

#### 2.1.1.10 Main Drains

Provide separate drain piping to discharge at safe points outside each building or to sight glasses attached to drains of adequate size to readily receive the full flow from each drain under maximum pressure. The discharge shall be readily visible and shall flow to a location that will not cause property damage. Provide auxiliary drains as required by NFPA 13D.

#### 2.1.1.11 FEMA Tank and Pump System

The automatic sprinkler system shall be fed by a FEMA approved Tank and Pump System. This system shall be in compliance with Appendix A of this specification. Any references within Appendix A to alternatives shall be approved by FEMA shall be interpreted to require approval by the QFPE. Any

alternatives used shall be specifically shown in the submittal package.

#### 2.1.11.1 Exterior piping

Exterior piping shall be insulated and provided with heat trace. Insulation and heat tracing shall be in accordance with Appendix A of this specification.

#### 2.1.11.2 Alarms

All alarms specified in Appendix A of this specification shall be connected to the FACP located within the Control Tower and shall send an equivalent signal to the Fire Alarm Reporting Center.

### 2.2 PIPE SLEEVES

Provide where piping passes entirely through walls, ceilings, roofs, and floors. Secure sleeves in position and location during construction. Provide sleeves of sufficient length to pass through entire thickness of walls, ceilings, roofs, and floors. Provide **one inch** minimum clearance between exterior of piping and interior of sleeve or core-drilled hole. Firmly pack space with mineral wool insulation. Seal space at both ends of the sleeve or core-drilled hole with plastic waterproof cement which will dry to a firm but pliable mass, or provide a mechanically adjustable segmented elastomeric seal. In fire walls and fire floors, seal both ends of pipe sleeves or core-drilled holes with UL listed fill, void, or cavity material.

#### 2.2.1 Sleeves Not in Masonry and Concrete

Provide 26 gage galvanized steel sheet or PVC plastic pipe sleeves.

### 2.3 ESCUTCHEON PLATES

Provide one piece or split hinge metal plates for piping entering floors, walls, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Provide polished stainless steel plates or chromium-plated finish on copper alloy plates in finished spaces. Provide paint finish on metal plates in unfinished spaces.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Installation, workmanship, fabrication, assembly, erection, examination, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance with **NFPA 13D** except as modified herein. Install piping straight and true to bear evenly on hangers and supports. Do not hang piping from plaster ceilings. Keep the interior and ends of new piping and existing piping affected by Contractor's operations thoroughly cleaned of water and foreign matter. Keep piping systems clean during installation by means of plugs or other approved methods. When work is not in progress, securely close open ends of piping to prevent entry of water and foreign matter. Inspect piping before placing into position. Provide Teflon based pipe thread sealant or Teflon tape on male pipe threads only.

#### 3.1.1 Electrical Work

Provide electrical work associated with this section under Section **26 20 00** INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM, except for fire alarm wiring. Provide fire

alarm system under Section 28 31 70 INTERIOR FIRE ALARM SYSTEM, ADDRESSABLE. Provide wiring in rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit, except electrical metallic tubing conduit may be used in dry locations not enclosed in concrete or where not subject to mechanical damage.

### 3.1.2 Disinfection

Disinfect the new water piping in accordance with AWWA C651. Fill piping systems with solution containing minimum of 50 parts per million of available chlorine and allow solution to stand for minimum of 24 hours. Flush solution from the systems with domestic water until maximum residual chlorine content is within the range of 0.2 to 0.5 parts per million, or the residual chlorine content of domestic water supply. Obtain at least two consecutive satisfactory bacteriological samples from new water piping, analyze by a certified laboratory, and submit results prior to the new water piping being placed into service. Disinfection of systems supplied by nonpotable water is not required.

## 3.2 FIELD PAINTING

Clean, pretreat, prime, and paint new fire extinguishing sprinkler systems including valves, steel piping, conduit, and accessories. Apply coatings to clean, dry surfaces, using clean brushes. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, and loose mill scale. Immediately after cleaning, provide the metal surfaces with one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, and one coat of zinc molybdate primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil. Shield sprinkler heads with protective covering while painting is in progress. Upon completion of painting, remove protective covering from sprinkler heads. Remove sprinkler heads which have been painted and replace with new sprinkler heads. Provide primed surfaces with the following:

### 3.2.1 Piping in Unfinished Areas

Provide primed surfaces with one coat of red alkyd gloss enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil in attic spaces, spaces above suspended ceilings, crawl spaces, pipe chases, mechanical equipment room, and spaces where walls or ceiling are not painted or not constructed of a prefinished material.

### 3.2.2 Piping in Finished Areas

Provide primed surfaces with two coats of paint to match adjacent surfaces, except provide valves and operating accessories with one coat of red alkyd gloss enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil. Provide piping with 2 inch wide red enamel bands or self-adhering red plastic bands spaced at maximum of 20 foot intervals throughout the piping systems.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform test to determine compliance with specified requirements in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Test, inspect, and approve piping before covering or concealing.

### 3.3.1 Preliminary Tests

Hydrostatically test each system at 200 psig for a 2 hour period with no leakage or reduction in pressure. Flush piping with potable water in

accordance with NFPA 13D. Piping above suspended ceilings shall be tested, inspected, and approved before installation of ceilings. Test the alarms and other devices. Test the water flow alarms by flowing water through the inspector's test connection. When tests have been completed and corrections made, submit a signed and dated certificate, similar to that specified in NFPA 13D.

### 3.3.2 Formal Tests and Inspections

Do not submit a request for formal test and inspection until the preliminary test and corrections are completed and approved. Submit a written request for formal inspection at least 15 working days prior to inspection date. An experienced technician regularly employed by the system installer shall be present during the inspection. At this inspection, repeat any or all of the required tests as directed. Correct defects in work provided by the Contractor, and make additional tests until the systems comply with contract requirements. Furnish appliances, equipment, water, electricity, instruments, connecting devices, and personnel for the tests.

The QFPE will witness formal tests and approve systems before systems are accepted.

-- End of Section --

FEDERAL EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT AGENCY

**REQUIREMENTS FOR**

**TANK & PUMP SYSTEM**

Revision B-F

8 March 2018

**DOCUMENT REVISION HISTORY:**

This table tracks revisions and changes made to this document over time.

<b>Date</b>	<b>Sections Revised</b>	<b>Revision Explanation</b>
<b>8/11/2016</b>		Initial Request for Information
<b>8/22/2016</b>	Multiple.	Various revisions to requirements in response to comments received. Multiple editorial corrections (not noted as Sections Revised).
<b>10/04/2016</b>	2.7.4, Diagram 10	Added requirements for location of water hose temperature.
<b>10/10/2016</b>	2.9.11	Added requirements for power supply verification.
<b>7/15/2017</b>	2.4.7, 2.6.10, 2.11.5, 3.6.4.6, 5.3.5, 5.3.7, Diagram 12	Added 5 micron water filter for tank fill line. Added US 50 mesh strainer to protect small orifice components. Revised hose connections to be cam-locking connections. Deleted 6" PVC elbows from parts list. Added pipe insulation for tie-down strap cushioning and cam-locking male connection to parts list. Added No Open Flames sign.
<b>7/21/2017</b>	2.11.5, 5.3.3, 7.1.1	Revised materials and finish for cam-locking connections. Added spare cam-locking fittings with male NPT to parts kit. Added option for delivery to other locations.
<b>10/11/2017</b>	2.4.7, 2.9.12, 2.9.13	Added requirements for tamper resistant water tank opening, surge protection, and automatic restart after power failure.
<b>3/03/2018</b>	5.3.8	Added requirement for spare water filter cartridge.

## CONTENTS

1. OVERVIEW .....	1	7.1 Delivery: .....	27
2. REQUIREMENTS.....	1	7.2 Storage: .....	27
2.1 General Requirements. ....	1	7.3 Transportation: .....	27
2.2 Applicable Standards.....	3	7.4 Stacking: .....	27
2.3 Operating Environment.....	3	8. INSPECTION, REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, ENHANCEMENT AND REFURBISHMENT....	27
2.4 Tank Requirements .....	4	9. SERIAL NUMBERS .....	28
2.5 Water Pump Requirements .....	5	10. ACRONYMS.....	30
2.6 Piping Requirements .....	5	11. APPENDIX - DIAGRAMS .....	31
2.7 Control Requirements .....	6	2.1 Diagram 1. TPS Enclosure Concept .....	32
2.8 Enclosure Requirements .....	7	2.2 Diagram 2. TPS Base Top View.....	33
2.9 Electrical Requirements .....	11	2.3 Diagram 3. TPS Long Side View .....	34
2.10 Electrical Wiring Assembly .....	12	2.4 Diagram 4. TPS Short Side View .....	35
2.11 Water Hose Assembly .....	13	2.5 Diagram 5. TPS Skid/Base Detail .....	36
2.12 External Alarm Panel .....	15	2.6 Diagram 6. TPS Component Location ...	37
2.13 Alarms .....	16	2.7 Diagram 7. Out-of-Level Door Operation Test.....	38
2.14 Alarm Silence Feature .....	18	2.8 Diagram 8. Cable Illustration .....	39
2.15 Thermal Protection .....	19	2.9 Diagram 9. Installation of Heat Trace Cable on Water Hose .....	40
2.16 Tamper Protection .....	20	2.10 Diagram 10. Temperature Sensor Position .....	41
2.17 Test Requirements .....	20	2.11 Diagram 11. Manufactured Home Roof Bracket .....	42
3. DOCUMENTATION AND LABELING.....	20	2.12 Diagram 12. Warning Signs and Labels.	43
3.1 Overview .....	20		
3.2 Design Documentation.....	21		
3.3 Operation Documentation .....	21		
3.4 Parts List: .....	23		
3.5 Tool List: .....	23		
3.6 Labeling .....	24		
4. QUALITY CONTROL .....	24		
5. PARTS AND INSTALLATION KIT: .....	25		
6. PACKAGING: .....	26		
7. DELIVERY, TRANSPORTATION AND STORAGE.....	26		

## **1. OVERVIEW**

- 1.1 A key part of the Federal Emergency Management Agency's (FEMA) mission is to assist disaster survivors to recover from the event and move toward returning to their pre-disaster status as quickly as possible. As part of the recovery effort, FEMA assists survivors in moving from shelters to temporary housing as quickly as possible. FEMA's mission covers the entire United States and territories.
- 1.2 One of the options that FEMA uses within the Contiguous U.S. for temporary housing is manufactured homes. Manufactured homes are built to comply with 24 CFR 3280, the Manufactured Home Construction and Safety Standard (the Standard). The Standard is silent on the inclusion of residential fire sprinklers.
- 1.3 FEMA has determined that the agency will equip manufactured housing units (MHUs) used as temporary housing with residential fire sprinkler systems. The sprinkler systems are in compliance with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes - NFPA 13D.
- 1.4 FEMA has determined that an external Tank and Pump System (TPS) will be provided with the MHU to ensure a consistent and adequate water supply. The TPS will provide adequate water flow, pressure and quantity to meet the operational requirements set forth by FEMA and in NFPA 13D.
- 1.5 FEMA has developed requirements for the TPS that will allow the MHU manufacturers to plan the NFPA 13D sprinkler system. The TPS requirements will have water pressure and flow requirements, an environmental envelop, water capacity minimums, maximum electrical power available, transportation requirements, and specific connections for electricity and water.
- 1.6 FEMA can use this contract to meet requirements of the manufactured home mission or any other legal mission assigned to FEMA.

## **2. REQUIREMENTS**

### **2.1 General Requirements.**

- 2.1.1 The TPS shall provide a pressure and flow rate of no less than 40 psig at 30 GPM. Pressure and flow shall be measured at the end of the 1-1/2" diameter x 30 feet long flexible water hose, five feet above the level of pump discharge.
- 2.1.2 The TPS shall require only two connections to the MHU: 1) the electrical connection which will provide power to the TPS from the MHU; and, 2) a water connection that will provide the water required to the NFPA 13D fire sprinkler system in the MHU.
- 2.1.3 The TPS package shall be a fully integrated subsystem that when mated to an NFPA 13D fire sprinkler equipped manufactured home, the MHU and the TPS shall be fully



- NFPA 13D compliant without the need to connect the MHU sprinkler system to either the public water system or well water.
- 2.1.4 TPS shall be fully assembled and tested when delivered to FEMA. Exceptions are noted in this document.
  - 2.1.5 Installation shall be able to be completed in the field (at the site where the manufactured home is installed) using standard hand tools. If any special tool is required for installation, it shall be included as part of the TPS.
  - 2.1.6 The TPS shall come equipped with a thermally protected (meeting the requirements set forth below) flexible water hose assembly that shall be used to attach the TPS to the sprinkler riser on the underside of the manufactured home.
  - 2.1.7 The water hose assembly shall be shipped inside the TPS enclosure fully prepared to be easily connected to the MHU and the TPS (if not pre-connected).
  - 2.1.8 The TPS shall be designed to operate from a single phase, 30 amp, 240 Volt 60 Hz electrical service utilizing IEC 60-309-2 pin and sleeve connections.
  - 2.1.9 The TPS shall have a low temperature alarm that activates if the temperature inside the TPS or in the flexible hose assembly drops below 40°F. The alarm shall be audible and visual, and shall have a 'silence' or 'mute' feature for the audible alarm. The silence feature shall turn off the audible portion of the low temperature alarm for a fixed time period.
  - 2.1.10 The TPS shall be protected against tampering, and shall be accessible for testing and service. The door to the TPS shall be secured by a dead-bolt lock, keyed as described herein.
  - 2.1.11 The TPS shall have a pump test loop that flows not more than 14 GPM to simulate a sprinkler activation. The orifice size in the test loop shall be determined based on the water pressure available inside the TPS. Operation of the test loop shall activate the fire alarm(s) and allow the water to return to the storage tank.
  - 2.1.12 The TPS system shall be designed to be installed directly on the ground. TPS shall be fully functional when installed on a base or pad where the grade varies by one inch over the length of the TPS enclosure, in either one direction or in both directions simultaneously.
  - 2.1.13 The TPS shall include features allowing the TPS to be secured to the ground.
  - 2.1.14 The TPS shall have an integrated skid/base that serves to protect the TPS during shipping and as a stable base for shipping and installation.
  - 2.1.15 The TPS shall be capable of being lifted and transported by standard length (42 inch) fork lift forks (tines). Channels for the forks on the underside of the TPS shall not be less than 4 inches high or less than 8 inches wide to allow clearance for tine entry.
  - 2.1.16 The TPS shall be designed and equipped to be lifted by a crane, hoist, or other lifting device. A minimum of three sling attachment points shall be permanently installed

above the center of gravity. Any two of these lift points shall be structurally capable of carrying the entire weight of the empty TPS (as shipped). The TPS O&M manual shall describe the required sling(s) specifications, spreader bar length, TPS weight, TPS center of gravity location, lifting points, and procedures that will permit safely lifting in full compliance with OSHA requirements.

- 2.1.17 The contractor shall balance storage and transportation needs against inspection, maintenance and ongoing testing needs. Ensure that key components such as the pump can be removed if service or replacement is required.
- 2.1.18 All IEC 603-09-2 Pin and Sleeve connectors shall use pin pattern standard for 4 wire, 30 AMP, Single Phase, 12 hour ground position (per IEC 60 309-2 "Clock), power. Similar to Leviton 430B12W.
- 2.1.19 The TPS exterior shall be designed to make it difficult for an individual to climb up wall and onto the roof. No toe or foot holds should be present on the walls or door. Protrusions exceeding ½ inch from the plane of the wall surface are strongly discouraged.
- 2.1.20 The TPS exterior shall be designed to minimize damage during transportation of the TPS unit.
  - 2.1.20.1 The TPS shall be fabricated with an integral skid/base designed to support the weight of a fully loaded TPS and to provide a 6 inch buffer space all around the TPS. See Diagram 1 through Diagram 5 for illustration of TPS concept and arrangement.

## 2.2 Applicable Standards

- 2.2.1 NFPA 13D Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes.
- 2.2.2 24 CFR 3285 Model Manufactured Home Installation Standard.
- 2.2.3 24 CFR 3280 Manufactured Home Construction and Safety Standards.
- 2.2.4 ANSI A-A-59326.
- 2.2.5 NEC – National Electrical Code, NFPA 70.
- 2.2.6 IEC 603-09-2 -international standard from the International Electrotechnical Commission.

## 2.3 Operating Environment

- 2.3.1 The TPS shall be designed to operate year round anywhere within the contiguous United States. It shall function as intended in ambient temperatures of – 35°F to + 120°F, with full exposure to solar radiation. It shall function as intended at any relative humidity between 5% RH and 100% RH.

- 2.3.2 The TPS enclosure shall be designed to operate and to be stored outside, exposed to all elements.
  - 2.3.2.1 Electrical and electronic components pump seals, gaskets, and other materials shall be rated for storage and use in the temperatures that the TPS may experience during use. Testing of similar enclosures by the US military has shown that average internal temperatures during summer can reach 140°F, with peak temperatures of 180°F near the ceiling. Electrical and electronic components pump seals, gaskets, and other materials shall be rated for storage and use in these temperatures.
  - 2.3.2.2 Where the TPS enclosure is ventilated to prevent internal overheating above ambient temperature, the internal parts and components may be rated for use at 104°F.
- 2.3.3 FEMA plans on performing environmental testing of randomly selected TPS units from each manufacturer. Testing will include not less than 24 hours at the extreme ends of the temperature limits described in Section 2.3.1. High temperature testing will include solar load equivalent to that in a high-desert environment in Arizona. Submission of calculations or verification of the TPS ability to operate in the environmental conditions required is not required as part of this solicitation. However, manufacturers will be required to remediate any discrepancies discovered during the environmental testing at no additional cost to the government.

## 2.4 Tank Requirements

- 2.4.1 The tank shall have a minimum useable capacity of 250 gallons US.
- 2.4.2 It shall be easy to check the water level in the tank. The tank shall have clearly visible and prominent permanent markings in a color that contrasts with the color of the tank to indicate maximum and minimum fill levels. Adhesive labels, if used, shall be capable of staying securely in place at 180°F.
  - 2.4.2.1 The tank shall have provisions to direct overflow water to a location where the water will not damage the TPS or its components.
- 2.4.3 TPS design shall include a hard-piped connection suitable for the pump to draw not less than 30 GPM from the tank. Pump inlet shall be located to preclude drawing sludge or debris from the bottom of the tank into the pipe and/or pump; and to prevent siphoning air into the pump inlet, until not less than 210 gallons of water have been delivered to the sprinklers inside the home.
- 2.4.4 Water tanks shall be designed to be filled manually using a garden hose connected to a standard hose bib on the MHU. The fill connection inside the TPS shall be equipped with a swivel female connection, gasket, and valve to facilitate connection of the garden hose.
- 2.4.5 Water tanks shall have a drain valve so that the tank can be drained when the TPS is decommissioned. Drain shall be configured to permit removal of all water from the

tank, pump, and piping. Drain shall be arranged to prevent water spilling inside the TPS.

- 2.4.6 The water tank shall not be insulated, but a means to ensure that the water inside the tank remains at or above 42°F shall be in integral part of the TPS. Both tank immersion heaters and room heaters for the interior of the TPS are acceptable. If an immersion heater is used, it shall be configured to shut off when the heating element is not immersed in water.
- 2.4.7 A 5 micron sediment filter shall be provided and installed as part of the tank fill plumbing. A high flow rate filter is preferred since it will expedite the TPS Acceptance Testing and tank fill processes. This can be a simple whole-house sediment filter from a home improvement store. A replaceable filter cartridge is required. The opening at the top of the water tank shall be tamper resistant to dissuade operators from filling the TPS via the top of the tank instead of the provided fill port.

## 2.5 Water Pump Requirements

- 2.5.1 The minimum flow rate of the water pump shall be 30 GPM at 40 psig, measured at the far end of the 1-1/2" diameter x 30 ft. long water hose assembly, five feet (5') above the level of the pump discharge.
- 2.5.2 Pump shall be not less than 1 HP.
- 2.5.3 Pump motor shall be 60 HZ, single-phase, 230/240 Volt.
- 2.5.4 Pump motors shall be enclosed in a minimum NEMA Open Drip Proof (ODP) enclosure.
- 2.5.5 Pump controls shall include a minimum run time timer. The minimum run time timer shall be set to 2 minutes.

## 2.6 Piping Requirements

- 2.6.1 The piping inside the TPS shall include all hardware and valves necessary to permit a garden hose to pressurize the water hose assembly and sprinkler system in the MHU.
- 2.6.2 FEMA has encountered municipal water systems that provide 95 psi static pressure. All piping, tubing, and hose that can be pressurized by the garden hose connection shall be hydrostatically tested to not less than 100 psi.
- 2.6.3 The connection inside the TPS for the water hose assembly shall be a galvanized pipe union. Where dissimilar metals are used, provide a dielectric pipe union. Joints in the piping that are not intended to be made up in the field and that are factory installed may use groove couplings or other recognized pipe joinery methods.

- 2.6.4 The connection inside the TPS for the water hose assembly shall be located within easy reach of the TPS door. When a standard pipe coupling is used, there shall be adequate space around the connection to permit a 14-inch pipe wrench to make not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn around the connection without obstruction when making or breaking the connection.
- 2.6.5 The connection inside the TPS for the water hose assembly shall be located so that the hose assembly can be easily routed to the exterior through either of the two access panels in the side of the TPS wall. Provide swivels or other means to prevent stress or kinks in the hose.
- 2.6.6 There shall be a normally open control valve to isolate the hose assembly from the TPS piping and tank for maintenance.
- 2.6.7 The piping shall be configured to permit replacement of the pump without draining the tank.
- 2.6.8 RESERVED.
- 2.6.9 The TPS shall have a pump test loop that flows not more than 14 GPM to simulate a sprinkler activation. The orifice size in the test loop shall be determined based on the water pressure available inside the TPS, not the pressure at the end of the hose, to ensure proper water flow rate. Operation of the test loop shall activate the fire alarm(s) and allow the water to return to the storage tank.
- 2.6.10 Solenoid valves, pressure gauges, pressure sensors, and other small-orifice devices shall be protected against clogging by a Y-strainer with a US 50 Mesh strainer to prevent clogging of the small passageways.

## 2.7 Control Requirements

- 2.7.1 RESERVED.
- 2.7.2 The TPS shall include all system control and test features required by NFPA 13D, as well as those other features included in this document.
- 2.7.3 The TPS shall include all controls for the thermal protection system for the interior of the TPS.
- 2.7.4 The TPS shall include all controls required for the thermal protection system required for the flexible hose between the TPS and the MHU. The thermostat or temperature sensor attached to the hose shall be located on the hose to preclude location below grade when the TPS is installed. See Diagram 10.
- 2.7.5 The TPS shall include all controls for any alarm system included in the TPS.
- 2.7.6 To ensure ease of installation, the TPS controls and systems shall be designed to be activated by a single switch that will initialize all systems and components of the TPS. Onsite programming as a normal startup procedure of the TPS is prohibited.

- 2.7.7 When commercial off-the-shelf heaters are used, the thermostat set point required to maintain the TPS temperature shall be clearly and unambiguously marked.
- 2.7.8 Pressure switches, water flow switches, thermostats, and any other device that can be adjusted shall be adjusted for proper operation at the factory. The startup instructions shall not require the installer to make any adjustments as a normal course of action. The troubleshooting section of the operation and maintenance manual should clearly describe when adjustments are necessary and how to perform them.

## 2.8 Enclosure Requirements

- 2.8.1 Diagram 1 through Diagram 6 illustrate the desired TPS concept and arrangement.
- 2.8.2 The TPS including the water tank(s); pump(s); associated piping; electrical system; heating system; alarm controls; and, water and electrical connections shall be fully surrounded by a rigid weather resistant enclosure.
  - 2.8.2.1 For purposes of this requirement weather resistance shall mean protection against wind, blowing dust, rain, hail, snow, UV light and temperature.
- 2.8.3 The TPS enclosure shall provide access for maintenance, repair and testing. Access shall be provided via a door that permits all normal maintenance activities to be accomplished without disassembly of the enclosure.
  - 2.8.3.1 The door and door frame shall be dimensionally stable during exposure to the temperature range described herein, as well as during extended periods of use in environments with 100°F and 100% relative humidity. Doors and frames shall not swell, warp, or twist so as to impede operation. Doors shall be operable at all times without the need for undue force.
  - 2.8.3.2 Doors, door locks, latches, and all other TPS components shall be operable when the TPS is installed on an out of level surface, base, or pad where the grade varies by one inch over the length of the TPS enclosure, in any single plan dimension, or in both plan dimensions simultaneously. Demonstrate out-of-level door, lock, and latch function by performing the out-of-level test on one completed TPS. Test shall be conducted as described in Diagram 7. Test block shall be fabricated from a standard 2x4, 6 inches long. Door performance is acceptable if the lock and latch function during each of the eight tests, and the door can be opened and closed fully with not more than 15 pounds force.
  - 2.8.3.3 It is preferred that the door to the TPS shall be equipped with a dead bolt lock and a recessed or fold-away pull-handle. The lock and pull-handle to open the door shall not protrude more than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch from the surface of the door to prevent damage during shipping. Other locking arrangements may be submitted for review and approval by FEMA's COR.

- 2.8.3.4 Lock shall be "SCHLAGE" brand, 6-pin Everest cylinders with a C123 keyway that shall be keyed to a 6-pin combination. The key combination shall be "746105" for all locks required on the TPS.
- 2.8.4 The enclosure shall be insulated. Insulation shall not be exposed, and shall be covered by a rigid or semi-rigid waterproof material, on both inside and outside surfaces. Thermal performance of the enclosure insulation shall be coordinated with the TPS heating system to provide an integrated freeze-protection system.
- 2.8.5 Pass-through openings: The enclosure shall have two pass-through openings designed to permit both the insulated hose assembly and the 30 Amp electrical wiring assembly to pass through the wall of the TPS. The openings shall be framed, and shall be sealed by a metal plate to prevent intrusion of vermin or water; the plate shall be tamper proof, and shall be simple to remove from the frame during the installation process.
- 2.8.5.1 The pass-through openings shall be insulated to ensure the integrity of the thermal protection of the TPS enclosure, both when the pass-through opening is sealed closed, and when the pass-through opening is in use to pass the hose/wire assemblies through the opening.
- 2.8.5.2 One pass-through opening shall be located on each side wall of the TPS. The rearmost edge of the pass-through openings shall be located within 12 inches of the wall on the rear (door) side of the TPS. The bottom edge of the pass-through opening frames shall be located not more than 12 inches above the top of the TPS skid/base assembly / bottom of the TPS enclosure.
- 2.8.5.3 The TPS shall be provided with one closure device for the pass-through opening. The closure device shall be simple to install in the pass-through opening after the metal plate is removed. The closure device shall be tamper proof when installed. The closure device shall have a 6-inch diameter PVC pipe flange on the exterior side that will be used by the installation contractor to affix a PVC pipe shroud around the hose assembly during installation. The closure device shall be insulated to maintain the thermal integrity of the enclosure. The PVC pipe flange may be attached to the exterior of the TPS wall instead of on the closure device at manufacturer's discretion. The 6-inch buffer space required in 2.8.8 is required beyond the flange.
- 2.8.6 The enclosure roof shall withstand a live load of 40 pounds per square foot. Roof shall be designed to resist live loads, applied downward on the horizontal projection.
- 2.8.7 The TPS system shall be self-contained. The floor of the TPS shall be structurally sound and designed to support the TPS in storage, transportation and operation.
- 2.8.8 Skid/Base: The TPS shall be fabricated with an integral skid/base designed to support the weight of a fully loaded TPS and to provide a 6-inch buffer space all around the TPS for shipping. The skid/base shall extend 6 inches beyond all protrusions from the exterior surface of the TPS enclosure and any exterior hose

- storage compartment (if used). The skid/base may be fabricated separate from the TPS enclosure and securely attached to the floor. See Diagram 1 through Diagram 5.
- 2.8.8.1 The skid/base and TPS shall be designed to be lifted by a forklift or vehicle equipped with standard length (42 inch) forklift forks. The skid/base shall have a minimum of three evenly spaced bottom deck boards. Deck boards shall be securely attached so that the TPS will not tip if it is lifted off balance.
  - 2.8.8.2 The TPS shall have hooks or lift points at the top to enable safe lifting by a sling. Lift points to be marked as "For Lifting Only Not for Tie Down". Include safe lifting instructions, required sling weight capacity and length and TPS tare weight clearly in the instruction manual.
  - 2.8.8.3 The skid/base shall have not less than four tie-down points to secure the TPS during transportation. Tie down points to be clearly marked "Tie Down Only–Not for Lifting".
  - 2.8.9 Clearly identify the center of gravity on the exterior of each side of the TPS structure by permanent markings.
  - 2.8.10 The TPS system shall be designed to sit directly on level ground. Typical installation will be on a "pad" of compacted gravel, but the TPS may be installed directly on soil if required by site conditions. The material used for the portion of the enclosure that is designed to come in contact with the ground shall be suitable for direct ground contact.
  - 2.8.11 A durable document storage case securely fastened shall be securely mounted on the inside of the TPS enclosure door. Document storage case shall be a Justrite No. 23304, or FEMA approved alternate. One copy of the complete TPS documentation shall be provided inside this case or packet.
  - 2.8.12 TPS enclosure shall be aesthetically compatible with the exterior finish of the MHU. Exact match with MHU siding is not required, but exterior fit and finish must not look out of place, or attract undue attention. A light grey color is preferred.
  - 2.8.13 The enclosure and all exterior signs or markings shall be designed to be exposed to the weather and sunlight with no monthly maintenance and minimal overall maintenance required for a minimum of seven (7) years. Signs and markings shall be of UV resistant materials that shall not fade over a 7-year exposure.
  - 2.8.14 The TPS enclosure shall be designed so that it is stable and not "top heavy" when placed in position for use and when configured for transportation. The TPS shall be capable of resting on a 20% grade without tipping in both the empty (shipping) and full (operational) configurations.
  - 2.8.15 Any tools provided with the TPS shall be securely mounted inside the TPS enclosure.
  - 2.8.16 The TPS shall be freestanding not requiring the TPS to be attached to the MHU.
  - 2.8.17 All wind resisting parts (including, but not limited to, shear walls, diaphragms, ridge beams, and their fastening and anchoring systems), and its components and



- cladding materials (including, but not limited to, roof trusses, wall studs, exterior sheathing, roofing and siding materials, exterior glazing, and their connections and fasteners) shall be designed by a Professional Engineer or Architect to resist the design wind loads for Exposure C specified in ANSI/ASCE 7–88, “Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures,” for a fifty-year recurrence interval, and a design wind speed of 110 mph.
- 2.8.18 Each TPS shall have provisions for support/anchoring that, when installed, will resist overturning and lateral movement (sliding) of the TPS as imposed by the respective design loads. FEMA requires that the contractor responsible for installing the TPS use manufactured home anchors and strapping as described in 24 CFR 3280 and 24 CFR 3285.
- 2.8.19 The TPS shall include frame anchors that an installation contractor can pass standard manufactured home strapping material through when anchoring the TPS to the ground. Frame anchors installed within 12 inches of ground level are the preferred method for ground anchors. Manufactured home roof brackets (Diagram 11) which are to be used for passing a cable or strap over the manufactured home are also acceptable for TPS tie down if the TPS is designed for such. If roof brackets are used, the required number of roof brackets shall be included in the TPS parts kit. Instructions for positioning of the strapping on or over the TPS shall be included in the O&M manual.
- 2.8.20 All openings in the exterior of the enclosure shall be protected against intrusion of insects, rodents, snakes, and other vermin.
- 2.8.21 The TPS enclosure shall be vented to allow replacement air for tank drainage to flow into the enclosure and to prevent buildup of moisture.
- 2.8.22 Provisions to ventilate the enclosure to prevent overheating during hot weather may be provided at manufacturer’s discretion. If this ventilation option is used, provide a means to maintain the integrity of the freeze protection system. If insulation, plug, or cover is to be installed or removed manually by maintenance personnel to plug the vent in cold weather, it shall be a simple operation. All required materials shall be provided with the TPS. Plugs, covers, etc. shall be designed for multiple uses.
- 2.8.22.1 The operation and maintenance instruction shall include detailed instructions for maintenance of the ventilation feature, and shall state that the ventilation feature shall be activated during the monthly maintenance when local daytime temperatures are above 60°F, and the ventilation feature shall be defeated when local daytime temperatures are below 50°F. .
- 2.8.23 The TPS enclosure shall provide rapid drainage of spilled water.
- 2.8.24 The TPS enclosure shall be large enough to permit all components and parts required for the installation of the TPS to be securely stored and shipped inside the enclosure. This includes the insulated hose assembly, the electrical connection assembly, the alarm panel, the small parts kit components, PVC pipe and fittings for

the hose shroud, and O&M manual. All components and parts shall be securely packaged to prevent damage during shipping and protracted storage.

- 2.8.24.1 It is acceptable to ship the hose assembly outside of the TPS enclosure. If shipped outside the TPS enclosure, the hose assembly shall be encased in a sturdy container that will protect the hose assembly during shipping and storage. The container shall be firmly attached to the TPS and skid/base. The container shall shield the hose assembly from sunlight when the TPS is stored outside. It is not required that the container be rain tight or dust tight, or locked, but it shall be constructed of materials suitable to be stored for 7 years exposed to the elements outside of a building. The skid/base of the TPS shall extend not less than 6 inches beyond the container in both plan dimensions to protect the hose during shipping. The container may be designed to be removed during TPS installation, or it may be designed to remain in place during TPS use. If it is intended that the container remain in place during TPS use, the container shall be fabricated of materials that similar durability and appearance as the exterior of the TPS, and the container shall appear to be a simple extension of the TPS unit.

## 2.9 Electrical Requirements

- 2.9.1 RESERVED.
- 2.9.2 Electrical power to the TPS shall be taken from the Mechanical Interlock installed on the outside rear of the MHU. The TPS will be connected to the MHU via an IEC 60-309-2 pin and sleeve connector.
- 2.9.3 All electrical connections that must be made-up in the field during installation of the TPS (*i.e.*, TPS power supply, heat trace, temperature sensor, alarms, etc.) shall be made by quick-connect UL Listed electrical connectors. Connectors that are not located inside the enclosure shall either be water tight or shall be located inside a NEMA 3 enclosure to prevent damage to the connection from water leaks.
- 2.9.3.1 Each electrical connection shall have a unique locking type connector to preclude incorrect assembly. In addition to the requirement for unique connectors, each connection shall be color-coded. The same size and type of connector may be used for up to two connections if the gender alignment of the two sides of the connector is different.
- 2.9.4 Wire connectors shall be installed to minimize strain or pull on the wires and the connectors.
- 2.9.5 The wiring assembly shall be able to pass through the wall of the TPS via the enclosure penetration in the wall of the TPS.
- 2.9.5.1 If not permanently wired, the AC power connection inside the TPS shall be a water tight 240V/30A MALE twist-lock connection, installed to reduce strain on the wire and connection.

- 2.9.6 To ensure ease of installation, all TPS controls and systems shall be designed to be activated or initialized by operation of a single Main Power switch.
- 2.9.7 Internal wiring within the TPS shall include:
  - 2.9.7.1 RESERVED.
  - 2.9.7.2 The water pump.
  - 2.9.7.3 The heater.
  - 2.9.7.4 The heat-trace used to prevent the water in the flexible hose between the TPS and the MHU from freezing.
  - 2.9.7.5 The heat-trace used to prevent the water in the pipe inside the TPS from freezing, if a separate system is used.
  - 2.9.7.6 The required alarm and control systems and devices.
  - 2.9.7.7 A light for the interior of the TPS for use during maintenance. The light shall be operated by a switch located inside the TPS. The light switch shall be located approximately 8 inches from the door jamb on the latch side of the door, approximately 48 inches above the floor of the TPS.
- 2.9.8 All wires shall be labeled and color-coded. A wiring diagram shall be included in the O&M manual.
- 2.9.9 Electrical connections within the TPS shall be made in accordance with NEC.
- 2.9.10 Main power supply shall be 30 Amp, 240V / 1 Phase / 60 Hz. Conductors shall be clearly labeled as being the main power supply.
- 2.9.11 Provide a means to recognize and diagnose a problem in the power supply to the TPS during field installation. Problems that must be identified include low or missing voltage in either power leg, and an open or improperly wired neutral or ground wire. The troubleshooting section of the manual shall include recognition, diagnosis, and corrective action for these power supply problems. Include any test or measurement device necessary to provide this feature.
- 2.9.12 Provide surge protection for the electrical components in the TPS. Protection against a direct lightning strike is not required.
- 2.9.13 The TPS shall automatically restart or reset following an interruption of electrical power. Restart sequence shall be accomplished with no alarms sounding. (*i.e.*, a service call shall not be required to restart the TPS or silence alarms following a thunderstorm or power outage.)

## 2.10 Electrical Wiring Assembly

- 2.10.1 The contractor shall provide an electrical Wiring Assembly. Diagram 8 illustrates the electrical interface components.

- 2.10.2 Electrical Wiring Assembly shall be rated for 240 volts 30 amps;
- 2.10.3 The wiring assembly shall have a male IEC 60-309-2 International Pin and Sleeve compliant at the MHU end of the assembly; and shall have a water tight FEMALE twist-lock connection at the TPS end of the assembly to mate with a matching male twist-lock connector inside the TPS.
- 2.10.4 The connections shall be rated as water tight IP69K.
- 2.10.5 The wire used in the Electrical Wiring Assembly shall be minimum 10 AWG Type VNTC cable suitable for direct bury.
- 2.10.6 The Electrical Wiring Assembly shall provide not less than 45 feet ( $\pm$  two inches) of cable exclusive of any connections. The cable length shall be measured from the rear of the IEC 60-309-2 connector to the exterior wall of the TPS enclosure.
- 2.10.7 The Electrical Wiring Assembly shall be tested to UL183 for the following:
  - 2.10.7.1 Polarity Testing
  - 2.10.7.2 Ground-Continuity Testing
  - 2.10.7.3 Dielectric Voltage-Withstand Testing

## 2.11 Water Hose Assembly

- 2.11.1 Provide all parts, equipment, materials, and complete instructions to protect the entire length of the flexible hose against freeze. Freeze protection shall meet the temperature and exposure criteria specified.
- 2.11.2 The water hose between the TPS and the MHU shall be manufactured of components and materials acceptable to FEMA. Two acceptable hoses are Superlas Danube 10, and Home Master Masterflex.
- 2.11.3 The water hose shall be not less than 1½ inches in diameter. The water hose assembly shall be not less than 30 feet long ( $\pm$  two inches), measured from the exterior wall of the TPS, exclusive of any connections. Any hose inside the TPS enclosure shall not be included in the hose length requirement.
- 2.11.4 If shipped unconnected, the ends of the water hose shall be clearly identified as either the TPS end or the MHU end. If the water hose is shipped connected the piping inside the TPS, the MHU end is clearly apparent and marking is not required.
- 2.11.5 The water hose shall be connected to the MHU and/or TPS via cam-locking connections. The MHU end of the water hose shall have a female cam-locking connection. Threaded pipe fittings specified in the Parts Listing shall be shipped in the TPS parts kit for field use where necessary.
  - 2.11.5.1 Include in the parts kit a 1-1/2 inch male Cam Locking connection to female NPT threads to connect the TPS hose assembly to the sprinkler riser provided by the MHU manufacturer in the home.

- 2.11.5.2 Cam-Locking connectors shall comply with Commercial Item Description A-A-59326D, General Specification for Coupling Halves, Quick Disconnect, Cam-Locking Type.
- 2.11.5.3 The locking arms on female connectors shall be capable of being locked in the closed position. The use of captive (*i.e.*, attached to the connector by short wire rope) hair pin cotter pins to lock the cam arms in the closed position is acceptable. Any of the materials and finishes listed in A-A-59326 are acceptable. Alternate materials, finishes, and locking mechanisms may be used when approved in advance by FEMA.
- 2.11.5.4 The open end(s) of the hose shall be sealed by a dust cap or plug to prevent intrusion of insects or vermin during shipping, storage, and installation. The dust cap shall be locked in place and shall be additionally secured by a cable tie (aka zip tie) around the cam arms through the rings to illustrate the method to be used to secure the connection to the sprinkler riser.
- 2.11.6 Heat Trace: The entire length of the water hose shall be protected by approved 240V self-regulating heat-trace. Hose inside the TPS shall be heat traced.
- 2.11.6.1 The heat-tracing shall be specifically “Listed” by a nationally accredited testing laboratory (e.g., Underwriters Laboratory – UL) for use on sprinkler systems. Examples of acceptable heat-trace are: Thermon FLX™ Self-Regulating heat-trace or Raychem® XL-Trace self-regulating heating cable or equal. Heat trace cable shall be ground fault protected.
- 2.11.6.2 The TPS hose shall have an additional ten (10) feet of heat trace cable that extends beyond the MHU end of the water hose. At the final installation site, the end seal will be removed, the heat trace at the end of the water hose will be fished through the insulated sprinkler riser assembly into the home, and a new end seal will be installed.
- 2.11.6.3 Heat trace shall be delivered with an end seal kit installed on any end that is not connected to a splice kit or termination assembly. Provide two new end seal devices and not less than 30 feet of aluminum tape required for heat trace installation in the parts kit with the TPS for use during installation and decommissioning.
- 2.11.6.4 Heat-trace shall be installed on the hose in compliance with the manufacturer’s recommendations. Hose shall be pressurized to not less than 75 psi during heat trace installation to prevent tape failure due to hose expansion when pressure is applied to the hose in the field.
- 2.11.6.5 Heat trace cables shall be firmly affixed to the hose at the factory using aluminum tape applied longitudinally along the hose as specified by the heat tape manufacturer. In addition, there shall be tape wrapped around the hose, heat trace cable, and aluminum tape every six inches along the length of the hose to reinforce the attachment of the heat trace cable to the hose (use duct tape, RayChem GT-66

- tape, or equivalent). See Diagram 9. Manufacturer's may propose alternate arrangements to attach heat trace to the hose for FEMA's approval.
- 2.11.7 Insulation: The entire length of the water hose shall be protected by manufactured tubular thermal insulation.
- 2.11.7.1 Water line insulation shall be flexible to permit water hose to be installed as intended. Turning radius of the hose assembly shall not be greater than 12 inches to permit installation underneath the MHU.
- 2.11.7.2 Water line insulation shall be Aerocel-SSPT® closed-cell elastomeric thermal insulation or FEMA approved alternative. Insulation shall be ASTM C 534 Type I, Grade 1 closed cell foam insulation designed for installation above or below ground, indoors or outdoors without additional weather protection. Thickness of the insulation shall be determined by calculations based on the design temperature stated herein, but shall be not less than 1 inches.
- 2.11.7.3 Provide not less than five (5) feet of new, additional hose insulation, and not less than 30 feet of tape required to seal the insulation, in the TPS parts kit. This insulation will be used to insulate the connection to the MHU after the heat trace has been installed.
- 2.11.8 Water hose assembly shall be fully assembled before delivery to FEMA; heat trace, insulation, temperature sensor (if provided) and all other components shall be assembled and tested before delivery. After testing, ensure all water has been drained from the hose. Electrical connections at the TPS end of the hose assembly shall be in accordance with section 2.3.6, Electrical Requirements.
- 2.11.9 All pipe or hose protected by heat trace cable shall have warning labels attached to the insulation. Every five feet along the length of the hose assembly, install two warning labels, 180 degrees apart on the circumference of the insulation. Labels provided by the heat trace cable manufacturer are acceptable.

## 2.12 External Alarm Panel

- 2.12.1 To reduce the potential for damage during shipping, all alarms, buttons, and indicator lamps required to be mounted on the exterior of the TPS shall be mounted on an alarm panel that is shipped inside the TPS and is installed at the final site.
- 2.12.2 All alarms, buttons, and lamps shall be permanently affixed to the alarm panel at the factory. All devices shall be wired to a single, locking, polarized, multi-pin electrical connector that mates with a connector wired to the systems inside the TPS (unless precluded by NEC requirements). The connection shall be either a watertight connector, located inside the TPS, or shall be located inside a NEMA 3 enclosure.
- 2.12.3 The penetration of the TPS enclosure wall for the connecting wire shall maintain the thermal integrity of the enclosure and prevent intrusion of rainwater into the

enclosure. The penetration shall be watertight during shipping and storage, as well as when in use.

- 2.12.4 Wiring, devices, and methods used in assembling the alarm panel shall be suitable for the environmental exposures described in this document.
- 2.12.5 The alarm panel shall be designed for simple installation in the field. When installed in the designated location on the exterior of the TPS, the alarm panel shall be tamper resistant and weather tight. Connection to the TPS shall be by pre-drilled holes or threaded inserts in the wall of the TPS using guide pins, through-bolts, or other method to achieve the desired simplicity of installation. Tamper proof connectors shall be used. Carriage bolts with the nuts on the inside of the TPS are one acceptable solution for tamper resistant connection.
- 2.12.6 The placard or label required for the power indicator lamp shall be installed on the alarm panel. Placards or labels required for the alarms may or may not be installed on the alarm panel, at the discretion of the manufacturer. If not on the alarm panel, the placards or labels should be located in close proximity to the alarm device so that there is no confusion about which placard or label applies to which alarm device.
- 2.12.7 Power Indicator Lamp
- 2.12.8 The TPS shall be equipped with a green external indicator lamp that illuminates when power is supplied to the TPS. The power indicator lamp should be part of the alarm panel.
- 2.12.9 A placard or label shall be placed immediately adjacent to the power indicator lamp. The label shall state:

POWER IS ON WHEN ILLUMINATED.
- 2.12.10 The placard or label shall be securely attached. The placard or label shall be designed to be exposed to the weather and direct sunlight for a minimum of seven (7) years. Labels and lettering shall be of UV resistant materials that shall not fade over a 7-year exposure.

## 2.13 Alarms

- 2.13.1 The TPS shall have two alarms. These alarms shall be mounted on the exterior of the TPS enclosure. One horn/strobe alarm device shall be provided for water flow, and one horn/strobe alarm device shall be provided for low temperature. The alarm devices shall be separate and shall be installed in such a way that the alarm notification devices are protected from tampering.
- 2.13.2 Alarms shall be mounted on the designated front or street facing side of the TPS.
- 2.13.3 The Water Flow Alarm shall be mounted on the right side of the alarm panel. The Low Temperature Alarm shall be mounted on the left side of the alarm panel.

- 2.13.4 Exterior alarm devices shall have weatherproof exteriors.
- 2.13.5 Alarms shall have a sound output rating of at least 80 decibels at 10 feet.
- 2.13.6 Alarms shall have a visual notification appliance (strobe) that has an output of 15 candela.
- 2.13.7 Water Flow Alarm:
- 2.13.8 Provide and install a water flow alarm. The water flow alarm shall operate when a single sprinkler activates and flows 14 GPM. A brief delay to prevent nuisance alarms shall be incorporated into the alarm controls. The alarm may be initiated by water flow switch, current draw by the pump motor, or other means approved by FEMA.
- 2.13.9 The TPS shall be equipped with a combination audible local alarm and visual notification appliance (strobe), Potter model SH-120 or approved equivalent. The housing of the water flow alarm shall be red in color.
- 2.13.10 RESERVED.
- 2.13.11 The water flow alarm is a local alarm only, dial-up or remote monitoring is not required.
- 2.13.12 A placard or label shall be placed adjacent to the water flow alarm. Placard or label shall be approximately 5 inches by 7 inches in size. The placard or label shall have red letters on white background, and shall state:
- CALL FIRE DEPARTMENT WHEN THIS ALARM SOUNDS - FIRE SPRINKLER IN  
OPERATION".

Press the "ALARM SILENCE" switch to silence the sound of the alarm.
- 2.13.13 The placard or label shall be securely attached to the exterior of the TPS so that it is not damaged during over-the-road transport on a flatbed truck. The placard or label shall be designed to be exposed to the weather and direct sunlight for a minimum of seven (7) years. Placard and lettering shall be of UV resistant materials that shall not fade over a 7-year exposure.

2.13.14 Low Temperature Alarm:

- 2.13.14.1 Provide and install a low temperature alarm in the TPS. The low temperature alarm shall alert when either or both of two conditions occur: 1) when the air temperature within the TPS falls below +40°F, or 2) when the temperature of the hose assembly connecting the TPS to the MHU falls below +40°F. The housing of the Low Temperature Alarm housing shall be white or off-white in color so that the two alarm devices cannot be confused.



- 2.13.14.2 The low temperature alarm is a local alarm only; dial-up or remote monitoring is not required.
- 2.13.14.3 The low temperature alarm will sound and flash on the exterior of the TPS enclosure.
- 2.13.14.4 The low temperature alarm shall have battery backup sufficient to sound the alarm for 12 continuous hours in the event of a low temperature during a power failure. Battery backup shall be arranged to also allow the silence feature to operate as described below.
- 2.13.14.5 A placard or label shall be placed adjacent to the low temperature warning alarm. Placard or label shall be approximately 5 inches by 7 inches in size. The placard or label shall have dark blue letters on white background. The placard shall state
- CALL THE MAINTENACE HOTLINE WHEN THIS ALARM SOUNDS –  
MAINTENANCE IS REQUIRED.  
Press the “ALARM SILENCE” switch to silence the sound of the alarm.
- 2.13.14.6 The placard or label shall be securely attached to the exterior of the TPS so that it is not damaged during over-the-road transport on a flatbed truck. The placard shall be designed to be exposed to the weather and direct sunlight for a minimum of seven (7) years. Placard and lettering shall be of UV resistant materials that shall not fade over a 7-year exposure.

## 2.14 Alarm Silence Feature

- 2.14.1 Provide and install momentary contact type button(s) on the exterior of the TPS that will silence the audible portion of the alarm that is operating for a preset period of time. The silence switch shall be suitable for installation in all weather conditions prescribed in this document. If a separate switch is provided for each of the two alarms, the switches shall be clearly labeled to identify which alarm that each switch will silence.
- 2.14.2 The alarm silence switch(s) shall be located on the front side of the TPS, not more than 42 inches above the bottom of the TPS skid/base. The switch may be factory installed, or it may be configured as a second alarm panel, subject to all of the requirements in section 2.12.
- 2.14.3 When depressed, the alarm silence switch(s) shall silence whichever alarm is sounding, Water Flow and/or Low Temperature, for a pre-determined length of time, defined herein to be the Alarm Delay. The Alarm Delay shall be factory programmed to silence the Water Flow alarm for 1 hour, and to silence the Low Temperature alarm for 12 hours. The Alarm Delay shall be adjustable for any length of time between 30 minutes and 24 hours for each alarm. Complete instructions for adjusting the Alarm Delay period shall be included in the O&M manual, but not in the TPS setup portion of the O&M manual.

- 2.14.4 The silence feature shall require only one activation of the button to silence any alarm that is operating. When the silence button is depressed, the audible portion of the alarm shall cease to operate for the period of the Alarm Delay, after which the audible alarm shall resume operation automatically if the condition that triggered the alarm activation still exists. The silence feature shall permit an unlimited number of activations of the alarm silence feature to allow maximum flexibility in the field. Each activation shall silence the alarm for the programmed Alarm Delay period of time. Depressing the button multiple times shall not result in an increase in the period of time that the alarm is silenced.
- 2.14.5 Provide a means to manually reset the alarm(s) from within the TPS, either by a reset switch, reboot, or by restoration of temperature or power. Clearly identify the reset procedure in the O&M manual.
- 2.14.6 A placard or label shall be placed immediately adjacent to the Silence button. The placard or label shall state:

<p>PRESS THIS BUTTON TO SILENCE THE SOUND OF THE ALARM. THE STROBE LIGHT WILL CONTINUE TO FLASH. THEN CALL FEMA MAINTENANCE.</p>
--

- 2.14.7 The placard or label shall be securely attached. The placard or label shall be designed to be exposed to the weather and direct sunlight for a minimum of seven (7) years. Placard or label and lettering shall be of UV resistant materials that shall not fade over a 7-year exposure.

## 2.15 Thermal Protection

- 2.15.1 Any time there is water in the tank, pump, connected piping, all TPS components, and all piping between the TPS and the point of connection to the sprinkler system on the underside of the MHU, the temperature of the water and interior of the TPS enclosure shall be maintained at or above + 42°F (5.6°C).
- 2.15.2 Antifreeze solutions shall not be used in any portion of the system.
- 2.15.3 Design temperature shall be steady-state ambient temperature of -35°F (35°F below zero or -37.3°C).
- 2.15.4 When a space heater is used to maintain temperature inside the TPS, forced air heaters are preferred over convection heaters. Tank immersion heaters are acceptable, and if used, shall be configured to shut off when the heating element is not submerged in water.
- 2.15.5 RESERVED.
- 2.15.6 The water connection between the TPS and the MHU shall be installed so that the connection is appropriately protected against the elements to include but not be limited to freeze protection.

2.15.7 Heat trace cables shall have ground fault protection.

## 2.16 Tamper Protection

2.16.1 All water control valves, water connection and electrical connections must be protected against tampering either by physical location inside the TPS, behind the locked maintenance access door or with its own lock or secured access cover.

2.16.2 Locks that are keyed alike shall be provided for each valve, door, or other lockable device that is associated with the TPS. All locks shall be manufactured by Schlage and keyed as specified above in the enclosure requirements.

## 2.17 Test Requirements

2.17.1 QA Testing: The complete TPS shall be operationally tested prior to shipment to FEMA. Testing shall be completed as a final assembled unit. Documentation of the testing, including test protocol and outcome, shall be included in an appendix in the O&M manual with each unit shipped.

2.17.1.1 All electrical components and circuits shall be tested to ensure that all elements perform as designed and there are no electrical faults.

2.17.1.2 The water system shall be tested including the tank, pump, hose, and connection to the MHU (it does not require a physical connection to an actual MHU). Hydrostatic testing of the system shall be performed at not less than 100 psig, for not less than one hour.

2.17.1.3 All water must be removed from the TPS and all components after initial testing prior to shipment of the TPS to FEMA. The TPS will be stored for long periods outside, and will be exposed to sub-freezing weather, so it is imperative that all water be removed before the system is shipped to FEMA.

2.17.2 Maintenance Testing: The O&M manual shall include a section that details monthly and other periodic inspection and testing during use of the TPS, and shall include checklist(s) to direct and record the maintenance requirements. Monthly maintenance shall include tank fill level check, pump water flow test, alarm test, and other items as recommended by the manufacturer. Test procedures, including pass/fail criteria, shall be included in the O&M manual.

## 3. DOCUMENTATION AND LABELING

### 3.1 Overview

3.1.1 The TPS shall be accompanied by documentation to ensure that the TPS was properly manufactured and that provides FEMA with clear instruction on the storage

(including any maintenance in storage); transportation; installation; maintenance during use; and decommissioning of the TPS.

- 3.1.2 All instructions shall include a logical sequence of steps to achieve the stated objective. Instructions shall be specific to each unit and shall include explanatory material and full description of the actions that are to be taken and a complete list of the tools needed. Photos or diagrams shall be specific to each unit and may be included to illustrate the instructions as necessary. Include checklists for each operation. Instructions shall be written at the eighth-grade level of comprehension.
- 3.1.3 FEMA has developed an installation guideline for the current TPS units. The appropriate portions of this guideline shall be incorporated into the installation and operation manual provided with each TPS. FEMA will provide the present manual in MS Word format, including original artwork for use in the development of installation and operation manuals. Documentation provided with the TPS shall be complete and at least as detailed as the FEMA guideline.

### 3.2 Design Documentation

- 3.2.1 Complete design documentation shall be provided for the TPS including blueprints/drawings, water flow diagrams, electric diagrams, controller diagrams, wiring diagrams, and the operation parameters. Drawings and calculations shall include at a minimum:
  - 3.2.1.1 Dimensioned drawings detailing all aspects of the system.
  - 3.2.1.2 Stamped design calculations for the electrical and freeze protection systems.
- 3.2.2 A complete parts list shall be provided. Parts list shall include manufacturer, model number, part number, and cut sheet(s) for every component that is provided.
- 3.2.3 Detailed list of all tools required to ship, install, operate, and decommission the TPS shall be provided. Where special tools are required, include manufacturer, model, size, and cut sheet.
- 3.2.4 All design calculations shall be provided.
- 3.2.5 An acceptance test plan for verifying TPS performance prior to shipping the TPS to FEMA shall be provided.
- 3.2.6 All acceptance test results for each TPS shall be provided. Include a copy of the certification in the information packet shipped with the TPS.

### 3.3 Operation Documentation

- 3.3.1 Provide complete operating instructions and checklists for the TPS including: handling, storage, shipping, site preparation, installation, post installation/pre-

- operational testing, operation, maintenance, decommissioning, and preparation for shipping from installation site.
- 3.3.2 All instructions shall be written in plain language on an eighth grade level of comprehension and shall be well illustrated. Assume the installation and maintenance personnel are general mechanics with no prior knowledge of TPS or sprinkler systems.
- 3.3.3 Theory of Operation information shall be included and shall present a complete description of each system or subsystem in the TPS. Describe the purpose of the device or system, and how it accomplishes the desired function. Include what/how: pump turns on or off, how long the pump runs, heat trace system(s), TPS heater(s), control systems, etc.
- 3.3.4 Handling and storage instructions shall address all requirements for the long term storage of the TPS at a FEMA manufactured housing storage site (MHSS). Include information regarding any periodic maintenance that is needed for the TPS and the frequency of the periodic maintenance, how many can be stacked on top of each other and what is the proper storage orientation (which end is up), temperature limits and any special handling instructions required.
- 3.3.5 Shipping instructions shall address any requirements for preparing the TPS for shipment, shipping the TPS via common carrier as a full load or a less than load (LTL) shipment. This shall include posting of the TPS, tie-down requirements, stacking restrictions or requirements of the TPS and other requirements.
- 3.3.6 Installation instructions shall include: all requirements for setting up the TPS, connecting the TPS to the MHU and testing the TPS; site preparation; leveling requirements and tolerances and dimensional requirements; filling the water tank; field testing upon startup and other instructions as required. Provide detailed instructions, diagrams, photographs, and checklists for proper preparation and installation.
- 3.3.6.1 Installation instructions shall clearly state that if the local ambient temperature is expected to fall below 40°F, water shall not be added to the system until and unless electrical power is available for the freeze protection system.
- 3.3.6.2 Installation instructions shall include detailed instructions to test the heat trace cable during installation. Instructions shall be specific for the TPS application; heat trace manufacturer's testing instructions should be supplemented with specific illustrations and steps applicable to the TPS. Required test equipment (*i.e.*, megohmmeter) shall be listed as required tool, but shall not be included with the TPS parts. Local electrician will be required to provide the test equipment.
- 3.3.7 Operation and maintenance instructions shall include testing requirements for the TPS and alarms as well as the required frequency of such tests; any preventative maintenance requirements or activities and any other maintenance, testing or operational requirements.

- 3.3.8 Decommissioning instructions shall include: all requirements for decommissioning the TPS so that it can be transported to FEMA. The steps required to disconnect the TPS from the MHU and the requirements for uninstalling the TPS from the site where it is installed for use. The deactivation instructions shall describe how to decommission the TPS so that it can be reused if required by FEMA. Deactivation instructions shall include a pre-deactivation testing requirement to ensure that the TPS is functioning as designed; the removal of water from the TPS tank and TPS pump; and, the safe storage of the water and electrical connection as well as any specific preparation required to transport the TPS.
- 3.3.9 Troubleshooting instructions shall be included that cover all reasonable situations. Include diagnosis and corrective actions in clear steps.
- 3.3.10 Check Lists shall be provided to guide each logical activity that may occur during the TPS lifecycle: 1) Inspection upon initial delivery at FEMA, 2) Periodic maintenance during storage, 3) Delivery at forward staging area, 4) Installation and testing, 5) Periodic maintenance and testing during use, 6) Decommissioning, 7) Preparation for shipment.
- 3.3.11 Operating instructions shall be submitted for review and comment by FEMA prior to delivery. Submittal shall be in MS Word format. The operating instructions shall be revised and resubmitted as necessary to incorporate FEMA review comments. After acceptance of the operating instructions by FEMA, one durable, printed copy shall be bound and provided in each TPS, and an electronic copy in MS Word format shall be provided to FEMA. Install the bound hard copy in document case mounted on the inside of the TPS door.

#### 3.4 Parts List:

- 3.4.1 Provide a complete parts list including manufacturer, model number, and all other specifications required to procure repair or replacement parts for the sprinkler system.
- 3.4.2 Include manufacturer's cut sheets for each component to be used, clearly identifying the specific model or features to be used in the system.
- 3.4.3 Include documentation that components or parts that are required to be Listed by an independent testing laboratory are so Listed.

#### 3.5 Tool List:

- 3.5.1 Provide a list of all tools or equipment required for FEMA to install at final home location, operate, maintain, and decommission the provided sprinkler system. Where special tools are required, include manufacturer, model, size, and cut sheet.

### 3.6 Labeling

- 3.6.1 All TPS labeling and signs shall be printed with the letters being a high contrast to the label or sign background.
- 3.6.2 Labels, signs, tags, paints, inks, and adhesives used inside the TPS shall be suitable for use in temperatures ranging between  $-35^{\circ}\text{F}$  and  $+180^{\circ}\text{F}$ .
- 3.6.3 Labels, signs, tags, paints, inks, and adhesives used on the exterior of the TPS shall be suitable for exposure to the weather direct sunlight for a minimum of seven (7) years. Label and lettering shall be of UV resistant materials that shall not fade over a 7-year exposure.
- 3.6.4 The TPS shall have the following labels and/or signs:
  - 3.6.4.1 Control Valve Labels: All TPS control valves shall be labeled to note their function and normal position. Example: Water Tank Fill Valve – Normally Closed. Labeling shall be permanently affixed and durable.
  - 3.6.4.2 Pipes: All pipes shall be labeled with the normal direction of water flow. Insulated pipes shall have flow labels on the outside of the insulation.
  - 3.6.4.3 Do Not Climb labels: Near the top center of each side of the exterior of the TPS, there shall be a danger Do Not Climb label. Label shall be not less than 7" x 5" in size. See Diagram 12. One acceptable source is ComplianceSigns.com item ODE-14013.
  - 3.6.4.4 Alarm Signs: Signs clearly labeling the Fire and Maintenance alarms and Power Indicator lamp as described above.
  - 3.6.4.5 Alarm Reset Label: Label or sign identifying the alarm reset button as described above.
  - 3.6.4.6 No Open Flames Signs: Near the center of each side of the exterior of the TPS, there shall be a No Open Flames label. The label shall be not less than 7" x 5" in size. See Diagram 12 for the approved sign. A MS Publisher file of this label is available.
- 3.6.5 The TPS electrical system shall have the following labels and/or signs:
  - 3.6.5.1 Circuit Breaker Label: Permanently mark all circuit breaker(s) to indicate their function.
  - 3.6.5.2 Heat Trace Labels: All pipe or hose protected by heat trace cable shall have warning labels attached to the insulation. Every five feet along the length of the hose assembly, install two warning labels, 180 degrees apart on the circumference of the insulation.
  - 3.6.5.3 Switches and Circuit Breakers shall be clearly labeled to identify function and ON-Off positions.

## 4. QUALITY CONTROL

- 4.1 Perform acceptance tests and the hydrostatic testing for the TPS in accordance with NFPA 13D and other FEMA requirements. Submit a signed and dated certification of acceptance test completion with each TPS. Certification shall include details of tests performed and the results of each test.
- 4.2 After testing, contractor shall remove all water from the sprinkler system.

## **5. PARTS AND INSTALLATION KIT:**

- 5.1 All parts, materials, installation instructions, and special tools required to install, operate, and maintain the TPS shall be provided.
- 5.2 Parts and materials shall be neatly packaged to prevent damage during shipping and storage. Packaging shall be clearly labeled to permit verification and inventory.
- 5.3 The TPS shall be equipped with all parts and materials needed to install the unit and make it fully functional, with the exception of standard hand tools, garden hose to fill the tank, and water. All parts shall be new and unused, in original packaging. As a minimum, the following parts shall be provided:
  - 5.3.1 Heat Trace Parts:
    - Two heat trace tape end seals.
    - One piece of pipe insulation identical to the insulation on the hose assembly, five (5) feet long for the sprinkler riser connection
    - Thirty (30) feet of tape to seal the insulation.
    - Thirty (30) feet of tape to secure the heat trace cable to sprinkler riser RayChem AT-180 or equivalent.
  - 5.3.2 Hose Connection Parts, 1½ inch diameter galvanized steel:
    - one (1) 90° elbow,
    - one (1) 45° elbow,
    - two (2) close nipples,
    - two (2) pipe unions,
    - one (1) roll pipe thread tape.
  - 5.3.3 Cam-Locking Connector:
    - Include a 1-1/2 inch male Cam Locking connection to connect the TPS plumbing to the sprinkler riser provided by the MHU manufacturer in the home.



- Provide two spare gaskets for the Cam-Locking connector with the TPS parts kit. Provide not less than four (4) ten-inch (10") long nylon zip ties for securing the locking cams in the connected position is the TPS parts kit.
- Gaskets shall be suitable for potable water service.
- One (1) male 1-1/2 inch cam locking connection – 1-1/2 inch male NPT
- One (1) lockable (see §2.11) female 1-1/2 inch cam locking connection – 1-1/2 inch male NPT

5.3.4 Keys:

- 2 keys for the TPS door.

5.3.5 Schedule 40 PVC Pipe, 6 inch diameter:

- two (2) 45° elbows,
- one (1) piece of pipe, six (6) feet long

5.3.6 Tie-down roof brackets (if needed to tie down the TPS)

5.3.7 Four (4) pieces of closed cell foam pipe insulation to cushion tie-down straps, six feet long (6') each. Insulation shall be pre-formed, moisture resistant, UV resistant, pre-slit with factory-installed tape to seal the insulation over the tie-down strap.

5.3.8 One (1) spare filter cartridge for the sediment filter.

## 6. PACKAGING:

- 6.1 Securely package the TPS and parts kit for shipping. Small parts shall be packaged in clear sealed plastic bags clearly labeled listing contents. Keys shall be shipped in a separate sealed clear plastic bag. Parts shall be shipped in new cardboard boxes; each box shall have a label that clearly lists the parts that are contained inside.
- 6.2 Consolidate packaging into the minimum number of packages. Label all packages with a discrete package number and the total number of packages in that TPS (i.e., Box 2 of 4).
- 6.3 Package and ship each complete TPS as a separate, stand-alone unit containing all parts, materials, and instructions needed for installation, operation, and maintenance. The TPS door shall be shipped locked closed, with the required keys packaged inside the TPS as described above.
- 6.4 The TPS shall be assembled to the maximum extent possible.
- 6.5 Provide and install thread protecting plugs or caps on all exposed pipe or coupling threads prior to shipping.

## 7. DELIVERY, TRANSPORTATION AND STORAGE

## 7.1 Delivery:

- 7.1.1 FEMA anticipates that the TPS will be received and stored at one of the Manufactured Housing Storage Site (MHSS) located in Selma, AL or Cumberland, MD. FEMA may request delivery to other sites in the contiguous states.

## 7.2 Storage:

- 7.2.1 FEMA will typically store the TPS either in standard intermodal containers, large cube/high cube containers, on an open yard, or in warehouse space.
- 7.2.2 The contractor shall provide FEMA with any inspection and/or maintenance requirements and checklists for both interim and long term storage.
  - 7.2.2.1 Interim storage is defined as 6 months or less.
  - 7.2.2.2 Long Term storage is defined as storage beyond 6 months.

## 7.3 Transportation:

- 7.3.1 TPS will be shipped either in intermodal containers 20' or 40'; as part of a Less Than Load (LTL) shipment; in a 48' or 53' box trailer; or, on a flatbed trailer.
- 7.3.2 At FEMA's discretion, the agency may require that the contractor provide either 20' or 40' intermodal containers as part of the delivery requirement.
- 7.3.3 Provide tie-down requirements for use during transportation.

## 7.4 Stacking:

- 7.4.1 Clearly state whether the TPS units can be stacked, and how many units high the TPS units can be stacked during transportation.
- 7.4.2 Clearly state whether the TPS units can be stacked, and how many units high the TPS units can be stacked during storage.
- 7.4.3 For warehouse storage, the TPS will not be stored in the intermodal containers.

# 8. INSPECTION, REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, ENHANCEMENT AND REFURBISHMENT

- 8.1 This section of the contract describes the actions that the TPS manufacturer shall take to inspect, maintain, enhance, repair and refurbish tank and pump systems. These actions are carried out at a FEMA Manufactured Housing Storage Site (MHSS) [currently Selma, AL or Cumberland, MD]; at a FEMA Manufactured Housing Staging Area (MHSA) [a site located in a disaster response/recovery area of operation]; or, in the field (a location where a TPS is connected to a manufactured home).

- 8.2 Inspection occurs when the TPS manufacturer inspects the TPS to determine if the TPS is functioning as designed. If the TPS manufacturer's inspector determines that the TPS is non-functioning for reasons other than design and manufacturing, the contractor shall provide FEMA with a cost estimate to return the TPS to operational status. If the contract inspector determines that the TPS is non-functioning due to issues related to design or manufacturing, the TPS manufacturer shall refer to the post-delivery maintenance section maintenance.
- 8.3 Post-delivery maintenance after the TPS is delivered and the TPS does not function as designed or as was required by the contract. Post-delivery maintenance occurs when there are issues resulting from the design or manufacturing of the TPS. The TPS manufacturer shall be responsible for repair or replacement of the TPS. FEMA does not reimburse contractors for TPS maintenance.
- 8.4 Repair occurs when a field inspection reveals that the TPS has been damaged for reasons other than design and manufacturing. The contractor shall repair the TPS to its design operational capability. .
- 8.5 Enhancement is the upgrade of the TPS by the TPS manufacturer based on additional requirements from FEMA. Enhancement does not require inspection to determine work.
- 8.6 Refurbishment by the TPS manufacturer occurs after a TPS has been returned to a FEMA MHSS or MHSA and inspected. If necessary, the contractor shall refurbish the TPS to its design operational capability.
- 8.7 Travel associated with inspection, repair, enhancement or refurbishment is reimbursed in accordance with Federal Travel Regulations. Travel is not reimbursed if the TPS requires maintenance.
- 8.8 Conflicts between post-delivery maintenance and repair. If as a result of the contractor's inspection, the contractor determines that the cause of the TPS to not function as designed is asserted to require a repair and not post-delivery maintenance, and there is a conflict between the TPS manufacturer and another contractor or FEMA field staff, the contracting officer shall make a determination of responsibility as assign costs based on that determination.

## 9. SERIAL NUMBERS

Each TPS shall have a unique serial number. Please include a serial number using the Table below. Serial numbers should be placed over the door in 1" letter in a color that contrasts with the external color of the TPS.

Serial numbers should also be placed on the interior of the door in ½" letters in a color that contracts with the color of the interior of the door so that the serial number is readable when the door is open.

DESCRIPTOR	SOURCE	EXAMPLE
Last two digits from the year the contract was awarded	FEMA	13
<b>Hyphen</b>		
Last four digits from contracted firm's contract number	FEMA	1000
Three character abbreviation assigned to contracted firm (Examples from FEMA 2015 TPS contract additional contractor abbreviations will be assigned if additional abbreviations are needed.)	FEMA	DAR – Darley TAL – Talco Gen – General
<b>Hyphen</b>		
Last two digits from the year the task order was awarded (If there is no task order use XX)	FEMA	14
<b>Hyphen</b>		
Last four digits from the task order number (If there is no task order use XXXX)	FEMA	1000
Unique code assigned to requirement version	FEMA	BC
<b>Hyphen</b>		
Incremental number assigned to each TPS produced under task order	Contractor	0073
<b>Hyphen</b>		
The letters TPS to indicate that the product is a tank and pump system	FEMA	TPS

Example for Darley 13-1000DAR-14-1000-BC-0073-TPS

Example for Talco 13-1000TAL-14-1000-BC-0073-TPS

Example for General 13-1000GEN-14-1000-BC-0073-TPS

**10. ACRONYMS**

ABS - Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (Terpolymer)

ANSI – American National Standards Institute

CFR – Code of Federal Regulations

CPVC – Chlorinated Poly Vinyl Chloride

FEMA – Federal Emergency Management Agency

GPM – Gallons per Minute

HP - Horsepower

Hz – Hertz (cycles per second)

MHU – Manufactured Housing Units

NEC – National Electric Code

NEMA – National Electric Manufacturers Association

NFPA - National Fire Protection Association

O&M – Operation and Maintenance Manual

ODP - Open Drip Proof

PEX - Cross-Linked Polyethylene

PSI – Pounds per Square Inch

PSIG – Pounds per Square Inch Gauge (or Gage)

TPS – internal components of the TPS system

TPS enclosure - the ridged housing that protects the TPS from weather, tampering and provides freeze protection.

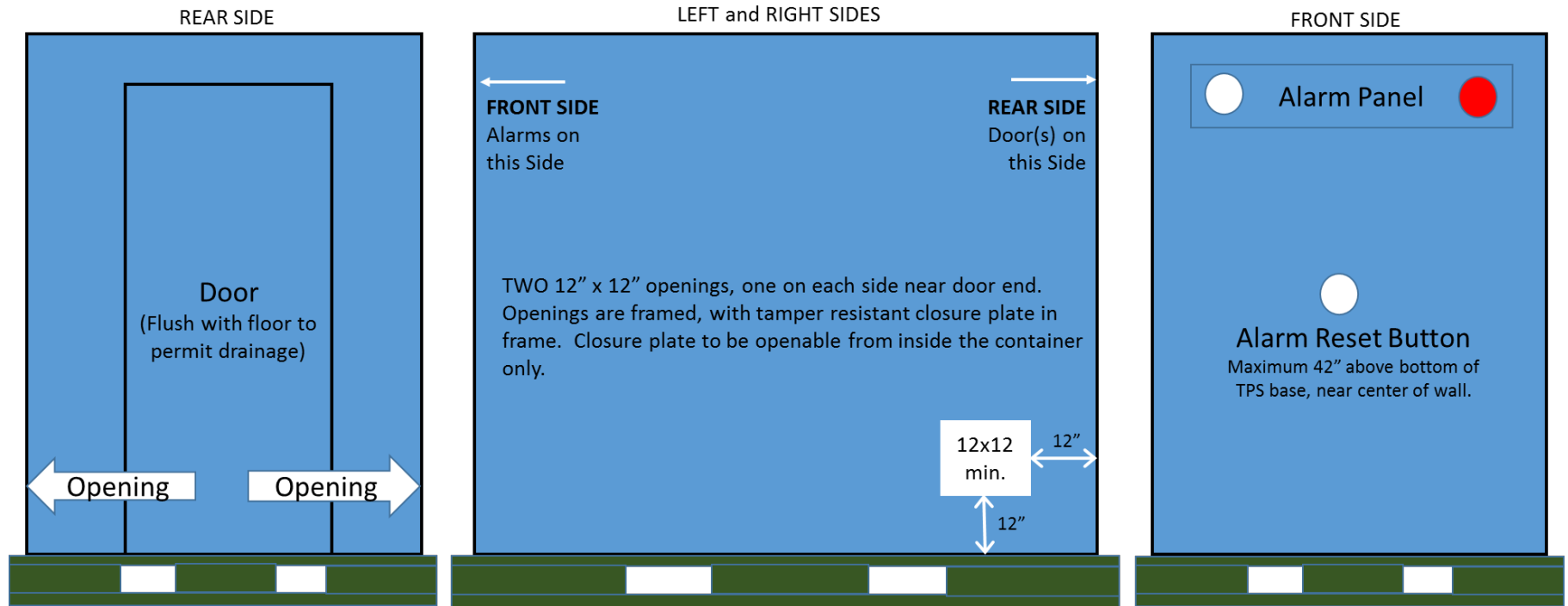
TPS system – the TPS and the TPS enclosure

UL – Underwriter’s Laboratory

## **11. APPENDIX - DIAGRAMS**

## 11.1 Diagram 1. TPS Enclosure Concept

# TPS Enclosure Concept

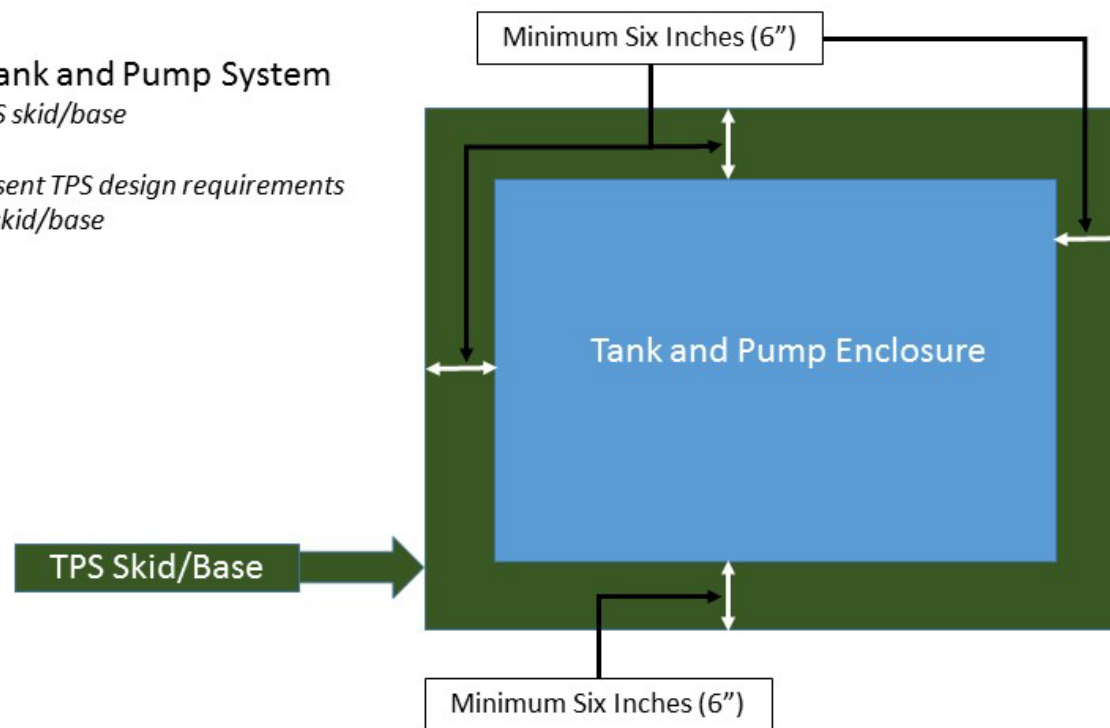


## 11.2 Diagram 2. TPS Base Top View

# TPS Base Top View

## Top View of Tank and Pump System

- To illustrate TPS skid/base
- Not to Scale
- Does not represent TPS design requirements except for TPS skid/base



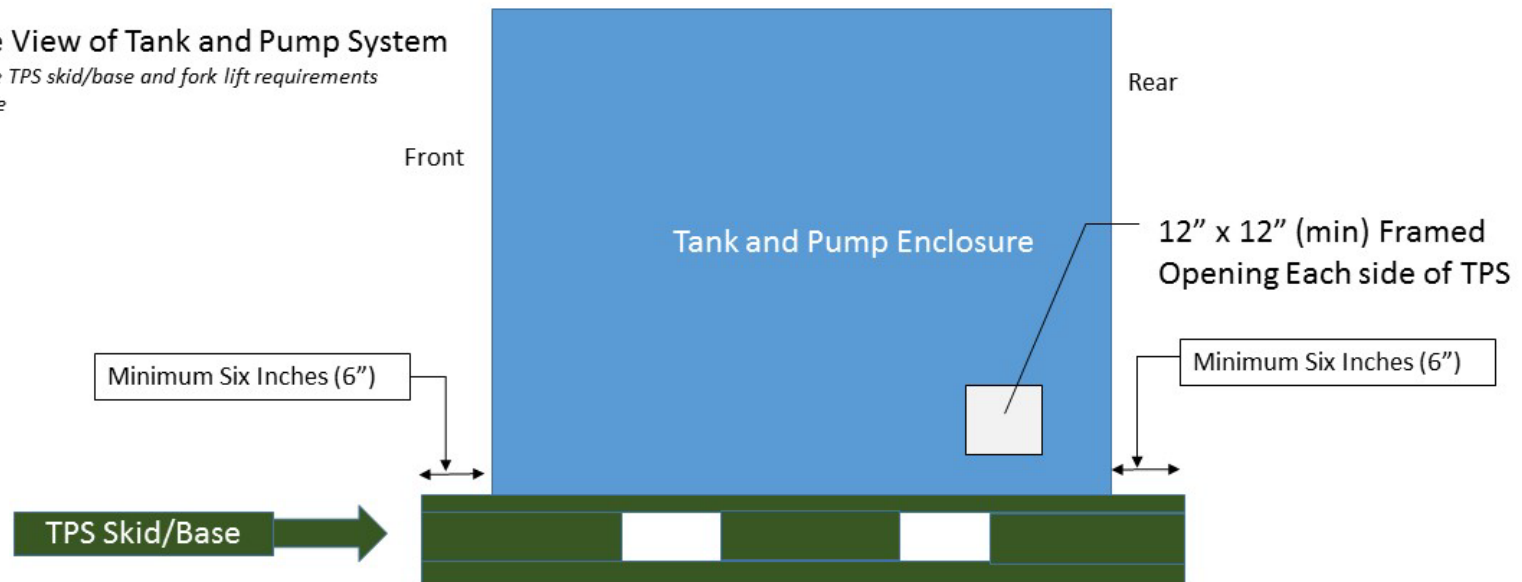


## 11.3 Diagram 3. TPS Long Side View

# TPS Long Side View

## Long Side View of Tank and Pump System

- To illustrate TPS skid/base and fork lift requirements
- Not to Scale



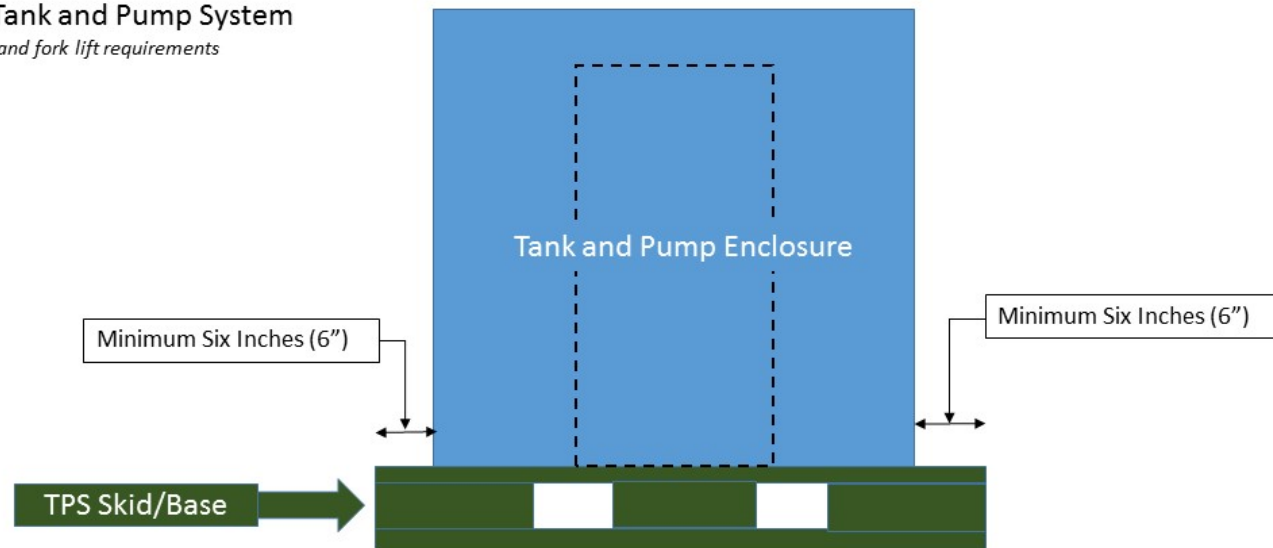
**Fork Lift pockets must be placed so that when a fork lift is used the TPS is balanced**

## 11.4 Diagram 4. TPS Short Side View

## TPS Short Side View

### Short Side View of Tank and Pump System

- To illustrate TPS skid/base and fork lift requirements
- Not to Scale



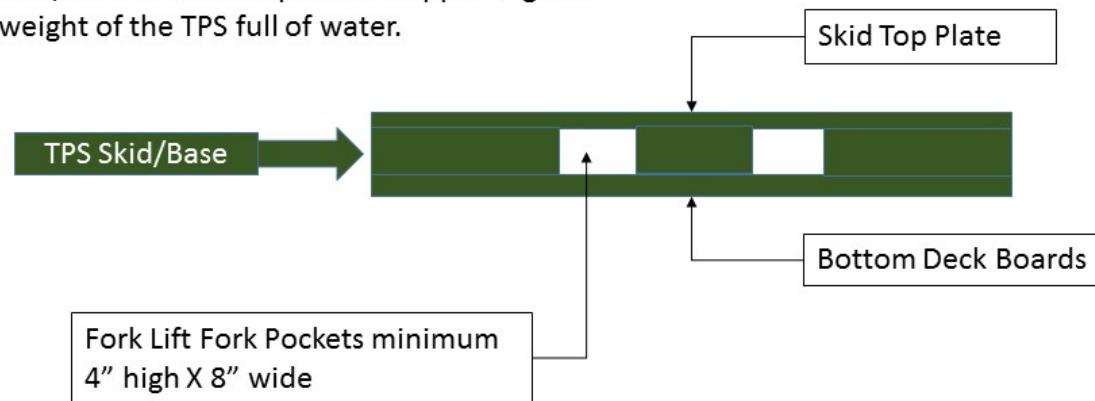
**Fork Lift pockets must be placed so that when a fork lift is used the TPS is balanced**

## 11.5 Diagram 5. TPS Skid/Base Detail

## TPS Skid/Base Detail

- To illustrate TPS skid/base and fork lift requirements
- Not to Scale

Skid/Base will not be removed to install TPS.  
Skid/Base must be capable of supporting the weight of the TPS full of water.

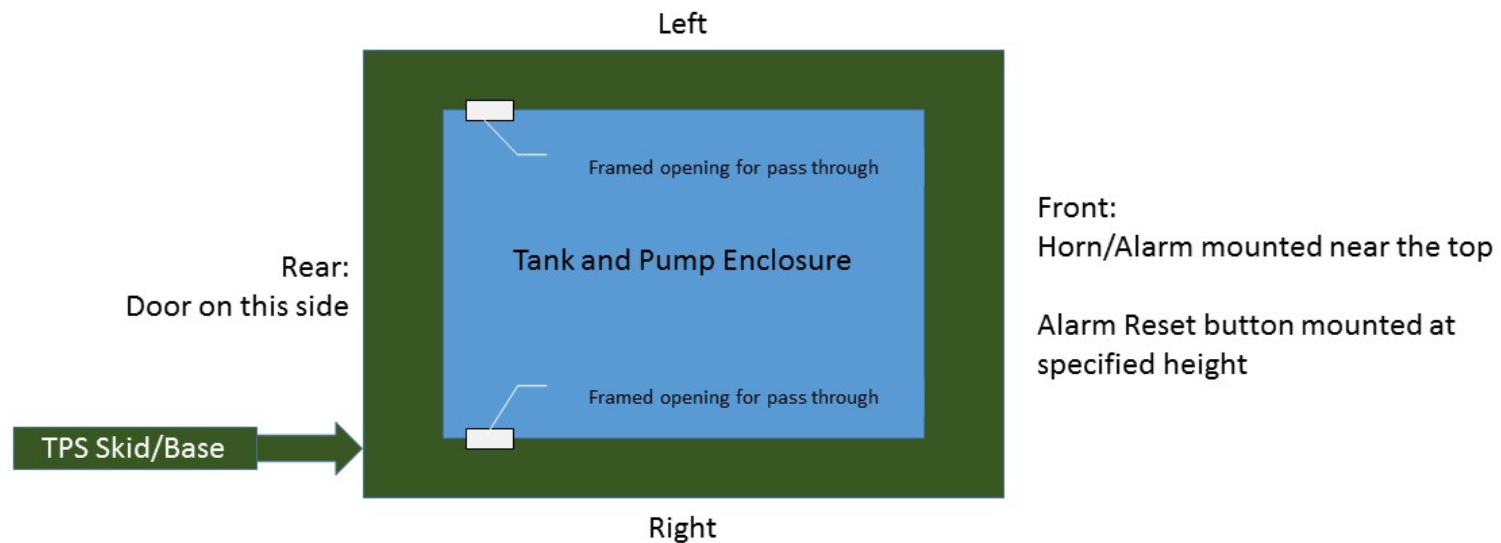


**Fork lift pockets must be placed so that when a fork lift is used the TPS is balanced**

## 11.6 Diagram 6. TPS Component Location

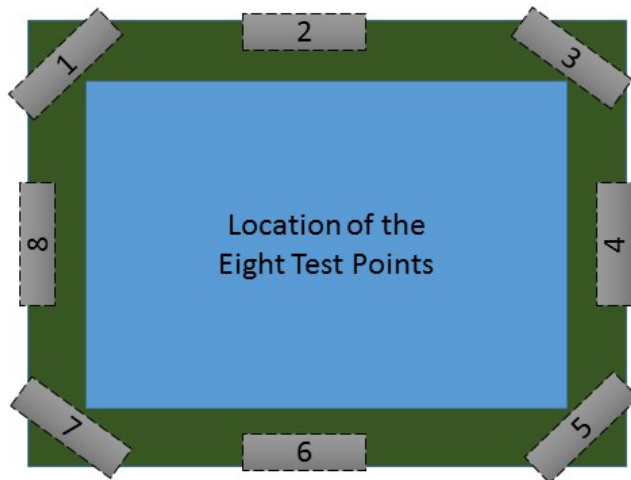
# TPS and Base Top View – Component Location

- *Not to Scale*



## 11.7 Diagram 7. Out-of-Level Door Operation Test

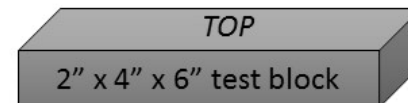
# Out of Level Door Test



x Test point beneath skid/base

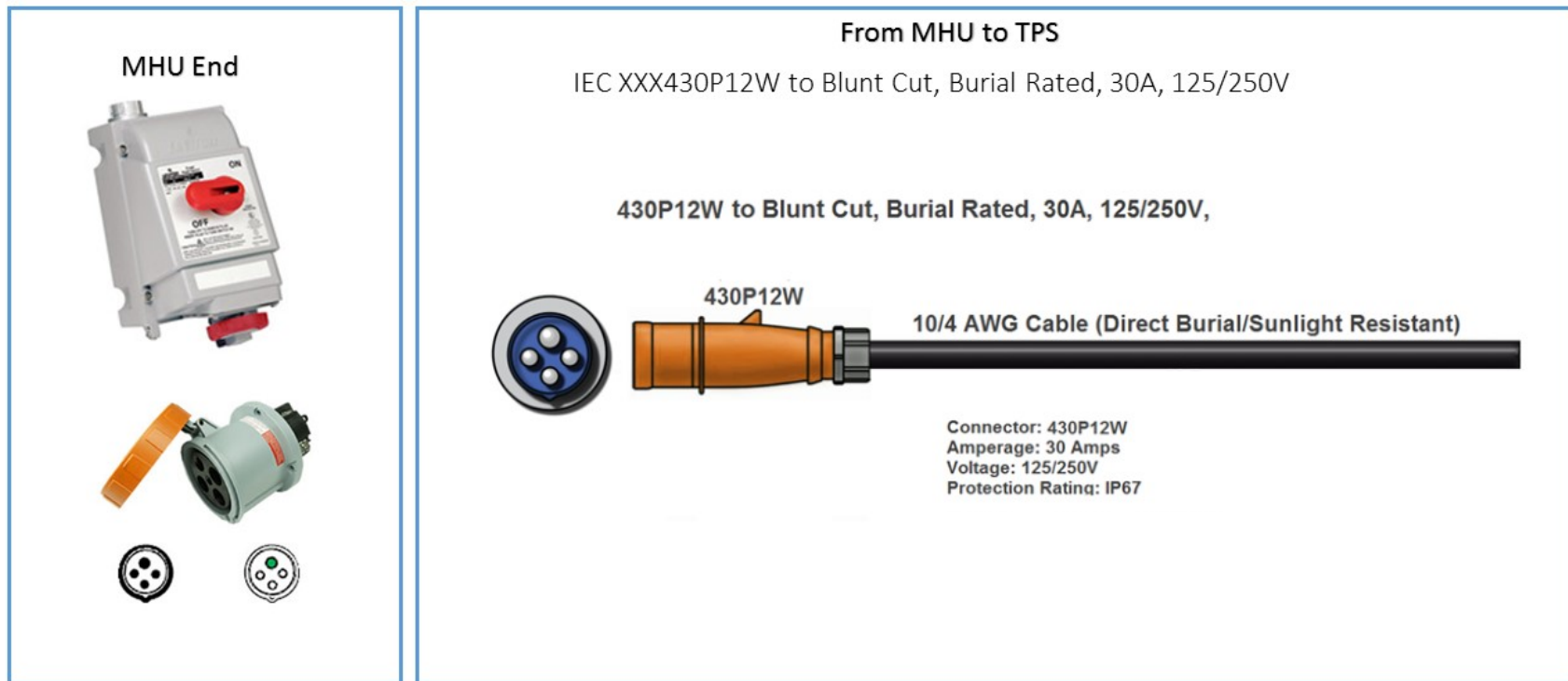
**Test procedure:**

1. Place TPS on hard level surface with the tank full of water, and the door closed, latched and locked.
2. Carefully lift the TPS and place the test block underneath the skid/base at the test point with the 4" side facing up/down, to raise the edge of the skid/base 2" (nominal).
3. Lower the TPS onto the test block so that the TPS is fully resting on the block.
4. Unlock, open, close, and lock the door three times to test the function of the door lock, latch, and hinge.
5. Carefully lift the TPS and move the test block underneath the skid/base to the next test point.
6. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 until the test has been performed at each of the eight test points shown.

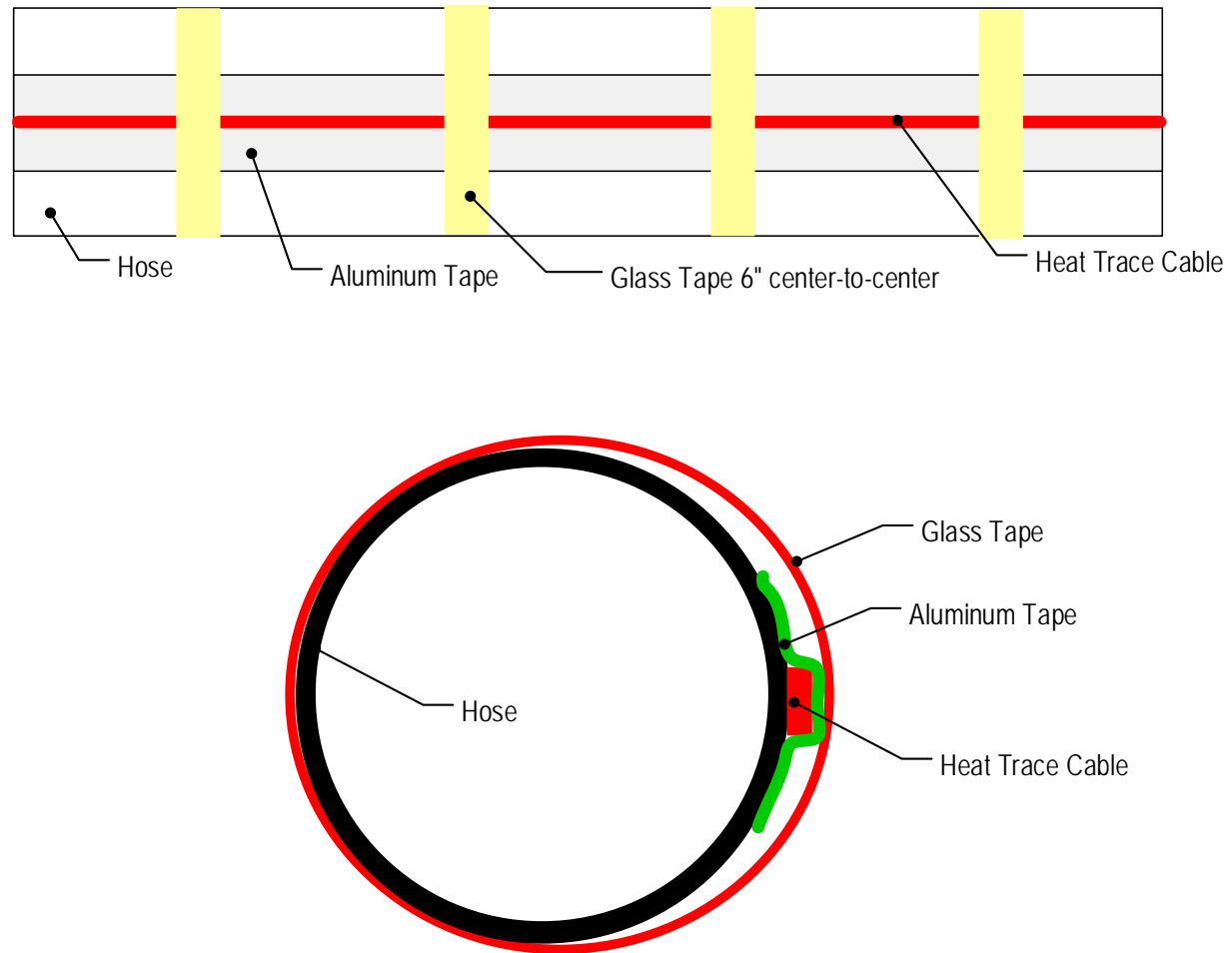


## 11.8 Diagram 8. Cable Illustration

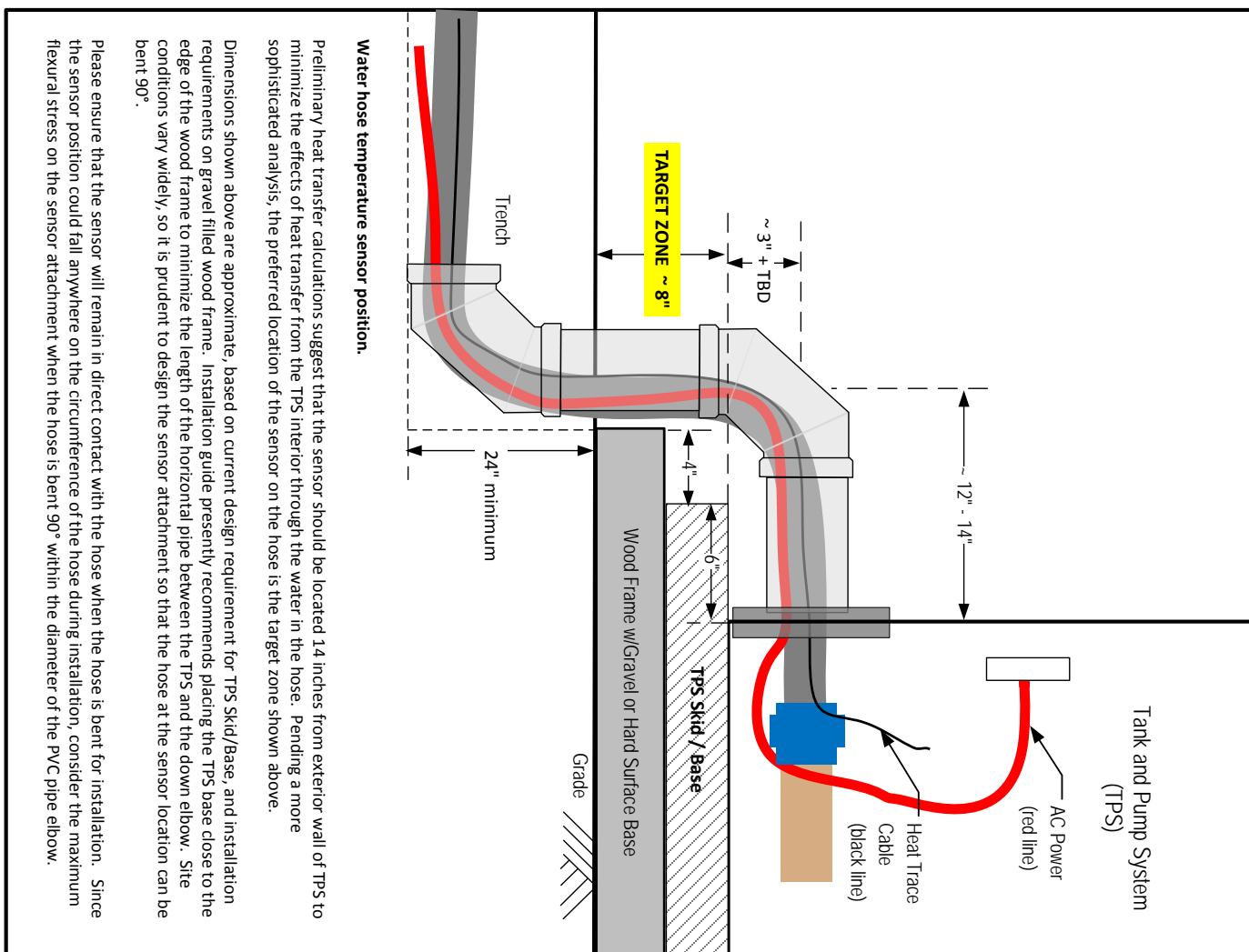
# CABLE ILLUSTRATION



## 11.9 Diagram 9. Installation of Heat Trace Cable on Water Hose



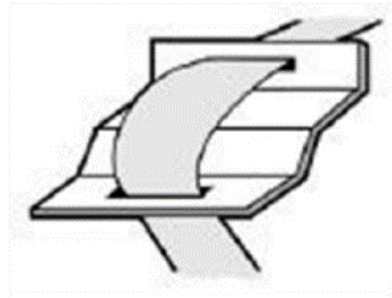
### 11.10 Diagram 10. Temperature Sensor Position





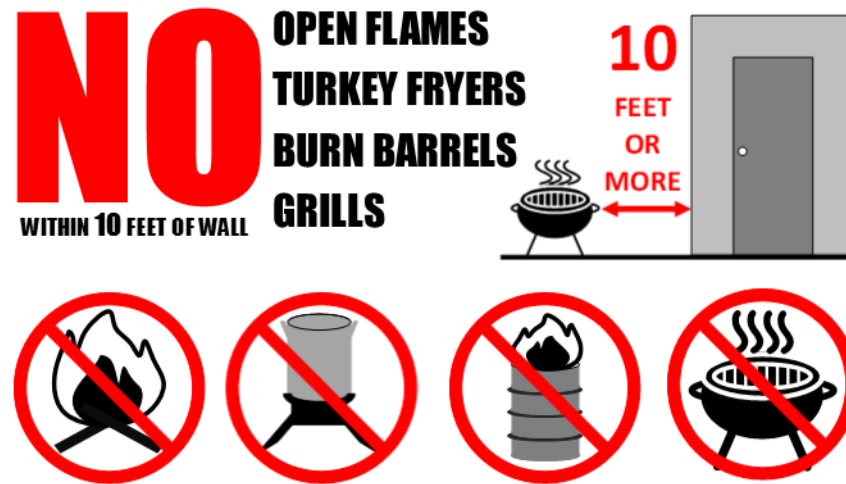
11.11 Diagram 11. Manufactured Home Roof Bracket

## Manufactured Home Roof Bracket



Example: For Illustrative Purposes Only

## 11.12 Diagram 12. Warning Signs and Labels



SECTION 23 03 00.00 20

BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating  
Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)  
National Electrical Safety Code

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2018) Motors and Generators

NEMA MG 10 (2017) Energy Management Guide for  
Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency  
Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase  
Induction Motors

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for  
Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020;  
ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA  
20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA  
20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA  
20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14;  
TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022)  
National Electrical Code

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section applies to all sections of Divisions: 21, FIRE SUPPRESSION;  
22, PLUMBING; and 23, HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING of this  
project specification, unless specified otherwise in the individual  
section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of  
manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which

are of a similar material, design and workmanship. Standard products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

#### 1.3.2 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

#### 1.3.3 Service Support

The equipment items must be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

#### 1.3.4 Manufacturer's Nameplate

For each item of equipment, provide a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

#### 1.3.5 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

##### 1.3.5.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions must be considered mandatory, the word "should" is interpreted as "must." Reference to the "code official" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" must be interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

##### 1.3.5.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, must be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

#### 1.5 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

Furnish motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors with their respective pieces of equipment. Motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors must conform to and have electrical connections provided under Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Furnish internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Extended voltage range motors will not be permitted. Controllers and contactors shall have a maximum of 120 volt control circuits, and must have auxiliary contacts for use with the controls furnished. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, the cost of additional electrical service and related work must be included under the section that specified that motor or equipment. Power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment must be provided under and conform to the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

#### 1.6 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Electrical installations must conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and requirements specified herein.

##### 1.6.1 New Work

Provide electrical components of mechanical equipment, such as motors, motor starters, control or push-button stations, float or pressure switches, solenoid valves, integral disconnects, and other devices functioning to control mechanical equipment, as well as control wiring and conduit for circuits rated 100 volts or less, to conform with the requirements of the section covering the mechanical equipment. Extended voltage range motors are not to be permitted. The interconnecting power wiring and conduit, control wiring rated 120 volts (nominal) and conduit, and the electrical power circuits must be provided under Division 26, except internal wiring for components of package equipment must be provided as an integral part of the equipment. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, provide any required changes to the electrical service as may be necessary and related work as a part of the work for the section specifying that motor or equipment.

##### 1.6.2 Modifications to Existing Systems

Where existing mechanical systems and motor-operated equipment require modifications, provide electrical components under Division 26.

##### 1.6.3 High Efficiency Motors

###### 1.6.3.1 High Efficiency Single-Phase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, single-phase fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors must be high efficiency types corresponding to the applications listed in NEMA MG 11.

#### 1.6.3.2 High Efficiency Polyphase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, polyphase motors must be selected based on high efficiency characteristics relative to the applications as listed in NEMA MG 10. Additionally, polyphase squirrel-cage medium induction motors with continuous ratings must meet or exceed energy efficient ratings in accordance with Table 12-6C of NEMA MG 1.

#### 1.6.4 Three-Phase Motor Protection

Provide controllers for motors rated one 1 horsepower and larger with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.

### 1.7 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Instructors must be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and must be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Instruction must be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished must be as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

### 1.8 ACCESSIBILITY

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PAINTING OF NEW EQUIPMENT

New equipment painting must be factory applied or shop applied, and must be as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

#### 3.1.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to certification that the factory painting system applied will withstand

125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors must withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Salt-spray fog test must be in accordance with **ASTM B117**, and for that test the acceptance criteria must be as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the paint must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen must show no signs of rust creepage beyond **0.125 inch** on either side of the scratch mark.

The film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment must not be less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above **120 degrees F**, the factory painting system must be designed for the temperature service.

### 3.1.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of **120 degrees F** must be cleaned to bare metal.

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Color of finish coat must be aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than **120 Degrees F**: Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than **120 degrees F** must receive one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of **0.3 mil**, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of **1 mil**; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of **1 mil** per coat.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 15

COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 325 (2017) Steel Construction Manual

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 (2018; ERTA 2018) Standard for Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures and Hydraulic Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals

ASME B16.22 (2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings

ASME B31.3 (2020) Process Piping

ASME BPVC SEC IX (2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8/A5.8M (2019) Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding

AWS WHB-2.9 (2004) Welding Handbook; Volume 2, Welding Processes, Part 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A307 (2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM A563 (2015) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts

ASTM B88 (2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM B370 (2012; R 2019) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction



ASTM B749 (2020) Standard Specification for Lead and Lead Alloy Strip, Sheet and Plate Products

ASTM C920 (2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)  
National Electrical Safety Code

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS  
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58 (2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports -  
Materials, Design and Manufacture,  
Selection, Application, and Installation

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for  
Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020;  
ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA  
20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA  
20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA  
20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14;  
TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022)  
National Electrical Code

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-1922 (Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion  
(Caulking Anchors, Single Lead)

CID A-A-1923 (Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Lag,  
Machine and Externally Threaded Wedge Bolt  
Anchors)

CID A-A-1924 (Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Self  
Drilling Tubular Expansion Shell Bolt  
Anchors)

CID A-A-1925 (Rev A; Notice 3) Shield Expansion (Nail  
Anchors)

CID A-A-55614 (Basic; Notice 2) Shield, Expansion  
(Non-Drilling Expansion Anchors)

CID A-A-55615 (Basic; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Wood  
Screw and Lag Bolt Self-Threading Anchors)

## 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION applies to work specified in this

section

Include with [Equipment Foundation Data](#) for piping systems all plan dimensions of foundations and relative elevations, equipment weight and operating loads, horizontal and vertical loads, horizontal and vertical clearances for installation, and size and location of anchor bolts.

Submit [Fabrication Drawings](#) for pipes, valves and specialties consisting of fabrication and assembly details to be performed in the factory.

Submit [Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists](#) for pipes, valves and specialties including manufacturer's style or catalog numbers, specification and drawing reference numbers, warranty information, and fabrication site information. Provide a complete list of construction equipment to be used.

Submit [Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts](#) for pipes, valves and specialties showing the manufacturer's recommended color and finish selections.

Include with [Listing of Product Installations](#) for piping systems identification of at least 5 units, similar to those proposed for use, that have been in successful service for a minimum period of 5 years. Include in the list purchaser, address of installation, service organization, and date of installation.

Submit [Record Drawings](#) for pipes, valves and accessories providing current factual information including deviations and amendments to the drawings, and concealed and visible changes in the work.

Submit [Connection Diagrams](#) for pipes, valves and specialties indicating the relations and connections of devices and apparatus by showing the general physical layout of all controls, the interconnection of one system (or portion of system) with another, and internal tubing, wiring, and other devices.

Submit [Coordination Drawings](#) for pipes, valves and specialties showing coordination of work between different trades and with the structural and architectural elements of work. Detail all drawings sufficiently to show overall dimensions of related items, clearances, and relative locations of work in allotted spaces. Indicate on drawings where conflicts or clearance problems exist between various trades.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval.. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00](#)  
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### [SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals](#)

[Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists](#); G, RO

#### [SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

Record Drawings; G, RO

Connection Diagrams; G, RO

Coordination Drawings; G, RO

Fabrication Drawings; G, RO

Installation Drawings; G, RO

#### SD-03 Product Data

Pipe and Fittings; G, RO

Miscellaneous Materials; G, RO

Supporting Elements; G, RO

Equipment Foundation Data; G, RO

#### SD-04 Samples

Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts; G, RO

#### SD-05 Design Data

Pipe and Fittings; G, RO

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Air Tests; G, RO

Non-Destructive Electric Tests; G, RO

System Operation Tests; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Record of Satisfactory Field Operation; G, RO

List of Qualified Permanent Service Organizations; G, RO

Listing of Product Installations; G, RO

Surface Resistance; G, RO

Shear and Tensile Strengths; G, RO

Temperature Ratings; G, RO

Bending Tests; G, RO

Flattening Tests; G, RO

#### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G, RO

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### 1.4.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. Provide standard products in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use includes applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. Ensure the product has been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

##### 1.4.2 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record are acceptable if a certified [record of satisfactory field operation](#) for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

##### 1.4.3 Service Support

Ensure the equipment items are supported by service organizations. Submit a certified [list of qualified permanent service organizations](#) for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. Select service organizations that are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

##### 1.4.4 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Provide a nameplate on each item of equipment bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent is not acceptable.

##### 1.4.5 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

##### 1.4.5.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions are considered mandatory, the word "should" is interpreted as "shall." Reference to the "code official" is interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, interpret references to the "owner" to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" is interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" are interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

#### 1.4.5.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, are applied as appropriate by the Contracting Officer and as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

#### 1.6 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

Furnish motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors with their respective pieces of equipment. Ensure motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors conform to and have electrical connections provided under Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Furnish internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Extended voltage range motors is not permitted. Provide controllers and contactors with a maximum of 120 volt control circuits, and auxiliary contacts for use with the controls furnished. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, include the cost of additional electrical service and related work under the section that specified that motor or equipment. Provide power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment under and conform to the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

#### 1.7 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Ensure electrical installations conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and requirements specified herein.

##### 1.7.1 New Work

Provide electrical components of mechanical equipment, such as motors, motor starters, control or push-button stations, float or pressure switches, solenoid valves, integral disconnects, and other devices functioning to control mechanical equipment, as well as control wiring and conduit for circuits rated 100 volts or less, to conform with the requirements of the section covering the mechanical equipment. Extended voltage range motors are not permitted. Provide under Division 26, the interconnecting power wiring and conduit, control wiring rated 120 volts (nominal) and conduit, and the electrical power circuits, except internal wiring for components of package equipment is provided as an integral part of the equipment. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, provide any required changes to the electrical service as may be necessary and related work as a part of the work for the section specifying that motor or equipment.

## 1.7.2 High Efficiency Motors

### 1.7.2.1 High Efficiency Single-Phase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, provide high efficiency single-phase fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors corresponding to the applications listed in [NEMA MG 11](#).

## 1.8 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Provide instructors thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Give instruction during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished is as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

## 1.9 ACCESSIBILITY

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

Submit equipment and performance data for [pipe and fittings](#) consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis. Submit design analysis and calculations consisting of surface resistance, rates of flow, head losses, inlet and outlet design, required radius of bend, and pressure calculations. Also include in data pipe size, shape, and dimensions, as well as temperature ratings, vibration and thrust limitations minimum burst pressures, shut-off and non-shock pressures and weld characteristics.

#### 2.1.1 Type CPR, Copper

##### 2.1.1.1 Type CPR-A, Copper Above Ground

Ensure tubing [2 inches and under](#) is seamless copper tubing, conforming to [ASTM B88](#), Type L (hard-drawn for all horizontal and all exposed vertical lines, annealed for concealed vertical lines).

Ensure fittings [2 inches and under](#) are [150-psig](#) wsp wrought-copper solder

joint fittings conforming to [ASME B16.22](#).

Ensure unions [2 inches and under](#) are [150-psig](#) wsp wrought-copper solder joint, conforming to [ASME B16.22](#).

Provide brazing rod with Classification BCuP-5, conforming to [AWS A5.8/A5.8M](#).

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

Submit equipment and performance data for [miscellaneous materials](#) consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis.

### 2.2.1 Bolting

Ensure flange and general purpose bolting is hex-head and conforms to [ASTM A307, Grade B](#) (bolts, for flanged joints in piping systems where one or both flanges are cast iron). Heavy hex-nuts conform to [ASTM A563](#). Square-head bolts and nuts are not acceptable. Ensure threads are coarse-thread series.

### 2.2.2 Elastomer Caulk

Use two-component polysulfide- or polyurethane-base elastomer caulking material, conforming to [ASTM C920](#).

### 2.2.3 Escutcheons

Manufacture escutcheons from nonferrous metals and chrome-plated except when AISI 300 series corrosion-resistant steel is provided. Ensure metals and finish conforms to [ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1](#).

Use one-piece escutcheons where mounted on chrome-plated pipe or tubing, and one-piece of split-pattern type elsewhere. Ensure all escutcheons have provisions consisting of internal spring-tension devices or setscrews for maintaining a fixed position against a surface.

### 2.2.4 Flashing

Ensure sheetlead conforms to [ASTM B749](#), UNS Alloy Number L51121 (for use where lead sheet of high purity and improved structural strength is indicated).

Ensure sheet copper conforms to [ASTM B370](#) and be not less than [16 ounces per square foot](#) weight.

## 2.3 SUPPORTING ELEMENTS

Submit equipment and performance data for the [supporting elements](#) consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis.

Provide all necessary piping systems and equipment supporting elements, including but not limited to: building structure attachments; supplementary steel; hanger rods, stanchions, and fixtures; vertical pipe attachments; horizontal pipe attachments; anchors; guides; and spring-cushion, variable, or constant supports. Ensure supporting elements are suitable for stresses imposed by systems pressures and

temperatures and natural and other external forces normal to this facility without damage to supporting element system or to work being supported.

Ensure supporting elements conform to requirements of [ASME B31.3](#), and [MSS SP-58](#), except as noted.

Ensure attachments welded to pipe are made of materials identical to that of pipe or materials accepted as permissible raw materials by referenced code or standard specification.

Ensure supporting elements exposed to weather are hot-dip galvanized or stainless steel. Select materials of such a nature that their apparent and latent-strength characteristics are not reduced due to galvanizing process. Electroplate supporting elements in contact with copper tubing with copper.

Type designations specified herein are based on [MSS SP-58](#). Ensure masonry anchor group-, type-, and style-combination designations are in accordance with [CID A-A-1922](#), [CID A-A-1923](#), [CID A-A-1924](#), [CID A-A-1925](#), [CID A-A-55614](#), and [CID A-A-55615](#). Provide support elements, except for supplementary steel, that are cataloged, load rated, commercially manufactured products.

### 2.3.1 Building Structure Attachments

#### 2.3.1.1 Anchor Devices, Concrete and Masonry

Ensure anchor devices conform to [CID A-A-1922](#), [CID A-A-1923](#), [CID A-A-1924](#), [CID A-A-1925](#), [CID A-A-55614](#), and [CID A-A-55615](#)

For cast-in, floor mounted, equipment anchor devices, provide adjustable positions.

Do not use powder-actuated anchoring devices to support any mechanical systems components.

#### 2.3.1.2 Beam Clamps

Ensure beam clamps are center-loading [MSS SP-58](#) Type 20, 21, 28, 29, 30.

When it is not possible to use center-loading beam clamps, eccentric-loading beam clamps, [MSS SP-58](#) Type 19, 20, 25, 27, may be used for piping sizes [2 inches](#) and less and for piping sizes [2 through 10 inches](#) provided two counterbalancing clamps are used per point of pipe support. Where more than one rod is used per point of pipe support, determine rod diameter in accordance with referenced standards.

### 2.3.2 Horizontal Pipe Attachments

#### 2.3.2.1 Single Pipes

Support piping in sizes to and including [2-inch ips](#) by [MSS SP-58](#) Type 6 solid malleable iron pipe rings, except that, use split-band-type rings in sizes up to [1-inch ips](#).

Support piping in sizes through [8-inch ips](#) inclusive by [MSS SP-58](#) Type 1, 3, 4 attachments.

Use [MSS SP-58](#) Type 1 and Type 6 assemblies on vapor-sealed insulated piping and have an inside diameter larger than pipe being supported to



provide adequate clearance during pipe movement.

Where thermal movement of a point in a piping system 4 inches and larger would cause a hanger rod to deflect more than 4 degrees from the vertical or where a horizontal point movement exceeds 1/2 inch, use MSS SP-58 Type 41, 44 through 46, 49 pipe rolls.

Use MSS SP-58 Type 40 shields on all insulated piping. Ensure area of the supporting surface is such that compression deformation of insulated surfaces does not occur. Roll away longitudinal and transverse shield edges from the insulation.

Provide insulated piping without vapor barrier on roll supports with MSS SP-58 Type 39 saddles.

Provide spring supports as indicated.

#### 2.3.2.2 Parallel Pipes

Use trapeze hangers fabricated from structural steel shapes, with U-bolts, in congested areas and where multiple pipe runs occur. Ensure structural steel shapes conform to supplementary steel requirements.

#### 2.3.3 Vertical Pipe Attachments

Ensure vertical pipe attachments are MSS SP-58 Type 8.

Include complete fabrication and attachment details of any spring supports in shop drawings.

#### 2.3.4 Hanger Rods and Fixtures

Use only circular cross section rod hangers to connect building structure attachments to pipe support devices. Use pipe, straps, or bars of equivalent strength for hangers only where approved by the Contracting Officer.

Provide turnbuckles, swing eyes, and clevises as required by support system to accommodate temperature change, pipe accessibility, and adjustment for load and pitch. Rod couplings are not acceptable.

#### 2.3.5 Supplementary Steel

Where it is necessary to frame structural members between existing members or where structural members are used in lieu of commercially rated supports, design and fabricate such supplementary steel in accordance with AISC 325.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPE INSTALLATION

Submit certificates for pipes, valves and specialties showing conformance with test requirements as contained in the reference standards contained in this section. Provide certificates verifying Surface Resistance, Shear and Tensile Strengths, Temperature Ratings, Bending Tests, and Flattening Tests.

Provide test reports for , Air Tests, Non-Destructive Electric Tests and

[System Operation Tests](#), in compliance with referenced standards contained within this section.

Fabricate and install piping systems in accordance with [ASME B31.3](#), [MSS SP-58](#), and [AWS WHB-2.9](#).

Submit [Installation Drawings](#) for pipes, valves and specialties. Drawings include the manufacturer's design and construction calculations, forces required to obtain rated axial, lateral, or angular movements, installation criteria, anchor and guide requirements for equipment, and equipment room layout and design. Ensure drawings specifically advise on procedures to be followed and provisions required to protect expansion joints during specified hydrostatic testing operations.

Ensure connections between steel piping and copper piping are electrically isolated from each other with dielectric couplings (or unions) rated for the service.

Make final connections to equipment with unions provided every [100 feet](#) of straight run. Provide unions in the line downstream of screwed- and welded-end valves.

Ream all pipe ends before joint connections are made.

Make screwed joints with specified joint compound with not more than three threads showing after joint is made up.

Apply joint compounds to the male thread only and exercise care to prevent compound from reaching the unthreaded interior of the pipe.

Provide screwed unions, welded unions, or bolted flanges wherever required to permit convenient removal of equipment, valves, and piping accessories from the piping system for maintenance.

Securely support piping systems with due allowance for thrust forces, thermal expansion and contraction. Do not subject the system to mechanical, chemical, vibrational or other damage as specified in [ASME B31.3](#).

Ensure field welded joints conform to the requirements of the [AWS WHB-2.9](#), [ASME B31.3](#), and [ASME BPVC SEC IX](#).

### 3.2 SUPPORTING ELEMENTS INSTALLATION

Provide supporting elements in accordance with the referenced codes and standards.

Support piping from building structure. Do not support piping from roof deck or from other pipe.

Run piping parallel with the lines of the building. Space and install piping and components so that a threaded pipe fitting may be removed between adjacent pipes and so that there is no less than [1/2 inch](#) of clear space between the finished surface and other work and between the finished surface of parallel adjacent piping. Arrange hangars on different adjacent service lines running parallel with each other in line with each other and parallel to the lines of the building.

Install piping support elements at intervals specified hereinafter, at

locations not more than 3 feet from the ends of each runout, and not over 1 foot from each change in direction of piping.

Base load rating for all pipe-hanger supports on insulated weight of lines filled with water and forces imposed. Deflection per span is not exceed slope gradient of pipe. Ensure supports are in accordance with the following minimum rod size and maximum allowable hanger spacing for specified pipe. For concentrated loads such as valves, reduce the allowable span proportionately:

<u>PIPE SIZE</u> <u>INCHES</u>	<u>ROD SIZE</u> <u>INCHES</u>	<u>STEEL PIPE</u> <u>FEET</u>	<u>COPPER PIPE</u> <u>FEET</u>
1 and smaller	3/8	8	6
1-1/4 to 1-1/2	3/8	10	8

Support vertical risers independently of connected horizontal piping, whenever practicable, with fixed or spring supports at the base and at intervals to accommodate system range of thermal conditions. Ensure risers have guides for lateral stability. For risers subject to expansion, provide only one rigid support at a point approximately one-third down from the top. Place clamps under fittings unless otherwise specified. Support carbon-steel pipe at each floor and at not more than 15-foot intervals for pipe 2 inches and smaller and at not more than 20-foot intervals for pipe 2-1/2 inches and larger.

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

Provide effective sound stopping and adequate operating clearance to prevent structure contact where piping penetrates walls, floors, or ceilings into occupied spaces adjacent to equipment rooms; where similar penetrations occur between occupied spaces; and where penetrations occur from pipe chases into occupied spaces. Occupied spaces include space above ceilings where no special acoustic treatment of ceiling is provided. Finish penetrations to be compatible with surface being penetrated.

### 3.4 ESCUTCHEONS

Provide escutcheons at all penetrations of piping into finished areas. Where finished areas are separated by partitions through which piping passes, provide escutcheons on both sides of the partition. Where suspended ceilings are installed, provide plates at the underside only of such ceilings. For insulated pipes, select plates large enough to fit around the insulation. Use chrome-plated escutcheons in all occupied spaces and of size sufficient to effectively conceal openings in building construction. Firmly attach escutcheons with setscrews.

### 3.5 FLASHINGS

Provide flashings at penetrations of building boundaries by mechanical systems and related work.

### 3.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Provide [Operation and Maintenance Manuals](#) consistent with manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, general operating procedures and safety precautions. Submit test data that is clear and readily legible.

### 3.7 PAINTING OF NEW EQUIPMENT

Factory or shop apply new equipment painting, as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

#### 3.7.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to certification that the factory painting system applied withstands 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Conduct salt-spray fog test is in accordance with [ASTM B117](#), and for that test the acceptance criteria is as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the inspected paint shows no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen shows no signs of rust creepage beyond [0.125 inch](#) on either side of the scratch mark.

Ensure the film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment is not less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above [120 degrees F](#), design the factory painting system for the temperature service.

#### 3.7.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare metal, surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of [120 degrees F](#).

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Selected color of finish coat is aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than [120 Degrees F](#): Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than [120 degrees F](#) receives one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of [0.3 mil](#), one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of [one mil](#); and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of [one mil](#) per coat.
- b. Temperatures Between [120 and 400 Degrees F](#): Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between [120 and 400 degrees F](#) Receives two coats of [400 degrees F](#) heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of [2 mils](#).
- c. Temperatures Greater Than [400 Degrees F](#): Metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than [400 degrees F](#) receives two coats of [600 degrees F](#) heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of [2 mils](#).

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 48.19

BRACING FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 325 (2017) Steel Construction Manual

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A53/A53M (2020) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

ASTM A153/A153M (2016a) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM A325 (2014) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength

ASTM A490 (2014a) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength

ASTM A500/A500M (2021a) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes

ASTM A563 (2015) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts

ASTM A603 (2019) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Structural Wire Rope

METAL FRAMING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (MFMA)

MFMA-4 (2004) Metal Framing Standards Publication

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01 (2019, with Change 1, 2022) Structural Engineering

UFC 4-010-01

(2018;with Change 1, 2020) DoD Minimum  
Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings

VIBRATION ISOLATION AND SEISMIC CONTROL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION  
(VISCMA)

VISCMA 412

(2014) Installing Seismic Restraints for  
Mechanical Equipment

## 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

### 1.2.1 General Requirements

Apply the requirements for seismic protection measures described in this section and on the drawings to the mechanical equipment and mechanical systems both inside and outside of the building along with exterior utilities and systems listed below. Where there is a conflict between the specifications and the drawings, the specifications will take precedence. Accomplish resistance to lateral forces induced by earthquakes without consideration of friction resulting from gravity loads.

### 1.2.2 Mechanical Equipment

Mechanical equipment to be seismically protected must include the following items to the extent required on the drawings or in other sections of these specifications:

Valves and Fittings for Piping
Split System DX Units
Unit Heaters
Unitary HVAC Systems

### 1.2.3 Mechanical Systems

Mechanical systems to be seismically protected must include the following items to the extent required on the drawings or in this or other sections of these specifications:

- a. All Piping and Ducts Inside the Building Except as Specifically Stated Below Under "Items Not Covered By This Section".

### 1.2.4 Contractor Designed Bracing

Submit copies of the design calculations with the drawings. Calculations must be approved, certified, stamped and signed by a registered Professional Structural Engineer. Calculations must verify the capability of structural members to which bracing is attached for carrying the load from the brace. Design the bracing in accordance with UFC 3-301-01, , UFC 4-010-01 and additional data furnished by the Contracting Officer. UFC 3-301-01 uses parameters for the building, not for the equipment in the building; therefore, corresponding adjustments to the formulas must be

required. Loadings determined using [UFC 3-301-01](#) are based on strength design; therefore, [AISC 325](#) Specifications must be used for the design. The bracing for the mechanical equipment designated in paragraph 1.2.2 and systems designated in paragraph 1.2.3 must be developed by the Contractor.

#### 1.2.5 Items Not Covered By This Section

##### 1.2.5.1 Items Requiring No Seismic Restraints

Seismic restraints are not required for the following items:

- c. All other piping equal to or less than [3inches](#) nominal pipe size.
- f. Piping suspended by individual hangers [12 inches](#) or less in length from the top of pipe to the bottom of the supporting structural member where the hanger is attached, except as noted below.

In exemptions f. and g. all hangers must meet the length requirements. If the length requirement is exceeded by one hanger in the run, brace the entire run.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00](#) SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### [SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

[Contractor Designed Bracing; G, RO](#)

##### [SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Contractor Designed Bracing; G, RO](#)

##### [SD-05 Design Data](#)

[Design Calculations](#)

##### [SD-06 Test Reports](#)

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

Submit detailed seismic restraint drawings for mechanical equipment, duct systems, piping systems and any other mechanical systems along with calculations, catalog cuts, templates, and erection and installation details, as appropriate, for the items listed below. Indicate thickness, type, grade, class of metal, and dimensions; and show construction details, reinforcement, anchorage, and installation with relation to the

building construction. Calculations must be stamped, by a registered structural engineer, and verify the capability of structural members to which bracing is attached for carrying the load from the brace. Include drawing for Mission Critical Equipment indicating the equipment location in the facility sufficient to be used for the installation. Design must be based on actual equipment and system layout. Design must include calculated dead loads, static seismic loads and capacity of materials utilized for the connection of the equipment or system to the structure. Analysis must detail anchoring methods.

## 2.2 BOLTS AND NUTS

Hex head bolts, and heavy hexagon nuts must be [ASTM A325](#) or [ASTM A490](#) bolts and [ASTM A563](#) nuts. Provide bolts and nuts galvanized in accordance with [ASTM A153/A153M](#) when used underground or exposed to weather.

## 2.3 SWAY BRACING MATERIALS

Material used for members listed in this section and on the drawings, must be structural steel conforming with the following:

- a. Plates, rods, and rolled shapes, [ASTM A36/A36M](#).
- b. Wire rope, [ASTM A603](#) pre-stretched. Class B galv coating, Class C galv coating Ferrule clamps must be qualified by testing for use in seismic applications per [VISCMA 412](#). A minimum of two clamps are required on each end of wire rope.
- c. Tubes, [ASTM A500/A500M](#), Grade B.
- d. Pipes, [ASTM A53/A53M](#), Grade B.
- e. Angles, [ASTM A36/A36M](#).
- f. Channels (Struts) with in-turned lips and associated hardware for fastening to channels at random points conforming to [MFMA-4](#)

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 SWAY BRACES FOR PIPING

Provide sway braces to prevent movement of the pipes under seismic loading. Provide braces in both the longitudinal and transverse directions, relative to the axis of the pipe. Provide sufficient braces for equipment to resist a horizontal force as specified in [UFC 3-301-01](#) without exceeding safe working stress of bracing components. Provide bracing that does not interfere with thermal expansion requirements for the pipes as described in other sections of these specifications. For seismic analysis of horizontal pipes, the equivalent static force should be considered to act concurrently with the full dead load of the pipe, including contents.

#### 3.1.1 Transverse Sway Bracing

Provide transverse sway bracing for steel and copper pipe at intervals not to exceed those shown on the drawings. All runs (length of pipe between end joints) must have a minimum of transverse bracing at each end. Provide transverse sway bracing for pipes of materials other than steel



and copper at intervals not to exceed the hanger spacing.

### 3.1.2 Longitudinal Sway Bracing

Provide longitudinal sway bracing at 40 foot intervals unless otherwise indicated. All runs (length of pipe between end joints) must have one longitudinal brace minimum. Construct sway braces in accordance with the drawings. Do not use branch lines, walls, or floors as sway braces.

### 3.1.3 Vertical Runs

Run is defined as length of pipe between end joints. Do not brace vertical runs of piping no more than 10 foot vertical intervals. Braces for vertical runs must be above the center of gravity of the segment being braced. Flexible couplings should be provided at the bottoms of risers for pipes larger than 3.5 in. (89 mm) in diameter. Flexible couplings and expansion joints should be braced laterally and longitudinally unless such bracing would interfere with the action of the couplings or joints. When pipes enter buildings, flexible couplings should be provided to allow for relative movement between the soil and building. Construct all sway braces in accordance with the drawings. Attach sway braces to the structural system. Do not connect to branch lines, walls, or floors.

### 3.1.4 Clamps and Hangers

Apply clamps or hangers on uninsulated pipes directly to pipe. Insulated piping must have clamps or hangers applied over insulation in accordance with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

Hanger rod stiffener angle or strut bracing must be securely attached by a series of attachment clamps manufactured from a one piece metal stamping and must include all require attachment hardware and locking nuts. Attachment clamps made from aluminum or cast iron must not be used in seismic applications. Do not weld vertical braces to hanger rods.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT

### 3.2.1 General

Ensure housekeeping pads have adequate space to mount equipment and seismic restraint devices allowing adequate edge distance and embedment depth for restraint anchor bolts. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength. Install neoprene grommet washers or till the gap with epoxy on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and equipment support hole exceeds 0.125 inches.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 93

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor  
Air Quality

ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL (AABC)

AABC MN-1 (2002; 6th ed) National Standards for  
Total System Balance

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)

NEBB MASV (2006) Procedural Standards for  
Measurements and Assessment of Sound and  
Vibration

NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS (2015) Procedural Standards for TAB  
(Testing, Adjusting and Balancing)  
Environmental Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION  
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1780 (2002) HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting  
and Balancing, 3rd Edition

SMACNA 1858 (2004) HVAC Sound And Vibration Manual -  
First Edition

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council
- b. COTR: Contracting Officer's Technical Representative
- c. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning; or heating,  
ventilating, and cooling
- d. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau
- e. Out-of-tolerance data: Pertains only to field acceptance testing of  
TAB report. When applied to TAB work this phrase means "a  
measurement taken during TAB field acceptance testing which does not  
fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the original

measurement reported on the TAB Report for a specific parameter."

- f. Season of maximum heating load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within **plus or minus 30 degrees Fahrenheit** of the project site's winter outdoor design temperature, throughout the period of TAB data recording.
- g. Season of maximum cooling load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within **plus or minus 5 degrees Fahrenheit** of the project site's summer outdoor design temperature, throughout the period of TAB data recording.
- h. Sound measurements terminology: Defined in **AABC MN-1, NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1858** (TABB).
- i. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing (of HVAC systems)
- j. TAB'd: HVAC Testing/Adjusting/Balancing procedures performed
- k. TAB Agency: TAB Firm
- l. **TAB team field leader: TAB team field leader**
- m. **TAB team supervisor: TAB team engineer**
- n. **TAB team technicians: TAB team assistants**
- o. TABB: Testing Adjusting and Balancing Bureau

#### 1.2.1 Similar Terms

In some instances, terminology differs between the Contract and the TAB Standard primarily because the intent of this Section is to use the industry standards specified, along with additional requirements listed herein to produce optimal results.

The following table of similar terms is provided for clarification only. Contract requirements take precedent over the corresponding AABC, NEBB, or TABB requirements where differences exist.

SIMILAR TERMS			
Contract Term	AABC Term	NEBB Term	TABB Term
TAB Standard	National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems	Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems	International Standards for Environmental Systems Balance
TAB Specialist	TAB Engineer	TAB Supervisor	TAB Supervisor

SIMILAR TERMS			
Contract Term	AABC Term	NEBB Term	TABB Term
Systems Readiness Check	Construction Phase Inspection	Field Readiness Check & Preliminary Field Procedures	Field Readiness Check & Prelim. Field Procedures

### 1.3 WORK DESCRIPTION

The work includes testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) of new heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems including equipment and performance data, ducts, and piping which are located within, on, under, between, and adjacent to buildings, including records of existing conditions.

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the TAB procedural standard recommended by the TAB trade association that approved the TAB Firm's qualifications. Comply with requirements of AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 (TABB) as supplemented and modified by this specification section. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB procedural standards are considered mandatory.

Conduct TAB of the indicated existing systems and equipment and submit the specified TAB reports for approval. Conduct TAB work in accordance with the requirements of this section.

#### 1.3.1 TAB SCHEMATIC DRAWINGS

Show the following information on TAB Schematic Drawings:

1. A unique number or mark for each piece of equipment or terminal.
2. Air quantities at air terminals.
3. Air quantities and temperatures in air handling unit schedules.
4. Water quantities and temperatures in thermal energy transfer equipment schedules.
5. Water quantities and heads in pump schedules.
6. Water flow measurement fittings and balancing fittings.

The Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Specialist must review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system, including records of existing conditions, and systems readiness check. The TAB Specialist must provide a Design Review Report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation.

Submit three copies of the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms to the Contracting Officer, no later than 21 days prior to the start of TAB field

measurements.

#### 1.3.2 Related Requirements

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Records of Existing Conditions; G, RO

TAB Firm; G, RO

Designation of TAB Team Assistants; G, RO

Designation of TAB Team Engineer; G, RO or TAB Specialist; G, RO

Designation of TAB Team Field Leader; G, RO

##### SD-02 Shop Drawings

TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms; G, RO

##### SD-03 Product Data

Equipment and Performance Data; G, RO

TAB Related HVAC Submittals; G, RO

A list of the TAB Related HVAC Submittals, no later than 7 days after the approval of the TAB team engineer and assistant.

TAB Procedures; G, RO

Proposed procedures for TAB, submitted with the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms.

Calibration; G, RO

Systems Readiness Check; G, RO

TAB Execution; G, RO

##### SD-06 Test Reports

TAB Design Review Report; G, RO

TAB Report ; G, RO

##### SD-07 Certificates

Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications; G, RO

TAB Submittal and Work Schedule; G, ROTAB Pre-Field Engineering Report; G, RO

TAB Firm; G, RO

Design Review Report; G, RO

Advanced Notice for TAB Field Work; G

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List ; G, RO

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List; G, RO

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### 1.5.1 Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications

To secure approval for the proposed agency, submit information certifying that the TAB agency is a first tier subcontractor who is not affiliated with any other company participating in work on this contract, including design, furnishing equipment, or construction. Further, submit the following, for the agency, to Contracting Officer for approval:

#### a. Independent AABC or NEBB or TABB TAB agency:

TAB agency: AABC registration number and expiration date of current certification; or NEBB certification number and expiration date of current certification; or TABB certification number and expiration date of current certification.

TAB team supervisor: Name and copy of AABC or NEBB or TABB TAB supervisor certificate and expiration date of current certification.

TAB team field leader: Name and documented evidence that the team field leader has satisfactorily performed full-time supervision of TAB work in the field for not less than 3 years immediately preceding this contract's bid opening date.

TAB team field technicians: Names and documented evidence that each field technician has satisfactorily assisted a TAB team field leader in performance of TAB work in the field for not less than one year immediately preceding this contract's bid opening date.

Current certificates: Registrations and certifications are current, and valid for the duration of this contract. Renew Certifications which expire prior to completion of the TAB work, in a timely manner so that there is no lapse in registration or certification. TAB agency or TAB team personnel without a current registration or current certification are not to perform TAB work on this contract.

#### b. TAB Team Members: TAB team approved to accomplish work on this contract are full-time employees of the TAB agency. No other personnel is allowed to do TAB work on this contract.

#### c. Replacement of TAB team members: Replacement of members may occur if each new member complies with the applicable personnel qualifications and each is approved by the Contracting Officer.

### 1.5.2 TAB Standard

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved, i.e., AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 unless otherwise specified herein. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB Standard are considered mandatory. Use the provisions of the TAB Standard, including checklists, report forms, etc., as nearly as practical, to satisfy the Contract requirements. Use the TAB Standard for all aspects of TAB, including qualifications for the TAB Firm and Specialist and calibration of TAB instruments. Where the instrument manufacturer calibration recommendations are more stringent than those listed in the TAB Standard, adhere to the manufacturer's recommendations.

All quality assurance provisions of the TAB Standard such as performance guarantees are part of this contract. For systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard, TAB procedures must be developed by the TAB Specialist. Where new procedures, requirements, etc., applicable to the Contract requirements have been published or adopted by the body responsible for the TAB Standard used (AABC, NEBB, or TABB), the requirements and recommendations contained in these procedures and requirements are considered mandatory, including the latest requirements of ASHRAE 62.1.

### 1.5.3 Qualifications

#### 1.5.3.1 TAB Firm

The TAB Firm must be either a member of AABC or certified by the NEBB or the TABB and certified in all categories and functions where measurements or performance are specified on the plans and specifications, including building systems commissioning.

Certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the firm loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor must immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Firm for approval. Any firm that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not be eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections to be performed by the TAB Firm will be considered invalid if the TAB Firm loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor.

These TAB services are to assist the prime Contractor in performing the quality oversight for which it is responsible. The TAB Firm must be a prime subcontractor of the Contractor and be financially and corporately independent of the mechanical subcontractor, reporting directly to and paid by the Contractor.

#### 1.5.3.2 TAB Specialist

The TAB Specialist must be either a member of AABC, an experienced technician of the Firm certified by the NEBB, or a Supervisor certified by the TABB. The certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual

that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB Specialist will be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by the approved successor.

#### 1.5.3.3 TAB Specialist Responsibilities

TAB Specialist responsibilities include all TAB work specified herein and in related sections under his direct guidance. The TAB specialist is required to be onsite on a daily basis to direct TAB efforts.

#### 1.5.3.4 TAB Related HVAC Submittals

The TAB Specialist must prepare a list of the submittals from the Contract Submittal Register that relate to the successful accomplishment of all HVAC TAB. Accompany the submittals identified on this list with a letter of approval signed and dated by the TAB Specialist when submitted to the Government. Ensure that the location and details of ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB are identified on the submittals.

#### 1.5.4 Responsibilities

The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compliance with the requirements of this section. The following delineation of specific work responsibilities is specified to facilitate TAB execution of the various work efforts by personnel from separate organizations. This breakdown of specific duties is specified to facilitate adherence to the schedule listed in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE.

##### 1.5.4.1 Contractor

- a. TAB personnel: Ensure that the TAB work is accomplished by a group meeting the requirements specified in the paragraph TAB PERSONNEL QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS.
- b. Pre-TAB meeting: Attend the meeting with the TAB Supervisor, and ensure that a representative is present for the sheetmetal contractor, mechanical contractor, electrical contractor, and automatic temperature controls contractor.
- c. HVAC documentation: Furnish one complete set of the following HVAC-related documentation to the TAB agency:
  - (1) Contract drawings and specifications
  - (2) Approved submittal data for equipment
  - (3) Construction work schedule
  - (4) Up-to-date revisions and change orders for the previously listed items
- d. Submittal and work schedules: Ensure that the schedule for submittals and work required by this section and specified in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE is met.



e. Coordination of supporting personnel:

Provide the technical personnel, such as factory representatives or HVAC controls installer required by the TAB field team to support the TAB field measurement work.

Provide equipment mechanics to operate HVAC equipment and ductwork mechanics to provide the field designated test ports to enable TAB field team to accomplish the TAB field measurement work. Ensure these support personnel are present at the times required by the TAB team, and cause no delay in the TAB field work.

Conversely, ensure that the HVAC controls installer has required support from the TAB team field leader to complete the controls check out.

- f. Deficiencies: Ensure that the TAB Agency supervisor submits all Design/Construction deficiency notifications directly to the Contracting officer within 3 days after the deficiency is encountered. Further, ensure that all such notification submittals are complete with explanation, including documentation, detailing deficiencies.
- g. Prerequisite HVAC work: Complete check out and debugging of HVAC equipment, ducts, and controls prior to the TAB engineer arriving at the project site to begin the TAB work. Debugging includes searching for and eliminating malfunctioning elements in the HVAC system installations, and verifying all adjustable devices are functioning as designed. Include as prerequisite work items, the deficiencies pointed out by the TAB team supervisor in the design review report.
- h. Prior to the TAB field team's arrival, ensure completion of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the TAB team supervisor's pre-field engineering report. Do not allow the TAB team to commence TAB field work until all of the following are completed.
- (1) HVAC system installations are fully complete.
  - (2) HVAC prerequisite checkout work lists specified in the paragraph PRE-FIELD TAB ENGINEERING REPORT are completed, submitted, and approved. Ensure that the TAB Agency gets a copy of the approved prerequisite HVAC work checklist.
  - (3) HVAC system filters are clean for TAB field work.
- i. Advance notice: Furnish to the Contracting Officer with advance written notice for the commencement of the commencement of the TAB field work.
- j. Insulation work: Ensure that openings in duct and machinery insulation coverings for TAB test ports are marked, closed and sealed.

1.5.4.2 TAB Agency

Provide the services of a TAB team which complies with the requirements of the paragraph INDEPENDENT TAB AGENCY PERSONNEL QUALIFICATIONS. The work to be performed by the TAB agency is limited to testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC air and water systems to satisfy the requirements of

this specification section.

#### 1.5.4.3 TAB Team Supervisor

- a. Overall management: Supervise and manage the overall TAB team work effort, including preliminary and technical TAB procedures and TAB team field work.
- b. Pre-TAB meeting: Attend meeting with Contractor.
- c. Design review report: Review project specifications and accompanying drawings to verify that the air systems and water systems are designed in such a way that the TAB engineer can accomplish the work in compliance with the requirements of this section. Verify the presence and location of permanently installed test ports and other devices needed, including gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow control devices, circuit setters, balancing valves, and manual volume dampers.
- d. Support required: Specify the technical support personnel required from the Contractor other than the TAB agency; such as factory representatives for temperature controls or for complex equipment. Inform the Contractor in writing of the support personnel needed and when they are needed. Furnish the notice as soon as the need is anticipated, either with the design review report, or the pre-field engineering report, the during the TAB field work.
- e. Pre-field engineering report: Utilizing the following HVAC-related documentation; contract drawings and specifications, approved submittal data for equipment, up-to-date revisions and change orders; prepare this report.
- f. Prerequisite HVAC work checklist: Ensure the Contractor gets a copy of this checklist at the same time as the pre-field engineering report is submitted.
- g. Certified TAB report: Certify the TAB report. This certification includes the following work:
  - (1) Review: Review the TAB field data report. From this field report, prepare the certified TAB report.
  - (2) Verification: Verify adherence, by the TAB field team, to the TAB plan prescribed by the pre-field engineering report and verify adherence to the procedures specified in this section.
- h. Design/Construction deficiencies: Within 3 working days after the TAB Agency has encountered any design or construction deficiencies, the TAB Supervisor must submit written notification directly to the Contracting Officer, with a separate copy to the Contractor, of all such deficiencies. Provide in this submittal a complete explanation, including supporting documentation, detailing deficiencies. Where deficiencies are encountered that are believed to adversely impact successful completion of TAB, the TAB Agency must issue notice and request direction in the notification submittal.
- i. TAB Field Check: The TAB team supervisor must attend and supervise TAB field check.

#### 1.5.4.4 TAB Team Field Leader

- a. Field manager: Manage, in the field, the accomplishment of the work specified in Part 3, EXECUTION.
- b. Full time: Be present at the contract site when TAB field work is being performed by the TAB team; ensure day-to-day TAB team work accomplishments are in compliance with this section.
- c. Prerequisite HVAC work: Do not bring the TAB team to the contract site until a copy of the prerequisite HVAC Checklist, with all work items certified by the Contractor to be working as designed, reaches the office of the TAB Agency.

#### 1.5.5 Test Reports

##### 1.5.5.1 Certified TAB Reports

Submit: **TAB Report** in the following manner:

- a. Report format: Submit the completed pre-field data forms approved in the pre-field TAB Engineering Report completed by TAB field team, reviewed and certified by the TAB supervisor. Bind the report with a waterproof front and back cover. Include a table of contents identifying by page number the location of each report. Report forms and report data must be typewritten. Handwritten report forms or report data are not acceptable.
- b. Temperatures: On each TAB report form reporting TAB work accomplished on HVAC thermal energy transfer equipment, include the indoor and outdoor dry bulb temperature range and indoor and outdoor wet bulb temperature range within which the TAB data was recorded. Include in the TAB report continuous time versus temperature recording data of wet and dry bulb temperatures for the rooms, or zones, as designated in the following list:
  - (1) Measure and compile data on a continuous basis for the period in which TAB work affecting those rooms is being done.
  - (2) Measure and record data only after the HVAC systems installations are complete, the systems fully balanced and the HVAC systems controls operating in fully automatic mode.
  - (3) Data may be compiled using direct digital controls trend logging where available. Otherwise, temporarily install calibrated time versus temperature/humidity recorders for this purpose. The HVAC systems and controls must be fully operational a minimum of 24 hours in advance of commencing data compilation. Include the specified data in the TAB Report.
- f. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the tab data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date.

Instrumentation, used for taking wet bulb temperature readings must provide accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent at the measured face velocities. Submit instrument manufacturer's literature to document

instrument accuracy performance is in compliance with that specified.

- g. Certification: Include the typed name of the TAB supervisor and the dated signature of the TAB supervisor.
- h. Performance Curves: The TAB Supervisor must include, in the TAB Reports, factory pump curves and fan curves for pumps and fans TAB'd on the job.
- i. Calibration Curves: The TAB Supervisor must include, in the TAB Reports, a factory calibration curve for installed flow control balancing valves, flow venturi's and flow orifices TAB'd on the job.

## 1.6 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

### 1.6.1 TAB Services to Obtain Existing Conditions

Conduct TAB of the indicated existing systems and equipment and submit the specified TAB reports for approval. Conduct this TAB work in accordance with the requirements of this section.

## 1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

### 1.7.1 TAB Submittal and Work Schedule

Submit this schedule, and TAB Schematic Drawings, adapted for this particular contract, to the Contracting Officer (CO) for review and approval. Include with the submittal the planned calendar dates for each submittal or work item. Resubmit an updated version for CO approval every 90 calendar days. Compliance with the following schedule is the Contractor's responsibility.

Qualify TAB Personnel: Within 45 calendar days after date of contract award, submit TAB agency and personnel qualifications.

Pre-TAB Meeting: Within 30 calendar days after the date of approval of the TAB agency and personnel, meet with the COTR.

Design Review Report: Within 60 calendar days after the date of the TAB agency personnel qualifications approval, submit design review report.

Pre-Field TAB Engineering Report: Within 30 calendar days after approval of the TAB agency Personnel Qualifications, submit the Pre-Field TAB Engineering Report.

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List and Advanced Notice For TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 115 calendar days prior to CCD, submit prerequisite HVAC work check out list certified as complete, and submit advance notice of commencement of TAB field work.

TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 90 calendar days prior to CCD, accomplish TAB field work.

Submit TAB Report: Within 15 calendar days after completion of TAB field work, submit TAB report.

TAB Field Check: 30 calendar days after TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct field check.

Complete TAB Work: Prior to CCD, complete all TAB work .

#### 1.7.1.1 TAB Design Review Report

Submit typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the duct leakage testing work and the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. State that no deficiencies are evident if that is the case.

#### 1.7.1.2 TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report

Submit report containing the following information:

a. Step-by-step TAB procedure:

- (1) Strategy: Describe the method of approach to the TAB field work from start to finish. Include in this description a complete methodology for accomplishing TAB field work session.
- (2) Air System Diagrams: Use the contract drawings and duct fabrication drawings if available to provide air system diagrams in the report showing the location of all terminal outlet supply, return, exhaust and transfer registers, grilles and diffusers. Use a key numbering system on the diagrams which identifies each outlet contained in the outlet airflow report sheets. Show intended locations of all traverses and static pressure readings.
- (3) Procedural steps: Delineate fully the intended procedural steps to be taken by the TAB field team to accomplish the required TAB work of each air distribution system and each water distribution system. Include intended procedural steps for TAB work for subsystems and system components.

b. Pre-field data: Submit AABC or NEBB or **SMACNA 1780** data report forms with the following pre-field information filled in:

- (1) Design data obtained from system drawings, specifications, and approved submittals.
- (2) Notations detailing additional data to be obtained from the contract site by the TAB field team.
- (3) Designate the actual data to be measured in the TAB field work.
- (4) Provide a list of the types of instruments, and the measuring range of each, which are anticipated to be used for measuring in the TAB field work. By means of a keying scheme, specify on each

TAB data report form submitted, which instruments will be used for measuring each item of TAB data. If the selection of which instrument to use, is to be made in the field, specify from which instruments the choice will be made. Place the instrument key number in the blank space where the measured data would be entered.

- c. Prerequisite HVAC work checkout list: Provide a list of inspections and work items which are to be completed by the Contractor. This list must be acted upon and completed by the Contractor and then submitted and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to the TAB team coming to the contract site.

At a minimum, a list of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the **NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS**, Section III, "Preliminary TAB Procedures" under paragraphs titled, "Air Distribution System Inspection" and "Hydronic Distribution System Inspection" must be provided for each separate system to be TAB'd.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

Furnish workmanship and performance warranty for the TAB system work performed for a period not less than 1 years from the date of Government acceptance of the work; issued directly to the Government. Include provisions that if within the warranty period the system shows evidence of major performance deterioration, or is significantly out of tolerance, resulting from defective TAB workmanship, the corrective repair or replacement of the defective materials and correction of the defective workmanship is the responsibility of the TAB firm. Perform corrective action that becomes necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while system TAB is under warranty 7 days after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within the specified period of time constitutes grounds for having the corrective action and repairs performed by others and the cost billed to the TAB firm. The Contractor must also provide a 1 year contractor installation warranty.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS

Comply with requirements of this section.

### 3.2 TAB PROCEDURES

#### 3.2.1 TAB Field Work

Test, adjust, and balance the HVAC systems until measured flow rates (air and water flow) are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents.

That is, comply with the the requirements of **AABC MN-1** or **SMACNA 1780** (TABB) and **SMACNA 1858** (TABB), except as supplemented and modified by this section.

Provide instruments and consumables required to accomplish the TAB work.

Calibrate and maintain instruments in accordance with manufacturer's written procedures.

Test, adjust, and balance the HVAC systems until measured flow rates (air and water flow) are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. Conduct TAB work, including measurement accuracy, and sound measurement work in conformance with the AABC MN-1 and AABC MN-4, or NEBB TABES and NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1780 (used by TABB) and SMACNA 1858 sound measurement procedures, except as supplemented and modified by this section.

### 3.2.2 Preliminary Procedures

Use the approved pre-field engineering report as instructions and procedures for accomplishing TAB field work. TAB engineer is to locate, in the field, test ports required for testing. It is the responsibility of the sheet metal contractor to provide and install test ports as required by the TAB engineer.

### 3.2.3 TAB Air Distribution Systems

#### 3.2.3.1 Exhaust Fans

Exhaust fan systems including fans for exhaust air.

### 3.2.4 TAB Work on Performance Tests Without Seasonal Limitations

#### 3.2.4.1 Performance Tests

In addition to the TAB proportionate balancing work on the air distribution systems and the water distribution systems, accomplish TAB work on the HVAC systems which directly transfer thermal energy.

#### 3.2.4.2 Ambient Temperatures

On each tab report form used for recording data, record the outdoor and indoor ambient dry bulb temperature range and the outdoor and indoor ambient wet bulb temperature range within which the report form's data was recorded. Record these temperatures at beginning and at the end of data taking.

### 3.2.5 TAB Work on Performance Tests With Seasonal Limitations

#### 3.2.5.1 Performance Tests

Accomplish proportionate balancing TAB work on the air distribution systems and water distribution systems, in other words, accomplish adjusting and balancing of the air flows and water flows, any time during the duration of this contract, subject to the limitations specified elsewhere in this section. However, accomplish, within the following seasonal limitations, TAB work on HVAC systems which directly transfer thermal energy.

#### 3.2.5.2 Season Of Maximum Load

Visit the contract site for at least two TAB work sessions for TAB field measurements. Visit the contract site during the season of maximum heating load and visit the contract site during the season of maximum cooling load, the goal being to TAB the operational performance of the

under their respective maximum outdoor environment-caused loading. During the seasonal limitations, TAB the operational performance of the .

#### 3.2.5.3 Ambient Temperatures

On each tab report form used for recording data, record the outdoor and indoor ambient dry bulb temperature range and the outdoor and indoor ambient wet bulb temperature range within which the report form's data was recorded. Record these temperatures at beginning and at the end of data taking.

#### 3.2.6 Workmanship

Conduct TAB work on the HVAC systems until measured flow rates are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. This TAB work includes adjustment of balancing valves, balancing dampers, and sheaves. Further, this TAB work includes changing out fan sheaves and pump impellers if required to obtain air and water flow rates specified or indicated. If, with these adjustments and equipment changes, the specified or indicated design flow rates cannot be attained, contact the Contracting Officer for direction.

#### 3.2.7 Deficiencies

Strive to meet the intent of this section to maximize the performance of the equipment as designed and installed. However, if deficiencies in equipment design or installation prevent TAB work from being accomplished within the range of design values specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP, provide written notice as soon as possible to the Contractor and the Contracting Officer describing the deficiency and recommended correction.

Responsibility for correction of installation deficiencies is the Contractor's. If a deficiency is in equipment design, call the TAB team supervisor for technical assistance. Responsibility for reporting design deficiencies to Contractor is the TAB team supervisor's.

#### 3.2.8 TAB Reports

After completion of the TAB field work, prepare the TAB field data for TAB supervisor's review and certification, using the reporting forms approved in the pre-field engineering report. Data required by those approved data report forms is to be furnished by the TAB team. Except as approved otherwise in writing by the Contracting Officer, the TAB work and thereby the TAB report is considered incomplete until the TAB work is accomplished to within the accuracy range specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP.

After completion of the TAB work, prepare a pre-final TAB report using the reporting forms approved in the pre-field engineering report. Data required by those approved data report forms is to be furnished by the TAB team. Except as approved otherwise in writing by the Contracting Officer, the TAB work and the TAB report is considered incomplete until the TAB work is accomplished to within the accuracy range specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP of this section.

Prepare the report neatly and legibly; the pre-final TAB report is the final TAB report minus the TAB supervisor's review and certification. Obtain, at the contract site, the TAB supervisor's review and certification of the TAB report.



Verbally notify the COTR that the field check of the TAB report data can commence; give this verbal notice 48 hours in advance of field check commencement. Do not schedule field check of the TAB report until the specified workmanship requirements have been met or written approval of the deviations from the requirements have been received from the Contracting Officer.

### 3.2.9 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

#### 3.2.9.1 TAB Field Acceptance Testing

During the field acceptance testing, verify, in the presence of the COTR, random selections of data (water, air quantities, air motion, ) recorded in the TAB Report. Points and areas for field acceptance testing are to be selected by the COTR. Measurement and test procedures are the same as approved for TAB work for the TAB Report.

Field acceptance testing includes verification of TAB Report data recorded for the following equipment groups:

Group 1: All chillers, boilers, return fans, computer room units, and air handling units (rooftop and central stations).

Group 2: 25 percent of the VAV terminal boxes and associated diffusers and registers.

Group 3: 25 percent of the supply diffusers, registers, grilles associated with constant volume air handling units.

Group 4: 25 percent of the return grilles, return registers, exhaust grilles and exhaust registers.

Group 5: 25 percent of the supply fans, exhaust fans, and pumps.

Further, if any data on the TAB Report for Groups 2 through 5 is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, additional group data verification is required in the presence of the COTR. Verify TAB Report data for one additional piece of equipment in that group. Continue this additional group data verification until out-of-tolerance data ceases to be found.

#### 3.2.9.2 Additional COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

If any of the acceptance testing measurements for a given equipment group is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, terminate data verification for all affected data for that group. The affected data for the given group will be disapproved. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised TAB Report. Reschedule acceptance testing of the revised report data with the COTR.

Further, if any data on the TAB Report for a given field acceptance test group is out-of-tolerance, then field test data for one additional field test group as specified herein. Continue this increase field test work until out-of-tolerance data ceases to be found. This additional field testing is up and above the original 25 percent of the of reported data entries to be field tested.

If there are no more similar field test groups from which to choose, additional field testing from another, but different, type of field

testing group must be tested.

#### 3.2.9.3 Prerequisite for Approval

Compliance with the field acceptance testing requirements of this section is a prerequisite for the final Contracting Officer approval of the TAB Report submitted.

#### 3.3 MARKING OF SETTINGS

Upon the final TAB work approval, permanently mark the settings of HVAC adjustment devices including valves, gauges, splitters, and dampers so that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at any time. Provide permanent markings clearly indicating the settings on the adjustment devices which result in the data reported on the submitted TAB report.

#### 3.4 MARKING OF TEST PORTS

The TAB team is to permanently and legibly mark and identify the location points of the duct test ports. If the ducts have exterior insulation, make these markings on the exterior side of the duct insulation. Show the location of test ports on the as-built mechanical drawings with dimensions given where the test port is covered by exterior insulation.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 07 00

THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only. At the discretion of the Government, the manufacturer of any material supplied will be required to furnish test reports pertaining to any of the tests necessary to assure compliance with the standard or standards referenced in this specification.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| ASHRAE 90.1 - SI | (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings<br>Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings |
| ASHRAE 90.2      | (2020) Energy-Efficient Design of Low-Rise<br>Residential Buildings           |

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| ASTM A167       | (2011) Standard Specification for<br>Stainless and Heat-Resisting<br>Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and<br>Strip            |
| ASTM A580/A580M | (2018) Standard Specification for<br>Stainless Steel Wire  |
| ASTM B209       | (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum<br>and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate   |
| ASTM C534/C534M | (2020a) Standard Specification for<br>Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular<br>Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular<br>Form |
| ASTM C547       | (2019) Standard Specification for Mineral<br>Fiber Pipe Insulation   |
| ASTM C647       | (2008; R 2013) Properties and Tests of<br>Mastics and Coating Finishes for Thermal<br>Insulation                                 |
| ASTM C755       | (2019b) Standard Practice for Selection of<br>Water Vapor Retarders for Thermal<br>Insulation                                    |
| ASTM C795       | (2008; R 2018) Standard Specification for<br>Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with<br>Austenitic Stainless Steel            |

ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C921	(2010) Standard Practice for Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1136	(2021) Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1710	(2011) Standard Guide for Installation of Flexible Closed Cell Preformed Insulation in Tube and Sheet Form
ASTM D882	(2012) Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting
ASTM D2863	(2019) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)
ASTM D5590	(2000; R 2010; E 2012) Standard Test Method for Determining the Resistance of Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar Plate Assay
ASTM E84	(2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
ASTM E2231	(2019) Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics
FM GLOBAL (FM)	
FM APP GUIDE	(updated on-line) Approval Guide <a href="http://www.approvalguide.com/">http://www.approvalguide.com/</a>
GREEN SEAL (GS)	
GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use
INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)	
ISO 2758	(2014) Paper - Determination of Bursting Strength

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS  
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58 (2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports -  
Materials, Design and Manufacture,  
Selection, Application, and Installation

MIDWEST INSULATION CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (MICA)

MICA Insulation Stds (8th Ed) National Commercial & Industrial  
Insulation Standards

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS)Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-A-3316 (1987; Rev C; Am 2 1990) Adhesives,  
Fire-Resistant, Thermal Insulation

MIL-A-24179 (1969; Rev A; Am 2 1980; Notice 1 1987;  
Notice 2 2020) Adhesive, Flexible  
Unicellular-Plastic Thermal Insulation

MIL-PRF-19565 (1988; Rev C) Coating Compounds, Thermal  
Insulation, Fire- and Water-Resistant,  
Vapor-Barrier

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 94 (2013; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic  
Materials for Parts in Devices and  
Appliances

UL 723 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for  
Surface Burning Characteristics of  
Building Materials

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program  
For Chemical Emissions For Building  
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

## 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

### 1.2.1 General

Provide field-applied insulation and accessories on mechanical systems as specified herein; factory-applied insulation is specified under the piping, duct or equipment to be insulated. Field applied insulation materials required for use on Government-furnished items as listed in the SPECIAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

Submit the three SD types, SD-02 Shop Drawings, SD-03 Product Data, and SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions at the same time for each system.

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

MICA Plates; G, RO

Pipe Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories

Equipment Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories

Recycled content for insulation materials; S

#### SD-03 Product Data

Pipe Insulation Systems; G, RO

Equipment Insulation Systems; G, RO

#### SD-04 Samples

Thermal Insulation; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Indoor air quality for adhesives; S

#### SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Pipe Insulation Systems; G, RO

Equipment Insulation Systems; G, RO

### 1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

#### 1.4.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product

certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### 1.5.1 Installer Qualification

Qualified installers shall have successfully completed three or more similar type jobs within the last 5 years.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Materials shall be delivered in the manufacturer's unopened containers. Materials delivered and placed in storage shall be provided with protection from weather, humidity, dirt, dust and other contaminants. The Contracting Officer may reject insulation material and supplies that become dirty, dusty, wet, or contaminated by some other means. Packages or standard containers of insulation, jacket material, cements, adhesives, and coatings delivered for use, and samples required for approval shall have manufacturer's stamp or label attached giving the name of the manufacturer and brand, and a description of the material, date codes, and approximate shelf life (if applicable). Insulation packages and containers shall be asbestos free.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide materials which are the standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Submit a complete list of materials, including manufacturer's descriptive technical literature, performance data, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. The product number, k-value, thickness and furnished accessories including adhesives, sealants and jackets for each mechanical system requiring insulation shall be included. The product data must be copyrighted, have an identifying or publication number, and shall have been published prior to the issuance date of this solicitation. Materials furnished under this section shall be submitted together in a booklet and in conjunction with the MICA plates booklet (SD-02). Annotate the product data to indicate which MICA plate is applicable.

#### 2.1.1 Insulation System

Provide insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA National Insulation Standards plates as supplemented by this specification. Provide field-applied insulation for heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems and piping systems that are located within, on, under, and adjacent to buildings; and for plumbing systems. Provide CFC and HCFC free insulation.

#### 2.1.2 Surface Burning Characteristics

Unless otherwise specified, insulation must have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flame spread, and smoke developed indexes, shall be determined by ASTM E84 or UL 723. Test insulation in

the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Prepare and mount test specimens according to [ASTM E2231](#).

## 2.2 MATERIALS

Provide insulation that meets or exceeds the requirements of [ASHRAE 90.1 - SI](#). Insulation exterior shall be cleanable, grease resistant, non-flaking and non-peeling. Materials shall be compatible and shall not contribute to corrosion, soften, or otherwise attack surfaces to which applied in either wet or dry state. Materials to be used on stainless steel surfaces shall meet [ASTM C795](#) requirements. Calcium silicate shall not be used on chilled or cold water systems. Materials shall be asbestos free. Provide product recognized under [UL 94](#) (if containing plastic) and listed in [FM APP GUIDE](#).

### 2.2.1 Adhesives

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#) (HVAC duct sealants must meet limit requirements of "Other" category within [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#) sealants table). Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for adhesives](#).

#### 2.2.1.1 Lagging Adhesive

Lagging is the material used for [thermal insulation](#), especially around a cylindrical object. This may include the insulation as well as the cloth/material covering the insulation. To resist mold/mildew, lagging adhesive shall meet [ASTM D5590](#) with 0 growth rating. Lagging adhesives shall be nonflammable and fire-resistant and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Adhesive shall be [MIL-A-3316](#), Class 1, pigmented white and be suitable for bonding fibrous glass cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for bonding cotton brattice cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for sealing edges of and bonding glass tape to joints of fibrous glass board; for bonding lagging cloth to thermal insulation; or Class 2 for attaching fibrous glass insulation to metal surfaces. Lagging adhesives shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for pipe and duct insulation.

#### 2.2.1.2 Contact Adhesive

Adhesives may be any of, but not limited to, the neoprene based, rubber based, or elastomeric type that have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). The adhesive shall not adversely affect, initially or in service, the insulation to which it is applied, nor shall it cause any corrosive effect on metal to which it is applied. Any solvent dispersing medium or volatile component of the adhesive shall have no objectionable odor and shall not contain any benzene or carbon tetrachloride. The dried adhesive shall not emit nauseous, irritating, or toxic volatile matters or



aerosols when the adhesive is heated to any temperature up to 212 degrees F. The dried adhesive shall be nonflammable and fire resistant. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179, Type II, Class I. Provide product listed in FM APP GUIDE.

#### 2.2.2 Caulking

ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use A.

#### 2.2.3 Corner Angles

Nominal 0.016 inch aluminum 1 by 1 inch with factory applied kraft backing. Aluminum shall be ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3105, or 5005.

#### 2.2.4 Fittings

Fabricated Fittings are the prefabricated fittings for flexible elastomeric pipe insulation systems in accordance with ASTM C1710. Together with the flexible elastomeric tubes, they provide complete system integrity for retarding heat gain and controlling condensation drip from chilled-water and refrigeration systems. Flexible elastomeric, fabricated fittings provide thermal protection (0.25 k) and condensation resistance (0.05 Water Vapor Transmission factor). For satisfactory performance, properly installed protective vapor retarder/barriers and vapor stops shall be used on high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications to reduce movement of moisture through or around the insulation to the colder interior surface.

#### 2.2.5 Fibrous Glass Cloth and Glass Tape

Fibrous glass cloth, with 20X20 maximum mesh size, and glass tape shall have maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Tape shall be 4 inch wide rolls. Class 3 tape shall be 4.5 ounces/square yard. Elastomeric Foam Tape: Black vapor-retarder foam tape with acrylic adhesive containing an anti-microbial additive.

#### 2.2.6 Staples

Outward clinching type monel ASTM A167, Type 304 or 316 stainless steel.

#### 2.2.7 Jackets

##### 2.2.7.1 Aluminum Jackets

Aluminum jackets shall be corrugated, embossed or smooth sheet, 0.016 inch nominal thickness; ASTM B209, Temper H14, Temper H16, Alloy 3003, 5005, or 3105. Corrugated aluminum jacket shall not be used outdoors. Aluminum jacket securing bands shall be Type 304 stainless steel, 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide for pipe under 12 inch diameter and 3/4 inch wide for pipe over 12 inch and larger diameter. Aluminum jacket circumferential seam bands shall be 2 by 0.016 inch aluminum matching jacket material. Bands for insulation below ground shall be 3/4 by 0.020 inch thick stainless steel, or fiberglass reinforced tape. The jacket may, at the option of the Contractor, be provided with a factory fabricated Pittsburgh or "Z" type longitudinal joint. When the "Z" joint is used, the bands at the circumferential joints shall be designed by the manufacturer to seal the joints and hold the jacket in place.

#### 2.2.7.2 Vapor Barrier/Weatherproofing Jacket

Vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket shall be laminated self-adhesive, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or greater than 8 ply (minimum 2.9 mils adhesive); with 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, using the water transmission rate test method; heavy duty, white or natural; and UV resistant. Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied, UV Jacket made with a cold weather acrylic adhesive. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and excellent Water Vapor Transmission (WVT) rate.

#### 2.2.7.3 Vapor Barrier/Vapor Retarder

Apply the following criteria to determine which system is required.

- a. On ducts, piping and equipment operating below 80 degrees F or located outside shall be equipped with a vapor barrier.
- b. Ducts, pipes and equipment that are located inside and that always operate above 80 degrees F shall be installed with a vapor retarder where required as stated in paragraph VAPOR RETARDER REQUIRED.

#### 2.2.8 Vapor Retarder Required

ASTM C921, Type I, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork, where a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Minimum tensile strength, 35 pounds/inch width. ASTM C921, Type II, minimum puncture resistance 25 Beach units, tensile strength minimum 20 pounds/inch width. Jackets used on insulation exposed in finished areas shall have white finish suitable for painting without sizing. Based on the application, insulation materials that require manufacturer or fabricator applied pipe insulation jackets are cellular glass, when all joints are sealed with a vapor barrier mastic, and mineral fiber. All non-metallic jackets shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible elastomerics require (in addition to vapor barrier skin) vapor retarder jacketing for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

##### 2.2.8.1 White Vapor Retarder All Service Jacket (ASJ)

ASJ is for use on hot/cold pipes, ducts, or equipment indoors or outdoors if covered by a suitable protective jacket. The product shall meet all physical property and performance requirements of ASTM C1136, Type I, except the burst strength shall be a minimum of 85 psi. ASTM D2863 Limited Oxygen Index (LOI) shall be a minimum of 31.

In addition, neither the outer exposed surface nor the inner-most surface contacting the insulation shall be paper or other moisture-sensitive material. The outer exposed surface shall be white and have an emittance of not less than 0.80. The outer exposed surface shall be paintable.

##### 2.2.8.2 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier Mastic Coatings

###### 2.2.8.2.1 Vapor Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be self adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and

embossed white jacket for use on hot/cold pipes. Permeability shall be less than 0.02 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E96/E96M](#). Products shall meet [UL 723](#) or [ASTM E84](#) flame and smoke requirements and shall be UV resistant.

#### 2.2.8.2.2 Vapor Retarder

The vapor retarder coating shall be fire and water resistant and appropriately selected for either outdoor or indoor service. Color shall be white. The water vapor permeance of the compound shall be in accordance with [ASTM C755](#), Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions. The coating shall be nonflammable, fire resistant type. To resist mold/mildew, coating shall meet [ASTM D5590](#) with 0 growth rating. Coating shall meet [MIL-PRF-19565](#) Type II (if selected for indoor service) and be Qualified Products Database listed. All other application and service properties shall be determined pursuant to [ASTM C647](#).

#### 2.2.8.3 Laminated Film Vapor Retarder

[ASTM C1136](#), Type I, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork; where Type II, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Vapor retarder shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied UV Jacket. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and an excellent WVT rate.

#### 2.2.8.4 Polyvinylidene Chloride (PVDC) Film Vapor Retarder

The PVDC film vapor retarder shall have a maximum moisture vapor transmission of 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance of 150 Beach units, a minimum tensile strength in any direction of [30 lb/inch](#) when tested in accordance with [ASTM D882](#), and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

#### 2.2.8.5 Polyvinylidene Chloride Vapor Retarder Adhesive Tape

Requirements must meet the same as specified for Laminated Film Vapor Retarder above.

#### 2.2.8.6 Vapor Barrier/Weather Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be greater than 3 ply self adhesive laminate -white vapor barrier jacket- superior performance (less than 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with [ASTM E96/E96M](#)). Vapor barrier shall meet [UL 723](#) or [ASTM E84](#) 25 flame and 50 smoke requirements; and UV resistant. Minimum burst strength [185 psi](#) in accordance with [ISO 2758](#). Tensile strength [68 lb/inch](#) width (PSTC-1000). Tape shall be as specified for laminated film vapor barrier above.

#### 2.2.9 Vapor Retarder Not Required

[ASTM C921](#), Type II, Class D, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except ductwork, where Type IV, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.10, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Jacket shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a

maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

#### 2.2.10 Wire

Soft annealed ASTM A580/A580M Type 302, 304 or 316 stainless steel, 16 or 18 gauge.

#### 2.2.11 Insulation Bands

Insulation bands shall be 1/2 inch wide; 26 gauge stainless steel.

#### 2.2.12 Sealants

Sealants shall be chosen from the butyl polymer type, the styrene-butadiene rubber type, or the butyl type of sealants. Sealants shall have a maximum permance of 0.02 perms based on Procedure B for ASTM E96/E96M, and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

### 2.3 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS

Conform insulation materials to Table 1 and minimum insulation thickness as listed in Table 2 and meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - SI. Limit pipe insulation materials to those listed herein and meeting the following requirements:

#### 2.3.1 Recycled Materials

Provide insulation materials containing the following minimum percentage of recycled material content by weight:

Fiberglass: 20 percent glass cullet  
Rigid Foam: 9 percent recovered material

Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for insulation materials.

#### 2.3.2 Aboveground Cold Pipeline ( -30 to 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications, shall be as follows:

##### 2.3.2.1 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Grade 1, Type I or II. Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials. Type II, Grade 1, for sheet materials. Type I and II shall have vapor retarder/vapor barrier skin on one or both sides of the insulation, and require an additional exterior vapor retarder covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

##### 2.3.2.2 Mineral Fiber Insulation with Integral Wicking Material (MFIWM)

ASTM C547. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Do not use in applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.

## 2.4 DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS

### 2.4.1 Factory Applied Insulation

Provide factory-applied ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1, Type II, flexible elastomeric closed cell insulation according to manufacturer's recommendations for insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant vapor barrier, with identification of installed thermal resistance (R) value and out-of-package R value.

#### 2.4.1.1 Blanket Insulation

Calculate minimum thickness in accordance with ASHRAE 90.2.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION - GENERAL

Insulation shall only be applied to unheated and uncooled piping and equipment. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be compressed at joists, studs, columns, ducts, hangers, etc. The insulation shall not pull apart after a one hour period; any insulation found to pull apart after one hour, shall be replaced.

#### 3.1.1 Installation

Except as otherwise specified, material shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Insulation materials shall not be applied until tests specified in other sections of this specification are completed. Material such as rust, scale, dirt and moisture shall be removed from surfaces to receive insulation. Insulation shall be kept clean and dry. Insulation shall not be removed from its shipping containers until the day it is ready to use and shall be returned to like containers or equally protected from dirt and moisture at the end of each workday. Insulation that becomes dirty shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to use. If insulation becomes wet or if cleaning does not restore the surfaces to like new condition, the insulation will be rejected, and shall be immediately removed from the jobsite. Joints shall be staggered on multi layer insulation. Mineral fiber thermal insulating cement shall be mixed with demineralized water when used on stainless steel surfaces. Insulation, jacketing and accessories shall be installed in accordance with MICA Insulation Stds plates except where modified herein or on the drawings.

#### 3.1.2 Painting and Finishing

Painting shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

#### 3.1.3 Installation of Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Install flexible elastomeric cellular insulation with seams and joints sealed with rubberized contact adhesive. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be used on surfaces greater than 220 degrees F. Stagger seams when applying multiple layers of insulation. Protect insulation exposed to weather and not shown to have vapor barrier weatherproof jacketing with two coats of UV resistant finish or PVC or metal jacketing as recommended by the manufacturer after the adhesive is dry and cured.

### 3.1.3.1 Adhesive Application

Apply a brush coating of adhesive to both butt ends to be joined and to both slit surfaces to be sealed. Allow the adhesive to set until dry to touch but tacky under slight pressure before joining the surfaces. Insulation seals at seams and joints shall not be capable of being pulled apart one hour after application. Insulation that can be pulled apart one hour after installation shall be replaced.

### 3.1.3.2 Adhesive Safety Precautions

Use natural cross-ventilation, local (mechanical) pickup, and/or general area (mechanical) ventilation to prevent an accumulation of solvent vapors, keeping in mind the ventilation pattern must remove any heavier-than-air solvent vapors from lower levels of the workspaces. Gloves and spectacle-type safety glasses are recommended in accordance with safe installation practices.

### 3.1.4 Pipes/Ducts/Equipment That Require Insulation

Insulation is required on all pipes, ducts, or equipment, except for omitted items as specified.

## 3.2 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Install pipe insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA Insulation Std's plates as supplemented by the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

### 3.2.1 Pipe Insulation

#### 3.2.1.1 General

Pipe insulation shall be installed on aboveground hot and cold pipeline systems as specified below to form a continuous thermal retarder/barrier, including straight runs, fittings and appurtenances unless specified otherwise. Installation shall be with full length units of insulation and using a single cut piece to complete a run. Cut pieces or scraps abutting each other shall not be used. Pipe insulation shall be omitted on the following:

#### 3.2.1.2 Pipes Passing Through Walls, Roofs, and Floors

Pipe insulation shall be continuous through the sleeve.

Provide an aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 ply standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed with factory applied moisture retarder over the insulation wherever penetrations require sealing.

##### 3.2.1.2.1 Penetrate Interior Walls

The aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing - self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed shall extend 2 inches beyond either side of the wall and shall be secured on each end with a band.

#### 3.2.1.2.2 Penetrating Floors

Extend the aluminum jacket from a point below the backup material to a point 10 inches above the floor with one band at the floor and one not more than 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.

#### 3.2.1.2.3 Penetrating Waterproofed Floors

Extend the aluminum jacket from below the backup material to a point 2 inches above the flashing with a band 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.

#### 3.2.1.2.4 Penetrating Exterior Walls

Continue the aluminum jacket required for pipe exposed to weather through the sleeve to a point 2 inches beyond the interior surface of the wall.

#### 3.2.1.3 Pipes Passing Through Hangers

Insulation, whether hot or cold application, shall be continuous through hangers. All horizontal pipes 2 inches and smaller shall be supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield to protect the insulation in accordance with MSS SP-58. Whenever insulation shows signs of being compressed, or when the insulation or jacket shows visible signs of distortion at or near the support shield, insulation inserts as specified below for piping larger than 2 inches shall be installed, or factory insulated hangers (designed with a load bearing core) can be used.

##### 3.2.1.3.1 Vertical Pipes

Supported with either Type 8 or Type 42 riser clamps with the addition of two Type 40 protection shields in accordance with MSS SP-58 covering the 360-degree arc of the insulation. An insulation insert of cellular glass or calcium silicate shall be installed between each shield and the pipe. The insert shall cover the 360-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the hanger from crushing the insulation, as an option instead of installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert. The vertical weight of the pipe shall be supported with hangers located in a horizontal section of the pipe. When the pipe riser is longer than 30 feet, the weight of the pipe shall be additionally supported with hangers in the vertical run of the pipe that are directly clamped to the pipe, penetrating the pipe insulation. These hangers shall be insulated and the insulation jacket sealed as indicated herein for anchors in a similar service.

##### 3.2.1.3.2 Inserts

Covered with a jacket material of the same appearance and quality as the adjoining pipe insulation jacket, overlap the adjoining pipe jacket 1-1/2 inches, and seal as required for the pipe jacket. The jacket material used to cover inserts in flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall conform to ASTM C1136, Type 1, and is allowed to be of a different material than the adjoining insulation material.

### 3.2.1.4 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Flexible elastomeric cellular pipe insulation shall be tubular form for pipe sizes 6 inches and less. Seams shall be staggered when applying multiple layers of insulation. Sweat fittings shall be insulated with miter-cut pieces the same size as on adjacent piping. Screwed fittings shall be insulated with sleeved fitting covers fabricated from miter-cut pieces and shall be overlapped and sealed to the adjacent pipe insulation. Type II requires an additional exterior vapor retarder/barrier covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

### 3.2.1.5 Pipe Insulation Material and Thickness

Pipe insulation materials must be as listed in Table 1 and must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.2.

TABLE 1					
Insulation Material for Piping					
Service					
	Material	Specification	Type	Class	VR/VB Req'd
Refrigerant Suction Piping (35 degrees F nominal)					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Note: VR/VB = Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier					

TABLE 2						
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch)						
Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.						
Service						
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)				
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8
	Mineral Fiber with Wicking Material	1	1.5	1.5	2	2
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A



TABLE 2						
<p>Piping Insulation Thickness (inch)</p> <p>Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.</p>						
Service						
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)				
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8
Refrigerant Suction Piping (35 degrees F nominal)						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A

### 3.2.2 Aboveground Cold Pipelines

The following cold pipelines for minus 30 to plus 60 degrees F, shall be insulated in accordance with Table 2 except those piping listed in subparagraph Pipe Insulation in PART 3 as to be omitted. This includes but is not limited to the following:

- a. Refrigerant suction lines.
- b. Air conditioner condensate drains.

#### 3.2.2.1 Insulation Material and Thickness

Insulation thickness for cold pipelines shall be determined using Table 2.

#### 3.2.2.2 Factory or Field applied Jacket

Insulation shall be covered with a factory applied vapor retarder jacket/vapor barrier or field applied seal welded PVC jacket or greater than 3 ply laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed for use with Mineral Fiber . Insulation inside the building, to be protected with an aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, Embossed Silver, White & Black, shall have the insulation and vapor retarder jacket installed as specified herein. The aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, White & Black, shall be installed as specified for piping exposed to weather, except sealing of the laps of the aluminum jacket is not required.

### 3.2.2.3 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

- a. Pipe insulation shall be tightly butted to the insulation of the fittings and accessories. The butted joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant and sealed with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- b. Precut or preformed insulation shall be placed around all fittings and accessories and shall conform to MICA plates except as modified herein: 5 for anchors; 10, 11, and 13 for fittings; 14 for valves; and 17 for flanges and unions. Insulation shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation, including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. Where precut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation shall be overlapped 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Elbows insulated using segments shall conform to MICA Tables 12.20 "Mitered Insulation Elbow". Submit a booklet containing completed MICA Insulation Stds plates detailing each insulating system for each pipe, duct, or equipment insulating system, after approval of materials and prior to applying insulation.
  - (1) The MICA plates shall detail the materials to be installed and the specific insulation application. Submit all MICA plates required showing the entire insulating system, including plates required to show insulation penetrations, vessel bottom and top heads, legs, and skirt insulation as applicable. The MICA plates shall present all variations of insulation systems including locations, materials, vaporproofing, jackets and insulation accessories.
  - (2) If the Contractor elects to submit detailed drawings instead of edited MICA Plates, the detail drawings shall be technically equivalent to the edited MICA Plate submittal.
- c. Upon completion of insulation installation on flanges, unions, valves, anchors, fittings and accessories, terminations, seams, joints and insulation not protected by factory vapor retarder jackets or PVC fitting covers shall be protected with PVDC or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch, applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape seams shall overlap 1 inch. The coating shall extend out onto the adjoining pipe insulation 2 inches. Fabricated insulation with a factory vapor retarder jacket shall be protected with either greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or PVDC adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch and with a 2 inch wide glass tape embedded between coats. Where fitting insulation butts to pipe insulation, the joints shall be sealed with a vapor retarder coating and a 4 inch wide ASJ tape which matches the jacket of the pipe insulation.
- d. Anchors attached directly to the pipe shall be insulated for a sufficient distance to prevent condensation but not less than 6 inches from the insulation surface.

- e. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, and check valves.

### 3.2.3 Piping Exposed to Weather

Piping exposed to weather shall be insulated and jacketed as specified for the applicable service inside the building. After this procedure, a laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed aluminum jacket, stainless steel or PVC jacket shall be applied.

PVC jacketing requires no factory-applied jacket beneath it, however an all service jacket shall be applied if factory applied jacketing is not furnished. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation exposed to weather shall be treated in accordance with paragraph INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION in PART 3.

#### 3.2.3.1 Aluminum Jacket

The jacket for hot piping may be factory applied. The jacket shall overlap not less than 2 inches at longitudinal and circumferential joints and shall be secured with bands at not more than 12 inch centers. Longitudinal joints shall be overlapped down to shed water and located at 4 or 8 o'clock positions. Joints on piping 60 degrees F and below shall be sealed with metal jacketing/flashing sealant while overlapping to prevent moisture penetration. Where jacketing on piping 60 degrees F and below abuts an un-insulated surface, joints shall be caulked to prevent moisture penetration. Joints on piping above 60 degrees F shall be sealed with a moisture retarder.

#### 3.2.3.2 Insulation for Fittings

Flanges, unions, valves, fittings, and accessories shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service. Two coats of breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic (impermeable to water, permeable to air) recommended by the insulation manufacturer shall be applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape overlaps shall be not less than 1 inch and the adjoining aluminum jacket not less than 2 inches. Factory preformed aluminum jackets may be used in lieu of the above. Molded PVC fitting covers shall be provided when PVC jackets are used for straight runs of pipe. PVC fitting covers shall have adhesive welded joints and shall be weatherproof laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed, and UV resistant.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Install equipment insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA Insulation Std's plates as supplemented by the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

#### 3.3.1 General

Removable insulation sections shall be provided to cover parts of equipment that must be opened periodically for maintenance including vessel covers, fasteners, flanges and accessories. Equipment insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Hand-holes.
- b. Boiler manholes.
- c. Cleanouts.
- d. ASME stamps.
- e. Manufacturer's nameplates.
- f. Duct Test/Balance Test Holes.

### 3.3.2 Equipment Exposed to Weather

#### 3.3.2.1 Installation

Equipment exposed to weather shall be insulated and finished in accordance with the requirements for ducts exposed to weather in paragraph DUCT INSULATION INSTALLATION.

#### 3.3.2.2 Optional Panels

At the option of the Contractor, prefabricated metal insulation panels may be used in lieu of the insulation and finish previously specified. Thermal performance shall be equal to or better than that specified for field applied insulation. Panels shall be the standard catalog product of a manufacturer of metal insulation panels. Fastenings, flashing, and support system shall conform to published recommendations of the manufacturer for weatherproof installation and shall prevent moisture from entering the insulation. Panels shall be designed to accommodate thermal expansion and to support a 250 pound walking load without permanent deformation or permanent damage to the insulation. Exterior metal cover sheet shall be aluminum and exposed fastenings shall be stainless steel or aluminum.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 00

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, except for the Front End, suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as indicated and shown and in accordance with Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, other referenced Sections.

1.1.1 Proprietary Systems

1.1.1.1 Proprietary Systems Exempted From Open Protocol Requirements

The following systems are specifically exempted from the open protocol requirements of :

- a. A simple split (DX) system consisting of a single indoor unit and a single outdoor unit from the same manufacturer.
- b. A system (not already shown Table I) of multiple boilers or multiple chillers communicating with a proprietary network for which an approved request has been obtained and for which: all units are from the same manufacturer, they are all co-located in the same room, the network connecting them is fully contained in that room, and the units are operating using a common "plant" sequence of operation which stages the units in a manner that requires operational parameters be shared between them and which cannot be accomplished with a single lead-lag command from a third-party controller.

1.1.2 System Requirements

Provide systems meeting the requirements this Section and other Sections referenced by this Section, and which have the following characteristics:

- a. The system implements the control sequences of operation shown in the Contract Drawings using hardware to control mechanical and electrical equipment
- b. The system meet the requirements of this specification as a stand-alone system and does not require connection to any other system.
- c. The hardware is installed such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- d. All necessary documentation, configuration information, programming tools, programs, drivers, and other software are licensed to and otherwise remain with the Government such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on

the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.

- e. Sufficient documentation and data, including rights to documentation and data, are provided such that the Government or their agents can execute work to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.
- f. Hardware is installed and configured such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.

#### 1.1.3 End to End Accuracy

Select products, install and configure the system such that the maximum error of a measured value as read from the DDC Hardware over the network is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

#### 1.1.4 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

#### 1.1.5 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere:

- a. Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC

### 1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

#### NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

##### NFPA 70

(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA 20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA 20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14; TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022)  
National Electrical Code

##### NFPA 90A

(2021) Standard for the Installation of

## Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

The following list of definitions includes terms used in Sections referenced by this Section and are included here for completeness. The definitions contained in this Section may disagree with how terms are defined or used in other documents, including documents referenced by this Section. The definitions included here are the authoritative definitions for this Section and all Sections referenced by this Section.

After each term the protocol related to that term is included in parenthesis.

#### 1.4.1 Operator Configurable (All protocols)

Operator configurable values are values that can be changed from a single common front end user interface across multiple vendor systems.

#### 1.4.2 Override (All protocols)

Changing the value of a point outside of the normal sequence of operation where the change has priority over the sequence and where there is a mechanism for releasing the change such that the point returns to the normal value. Overrides persist until released or overridden at the same or higher priority but are not required to persist through a loss of power. Overrides are often used by operators to change values, and generally originate at a user interface (workstation or local display panel).

#### 1.4.3 Packaged Equipment (All protocols)

Packaged equipment is a single piece of equipment provided by a manufacturer in a substantially complete and operable condition and the equipment is sold and shipped from the manufacturer as a single entity. Disassembly and reassembly of a large piece of equipment for shipping does not prevent it from being packaged equipment. Package units may require field installation of remote sensors. Packaged equipment is also called a "packaged unit".

Note industry may use the term "Packaged System" to mean a collection of equipment that is designed to work together where each piece of equipment is packaged equipment and there is a network that connects the equipment together. A "packaged system" of this type is NOT packaged equipment; it is a collection of packaged equipment, and each piece of equipment must individually meet specification requirements.

#### 1.4.4 Packaged Unit (All protocols)

See packaged equipment.

### 1.5 PROJECT SEQUENCING

TABLE II: PROJECT SEQUENCING lists the sequencing of submittals as specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS (denoted by an 'S' in the 'TYPE' column) and activities as specified in PART 3 EXECUTION (denoted by an 'E' in the 'TYPE' column). TABLE II does not specify overall project milestone and

completion dates; these dates are specified in the contract documents.

- a. Sequencing for Submittals: The sequencing specified for submittals is the deadline by which the submittal must be initially submitted to the Government. Following submission there will be a Government review period as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. If the submittal is not accepted by the Government, revise the submittal and resubmit it to the Government within 14 days of notification that the submittal has been rejected. Upon resubmittal there will be an additional Government review period. If the submittal is not accepted the process repeats until the submittal is accepted by the Government.
- b. Sequencing for Activities: The sequencing specified for activities indicates the earliest the activity may begin.
- c. Abbreviations: In TABLE II the abbreviation AAO is used for 'after approval of' and 'ACO' is used for 'after completion of'.

TABLE II. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE FOR SUBMITTAL)
3	S	Manufacturer's Product Data	
4	S	Pre-construction QC Checklist	
7	S	Post-Construction QC Checklist	ACO #6

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval.. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Product Data; G, RO

##### SD-06 Test Reports

Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G, RO

Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G, RO

Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G, RO

#### 1.7 QUALITY CONTROL CHECKLISTS

The QC Representative must verify each item indicated and initial in the space provided to indicate that the requirement has been met. The QC Representative must sign and date the Checklist prior to submission to the Government.



#### 1.7.1 Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Pre-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Pre-Construction QC Checklist.

#### 1.7.2 Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Post-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Post-Construction QC Checklist.

#### 1.7.3 Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Closeout QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Closeout QC Checklist.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

Provide products meeting the requirements of Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, other referenced Sections, and this Section.

#### 2.1 GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

Units of the same type of equipment must be products of a single manufacturer. Each major component of equipment must have the manufacturer's name and address, and the model and serial number in a conspicuous place. Materials and equipment must be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of these and similar products. The standard products must have been in a satisfactory commercial or industrial use for two years prior to use on this project. The two year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. Items of the same type and purpose must be identical, including equipment, assemblies, parts and components.

#### 2.2 PRODUCT DATA

Provide manufacturer's product data sheets documenting compliance with product specifications for each product provided under Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, or this Section. Provide product data for all products in a single indexed compendium, organized by product type.

Submit Manufacturer's Product Data on CD-ROM.

#### 2.3 OPERATION ENVIRONMENT

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

- a. Pressure: Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- b. Vibration: Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- c. Temperature:

- (1) Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of

32 to 112 degrees F .

## 2.4 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

### 2.4.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

### 2.4.2 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Fully install and test the control system in accordance Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, and this Section.

#### 3.1.1 Dielectric Isolation

Provide dielectric isolation where dissimilar metals are used for connection and support. Install control system in a manner that provides clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Install control system such that it does not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

#### 3.1.2 Penetrations in Building Exterior

Make all penetrations through and mounting holes in the building exterior watertight.

#### 3.1.3 Device Mounting Criteria

Install devices in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as indicated and shown. Provide a weathershield for all devices installed outdoors. Provide clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Provide clearance for mechanical and electrical system maintenance; do not not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

#### 3.1.4 Labels and Tags

Key all labels and tags to the unique identifiers shown on the As-Built drawings. For labels exterior to protective enclosures provide engraved plastic labels mechanically attached to the enclosure or DDC Hardware. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but

must not be hand written. For tags, provide plastic or metal tags mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire.

- a. Label all Enclosures and DDC Hardware.
- b. Tag Airflow measurement arrays (AFMA) with flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient.
- c. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap

### 3.2 DRAWINGS AND CALCULATIONS

Provide drawings in the form and arrangement indicated and shown. Use the same abbreviations, symbols, nomenclature and identifiers shown. Assign a unique identifier as shown to each control system element on a drawing. When packaging drawings, group schedules by system. When space allows, it is permissible to include multiple schedules for the same system on a single sheet. Except for drawings covering all systems, do not put information for different systems on the same sheet.

Submit hardcopy drawings on ISO A1 34 by 22 inches or A3 17 by 11 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF and in Autodesk Revit 2021 format. In addition, submit electronic drawings in editable Excel format for all drawings that are tabular, including but not limited to the Point Schedule and Equipment Schedule.

#### 3.2.1 Thermostat and Occupancy Sensor Schedule

Provide a thermostat containing each thermostat's unique identifier, room identifier and control features and functions as shown. Provide a single thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule for the entire project.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 13

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This section provides for the instrumentation control system components excluding direct digital controllers, network controllers, gateways etc. that are necessary for a completely functional automatic control system. When combined with a Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, the Instrumentation and Control Devices covered under this section must be a complete system suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as specified and indicated.

- a. Install hardware to perform the control sequences as specified and indicated and to provide control of the equipment as specified and indicated.
- b. Install hardware such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- c. Install and configure hardware such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the installing Contractor.

1.1.1 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.1.2 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere.

Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION

Section 23 05 15 COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC

Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Submittal requirements are specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Store and protect products from the weather, humidity, and temperature variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants, within the storage condition limits published by the equipment manufacturer.

1.5 INPUT MEASUREMENT ACCURACY

Select, install and configure sensors, transmitters and DDC Hardware such that the maximum error of the measured value at the input of the DDC hardware is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

1.6 SUBCONTRACTOR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform all work in this section in accordance with the paragraph entitled CONTRACTOR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS in Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 General Requirements

All products used to meet this specification must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project. All products must meet the requirements both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section.

2.1.2 Operation Environment Requirements

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

2.1.2.1 Temperature

- a. Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- b. Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.2 WEATHERSHIELDS

Provide weathershields constructed of galvanized steel painted white, unpainted aluminum, aluminum painted white, or white PVC.

## 2.3 SENSORS AND INSTRUMENTATION

Unless otherwise specified, provide sensors and instrumentation which incorporate an integral transmitter. Sensors and instrumentation, including their transmitters, must meet the specified accuracy and drift requirements at the input of the connected DDC Hardware's analog-to-digital conversion.

### 2.3.1 Temperature Sensors

Provide the same sensor type throughout the project. Temperature sensors may be provided without transmitters. Where transmitters are used, the range must be the smallest available from the manufacturer and suitable for the application such that the range encompasses the expected range of temperatures to be measured. The end to end accuracy includes the combined effect of sensitivity, hysteresis, linearity and repeatability between the measured variable and the end user interface (graphic presentation) including transmitters if used.

#### 2.3.1.1 Sensor Accuracy and Stability of Control

##### 2.3.1.1.1 Conditioned Space Temperature

Plus or minus 0.5 degree F over the operating range.

##### 2.3.1.1.2 Unconditioned Space Temperature

- a. Plus or minus 1 degree F over the range of 30 to 131 degrees F AND
- b. Plus or minus 4 degrees F over the rest of the operating range.

#### 2.3.1.2 Temperature Sensor Details

##### 2.3.1.2.1 Room Type

Provide the sensing element components within a decorative protective cover suitable for surrounding decor.

##### 2.3.1.2.2 Outside Air Type

Provide the sensing element rated for outdoor use

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

#### 3.1.1 General Installation Requirements

Perform the installation under the supervision of competent technicians regularly employed in the installation of DDC systems.

##### 3.1.1.1 Device Mounting Criteria

All devices must be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as specified and indicated. Control devices to be installed in piping and ductwork must be provided with required gaskets, flanges, thermal compounds, insulation, piping, fittings, and manual valves for shutoff, equalization, purging, and calibration. Strap-on temperature sensing elements must not be used except as specified. Spare

thermowells must be installed adjacent to each thermowell containing a sensor and as indicated. Devices located outdoors must have a weathershield.

#### 3.1.1.2 Labels and Tags

Match labels and tags to the unique identifiers indicated on the As-Built drawings. Label all enclosures and instrumentation. Tag all sensors and actuators in mechanical rooms. Tag airflow measurement arrays to show flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap. Provide plastic or metal tags, mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire. Labels exterior to protective enclosures must be engraved plastic and mechanically attached to the enclosure or instrumentation. Labels inside protective enclosures may attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written.

#### 3.1.2 Room Instrument Mounting

Install adjustable devices to be ADA compliant unless otherwise indicated on the Room Sensor Schedule:

- a. Wall mount all other Space Sensor Modules.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 23 00

REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| AHRI 710 I-P | (2009) Performance Rating of Liquid-Line Driers                                 |
| AHRI 720     | (2002) Refrigerant Access Valves and Hose Connectors                            |
| AHRI 750 I-P | (2016) Performance Rating of Thermostatic Refrigerant Expansion Valves          |
| AHRI 760 I-P | (2014) Performance Rating of Solenoid Valves for Use with Volatile Refrigerants |

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| ASHRAE 15 & 34   | (2013) ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems/ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants-ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 |
| ASHRAE 17        | (2015) Method of Testing Capacity of Thermostatic Refrigerant Expansion Valves   |
| ASHRAE 90.1 - IP | (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings   |

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| ASME B16.22  | (2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings |
| ASME B16.26  | (2018) Standard for Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes             |
| ASME B31.1   | (2020) Power Piping  |
| ASME B31.5   | (2020) Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components                           |
| ASME B40.100 | (2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments                                       |



ASME BPVC SEC IX (2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section  
IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing  
Qualifications

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8/A5.8M (2019) Specification for Filler Metals for  
Brazing and Braze Welding

AWS A5.31/A5.31M (2012) Specification for Fluxes for  
Brazing and Braze Welding

AWS BRH (2007; 5th Ed) Brazing Handbook

AWS Z49.1 (2012) Safety in Welding and Cutting and  
Allied Processes

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A53/A53M (2020) Standard Specification for Pipe,  
Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,  
Welded and Seamless

ASTM A653/A653M (2022) Standard Specification for Steel  
Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or  
Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by  
the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B62 (2017) Standard Specification for  
Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings

ASTM B75/B75M (2020) Standard Specification for Seamless  
Copper Tube

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating  
Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM B280 (2020) Standard Specification for Seamless  
Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and  
Refrigeration Field Service

ASTM D520 (2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment

ASTM D3308 (2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for  
PTFE Resin Skived Tape

ASTM E84 (2020) Standard Test Method for Surface  
Burning Characteristics of Building  
Materials

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS  
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58 (2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports -  
Materials, Design and Manufacture,  
Selection, Application, and Installation

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval.. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Refrigerant Piping System; G, RO

### SD-03 Product Data

Refrigerant Piping System

Spare Parts

Qualifications

Refrigerant Piping Tests

Verification of Dimensions

### SD-06 Test Reports

Refrigerant Piping Tests

### SD-07 Certificates

Service Organization

### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Maintenance; G, RO

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### 1.3.1 Qualifications

Submit 3 copies of qualified procedures, and list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators, prior to non-factory welding operations. Weld piping in accordance with the qualified procedures using performance qualified welders and welding operators. Procedures and welders must be qualified in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. Notify the Contracting Officer 24 hours in advance of tests to be performed at the work site, if practical. The welder or welding operator must apply the personally assigned symbol near each weld made, as a permanent record. Weld structural members in accordance with Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL.

### 1.3.2 Contract Drawings

Because of the small scale of the drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. Carefully investigate the plumbing, fire protection, electrical, structural and finish conditions that would affect the work to be performed and arrange such work accordingly, furnishing required offsets, fittings, and accessories to meet such conditions.

### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored items from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Proper protection and care of all material both before and during installation is the Contractor's responsibility. Replace any materials found to be damaged at the Contractor's expense. During installation, cap piping and similar openings to keep out dirt and other foreign matter.

### 1.5 MAINTENANCE

#### 1.5.1 General

Submit Data Package 2 plus operation and maintenance data complying with the requirements of Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein.

#### 1.5.2 Extra Materials

Submit spare parts data for each different item of equipment specified, after approval of detail drawings and not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, a recommended spare parts list for 1 year of operation, and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced on a routine basis in the data.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STANDARD COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS

- a. Provide materials and equipment which are standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products, that are of a similar material, design and workmanship and that have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening.
- b. The 2 year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The 2 years' experience must be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturer's catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown.
- c. Products must be supported by a service organization. System components must be environmentally suitable for the indicated locations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their

addresses and qualifications. The service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and be able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

- d. Exposed equipment moving parts, parts that produce high operating temperature, parts which may be electrically energized, and parts that may be a hazard to operating personnel must be insulated, fully enclosed, guarded, or fitted with other types of safety devices. Install safety devices so that proper operation of equipment is not impaired. Welding and cutting safety requirements must be in accordance with AWS Z49.1.
- e. Provide the manufacturer's standard catalog data, at least 5 weeks prior to the purchase or installation of a particular component. Highlight the data to show information such as, but not limited to, material, size, options, performance charts, and curves in adequate detail to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Include the manufacturer's recommended installation instructions and procedures in the data provided. Provide data for the following components as a minimum:
  - (1) Piping and Fittings
  - (2) Valves
  - (3) Piping Accessories
  - (4) Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

## 2.2 ELECTRICAL WORK

Electrical equipment and wiring must be in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Field wiring must be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

## 2.3 REFRIGERANT PIPING SYSTEM

Provide refrigerant piping, valves, fittings, and accessories in accordance with ASHRAE 15 & 34 and ASME B31.5, except as specified herein. Refrigerant piping, valves, fittings, and accessories must be compatible with the fluids used and capable of withstanding the pressures and temperatures of the service. Refrigerant piping, valves, and accessories used for refrigerant service must be cleaned, dehydrated, and sealed (capped or plugged) prior to shipment from the manufacturer's plant. Submit drawings, at least 5 weeks prior to beginning construction, provided in adequate detail to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Drawings must consist of:

- a. Piping layouts which identify all valves and fittings.
- b. Plans and elevations which identify clearances required for maintenance and operation.

## 2.4 PIPE, FITTINGS AND END CONNECTIONS (JOINTS)

### 2.4.1 Copper Tubing

Provide copper tubing conforming to ASTM B280 annealed or hard drawn as required. Copper tubing must bear the product identification markings in accordance with ASTM B280, "ACR" must be present on copper tubing. Copper tubing must be soft annealed where bending is required and hard drawn

where no bending is required. Soft annealed copper tubing must not be used in sizes larger than 1-3/8 inches. Joints must be brazed except that joints on lines 7/8 inch and smaller may be flared. Cast copper alloy fittings for flared copper tube must conform to ASME B16.26 and ASTM B62. Wrought copper and bronze solder-joint pressure fittings must conform to ASME B16.22 and ASTM B75/B75M. Joints and fittings for brazed joint must be wrought-copper or forged-brass sweat fittings. Cast sweat-type joints and fittings are not allowed for brazed joints. Brass or bronze adapters for brazed tubing may be used for connecting tubing to flanges and to threaded ends of valves and equipment.

#### 2.4.2 Brazing Filler Metal

Filler metal must conform to AWS A5.8/A5.8M, Type BAg-5 with AWS Type FB3-A or Type FB3-C flux, except Type BCuP-3, BCuP-4, or BCuP-5 may be used for brazing copper-to-copper joints. BAlSi-4 with AWS Type FB1-A flux may be used when joining copper piping to aluminum components.

#### 2.4.3 Brazing Flux

Brazing flux must conform to AWS A5.31/A5.31M, Type FB3-A or Type FB3-C when using Type BAg-5 filler metal. Type FB1-A is to be used with Type BAlSi-4 filler metal.

### 2.5 VALVES

Valves must be designed, manufactured, and tested specifically for refrigerant service. The valve material and all internal components must be compatible with the specific refrigerant and lubricant used. Valve bodies must be of brass, bronze, steel, or ductile iron construction. Valves 1 inch and smaller must have brazed or socket welded connections. Do not use threaded end connections, except in pilot pressure or gauge lines where maintenance disassembly is required and welded flanges cannot be used. Internal parts must be removable for inspection or replacement without applying heat or breaking pipe connections. Valve stems exposed to the atmosphere must be stainless steel or corrosion resistant metal plated carbon steel. Direction of flow must be legibly and permanently indicated on the valve body. Control valve inlets must be fitted with integral or adapted strainer or filter where recommended or required by the manufacturer. Purge, charge and receiver valves must be of manufacturer's standard configuration.

#### 2.5.1 Refrigerant Stop Valves

Valve must be the globe or full-port ball type with a back-seating stem especially packed for refrigerant service. Valve packing must be replaceable under line pressure. Provide valve with a handwheel operator and a seal cap. Valve must be the straight or angle pattern design as indicated.

#### 2.5.2 Check Valves

Valve must be the swing or lift type as required to provide positive shutoff at the differential pressure indicated. Valve must be provided with resilient seat.

#### 2.5.3 Liquid Solenoid Valves

Provide valves that comply with AHRI 760 I-P and are suitable for

continuous duty with applied voltages 15 percent under and 5 percent over nominal rated voltage at maximum and minimum encountered pressure and temperature service conditions. Valves must be direct-acting or pilot-operating type, packless, except that packed stem, seal capped, manual lifting provisions must be furnished. Provide solenoid coils that are moisture-proof, UL approved, totally encapsulated or encapsulated and metal jacketed as required. Valves must have safe working pressure of 610 psi and a maximum operating pressure differential of at least 200 psi at 85 percent rated voltage. Valves must have an operating pressure differential suitable for the refrigerant used.

#### 2.5.4 Expansion Valves

Provide valve conforming to AHRI 750 I-P and ASHRAE 17. Valve must be the diaphragm and spring-loaded type with internal or external equalizers, and bulb and capillary tubing. Provide valve with an external superheat adjustment along with a seal cap. Internal equalizers may be utilized where flowing refrigerant pressure drop between outlet of the valve and inlet to the evaporator coil is negligible and pressure drop across the evaporator is less than the pressure difference corresponding to 2 degrees F of saturated suction temperature at evaporator conditions. Bulb charge must be determined by the manufacturer for the application and such that liquid will remain in the bulb at all operating conditions. Do not use gas limited liquid charged valves and other valve devices for limiting evaporator pressure without a distributor or discharge tube or effective means to prevent loss of control when bulb becomes warmer than valve body. Pilot-operated valves must have a characterized plug to provide required modulating control. A de-energized solenoid valve may be used in the pilot line to close the main valve in lieu of a solenoid valve in the main liquid line. Provide an isolatable pressure gauge in the pilot line, at the main valve. Automatic pressure reducing or constant pressure regulating expansion valves may be used only where indicated or for constant evaporator loads.

#### 2.5.5 Safety Relief Valves

Valve must be the two-way type, unless indicated otherwise. Valve must bear the ASME code symbol. Valve capacity must be certified by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors. Valve must be of an automatically reseating design after activation.

#### 2.5.6 Evaporator Pressure Regulators, Direct-Acting

Valve must include a diaphragm/spring assembly, external pressure adjustment with seal cap, and pressure gauge port. Valve must maintain a constant inlet pressure by balancing inlet pressure on diaphragm against an adjustable spring load. Pressure drop at system design load must not exceed the pressure difference corresponding to a 2 degrees F change in saturated refrigerant temperature at evaporator operating suction temperature. Spring must be selected for indicated maximum allowable suction pressure range.

#### 2.5.7 Refrigerant Access Valves

Provide refrigerant access valves and hose connections in accordance with AHRI 720.

## 2.6 PIPING ACCESSORIES

### 2.6.1 Filter Driers

Driers must conform to AHRI 710 I-P. Sizes 5/8 inch and larger must be the full flow, replaceable core type. Sizes 1/2 inch and smaller must be the sealed type. Cores must be of suitable desiccant that will not plug, cake, dust, channel, or break down, and must remove water, acid, and foreign material from the refrigerant. Construct filter driers so that none of the desiccant will pass into the refrigerant lines. Minimum bursting pressure must be 1,500 psi.

### 2.6.2 Sight Glass and Liquid Level Indicator

#### 2.6.2.1 Assembly and Components

Assembly must be pressure- and temperature-rated and constructed of materials suitable for the service. Glass must be borosilicate type. Ferrous components subject to condensation must be electro-galvanized.

#### 2.6.2.2 Gauge Glass

Gauge glass must include top and bottom isolation valves fitted with automatic checks, and packing followers; red-line or green-line gauge glass; elastomer or polymer packing to suit the service; and gauge glass guard.

#### 2.6.2.3 Bull's-Eye and Inline Sight Glass Reflex Lens

Provide bull's-eye and inline sight glass reflex lens for dead-end liquid service. For pipe line mounting, provide two plain lenses in one body suitable for backlighted viewing.

#### 2.6.2.4 Moisture Indicator

Indicator must be a self-reversible action, moisture reactive, color changing media. Indicator must be furnished with full-color-printing tag containing color, moisture, and temperature criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, the moisture indicator must be an integral part of each corresponding sight glass.

### 2.6.3 Vibration Dampeners

Dampeners must be of the all-metallic bellows and woven-wire type.

### 2.6.4 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Connector must be a composite of interior corrugated phosphor bronze or Type 300 Series stainless steel, as required for fluid service, with exterior reinforcement of bronze, stainless steel or monel wire braid. Assembly must be constructed with a safety factor of not less than 4 at 300 degrees F. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of a flexible connector must be as recommended by the manufacturer for the service intended.

### 2.6.5 Strainers

Strainers used in refrigerant service must have brass or cast-iron body, Y-or angle-pattern, cleanable, not less than 60-mesh noncorroding screen of an area to provide net free area not less than ten times the pipe

diameter with pressure rating compatible with the refrigerant service. Screens must be stainless steel or monel and reinforced spring-loaded where necessary for bypass-proof construction.

#### 2.6.6 Pressure and Vacuum Gauges

Provide gauges conforming to ASME B40.100 with throttling type needle valve or a pulsation dampener and shut-off valve. Gauge must be a minimum of 3-1/2 inches in diameter with a range from 0 psig to approximately 1.5 times the maximum system working pressure. Select each gauge range so that at normal operating pressure, the needle is within the middle-third of the range.

#### 2.6.7 Temperature Gauges

Provide industrial duty type temperature gauges for the required temperature range. Gauges must have Fahrenheit scale in 2 degrees graduations scale (black numbers) on a white face. The pointer must be adjustable. Provide rigid stem type temperature gauges in thermowells located within 5 feet of the finished floor. Provide universal adjustable angle type or remote element type temperature gauges in thermowells located 5 to 7 feet above the finished floor. Provide remote element type temperature gauges in thermowells located 7 feet above the finished floor.

##### 2.6.7.1 Stem Cased-Glass

Provide stem cased-glass case composed of polished stainless steel or cast aluminum, 9 inches long, with clear acrylic lens, and non-mercury filled glass tube with indicating-fluid column.

##### 2.6.7.2 Bimetallic Dial

Provide bimetallic dial type case that is greater than 3-1/2 inches, stainless steel, and hermetically sealed with clear acrylic lens. Bimetallic element must be silicone dampened and unit fitted with external calibrator adjustment. Accuracy must be one percent of dial range.

##### 2.6.7.3 Liquid-, Solid-, and Vapor-Filled Dial

Provide liquid-, solid-, and vapor-filled dial type cases that are greater than 3-1/2 inches, stainless steel or cast aluminum with clear acrylic lens. Fill must be nonmercury, suitable for encountered cross-ambients, and connecting capillary tubing must be double-braided bronze.

#### 2.6.8 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Provide pipe hangers, inserts, guides, and supports conforming to MSS SP-58.

#### 2.6.9 Escutcheons

Escutcheons must be chromium-plated iron or chromium-plated brass, either one piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or set screws.

### 2.7 FABRICATION

#### 2.7.1 Factory Coating

Unless otherwise specified, equipment and component items, when fabricated



from ferrous metal, must be factory finished with the manufacturer's standard finish, except that items located outside of buildings must have weather resistant finishes that will withstand 125 hours exposure to the salt spray test specified in [ASTM B117](#) using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution. Immediately after completion of the test, the specimen must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, cracking, or loss of adhesion and no sign of rust creepage beyond [1/8 inch](#) on either side of the scratch mark. Cut edges of galvanized surfaces where hot-dip galvanized sheet steel is used must be coated with a zinc-rich coating conforming to [ASTM D520](#), Type I.

## 2.7.2 Factory Applied Insulation

Factory installed insulation must be in accordance with [ASHRAE 90.1 - IP](#). Refrigerant suction lines between the cooler and each compressor must be insulated with not less than [1/2 inch](#) thick unicellular plastic foam. Factory insulated items installed outdoors are not required to be fire-rated. As a minimum, factory insulated items installed indoors must have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50. Factory insulated items (no jacket) installed indoors and which are located in air plenums, in ceiling spaces, and in attic spaces must have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50. Flame spread and smoke developed indexes must be determined by [ASTM E84](#). Test insulation in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Test material supplied by a manufacturer with a jacket as a composite material. Provide jackets, facings, and adhesives that have a flame spread index less than 25 and a smoke developed index less than 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, perform a [verification of dimensions](#) in the field. Submit a letter, at least 2 weeks prior to beginning construction, including the date the site was visited, conformation of existing conditions, and any discrepancies found before performing any work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

Pipe and fitting installation must conform to the requirements of [ASME B31.1](#). Cut pipe accurately to measurements established at the jobsite, and work into place without springing or forcing, completely clearing all windows, doors, and other openings. Cutting or other weakening of the building structure to facilitate piping installation is not permitted without written approval. Cut pipe or tubing square, remove by reaming, and permit free expansion and contraction without causing damage to the building structure, pipe, joints, or hangers.

#### 3.2.1 Directional Changes

Make changes in direction with fittings, except that bending of pipe [4 inches](#) and smaller is permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide weep bends are formed. Mitering or notching pipe or other similar construction to form elbows or tees is not permitted. The centerline radius of bends must not be less than 6 diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be

accepted.

### 3.2.2 Functional Requirements

Install piping 1/2 inch/10 feet of pipe in the direction of flow to ensure adequate oil drainage. Properly cap or plug open ends of refrigerant lines or equipment during installation to keep moisture, dirt, or other foreign material out of the system. Piping must remain capped until installation. Equipment piping must be in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations and the contract drawings. Equipment and piping arrangements must fit into space allotted and allow adequate acceptable clearances for installation, replacement, entry, servicing, and maintenance.

### 3.2.3 Fittings and End Connections

#### 3.2.3.1 Threaded Connections

Make threaded connections with tapered threads and make tight with PTFE tape complying with ASTM D3308 or equivalent thread-joint compound applied to the male threads only. Do not show more than three threads after the joint is made.

#### 3.2.3.2 Brazed Connections

Perform brazing in accordance with AWS BRH, except as modified herein. During brazing, fill the pipe and fittings with a pressure regulated inert gas, such as nitrogen, to prevent the formation of scale. Before brazing copper joints, clean both the outside of the tube and the inside of the fitting with a wire fitting brush until the entire joint surface is bright and clean. Do not use brazing flux on copper-to-copper connections. Remove surplus brazing material at all joints. Make steel tubing joints in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Paint joints in steel tubing with the same material as the baked-on coating within 8 hours after joints are made. Protect tubing against oxidation during brazing by continuous purging of the inside of the piping using nitrogen. Support piping prior to brazing and do not spring or force.

#### 3.2.3.3 Flared Connections

When flared connections are used, use a suitable lubricant between the back of the flare and the nut in order to avoid tearing the flare while tightening the nut.

### 3.2.4 Valves

#### 3.2.4.1 General

Install refrigerant stop valves on each side of each piece of equipment such as compressors condensers, evaporators, receivers, and other similar items in multiple-unit installation, to provide partial system isolation as required for maintenance or repair. Install stop valves with stems horizontal unless otherwise indicated. Install ball valves must be installed with stems positioned to facilitate operation and maintenance. Isolating valves for pressure gauges and switches must be external to thermal insulation. Safety switches must not be fitted with isolation valves. Filter dryers having access ports may be considered a point of isolation. Purge valves must be provided at all points of systems where accumulated non-condensable gases would prevent proper system operation.

Valves must be furnished to match line size, unless otherwise indicated or approved.

#### 3.2.4.2 Expansion Valves

Install expansion valves with the thermostatic expansion valve bulb located on top of the suction line when the suction line is less than 2-1/8 inches in diameter and at the 4 o'clock or 8 o'clock position on lines larger than 2-1/8 inches. Fasten the bulb securely with two clamps. Insulate the bulb. Install the bulb in a horizontal portion of the suction line, if possible, with the pigtail on the bottom. If the bulb must be installed in a vertical line, the bulb tubing must be facing up.

#### 3.2.4.3 Valve Identification

Tag each system valve, including those which are part of a factory assembly. Tags must be in alphanumeric sequence, progressing in direction of fluid flow. Tags must be embossed, engraved, or stamped plastic or nonferrous metal of various shapes, sized approximately 1-3/8 inch diameter, or equivalent dimension, substantially attached to a component or immediately adjacent thereto. Attach tags with nonferrous, heavy duty, bead or link chain, 14 gauge annealed wire, nylon cable bands or as approved. Reference tag numbers in Operation and Maintenance Manuals and system diagrams.

#### 3.2.5 Vibration Dampers

Provide vibration damper in the suction and discharge lines on spring mounted compressors. Install vibration dampers parallel with the shaft of the compressor and anchor firmly at the upstream end on the suction line and the downstream end in the discharge line.

#### 3.2.6 Strainers

Provide strainers immediately ahead of solenoid valves and expansion devices. Strainers may be an integral part of an expansion valve.

#### 3.2.7 Filter Dryer

Provide a liquid line filter dryer on each refrigerant circuit located such that all liquid refrigerant passes through a filter dryer. Size dryers in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the system in which it is installed. Install dryers such that it can be isolated from the system, the isolated portion of the system evacuated, and the filter dryer replaced. Install dryers in the horizontal position except replaceable core filter dryers may be installed in the vertical position with the access flange on the bottom.

#### 3.2.8 Sight Glass

Install a moisture indicating sight glass in all refrigerant circuits downstream of all filter dryers and where indicated. Provide full line size sight glasses.

#### 3.2.9 Discharge Line Oil Separator

Provide discharge line oil separator in the discharge line from each compressor. Connect the oil return line to the compressor as recommended

by the compressor manufacturer.

### 3.2.10 Accumulator

Provide accumulators in the suction line to each compressor.

### 3.2.11 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Install connectors perpendicular to line of motion being isolated. Fit piping for equipment with bidirectional motion with two flexible connectors, in perpendicular planes. Install reinforced elastomer flexible connectors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide piping guides and restraints related to flexible connectors as required.

### 3.2.12 Temperature Gauges

Locate temperature gauges specifically on, but not limited to the following: the liquid line leaving a receiver and the suction line at each evaporator or liquid cooler. Thermowells for insertion thermometers and thermostats must extend beyond thermal insulation surface not less than 1 inch.

### 3.2.13 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports must conform to MSS SP-58, except as modified herein. Do not use pipe hanger types 5, 12, and 26. Fabricate hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Support piping subjected to vertical movement, when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures, by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers.

#### 3.2.13.1 Hangers

Do not use Type 3 on insulated piping. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.

#### 3.2.13.2 Inserts

Secure Type 18 inserts to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustments may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for Type 18 inserts.

#### 3.2.13.3 Angle Attachments

Furnish Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.

#### 3.2.13.4 Shields

Use Type 40 shields on all piping less than 4 inches.

#### 3.2.13.5 Horizontal Pipe Supports

Space horizontal pipe supports as specified in MSS SP-58 and install a support no more than 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping.

#### 3.2.13.6 Vertical Pipe Supports

Support vertical pipe at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, and at intervals of not more than 15 feet not more than 8 feet from end of risers, and at vent terminations.

#### 3.2.13.7 High Temperature Guides with Cradles

Where there are high system temperatures and welding to piping is not desirable, the Type 35 guide must include a pipe cradle, welded to the guide structure and strapped securely to the pipe. Separate the pipe from the slide material by at least 4 inches, or by an amount adequate for the insulation, whichever is greater.

#### 3.2.13.8 Multiple Pipe Runs

In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, use a clip or clamp where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members must not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run.

#### 3.2.13.9 Structural Attachments

Attachment to building structure concrete and masonry must be by cast-in concrete inserts, built-in anchors, or masonry anchor devices. Inserts and anchors must be applied with a safety factor not less than 5. Do not attach supports to metal decking. Construct masonry anchors for overhead applications of ferrous materials only. Provide structural steel brackets required to support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, under this section. Specify material used for support under Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL.

#### 3.2.14 Pipe Anchors

Provide anchors wherever necessary or indicated to localize expansion or to prevent undue strain on piping. Provide anchors consisting of heavy steel collars with lugs and bolts for clamping and attaching anchor braces, unless otherwise indicated. Install anchor braces in the most effective manner to secure the desired results using turnbuckles where required. Do not attach supports, anchors, or stays where they will injure the structure or adjacent construction during installation or by the weight of expansion of the pipeline. Where pipe and conduit penetrations of vapor barrier sealed surfaces occur, immediately anchor these items adjacent to each penetrated surface, to provide essentially zero movement within penetration seal. Submit detailed drawings of pipe anchors for approval before installation.

#### 3.2.15 Building Surface Penetrations

Do not install sleeves in structural members except where indicated or approved. Provide galvanized sheet metal sleeves in non-load bearing surfaces conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, Coating Class G-90, 20 gauge. Provide uncoated carbon steel pipe sleeves in load bearing surfaces conforming to ASTM A53/A53M, Standard weight. Apply sealants to moisture and oil-free surfaces and elastomers to not less than 1/2 inch depth. Do not install sleeves in structural members.

#### 3.2.15.1 General Service Areas

Extend each sleeve through its respective wall, floor, or roof, and cut flush with each surface. Provide pipes passing through concrete or masonry wall or concrete floors or roofs with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Provide sleeves that allow a minimum of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch all-around clearance between bare pipe and sleeves or between jacketed-insulation and sleeves. Except in pipe chases or interior walls, seal the annular space between pipe and sleeve or between jacket over-insulation and sleeve in accordance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

#### 3.2.15.2 Escutcheons

Provide escutcheons for finished surfaces where exposed piping, bare or insulated, pass through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Where sleeves project slightly from floors, use special deep-type escutcheons. Secure escutcheon to pipe or pipe covering.

#### 3.2.16 Field Applied Insulation

Field installed insulation is specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS, except as defined differently herein.

#### 3.2.17 Identification Tags

Provide identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic or engraved anodized aluminum indicating service and item number on all valves and dampers. Tags must be  $1\text{--}3\frac{3}{8}$  inch minimum diameter and marking must be stamped or engraved. Indentations must be black for reading clarity. Attach tags to valves with No. 12 AWG copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Clean uncontaminated system(s) by evacuation and purging procedures currently recommended by refrigerant and refrigerant equipment manufacturers, and as specified herein, to remove small amounts of air and moisture. Systems containing moderate amounts of air, moisture, contaminated refrigerant, or any foreign matter are considered contaminated systems. Restore contaminated systems to clean condition including disassembly, component replacement, evacuation, flushing, purging, and re-charging, using currently approved refrigerant and refrigeration manufacturer's procedures. Restore contaminated systems at no additional cost to the Government as determined by the Contracting Officer. Do not use water in any procedure or test.

### 3.4 REFRIGERANT PIPING TESTS

After all components of the refrigerant system have been installed and connected, subject the entire refrigeration system to pneumatic, evacuation, and startup tests as described herein. Submit a schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing, for each test. Identify the proposed date, time, and location for each test. Conduct tests in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Water and electricity required for the tests will be furnished by the Government. Provide all material, equipment, instruments, and personnel required for the test. Provide the services of a qualified technician, as required, to perform

all tests and procedures indicated herein. Coordinate field tests with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS. Submit 6 copies of the tests report in bound 8 1/2 by 11 inch booklets documenting all phases of the tests performed. Include initial test summaries, all repairs/adjustments made, and the final test results in the report.

#### 3.4.1 Preliminary Procedures

Prior to pneumatic testing, isolate equipment which has been factory tested and refrigerant charged as well as equipment which could be damaged or cause personnel injury by imposed test pressure, positive or negative, from the test pressure, or remove from the system. Remove safety relief valves and rupture discs that are not part of factory sealed systems, and cap or plug openings.

#### 3.4.2 Pneumatic Test

Provide pressure control and excess pressure protection at the source of test pressure. Valves must be wide open, except those leading to the atmosphere. Test gas must be dry nitrogen, with minus 70 degree F dewpoint and less than 5 ppm oil. Apply test pressure in two stages before any refrigerant pipe is insulated or covered. In accordance with ASME B31.5, a preliminary test not to exceed 25 psi must be applied as a means of locating major leaks. Every joint being tested must be coated with a thick soap or color indicating solution. The second stage test pressure must be at least 110 percent of the design pressure, but cannot exceed 130 percent of the design pressure of any component in the system. For large systems that are not completely visible, the pressure in the system must be gradually increased to one-half of the test pressure after which the pressure must be increased in steps of one-tenth of the test pressure, until the required test pressure has been reached. The test pressure must be continuously maintained for at least 24 hours, after which it can be reduced to the leak test pressure. A correction factor of 0.3 psi will be allowed for each degree F change between test space initial and final ambient temperature, plus for increase and minus for a decrease. The leak test pressure must be the design pressure, or a pressure specified in the engineering design. To repair leaks, the joint must be taken apart, thoroughly cleaned, and reconstructed as a new joint. Joints repaired by caulking, re-melting, or back-welding/brazing are not acceptable. Following repair, the entire system must be retested using the pneumatic tests described above. Reassemble the entire system once the pneumatic tests are satisfactorily completed.

#### 3.4.3 Evacuation Test

Following satisfactory completion of the pneumatic tests, relieve the pressure and evacuate the entire system to an absolute pressure of 300 micrometers. During evacuation of the system, the ambient temperature must be higher than 35 degrees F. Do not evacuate no more than one system at one time by one vacuum pump. Once the desired vacuum has been reached, close the vacuum line and allow the system to stand for 1 hour. If the pressure rises over 500 micrometers after the 1 hour period, evacuate the system again down to 300 micrometers and let set for another 1 hour period. Do not charge the system until a vacuum of at least 500 micrometers is maintained for a period of 1 hour without the assistance of a vacuum line. If during the testing the pressure rises above 500 micrometers, continue to repeat the evacuation procedures until all residual moisture has been removed. During evacuation, record pressures

by a thermocouple-type, electronic-type, or a calibrated-micrometer type gauge.

#### 3.4.4 System Charging and Startup Test

Following satisfactory completion of the evacuation tests, charge the system with the required amount of refrigerant by raising pressure to normal operating pressure and in accordance with manufacturer's procedures. Following charging, the system must operate with high-side and low-side pressures and corresponding refrigerant temperatures, at design or improved values. Test the entire system tested for leaks. Test fluorocarbon systems with halide torch or electronic leak detectors.

#### 3.4.5 Refrigerant Leakage

If a refrigerant leak is discovered after the system has been charged, the leaking portion of the system must be immediately isolated from the remainder of the system and the refrigerant pumped into the system receiver or other suitable container. The refrigerant must not be discharged into the atmosphere.

#### 3.4.6 Contractor's Responsibility

At all times during the installation and testing of the refrigeration system, take steps to prevent the release of refrigerants into the atmosphere. The steps must include, but not be limited to, procedures which will minimize the release of refrigerants to the atmosphere and the use of refrigerant recovery devices to remove refrigerant from the system and store the refrigerant for reuse or reclaim. At no time will the allowable leak rate exceed the leak rates allowed in Section 608 of the Clean Air Act: 30 percent of the full charge per year for industrial refrigeration, 20 percent of the full charge per year for commercial refrigeration, and 10 percent of the full charge per year for comfort cooling. Any system leaks within the first year must be repaired in accordance with the requirements herein at no cost to the Government including material, labor, and refrigerant if the leak is the result of defective equipment, material, or installation.

-- End of Section --



SECTION 23 30 00

HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor  
Air Quality

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A13.1 (2020) Scheme for the Identification of  
Piping Systems

ASME B16.22 (2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and  
Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings

ASME B16.18 (2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint  
Pressure Fittings

ASME B16.23 (2011) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint  
Drainage Fittings - DWV

ASME B16.29 (2017) Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper  
Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc  
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and  
Steel Products

ASTM A924/A924M (2020) Standard Specification for General  
Requirements for Steel Sheet,  
Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B75/B75M (2020) Standard Specification for Seamless  
Copper Tube

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating  
Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM B152/B152M (2019) Standard Specification for Copper  
Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Rolled Bar

ASTM B766 (1986; R 2015) Standard Specification for  
Electrodeposited Coatings of Cadmium

ASTM C553	(2013; R 2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
ASTM D520	(2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM D1654	(2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments
ASTM D1785	(2015; E 2018) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC), Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120
ASTM D2466	(2017) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
ASTM D3359	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Rating Adhesion by Tape Test
ASTM B42	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B306	(2020) Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
ASTM D2665	(2014) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
ASTM F891	(2016) Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core
ASTM F1760	(2016; R 2020) Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Plastic Pipe Having Reprocessed-Recycled Content
ASTM B88	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B88M	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric)
ASTM D2467	(2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D2464	(2015) Standard Specification for Threaded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D2672	(2014) Joints for IPS PVC Pipe Using Solvent Cement

ASTM D2241	(2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series)
ASTM F439	(2019) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM F438	(2017) Standard Specification for Socket-Type Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
ASTM F437	(2015) Standard Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM F442/F442M	(2020) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
ASTM F441/F441M	(2020) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
ASTM D2846/D2846M	(2019) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1	(2018) Motors and Generators
NEMA MG 11	(1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 82	Protection of Stratospheric Ozone
-----------	-----------------------------------

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 6	(2007; Reprint Sep 2019) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel
UL Bld Mat Dir	(updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Furnish ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories as required to provide a complete installation. Coordinate the work of the different trades to avoid interference between piping, equipment, structural, and electrical work. Provide complete, in place, all necessary offsets in piping and ductwork, and all fittings, and other components, required to install the work as indicated and specified.

### 1.2.1 Mechanical Equipment Identification

The number of charts and diagrams must be equal to or greater than the number of mechanical equipment rooms. Where more than one chart or diagram per space is required, mount these in edge pivoted, swinging leaf, extruded aluminum frame holders which open to 170 degrees.

#### 1.2.1.1 Charts

Provide chart listing of equipment by designation numbers and capacities such as flow rates, pressure and temperature differences, heating and cooling capacities, horsepower, pipe sizes, and voltage and current characteristics.

#### 1.2.1.2 Diagrams

Submit proposed diagrams, at least 2 weeks prior to start of related testing. provide neat mechanical drawings provided with extruded aluminum frame under 1/8-inch glass or laminated plastic, system diagrams that show the layout of equipment, piping, and ductwork, and typed condensed operation manuals explaining preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal, safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system. After approval, post these items where directed.

### 1.2.2 Service Labeling

Label equipment, including fans, air handlers, terminal units, etc. with labels made of self-sticking, plastic film designed for permanent installation. Provide labels in accordance with the typical examples below:

SERVICE	LABEL AND TAG DESIGNATION
Ductless Split System	DSS - 1
Ductless Split System Condensing Unit	DSS - CU - 1
Exhaust Fan Number	EF - 1
Packaged Terminal Heat Pump	PTHP - 1
Packaged Terminal Heat Pump	PTHP - 2
Packaged Terminal Air Conditioner	PTAC - 1

Identify similar services with different temperatures or pressures. Where pressures could exceed 125 pounds per square inch, gage, include the maximum system pressure in the label. Label and arrow piping in accordance with the following:

- a. Each point of entry and exit of pipe passing through walls.

- b. Each change in direction, i.e., elbows, tees.
- c. In congested or hidden areas and at all access panels at each point required to clarify service or indicated hazard.
- d. In long straight runs, locate labels at distances within eyesight of each other not to exceed 75 feet. All labels must be visible and legible from the primary service and operating area.

For Bare or Insulated Pipes	
for Outside Diameters of	Lettering
1/2 thru 1-3/8 inch	1/2 inch
1-1/2 thru 2-3/8 inch	3/4 inch
2-1/2 inch and larger	1-1/4 inch

### 1.2.3 Color Coding

Color coding of all piping systems must be in accordance with ASME A13.1.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G

#### SD-03 Product Data

Test Procedures

Diagrams; G

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Performance Tests; G

#### SD-07 Certificates

Anchor Bolts

Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

#### SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Installation Instructions

Operation and Maintenance Training

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Indoor Air Quality During Construction; S

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Except as otherwise specified, approval of materials and equipment is based on manufacturer's published data.

- a. Where materials and equipment are specified to conform to the standards of the Underwriters Laboratories, the label of or listing with reexamination in **UL Bld Mat Dir**, and **UL 6** is acceptable as sufficient evidence that the items conform to Underwriters Laboratories requirements. In lieu of such label or listing, submit a written certificate from any nationally recognized testing agency, adequately equipped and competent to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and that the units conform to the specified requirements. Outline methods of testing used by the specified agencies.
- b. Where materials or equipment are specified to be constructed or tested, or both, in accordance with the standards of the ASTM International (ASTM), the ASME International (ASME), or other standards, a manufacturer's certificate of compliance of each item is acceptable as proof of compliance.
- c. Conformance to such agency requirements does not relieve the item from compliance with other requirements of these specifications.
- d. Where products are specified to meet or exceed the specified energy efficiency requirement of FEMP-designated or ENERGY STAR covered product categories, equipment selected must have as a minimum the efficiency rating identified under "Energy-Efficient Products" at <http://femp.energy.gov/procurement>. Equipment having a lower efficiency may be specified if the designer determines such equipment to be more life-cycle cost effective.

1.4.1 Prevention of Corrosion

Protect metallic materials against corrosion. Provide rust-inhibiting treatment and standard finish for the equipment enclosures. Do not use aluminum in contact with earth, and where connected to dissimilar metal. Protect aluminum by approved fittings, barrier material, or treatment. Provide hot-dip galvanized ferrous parts such as anchors, bolts, braces, boxes, bodies, clamps, fittings, guards, nuts, pins, rods, shims, thimbles, washers, and miscellaneous parts not of corrosion-resistant steel or nonferrous materials in accordance with **ASTM A123/A123M** for exterior locations and cadmium-plated in conformance with **ASTM B766** for interior locations.

#### 1.4.2 Asbestos Prohibition

Do not use asbestos and asbestos-containing products.

#### 1.4.3 Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

All technicians working on equipment that contain ozone depleting refrigerants must be certified as a Section 608 Technician to meet requirements in 40 CFR 82, Subpart F. Provide copies of technician certifications to the Contracting Officer at least 14 calendar days prior to work on any equipment containing these refrigerants.

#### 1.4.4 Detail Drawings

Submit detail drawings showing equipment layout, including assembly and installation details and electrical connection diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of all supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications. Include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and functions properly as a unit on the drawings and show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance. Submit drawings showing bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Submit function designation of the equipment and any other requirements specified throughout this Section with the shop drawings.

#### 1.4.5 Test Procedures

Conduct performance tests as required in Section 23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC and Section 23 09 00 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored equipment at the jobsite from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Additionally, cap or plug all pipes until installed.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide components and equipment that are "standard products" of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. "Standard products" is defined as being in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years before bid opening, including applications of components and equipment under similar circumstances and of similar size, satisfactorily completed by a product that is sold on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record are acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. Provide equipment items that are supported by a service organization. In product categories covered by ENERGY STAR or the Federal Energy Management Program, provide equipment that is listed on the ENERGY STAR Qualified Products List or that meets or exceeds the FEMP-designated Efficiency Requirements.

## 2.2 IDENTIFICATION PLATES

In addition to standard manufacturer's identification plates, provide engraved laminated phenolic identification plates for each piece of mechanical equipment. Identification plates are to designate the function of the equipment. Submit designation with the shop drawings. Provide identification plates that are layers, black-white-black, engraved to show white letters on black background. Letters must be upper case. Identification plates that are 1-1/2-inches high and smaller must be 1/16-inch thick, with engraved lettering 1/8-inch high; identification plates larger than 1-1/2-inches high must be 1/8-inch thick, with engraved lettering of suitable height. Identification plates 1-1/2-inches high and larger must have beveled edges. Install identification plates using a compatible adhesive.

## 2.3 ELECTRICAL WORK

- a. Provide motors, controllers, integral disconnects, contactors, and controls with their respective pieces of equipment, except controllers indicated as part of motor control centers. Provide electrical equipment, including motors and wiring, as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown. For packaged equipment, include manufacturer provided controllers with the required monitors and timed restart.
- b. For single-phase motors, provide high-efficiency type, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, in accordance with NEMA MG 11. Provide premium efficiency type integral size motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1.
- c. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Provide motors rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Provide motor duty that allows for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Provide motor torque capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other necessary appurtenances. Fit motor bearings with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.

## 2.4 ANCHOR BOLTS

Provide anchor bolts for equipment placed on concrete equipment pads or on concrete slabs. Bolts to be of the size and number recommended by the equipment manufacturer and located by means of suitable templates. Installation of anchor bolts must not degrade the surrounding concrete.

## 2.5 PAINTING

Paint equipment units in accordance with approved equipment manufacturer's standards unless specified otherwise. Field retouch only if approved. Otherwise, return equipment to the factory for refinishing.



## 2.6 INDOOR AIR QUALITY

Provide equipment and components that comply with the requirements of [ASHRAE 62.1](#) unless more stringent requirements are specified herein.

## 2.7 FACTORY PAINTING

Factory paint new equipment, which are not of galvanized construction. Paint with a corrosion resisting paint finish according to [ASTM A123/A123M](#) or [ASTM A924/A924M](#). Clean, phosphatize and coat internal and external ferrous metal surfaces with a paint finish which has been tested according to [ASTM B117](#), [ASTM D1654](#), and [ASTM D3359](#). Submit evidence of satisfactory paint performance for a minimum of 125 hours for units to be installed indoors and 500 hours for units to be installed outdoors. Provide rating of failure at the scribe mark that is not less than 6, average creepage not greater than  $1/8$  inch. Provide rating of the inscribed area that is not less than 10, no failure. On units constructed of galvanized steel that have been welded, provide a final shop docket of zinc-rich protective paint on exterior surfaces of welds or welds that have burned through from the interior according to [ASTM D520](#) Type I.

Field paint factory painting that has been damaged prior to acceptance by the Contracting Officer in compliance with the requirements of paragraph FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT.

## 2.8 SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES

### 2.8.1 Refrigerant Piping

The requirements for refrigerant piping are specified in Section [23 23 00](#) REFRIGERANT PIPING.

### 2.8.2 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide and install condensate drainage for each item of equipment that generates condensate in accordance with [Section 23 05 15 Common Piping for HVAC and this specification](#).

### 2.8.3 Insulation

The requirements for shop and field applied insulation are specified in Section [23 07 00](#) THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

### 2.8.4 Controls

The requirements for controls are specified in Section [23 05 93](#) TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- a. Install materials and equipment in accordance with the requirements of the contract drawings and approved [manufacturer's installation instructions](#). Accomplish installation by workers skilled in this type of work. Perform installation so that there is no degradation of the designed fire ratings of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors.
- b. No installation is permitted to block or otherwise impede access to any existing machine or system. Install all hinged doors to swing open a minimum of 120 degrees. Provide an area in front of all access doors that clears a minimum of [3 feet](#). In front of all access doors to electrical circuits, clear the area the minimum distance to energized circuits as specified in OSHA Standards, part 1910.333 (Electrical-Safety Related work practices) and an additional [3 feet](#).
- c. Except as otherwise indicated, install emergency switches and alarms in conspicuous locations. Mount all indicators, to include gauges, meters, and alarms in order to be easily visible by people in the area.

#### 3.2.1 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide water seals in the condensate drain from all units . Provide a depth of each seal of [2 inches](#) plus [the number of inches, measured in water gauge](#), of the total static pressure rating of the unit to which the drain is connected. Provide water seals that are constructed of 2 tees and an appropriate U-bend with the open end of each tee plugged. Provide pipe cap or plug cleanouts where indicated. Connect drains indicated to connect to the sanitary waste system using an indirect waste fitting. Insulate air conditioner drain lines as specified in Section [23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS](#).

#### 3.2.2 Equipment and Installation

Provide frames and supports for tanks, compressors, pumps, valves, air handling units, fans, coils, dampers, and other similar items requiring supports. Floor mount or ceiling hang air handling units as indicated. Anchor and fasten as detailed. Set floor-mounted equipment on not less than [6 inch](#) concrete pads or curbs doweled in place unless otherwise indicated. Make concrete foundations heavy enough to minimize the intensity of the vibrations transmitted to the piping, duct work and the surrounding structure, as recommended in writing by the equipment manufacturer. In lieu of a concrete pad foundation, build a concrete pedestal block with isolators placed between the pedestal block and the floor. Make the concrete foundation or concrete pedestal block a mass not less than three times the weight of the components to be supported. Provide the lines connected to the pump mounted on pedestal blocks with flexible connectors. Submit foundation drawings as specified in paragraph [DETAIL DRAWINGS](#). Provide concrete for foundations as specified in Section [03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE](#).

#### 3.2.3 Insulation

Provide thickness and application of insulation materials for ductwork, piping, and equipment according to Section [23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS](#). Externally insulate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums .

#### 3.2.4 Power Transmission Components Adjustment

Test V-belts and sheaves for proper alignment and tension prior to operation and after 72 hours of operation at final speed. Uniformly load belts on drive side to prevent bouncing. Make alignment of direct driven couplings to within 50 percent of manufacturer's maximum allowable range of misalignment.

#### 3.3 EQUIPMENT PADS

Provide equipment pads to the dimensions shown or, if not shown, to conform to the shape of each piece of equipment served with a minimum 3-inch margin around the equipment and supports. Allow equipment bases and foundations, when constructed of concrete or grout, to cure a minimum of 28 calendar days before being loaded.

#### 3.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

Install work in such a manner and at such time that a minimum of cutting and patching of the building structure is required. Make holes in exposed locations, in or through existing floors, by drilling and smooth by sanding. Use of a jackhammer is permitted only where specifically approved. Make holes through masonry walls to accommodate sleeves with an iron pipe masonry core saw.

#### 3.5 CLEANING

Thoroughly clean surfaces of piping and equipment that have become covered with dirt, plaster, or other material during handling and construction before such surfaces are prepared for final finish painting or are enclosed within the building structure. Before final acceptance, clean mechanical equipment, including piping, ducting, and fixtures, and free from dirt, grease, and finger marks. When the work area is in an occupied space such as office, laboratory or warehouse protect all furniture and equipment from dirt and debris. Incorporate housekeeping for field construction work which leaves all furniture and equipment in the affected area free of construction generated dust and debris; and, all floor surfaces vacuum-swept clean.

#### 3.6 PENETRATIONS

Provide sleeves and prepared openings for duct mains, branches, and other penetrating items, and install during the construction of the surface to be penetrated. Cut sleeves flush with each surface. Place sleeves for round duct 15 inches and smaller. Build framed, prepared openings for round duct larger than 15 inches and square, rectangular or oval ducts. Sleeves and framed openings are also required where grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed at the openings. Provide one inch clearance between penetrating and penetrated surfaces except at grilles, registers, and diffusers. Pack spaces between sleeve or opening and duct or duct insulation with mineral fiber conforming with ASTM C553, Type 1, Class B-2.

##### 3.6.1 Framed Prepared Openings

Fabricate framed prepared openings from 20 gauge galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6.2 Insulation

Provide duct insulation in accordance with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Terminate duct insulation at fire dampers and flexible connections. For duct handling air at or below 60 degrees F, provide insulation continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air.

### 3.7 FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare metal on metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F. Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Provide aluminum or light gray finish coat.

#### 3.7.1 Temperatures less than 120 degrees F

Immediately after cleaning, apply one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat to metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F.

#### 3.7.2 Finish Painting

The requirements for finish painting of items only primed at the factory, and surfaces not specifically noted otherwise, are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

Provide identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and item number on all valves and dampers. Provide tags that are 1-3/8 inch minimum diameter with stamped or engraved markings. Make indentations black for reading clarity. Attach tags to valves with No. 12 AWG 0.0808-inch diameter corrosion-resistant steel wire, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

### 3.9 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

The requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC. Begin testing, adjusting, and balancing only when the air supply and distribution, including controls, has been completed, with the exception of performance tests.

#### 3.10 PERFORMANCE TESTS

Conduct performance tests as required in Section 23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC and Section 23 09 00 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

### 3.11 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Provide a temporary bypass for water coils to prevent flushing water from passing through coils. Inside of air terminal units, thoroughly clean ducts, plenums, and casing of debris and blow free of small particles of rubbish and dust and then vacuum clean before installing outlet faces. Wipe equipment clean, with no traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots. Provide temporary filters prior to startup of all fans that are operated during construction, and provide new filters after all construction dirt has been removed from the building, and the ducts, plenums, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. Perform and document that proper "[Indoor Air Quality During Construction](#)" procedures have been followed; provide documentation showing that after construction ends, and prior to occupancy, new filters were provided and installed. Maintain system in this clean condition until final acceptance. Properly lubricate bearings with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Tighten belts to proper tension. Adjust control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment to setting indicated or directed. Adjust fans to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. Maintain all equipment installed under the contract until close out documentation is received, the project is completed and the building has been documented as beneficially occupied.

### 3.12 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

#### 3.12.1 [Operation and Maintenance Manuals](#)

Submit six manuals at least 2 weeks prior to field training. Submit data complying with the requirements specified in Section [01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA](#). Submit Data Package 3 for the items/units listed under SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

#### 3.12.2 [Operation And Maintenance Training](#)

Conduct a training course for the members of the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. Make the training period consist of a total of 8 hours of normal working time and start it after all work specified herein is functionally completed and the Performance Tests have been approved. Conduct field instruction that covers all of the items contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations. Submit the proposed On-site Training schedule concurrently with the Operation and Maintenance Manuals and at least 14 days prior to conducting the training course.

### 3.13 TABLES

#### Table 1

TABLE I								
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS								
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C	SERVICE D	SERVICE E	SERVICE F	SERVICE G
8	Wrought copper grooved joint pressure fittings for non-ferrous pipe ASTM B75/B75M C12200, ASTM B152/B152M, C11000, ASME B16.22 ASME B16.22 for use with Item 5	X	X					
13	Cast copper alloy solder joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.18 for use with Item 14				X	X		X
14	Seamless copper pipe, ASTM B42						X	X
16	Copper drainage tube, (DWV), ASTM B306	X*	X	X*	X	X		X
17	Wrought copper and wrought alloy solder-joint drainage fittings. ASME B16.29	X	X	X	X	X		X

TABLE I								
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS								
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C	SERVICE D	SERVICE E	SERVICE F	SERVICE G
18	Cast copper alloy solder joint drainage fittings, DWV, <b>ASME B16.23</b>	X	X	X	X	X		X
20	Polyvinyl Chloride plastic drain, waste and vent pipe and fittings, <b>ASTM D2665</b> , <b>ASTM F891</b> , (Sch 40) <b>ASTM F1760</b>	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
<p>SERVICE:</p> <p>A - Underground Building Soil, Waste and Storm Drain</p> <p>B - Aboveground Soil, Waste, Drain In Buildings</p> <p>C - Underground Vent</p> <p>D - Aboveground Vent</p> <p>E - Interior Rainwater Conductors Aboveground</p> <p>F - Corrosive Waste And Vent Above And Belowground</p> <p>G - Condensate Drain Aboveground</p> <p>* - Hard Temper</p>								

Table 2

TABLE II					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C	SERVICE D
7	Seamless copper pipe, <b>ASTM B42</b>	X	X		X

TABLE II					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C	SERVICE D
8	Seamless copper water tube, ASTM B88, ASTM B88M	X**	X**	X**	X***
10	Wrought copper and bronze solder-joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.22 for use with Items 5, 7 and 8	X	X	X	X
11	Cast copper alloy solder-joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.18 for use with Item 8	X	X	X	X
19	Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic hot and cold water distribution system, ASTM D2846/D2846M	X	X		X
20	Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe, Schedule 40 and 80, ASTM F441/F441M	X	X		X
21	Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe (SDR-PR) ASTM F442/F442M	X	X		X
22	Threaded chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (chloride CPVC) plastic pipe fittings, Schedule 80, ASTM F437, for use with Items 20, and 21	X	X		X
23	Socket-type chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe fittings, Schedule 40, ASTM F438 for use with Items 20, 21, and 22	X	X		X
24	Socket-type chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe fittings Schedule 80, ASTM F439 for use with Items 20, 21, and 22	X	X		X
25	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120, ASTM D1785	X			X



TABLE II					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE C	SERVICE D
26	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pressure-rated pipe (SDR Series), ASTM D2241	X			X
27	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe fittings, Schedule 40, ASTM D2466	X			X
28	Socket-type polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe fittings, schedule 80, ASTM D2467 for use with Items 26 and 27	X			X
29	Threaded polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe fittings, schedule 80, ASTM D2464	X			X
30	Joints for IPS PVC pipe using solvent cement, ASTM D2672	X			X
38	Press Fittings	X	X		
	SERVICE: A - Cold Water Service Aboveground B - Hot and Cold Water Distribution 180 degrees F Maximum Aboveground C - Compressed Air Lubricated D - Cold Water Service Belowground Indicated types are minimum wall thicknesses. ** - Type L - Hard *** - Type K - Hard temper with brazed joints only or type K-soft temper without joints in or under floors **** - In or under slab floors only brazed joints				

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 81 00

DECENTRALIZED UNITARY HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, applies to this section with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 350 (2015) Sound Rating of Non-Ducted Indoor Air-Conditioning Equipment

AHRI 700 (2016) Specifications for Fluorocarbon Refrigerants

AHRI DCAACP (Online) Directory of Certified Applied Air-Conditioning Products

ANSI/AHRI 210/240 (2008; Add 1 2011; Add 2 2012) Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning & Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment

ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380 (2014) Standard for Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34 (2013) ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15-Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems and ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 34-Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants

ASHRAE 15 & 34 (2013) ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems/ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants-ASHRAE Standard 34-2016

ASHRAE 52.2 (2017) Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size

ASHRAE 55 (2010) Thermal Environmental Conditions

for Human Occupancy

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME BPVC SEC IX (2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications

ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 (2019) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS Z49.1 (2012) Safety in Welding and Cutting and Allied Processes

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM C1071 (2019) Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material)

ASTM D520 (2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment

ASTM E84 (2020) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2018) Motors and Generators

NEMA MG 2 (2014) Safety Standard for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Use of Electric Motors and Generators

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA 20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA 20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14; TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022) National Electrical Code

NFPA 90A (2021) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-DTL-5541 (2006; Rev F) Chemical Conversion Coatings  
on Aluminum and Aluminum Alloys

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 586 (2009; Reprint Dec 2017) UL Standard for  
Safety High-Efficiency Particulate, Air  
Filter Units

UL 900 (2015) Standard for Air Filter Units

UL 1995 (2015) UL Standard for Safety Heating and  
Cooling Equipment

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G"  
classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for  
Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a code following the "G"  
classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for  
the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00  
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Spare Parts

Posted Instructions

Coil Corrosion Protection

System Performance Tests

Training; G, RO

Inventory

Supplied Products

Manufacturer's Standard Catalog Data

SD-06 Test Reports

Refrigerant Tests, Charging, and Start-Up; G, RO

System Performance Tests; G, RO

SD-07 Certificates

Service Organizations

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G, RO

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Ozone Depleting Substances: S, RO

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Carefully investigate the plumbing, fire protection, electrical, structural and finish conditions that would affect the work to be performed and arrange such work accordingly, furnishing required offsets, fittings, and accessories to meet such conditions. Submit drawings consisting of:

- a. Equipment layouts which identify assembly and installation details.
- b. Plans and elevations which identify clearances required for maintenance and operation.
- c. Wiring diagrams which identify each component individually and interconnected or interlocked relationships between components.
- d. Foundation drawings, bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations.
- e. Details, if piping and equipment are to be supported other than as indicated, which include loadings and type of frames, brackets, stanchions, or other supports.
- f. Automatic temperature control diagrams and control sequences.
- g. Installation details which includes the amount of factory set superheat and corresponding refrigerant pressure/temperature.
- h. Equipment schedules

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored items from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Properly protect and care for all material both before and during installation. Submit an [inventory](#) of all the stored items. Replace any materials found to be damaged, at no additional cost to the Government. During installation, cap piping and similar openings capped to keep out dirt and other foreign matter.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

For proper Indoor Environmental Quality, maintain pressure within the building as indicated. Ventilation must meet or exceed [ASHRAE 62.1](#) and all published addenda. Meet or exceed filter media efficiency as tested in accordance with [ASHRAE 52.2](#). Thermal comfort must meet or exceed [ASHRAE 55](#).

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide equipment with the Manufacturer's Standard Warranty.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ENERGY EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

42 USC 8259b requires the procurement of energy efficient products in product categories covered by the Energy Star program or the Federal Energy Management Program for designated products. A list of covered product categories is available from the Federal Energy Management Web site at <http://energy.gov/eere/femp/covered-product-categories>.

Submit Material, Equipment, and Fixtures List of all [supplied products](#) within a covered product category, including manufacturer's catalog numbers, specification and drawing reference number, warranty information, fabrication site, and energy performance data. For product categories covered by the Federal Energy Management Program, submit documentation that the product meets or exceeds FEMP-designated efficiency requirements.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

Provide [Manufacturer's standard catalog data](#), at least 5 weeks prior to the purchase or installation of a particular component, highlighted to show material, size, options, performance charts and curves, etc. in adequate detail to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Data includes manufacturer's recommended installation instructions and procedures. If vibration isolation is specified for a unit, include vibration isolator literature containing catalog cuts and certification that the isolation characteristics of the isolators provided meet the manufacturer's recommendations. Submit data for each specified component. Minimum efficiency requirements must be in accordance with [ASHRAE 90.1 - IP](#).

#### 2.2.1 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. The standard products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2 year use includes applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The 2 years' experience must be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturer's catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2 year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. Products must be supported by a service organization. Ensure system components are environmentally suitable for the indicated geographic locations.

#### 2.2.2 Product Sustainability Criteria

##### 2.2.2.1 Energy Efficient Equipment

Provide equipment meeting the efficiency requirements as stated within this section and provide documentation in conformance with Section [01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING](#) paragraph ENERGY EFFICIENT EQUIPMENT.

#### 2.2.2.2 Electrical Equipment / Motors

Provide electrical equipment, motors, motor efficiencies, and wiring which are in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Electrical motor driven equipment specified must be provided complete with motors, motor starters, and controls. Electrical characteristics must be as shown, and unless otherwise indicated, all motors of 1 horsepower and above with open, dripproof, totally enclosed, or explosion proof fan cooled enclosures, must be the premium efficiency type in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Field wiring must be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Each motor must conform to NEMA MG 1 and NEMA MG 2 and be of sufficient size to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Motors must be continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Motor starters must be provided complete with thermal overload protection and other appurtenances necessary for the motor control indicated. Motors must be furnished with a magnetic across-the-line or reduced voltage type starter as required by the manufacturer. Motor duty requirements must allow for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Motors must be sized for the applicable loads. Motor torque must be capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Motor bearings must be fitted with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of enclosure. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, must be provided.

#### 2.2.2.3 Ozone Depleting Substances

Unitary air conditioning equipment must not use CFC-based refrigerants. Refrigerant may be an approved alternative refrigerant in accordance with EPA's Significant New Alternative Policy (SNAP) listing. Provide documentation in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING paragraph OZONE DEPLETING SUBSTANCES.

#### 2.2.2.4 Local/Regional Materials

Use materials or products extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within a 500 mileradius from the project site, if available from a minimum of three sources.

#### 2.2.3 Nameplates

Major equipment including compressors, condensers, receivers, heat exchanges, fans, and motors must have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number on a plate secured to the item of equipment. Plates must be durable and legible throughout equipment life and made of anodized aluminum. Fix plates in prominent locations with nonferrous screws or bolts.

#### 2.2.4 Safety Devices

Exposed moving parts, parts that produce high operating temperature, parts which may be electrically energized, and parts that may be a hazard to operating personnel must be insulated, fully enclosed, guarded, or fitted with other types of safety devices. Safety devices must be installed so that proper operation of equipment is not impaired. Welding and cutting safety requirements must be in accordance with AWS Z49.1.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

### 2.3.1 Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps

#### 2.3.1.1 Packaged Terminal Unit

Provide a vertical , wall mounted, heavy-duty commercial grade, factory assembled and precharged heat pump unit in accordance with ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380 and UL 1995. Provide units listed in AHRI DCAACP. Provide unit with a noise rating in accordance with AHRI 350 that does not exceed 85 dB while the entire unit is operating at any fan or compressor speed. Heat pump units must contain a reversing valve to change unit to heating cycle. Provide an outdoor coil temperature sensor to guard against coil freeze-up by either switching to supplemental heat only, or by cycling the compressor to defrost the coil. Provide Heat pumps with a minimum seasonal energy efficiency ratio (EER) of 11, .

#### 2.3.1.2 Compressor

Provide a hermetically sealed reciprocating type Compressor. Provide compressor with permanent split capacitor motor, overload protection, and vibration isolators. Protect compressor against high discharge pressure, loss of charge, low voltage, and short cycling.

#### 2.3.1.3 Air to Refrigerant Coils

Provide evaporator and condenser coils with nonferrous copper or aluminum tubes of 3/8 inch minimum diameter with copper or aluminum fins that are mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Protect coil in accordance with paragraph COIL CORROSION PROTECTION. Provide casing of galvanized steel or aluminum. Avoid contact of dissimilar metals. Test coils in accordance with ASHRAE 15 & 34 at the factory and ensure they are suitable for the working pressure of the installed system. Dehydrate and seal each coil after testing and prior to evaluation and charging. Provide each unit with a factory operating charge of refrigerant and oil. Provide a condensate removal system.

#### 2.3.1.4 Fans

Provide direct driven, statically and dynamically balanced, centrifugal or propeller type fans. Design the outdoor fan so that condensate will evaporate without drip, splash, or spray on building exterior. Provide indoor fan with a minimum two-speed motor with built-in overload protection. Fan motors must be the inherently protected, permanent split-capacitor type.

#### 2.3.1.5 Air Filters

Provide standard filter on all packaged terminal units; 2 inch MERV 8 13, throwaway filter capable of filtering the entire air supply.

#### 2.3.1.6 Primary/Supplemental Heat

Provide heating unit with internal thermal insulation having a fire hazard rating not to exceed 25 for flame spread and 50 for smoke developed as determined by ASTM E84.



#### 2.3.1.6.1 Electric Heating

Provide electric duct heater in accordance with [UL 1995](#) and [NFPA 70](#). Coil must be completely assembled, unit-mounted, and integral to the unit. Provide coil with nickel chromium elements and a maximum density of [40 watts per square inch](#). Provide coil with automatic reset high limit control operating through heater backup contactors. Provide coil casing and support brackets of galvanized steel or aluminum. Mount coil to eliminate noise from expansion and contraction and be completely accessible for service. Electric resistance heating elements with high temperature-limit safety device, factory-mounted, and wired to chassis.

#### 2.3.1.7 Cabinet Construction

Provide cabinet free of visible fasteners, sharp protuberances and edges. Enclosure sheet metal must be a minimum of [18 gauge](#) steel with a protective coating. Provide removable face panels and allow full access to unit appurtenances. Access to controls must be without removal of the face panel. Discharge conditioned air through adjustable louvers. Thermally and acoustically insulate the cabinet with materials which conform to [NFPA 90A](#). Furnish units with a prewired subbase that has leveling screws with provisions for remote unit control. Subbase must be of [18 gauge](#) galvanized steel construction with a protective coating to match that of the room cabinet. Paint and finishes must comply with the requirements specified in paragraph EQUIPMENT AND COMPONENTS FACTORY COATING.

#### 2.3.1.8 Louver

Provide storm proof type Louver, constructed of anodized, stamped or extruded aluminum.

#### 2.3.1.9 Ventilation Damper Assembly

Operated by automatic actuator. Dampers must close on unit shutdown or loss of power and open on heating or cooling start-up. Dampers must have a maximum leakage rate of [3 CFM/ft<sup>2</sup> at 1 inch w.g.](#) static pressure.

#### 2.3.1.10 Wall Sleeve

Provide water and airtight completely insulated assembly, with weather-resistant protective coating.

#### 2.3.1.11 Unit Controls

Controls must include an on-off switch, high and low selector switch for both the heating and cooling mode, multiple speed fan cooling and heating mode, room air fan switch, outside air damper control, and an adjustable cooling and heating thermostat. Function and temperature controls must be remotely mounted as indicated or as accepted by the Contracting Officer.

### 2.3.2 Mini-Split-System Air Conditioners Heat Pumps

#### 2.3.2.1 Small-Capacity Split-System Air-Conditioners (Not Exceeding [65,000 Btu/hr](#))

Provide an air-cooled, split system which employs a remote condensing unit, a separate ceiling mounted indoor unit, and interconnecting refrigerant piping. Provide the heat pump type unit conforming to applicable Underwriters Laboratories (UL) standards including [UL 1995](#).

Unit must be rated in accordance with ANSI/AHRI 210/240. Provide indoor unit with necessary fans, air filters, and galvanized steel cabinet construction. The remote unit must be as specified in paragraph CONDENSING UNIT. Provide double-width, double inlet, forward curved backward inclined, or airfoil blade, centrifugal scroll type evaporator or supply fans. Provide the manufacturer's standard condenser or outdoor fans for the unit specified and may be either propeller or centrifugal scroll type. Fan and condenser motors must have totally enclosed enclosures. Design unit to operate at outdoor ambient temperatures up to 115 degrees F.

#### 2.3.2.1.1 Energy Efficiency

Provide unit with an Energy Star label. Air Conditioners must have a minimum seasonal energy efficiency ratio (EER) of 14,

#### 2.3.2.1.2 Air-to-Refrigerant Coil

Provide condensing coils with copper or aluminum tubes of 3/8 inch minimum diameter with copper or aluminum fins that are mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Casing must be galvanized steel or aluminum. Avoid contact of dissimilar metals. Test coils in accordance with ASHRAE 15 & 34 at the factory and ensure suitability for the working pressure of the installed system. Dehydrate and seal each coil testing and prior to evaluation and charging.

Coat condenser and evaporator coil with a uniformly applied epoxy electrodeposition, phenolic, or vinyl type coating to all coil surface areas without material bridging between fins. Apply coating at either the coil or coating manufacturer's factory. Coating process must ensure complete coil encapsulation and be capable of withstanding a minimum 1,000 hours exposure to the salt spray test specified in ASTM B117 using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution.

#### 2.3.2.1.3 Compressor

Provide direct drive variable speed type compressor. Provide compressor with internal over temperature and pressure protector; sump heater; oil pump; high pressure and low pressure controls; and liquid line dryer.

#### 2.3.2.1.4 Refrigeration Circuit

Refrigerant-containing components must comply with ASHRAE 15 & 34 and be factory tested, cleaned, dehydrated, charged, and sealed. Provide each unit with a factory operating charge of refrigerant and oil or a holding charge. Field charge unit shipped with a holding charge. Provide refrigerant charging valves. Provide filter-drier in liquid line to prevent freeze-up in event of loss of water flow during heating cycle.

#### 2.3.2.1.5 Unit Controls

Provide unit internally prewired with a 24 volt control circuit powered by an internal transformer. Provide terminal blocks for power wiring and external control wiring. Internally protect unit by fuses or a circuit breaker in accordance with UL 1995. Equip units with three-phase power with phase monitoring protection to protect against problems caused by phase loss, phase imbalance and phase reversal. Provide unit with microprocessor controls to provide all 24V control functions. one stage heating/cooling thermostat with automatic changeover.

#### 2.3.2.1.6 Condensing Coil

Provide coils with nonferrous copper or aluminum tubes of 3/8 inch minimum diameter with copper or aluminum fins that are mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Protect coil in accordance with paragraph CORROSION PROTECTION. Provide galvanized steel or aluminum casing. Avoid contact of dissimilar metals. Test coils in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34 at the factory and ensure suitability for the working pressure of the installed system. Dehydrate and seal each coil after testing and prior to evaluation and charging. Provide separate expansion devices for each compressor circuit.

#### 2.3.2.1.7 Air Filters

Provide filters of the cleanable type that are capable of filtering the entire air supply. Mount filter(s) integral within the unit and make accessible. 1 inch MERV 813, provide throwaway filter on all units below 6 Tons.

Provide filter rack that can be converted to 2.0 inch capability. Filters must have an average dust spot efficiency of 90-95 percent and an average arrestance of 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2. Provide UL Class 1 filters.

### 2.4 COMPONENTS

#### 2.4.1 Refrigerant and Oil

Refrigerant must be one of the fluorocarbon gases. Refrigerants must have number designations and safety classifications in accordance with ASHRAE 15 & 34. Refrigerants must meet the requirements of AHRI 700 as a minimum. Provide a complete charge of refrigerant for the installed system as recommended by the manufacturer. Lubricating oil must be of a type and grade recommended by the manufacturer for each compressor. Where color leak indicator dye is incorporated, charge must be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.

#### 2.4.2 Fans

Fan wheel shafts must be supported by either maintenance-accessible lubricated antifriction block-type bearings, or permanently lubricated ball bearings. Unit fans must be selected to produce the cfm required at the fan total pressure. Motor starters, if applicable, must be magnetic across-the-line type with a totally enclosed enclosure. Thermal overload protection must be of the manual or automatic-reset type. Fan wheels or propellers must be constructed of aluminum or galvanized steel. Centrifugal fan wheel housings must be of galvanized steel, and both centrifugal and propeller fan casings must be constructed of aluminum or galvanized steel. Steel elements of fans, except fan shafts, must be hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication or fabricated of mill galvanized steel. Mill-galvanized steel surfaces and edges damaged or cut during fabrication by forming, punching, drilling, welding, or cutting must be recoated with an approved zinc-rich compound. Fan wheels or propellers must be statically and dynamically balanced. Direct-drive fan motors must be of the multiple-speed variety. The sheave size must be selected so that the fan speed at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment will produce the specified air quantity. Centrifugal scroll-type fans must be provided with streamlined orifice inlet and V-belt drive. Each drive will be independent of any other drive. Propeller fans must be

direct-drive drive type with fixed pitch blades. V-belt driven fans must be mounted on a corrosion protected drive shaft supported by either maintenance-accessible lubricated antifriction block-type bearings, or permanently lubricated ball bearings. Each drive will be independent of any other drive. Drive bearings must be protected with water slingers or shields. V-belt drives must be fitted with guards where exposed to contact by personnel and fixed pitch sheaves.

#### 2.4.3 Primary/Supplemental Heating

##### 2.4.3.1 Electric Heating Coil

Coil must be an electric duct heater in accordance with [UL 1995](#) and [NFPA 70](#). Coil must be duct- or unit-mounted. Coil must be of the nickel chromium resistor, single stage, strip type. Coil must be provided with a built-in or surface-mounted high-limit thermostat interlocked electrically so that the coil cannot be energized unless the fan is energized. Coil casing and support brackets must be of galvanized steel or aluminum. Coil must be mounted to eliminate noise from expansion and contraction and be completely accessible for service. Supplemental Electric Resistance Heating controls must be provided to prevent operation when the heating load can be met by the primary source.

#### 2.4.4 Air Filters

Provide filters to filter outside air and return air and locate inside air conditioners. Provide replaceable (throw-away) high efficiency type. Filters must conform to [UL 900](#), Class 1 or Class 2. Polyurethane filters cannot be used on units with multiframe filters.

Air filters must be listed in accordance with requirements of [UL 900](#), except high efficiency particulate air filters of 99.97 percent efficiency by the DOP Test Method must be as listed under the label service and must meet the requirements of [UL 586](#).

##### 2.4.4.1 High Efficiency Filters

Filters must have a MERV of 17 when tested in accordance with [ASHRAE 52.2](#). Filter assembly must include; holding frame and fastener assembly, filter cartridge, mounting frame, and retainer assembly. Reinforce filter media with glass fiber mat. Pressure drop across clean filter shall not exceed [0.5 inches of water gage](#). Precede high efficiency filters with a UL Class 2 replaceable type filter.

#### 2.4.5 Coil Frost Protection

Provide each circuit with a manufacturer's standard coil frost protection system. The coil frost protection system must use a temperature sensor in the suction line of the compressor to shut the compressor off when coil frosting occurs. Use timers to prevent the compressor from rapid cycling.

#### 2.4.6 Mixing Boxes

Mixing boxes must match the base unit in physical size and must include equally-sized openings, each capable of full air flow. Arrangement must be as indicated.

#### 2.4.7 Cabinet Construction

Casings for the specified unitary equipment must be constructed of galvanized steel or aluminum sheet metal and galvanized or aluminum structural members. Minimum thickness of single wall exterior surfaces must be 18 gauge galvanized steel or 0.071 inch thick aluminum on units with a capacity above 20 tons and 20 gauge galvanized steel or 0.064 inch thick aluminum on units with a capacity less than 20 tons. Casing must be fitted with lifting provisions, access panels or doors, fan vibration isolators, electrical control panel, corrosion-resistant components, structural support members, insulated condensate drip pan and drain, and internal insulation in the cold section of the casing. Where double-wall insulated construction is proposed, minimum exterior galvanized sheet metal thickness must be 20 gauge. Provisions to permit replacement of major unit components must be incorporated. Penetrations of cabinet surfaces, including the floor, must be sealed. Unit must be fitted with a drain pan which extends under all areas where water may accumulate. Drain pan must be fabricated from Type 300 stainless steel, galvanized steel with protective coating as required, or an approved plastic material. Pan insulation must be water impervious. Extent and effectiveness of the insulation of unit air containment surfaces must prevent, within limits of the specified insulation, heat transfer between the unit exterior and ambient air, heat transfer between the two conditioned air streams, and condensation on surfaces. Insulation must conform to ASTM C1071. Paint and finishes must comply with the requirements specified in paragraph FACTORY COATING.

##### 2.4.7.1 Indoor Cabinet

Indoor cabinets must be suitable for the specified indoor service and enclose all unit components.

##### 2.4.7.2 Outdoor Cabinet

Outdoor cabinets must be suitable for outdoor service with a weathertight, insulated and corrosion-protected structure. Cabinets constructed exclusively for indoor service which have been modified for outdoor service are not acceptable.

#### 2.4.8 Refrigerant Piping

Provide refrigerant piping in accordance with Section 23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING.

#### 2.4.9 Condensate Drain Piping

provide condensate drain piping in accordance with Section 23 05 15 COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC.

### 2.5 FINISHES

#### 2.5.1 Coil Corrosion Protection

Provide coil with a uniformly applied epoxy electrodeposition, phenolic, or vinyl type coating to all coil surface areas without material bridging between fins. Submit product data on the type coating selected, the coating thickness, the application process used, the estimated heat

transfer loss of the coil, and verification of conformance with the salt spray test requirement. Coating must be applied at either the coil or coating manufacturer's factory. Coating process must ensure complete coil encapsulation. Coating must be capable of withstanding a minimum 1,000 hours exposure to the salt spray test specified in [ASTM B117](#) using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution.

## 2.5.2 Equipment and Components Factory Coating

Unless otherwise specified, equipment and component items, when fabricated from ferrous metal, must be factory finished with the manufacturer's standard finish, except that items located outside of buildings must have weather resistant finishes that will withstand 500 hours exposure to the salt spray test specified in [ASTM B117](#) using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution. Immediately after completion of the test, the specimen must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, cracking, or loss of adhesion and no sign of rust creepage beyond [1/8 inch](#) on either side of the scratch mark. Cut edges of galvanized surfaces where hot-dip galvanized sheet steel is used must be coated with a zinc-rich coating conforming to [ASTM D520](#), Type I.

Where stipulated in equipment specifications of this section, coat finned tube coils of the affected equipment as specified below. Apply coating at the premises of a company specializing in such work. Degrease and prepare for coating in accordance with the coating applicator's procedures for the type of metals involved. Completed coating must show no evidence of softening, blistering, cracking, crazing, flaking, loss of adhesion, or "bridging" between the fins.

### 2.5.2.1 Chemical Conversion Coating with Polyelastomer Finish Coat

Dip coils in a chemical conversion solution to molecularly deposit a corrosion resistant coating by electrolysis action. Chemical conversion coatings must conform to [MIL-DTL-5541](#), Class 1A. Cure conversion coating at a temperature of [110 to 140 degrees F](#) for a minimum of 3 hours. Coat coil surfaces with a complex polymer primer with a dry film thickness of [1 mil](#). Cure primer coat for a minimum of 1 hour. Using dip tank method, provide three coats of a complex polyelastomer finish coat. After each of the first two finish coats, cure the coils for 1 hour. Following the third coat, spray a fog coat of an inert sealer on the coil surfaces. Total dry film thickness must be [2.5 to 3.0 mils](#). Cure finish coat for a minimum of 3 hours. Coating materials must have 300 percent flexibility, operate in temperatures of minus [50 to plus 220 degrees F](#), and protect against atmospheres of a pH range of 1 to 14.

### 2.5.2.2 Vinyl Coating

Apply coating using an airless fog nozzle. For each coat, make at least two passes with the nozzle. Materials to be applied are as follows:

- a. Total dry film thickness, [6.5 mils](#) maximum
- b. Vinyl Primer, 24 percent solids by volume: One coat [2 mils](#) thick
- c. Vinyl Copolymer, 30 percent solids by volume: One coat [4.5 mils](#) thick

## 2.5.3 Factory Applied Insulation

Refrigeration equipment must be provided with factory installed insulation

on surfaces subject to sweating including the suction line piping. Where motors are the gas-cooled type, factory installed insulation must be provided on the cold-gas inlet connection to the motor in accordance with manufacturer's standard practice. Factory insulated items installed outdoors are not required to be fire-rated. As a minimum, factory insulated items installed indoors must have a flame spread index no higher than 75 and a smoke developed index no higher than 150. Factory insulated items (no jacket) installed indoors and which are located in air plenums, in ceiling spaces, and in attic spaces must have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50. Flame spread and smoke developed indexes must be determined by [ASTM E84](#). Insulation must be tested in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Material supplied by a manufacturer with a jacket must be tested as a composite material. Jackets, facings, and adhesives must have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

## 2.6 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

All manufactured units must be inspected and tested, and documentation provided to demonstrate that each unit is in compliance with ANSI/AHRI and UL requirements and that the minimum efficiency requirements of [ASHRAE 90.1 - IP](#) have been met.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, perform Verification of Dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

Perform work in accordance with the manufacturer's published diagrams, recommendations, and equipment warranty requirements. Where equipment is specified to conform to the requirements of [ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1](#) and [ASME BPVC SEC IX](#), the design, fabrication, and installation of the system must conform to [ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1](#) and [ASME BPVC SEC IX](#).

#### 3.2.1 Equipment

Provide refrigeration equipment conforming to [ASHRAE 15 & 34](#). Provide necessary supports for all equipment, appurtenances, and pipe as required, including frames or supports for compressors, pumps, cooling towers, condensers, and similar items. Isolate compressors from the building structure. If mechanical vibration isolators are not provided, provide vibration absorbing foundations. Each foundation must include isolation units consisting of machine and floor or foundation fastenings, together with intermediate isolation material. Other floor-mounted equipment must be set on not less than a [6 inch](#) concrete pad doweled in place. Concrete foundations for floor mounted pumps must have a mass equivalent to three times the weight of the components, pump, base plate, and motor to be supported. In lieu of concrete pad foundation, concrete pedestal block with isolators placed between the pedestal block and the floor may be provided. Concrete pedestal block must be of mass not less than three times the combined pump, motor, and base weights. Isolators must be selected and sized based on load-bearing requirements and the lowest

frequency of vibration to be isolated. Isolators must limit vibration to 10 percent at lowest equipment rpm. Provide lines connected to pumps mounted on pedestal blocks with flexible connectors. Provide foundation drawings, bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Concrete for foundations must be as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Equipment must be properly leveled, aligned, and secured in place in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.2.2 Field Applied Insulation

Apply field applied insulation as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS, except as defined differently herein.

### 3.2.3 Field Painting

Painting required for surfaces not otherwise specified, and finish painting of items only primed at the factory are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

## 3.3 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Equipment must be wiped clean, with all traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots removed. Temporary filters must be provided for all fans that are operated during construction, and new filters must be installed after all construction dirt has been removed from the building. System must be maintained in this clean condition until final acceptance. Bearings must be properly lubricated with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Belts must be tightened to proper tension. Control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment must be adjusted to setting indicated or directed. Fans must be adjusted to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. Testing, adjusting, and balancing must be as specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS.

## 3.4 TRAINING

Conduct a training course for the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period must consist of a total 8 hours of normal working time and start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests.

- a. Submit a schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the date of the proposed training course, which identifies the date, time, and location for the training.
- b. Submit the field [posted instructions](#), at least 2 weeks prior to construction completion, including equipment layout, wiring and control diagrams, piping, valves and control sequences, and typed condensed operation instructions. The condensed operation instructions must include preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal and safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system. The posted instructions must be framed under glass or laminated plastic and be posted where indicated by the Contracting Officer.
- c. The posted instructions must cover all of the items contained in the approved [operation and maintenance manuals](#) as well as demonstrations



of routine maintenance operations.

- d. Submit 6 complete copies of maintenance manual in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and a trouble shooting guide. The manuals must include piping and equipment layouts and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed.

### 3.5 REFRIGERANT TESTS, CHARGING, AND START-UP

Split-system refrigerant piping systems must be tested and charged as specified in Section 23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING. Packaged refrigerant systems which are factory charged must be checked for refrigerant and oil capacity to verify proper refrigerant levels in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Following charging, packaged systems must be tested for leaks with a halide torch or an electronic leak detector.

- a. The date the tests were performed.
- b. A list of equipment used, with calibration certifications.
- c. Initial test summaries.
- d. Repairs/adjustments performed.
- e. Final test results.

#### 3.5.1 Refrigerant Leakage

If a refrigerant leak is discovered after the system has been charged, the leaking portion of the system must immediately be isolated from the remainder of the system and the refrigerant pumped into the system receiver or other suitable container. Under no circumstances must the refrigerant be discharged into the atmosphere.

#### 3.5.2 Contractor's Responsibility

Take steps, at all times during the installation and testing of the refrigeration system, to prevent the release of refrigerants into the atmosphere. The steps must include, but not be limited to, procedures which will minimize the release of refrigerants to the atmosphere and the use of refrigerant recovery devices to remove refrigerant from the system and store the refrigerant for reuse or reclaim. At no time must more than 3 ounces of refrigerant be released to the atmosphere in any one occurrence. Any system leaks within the first year must be repaired in accordance with the requirements herein at no cost to the Government including material, labor, and refrigerant if the leak is the result of defective equipment, material, or installation.

### 3.6 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE TESTS

Before each refrigeration system is accepted, conduct tests to demonstrate the general operating characteristics of all equipment by a registered professional engineer or an approved manufacturer's start-up representative experienced in system start-up and testing, at such times as directed. Six copies of the report provided in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets. The report must document compliance with the specified performance criteria upon completion and testing of the system. The report must indicate the number of days covered by the tests and any conclusions as to the adequacy of the system.

For equipment providing heating and cooling the system performance tests must be performed during the heating and cooling seasons.

- a. Submit a schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing, for the system performance tests. The schedules must identify the proposed date, time, and location for each test. Tests must cover a period of not less than 48 hours for each system and must demonstrate that the entire system is functioning in accordance with the drawings and specifications.
- b. Make corrections and adjustments, as necessary, tests must be re-conducted to demonstrate that the entire system is functioning as specified. Prior to acceptance, install and tighten service valve seal caps and blanks over gauge points. Replace any refrigerant lost during the system startup.
- c. If tests do not demonstrate satisfactory system performance, correct deficiencies and retest the system. Conduct tests in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Water and electricity required for the tests will be furnished by the Government. Provide all material, equipment, instruments, and personnel required for the test.
- d. Coordinate field tests with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS. Submit 6 copies of the report provided in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets. The report must document compliance with the specified performance criteria upon completion and testing of the system. The report must indicate the number of days covered by the tests and any conclusions as to the adequacy of the system. Submit the report including the following information (where values are taken at least three different times at outside dry-bulb temperatures that are at least 5 degrees F apart):
  - (1) Date and outside weather conditions.
  - (2) The load on the system based on the following:
    - (a) The refrigerant used in the system.
    - (b) Condensing temperature and pressure.
    - (c) Suction temperature and pressure.
    - (d) Ambient, condensing and coolant temperatures.
    - (e) Running current, voltage and proper phase sequence for each phase of all motors.
  - (3) The actual on-site setting of operating and safety controls.
  - (4) Thermostatic expansion valve superheat - value as determined by field test.
  - (5) Subcooling.
  - (6) High and low refrigerant temperature switch set-points
  - (7) Low oil pressure switch set-point.
  - (8) Defrost system timer and thermostat set-points.
  - (9) Moisture content.
  - (10) Capacity control set-points.
  - (11) Field data and adjustments which affect unit performance and

energy consumption.

- (12) Field adjustments and settings which were not permanently marked as an integral part of a device.

### 3.7 MAINTENANCE

#### 3.7.1 EXTRA MATERIALS

Submit [spare parts](#) data for each different item of equipment specified, after approval of detail drawings and not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Include in the data a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, a recommended spare parts list for 1 year of operation, and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced on a routine basis.

#### 3.7.2 Maintenance Service

Submit a certified list of qualified permanent [service organizations](#), which includes their addresses and qualifications, for support of the equipment. The service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and be able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 82 46.00 40

ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 GENERAL

Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM applies to work specified in this section.

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1996

(2009; Reprint Aug 2020) UL Standard for  
Safety Electric Duct Heaters

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Preinstallation Meetings

The Contracting Officer will schedule a preinstallation meeting within 30 days of Contract Award. Provide the following for review and approval:

- a. Submit [fabrication drawings](#) for electric heaters, indicating the fabrication and assembly details to be performed in the factory.
- b. Submit [manufacturer's instructions](#) for electric heaters, stating the special provisions necessary to install equipment components and system packages. Detail the impedances, hazards and safety precautions within the special notices.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

[Fabrication Drawings](#)

[SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Performance Data](#); G, RO

[Electric Unit Heaters](#); G, RO

[Heating Element](#); G, RO

[Controls](#); G, RO

Casings; G, RO

Propellers and Motors; G, RO

## SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

### Manufacturer's Instructions

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide suspended electric unit heaters, and arrange for the discharge of air as indicated.

Provide electric unit heaters with at least the indicated capacity and ensure that they conform to the requirements specified herein. Ensure that the electric unit heaters are factory-prewired and ready for field terminal connections.

Ensure products conform to the requirements of **UL 1996** for **electric unit heaters**.

Submit **performance data** for electric heaters, including use life, test, system functional flows, safety features, and mechanical automated details.

### 2.2 COMPONENTS

#### 2.2.1 Heating Element

Provide a heating element constructed of a resistance wire insulated by highly compacted refractory insulation protected by a sealed metallic-finned sheath. Provide component materials as follows:

- a. Provide a resistance wire of not less than 20-helix wound alloy of approximately 80-percent nickel and 20-percent chromium.
- b. Provide a refractory insulation of magnesium oxide with a resistance of not less than 50,000 ohms after exposure to an ambient temperature and humidity of **90 degrees F** and 85 plus or minus 5-percent relative humidity, respectively, for not less than 24 hours.
- c. Provide a sheathing consisting of aluminum fins cast around an internal steel sheath containing refractory insulation and resistance wire or carbon-steel fins permanently attached to a tubular carbon-steel sheath containing refractory insulation and resistance wire and with external surfaces porcelainized.

#### 2.2.2 Controls

Provide wall-mounted thermostats complete with thermometer, mechanical high-limit stop, calibrated operator, and an adjustable heater to prevent override of space temperature with a range between **55 and 105 degrees F** and a differential not exceeding **1.5 degrees F**. Provide a thermostat rated for operation at 24 volts, 60 hertz. Provide transformers, wiring, and devices necessary to meet this requirement. Provide a casing finish in brushed chrome.

### 2.2.3 Propellers and Motors

Provide propellers with galvanized-steel or all-aluminum blades statically and dynamically balanced to within 0.5 percent. Provide units with fan-inlet safety guards.

Ensure that propellers and motors are AMCA-certified for air performance and noise level.

Protect motors against damage by the heating element and resilient mount.

Ensure that propellers and motors conform to Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM for motors, except that load-matched and custom-designed motors may be used and be so identified on the shop drawings. For motors not so identified, conform to the requirements specified.

Subfractional and fractional custom-designed or applied motors may deviate from the preceding motor requirements as follows:

- a. Shaded-pole motors rated less than 1/6 horsepower may be used for direct-drive service.
- b. Permanent split-capacitor, split-phase, and capacitor-start motors rated 1/4 horsepower or less may be used for direct-drive service.
- c. Split-phase and capacitor-start motors, rated 1/4 horsepower or less, may be used for belt-drive service.
- d. Motor bearings may be the manufacturer's standard prelubricated sleeve type but provide the motor with antifriction thrust bearings, when specified. Ensure that the lubricant provisions are for extended service, requiring replenishment not more than twice per year of continuous operation.

Provide the manufacturer's standard motor identification plate.

Provide the manufacturer's standard motor speed and control.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Install unit heaters in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at the mounting heights indicated.

#### 3.1.1 Casings

Provide casings with smoothly contoured propeller orifice rings of at least 20-gage cold-rolled carbon steel. Provide a casing surface finish with phosphate pretreatment, prime coating, and baked-enamel finish.

#### 3.1.2 Air Distribution

Provide horizontal units with adjustable single- or double-deflection louvers.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Demonstrate in the presence of the Contracting Officer that the unit heaters operate satisfactorily.

Cycle unit heaters five times, from start to operating thermal conditions to off, to verify adequacy of construction, system controls, and component performance.

Conduct an operational test for a minimum of 6 hours.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION 25 05 11

### CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

Many subparts in this Section contain text in curly braces ("{" and "}") indicating which cybersecurity control and control correlation identifier (CCI) the requirements of the subpart relate to. The text inside these curly braces is for Government reference only and enables coordination of the requirements of this Section with the RMF process throughout the design and construction process. Text in curly braces are not contractor requirements.

This Section refers to Security Requirements Guide (SRGs) and Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIGs). STIGs and SRGs are available online at the Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) website at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/downloads/> and an SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool is available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>. Not all control system components have applicable STIGs or SRGs. The "Control Systems SRG" does not apply to work performed under this Section; all requirements within this section to apply applicable SRGs DO NOT include the "Control Systems SRG".

##### 1.1 CONTROL SYSTEM APPLICABILITY

There are multiple versions of this Section associated with this project. Different versions have requirements applicable to different control systems. This specific Section applies only to the following control systems: IT configurable devices.

These systems are not covered by an individual 25 05 11 specification and generally will be programmed/configured by a laptop or other computer device during construction. These systems are defined as simple in nature and are primarily concerned with Cybersecurity during construction. Such systems include Elevator Controls.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section does not contain sufficient requirements to procure a control system and must be used in conjunction with other Sections which specify control systems. This Section adds cybersecurity requirements to the control systems specified in other Sections, and as these requirements are conditioned on the control system being provided, there may be requirements in this Section that will not apply to this project. All Sections containing facility-related control systems or control system components are related to the requirements of this Section. Review all specification sections to determine related requirements.

In cases where a requirement is specified in both this Section and in another Section, the more stringent requirement must be met. In cases where a requirement in this Section conflicts with the requirements of another Section such that both requirements cannot be met at the same time, request direction from the Contracting Officer Representative to determine which requirement applies to the project.



### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

#### 1.3.1 Administrator Account

An administrator account is an account with full permissions to a device, application, or operating system, including the ability to create and modify other user accounts.

Note that the operating system Administrator Account may be different than Administrator Accounts for applications hosted on that operating system. Also, most controllers will not have any support for accounts and will therefore not have an 'Administrator Account'.

#### 1.3.2 Computer

A computer is one of the following:

- a. a device running a non-embedded desktop or server version of Microsoft Windows
- b. a device running a non-embedded version of MacOS
- c. a device running a non-embedded version of Linux
- d. a device running a version or derivative of the Android Operating System, where Android is considered separate from Linux
- e. a device running a version of Apple iOS

Unless otherwise indicated or clear from context use of the word "device" in this Section includes computers.

#### 1.3.3 Controller

A device other than a computer or Ethernet switch.

#### 1.3.4 Mission Space

A device or media is in mission space if physical access to the device or media is controlled by the organization served by the device. For example, a VAV box controller in a suspended ceiling is in mission space if the VAV box serves that room; an electrical switchgear in an electrical room or an AHU in a mechanical room or on a rooftop may still be considered to be in mission space if the organization (mission) served by that switchgear or AHU controls access to the electrical room, mechanical room or rooftop.

#### 1.3.5 Network

A network is a group of two or more devices that can communicate using a network protocol. Network protocols must provide a method for addressing devices on the network; a communication method that does not provide an addressing scheme is not a networked form of communication. Devices that communicate using a method of communication that does not support device addressing are not using a network.

#### 1.3.6 Network Connected

A component is network connected (or "connected to a network") only when

the device has a network transceiver which is directly connected to the network and implements the network protocol. A device lacking a network transceiver (and accompanying protocol implementation) can never be considered network connected. Note that (unlike many IT definitions of "Network Connected") a device connected to a non-IP network is still considered network connected (an IP connection or IP address is not required for a device to be network connected).

#### 1.3.6.1 Wireless Network Connected

Any device that supports wireless network communication is network connected to a wireless network, regardless of whether the device is communicating using wireless. Unless physically disabled, devices with wireless transceivers support wireless, it is not sufficient to disable the wireless in software.

#### 1.3.7 Network Media

The thing that provides the communication channel between the devices on a network. Typically wire, but might include wireless, fiber optic, or even power line (some network protocols allow sending network signals over power wiring).

#### 1.3.8 User Account Support Levels

The support for user accounts is categorized in this Section as one of three levels:

##### 1.3.8.1 FULLY Supported

Device supports configurable individual accounts. Accounts can be created, deleted, modified, etc. Privileges can be assigned to accounts. These devices support user-based (as opposed to role-based) authentication.

##### 1.3.8.2 MINIMALLY Supported

Device supports a small, fixed number of accounts (perhaps only one). Accounts cannot be modified. A device with only a "User" and an "Administrator" account would fit this category. Similarly, a device with two PINs for logon - one for restricted and one for unrestricted rights would fit here (in other words, the accounts do not have to be the traditional "username and password" structure). These devices typically only support role-based authentication.

Examples of devices which MINIMALLY support accounts are a) a variable frequency drive with a single account which requires a PIN for access to configuration; and b) a room lighting control touchpad interface that has a single account.

##### 1.3.8.3 NOT Supported

Device does not support any Access Enforcement therefore the whole concept of "account" is meaningless.

#### 1.3.9 Manual Local Input

Manual Local Inputs are system analog or binary inputs that are adjustable by a person but are, by intrinsic hardware design, very limited in potential capabilities. Manual Local Inputs do not have touch screens or

full keyboards, but may have a few buttons or dials to allow input. Manual Local Inputs do not have full graphic screens or dot-matrix displays, but may have simple lights (LEDs) or 7-segment displays. Manual Local Inputs do not have any sort of menu structure, each button has a single well-defined function.

Examples of Manual Local Inputs are H-O-A switches, simple thermostats, and disconnect switches.

#### 1.3.10 Card Reader

A card reader is an input/output device whose primary function is to assist in two-factor authentication. A card reader must have an interface to read data from a card and may be able to write data to a card. A card reader may have a means (such as buttons, keypad, touchscreen, etc.) for a user to input a PIN or password, as well as a limited display.

#### 1.3.11 User Interface

A User Interface (UI) is something other than a Manual Local Input or Card Reader that allows a person to interact with the system or device. Note that while a Card Reader is not by itself a User Interface, a User Interface may contain a Card Reader in order for it to authenticate its user. Within control systems, there are a wide range of User Interfaces.

Two important distinctions are 1) whether the user interface is Local or Remote, and 2) the effective capabilities of the User Interface to alter data, which is the "privilege" of the user interface (where effective privilege available to a specific user at a specific user interface is the combination of the greatest privilege offered by the user interface and the specific account the user is logged into).

##### 1.3.11.1 Local User Interface

A Local User Interface is a user interface where the physical hardware the user interacts with (keyboard, buttons, display, etc.) is physically part of the device being affected. All of the relevant characteristics of the user interface are embodied within a single device.

Note that a Local UI may be able to access data in a different device, Local versus Remote in this context refers to the user interface itself; the capability to access data in a different device is covered under "Full User Interface".

##### 1.3.11.2 Remote User Interface

A Remote User Interface implements a Client/Server model where the physical hardware the user interacts with (Client) is physically distinct from the device being affected (Server). Most or all of the security and functionality characteristics of the user interface are defined by the Server, not the Client. The Client and Server communicate via a network connection. A common example of a remote user interface is a web-based interface where the browser (client) is generally on different hardware than the web server (server). A Remote UI remains a Remote UI even if the user happens to be at a Client on the same hardware as the Server. What is important is that a) the Client may be on different hardware than the Server and b) the majority of the security and functional characteristics of the interface are defined at the Server.

Note that this definition of "remote" is consistent with that generally used in the control industry but is not aligned with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Remote", which refers to "outside the system". The term "Remote" here better aligns with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Network" (remote from within the system) Access.

#### 1.3.11.3 Types of User Interface (by capability)

User interfaces are also categorized by their capabilities as being Read Only, Limited, or Full.

##### 1.3.11.3.1 Read-Only User Interface

A Read Only User Interface (also referred to as a View-Only User Interface) is a user interface that only allows for reading data, it does not allow (have the capability to) modify data. A Read Only User Interface may be either Local or Remote. A User Interface that is configured to be Read Only (by some other means than the interface itself, such as using configuration software on a laptop) is a Read-Only Interface. Note a Read Only User Interface may have buttons (or touch screen, etc.) allowing the user to navigate through the presentation of data.

Examples of a Read Only User Interfaces are a) a publicly viewable "energy dashboard" showing weather data and energy usage within a building and b) digital wayfinding signage.

##### 1.3.11.3.2 Limited User Interface

A Limited User Interface is a user interface that - by design - can only alter information local to the user interface. Note that the determination of "alter" includes only direct interactions, it explicitly excludes interactions that might occur as secondary effects. For example, an interface changing the flow setpoint in a pump controller is a direct interaction, the subsequent change in flow (as well as any subsequent downstream changes in valve position) are not direct interactions.

Two examples of LIMITED UIs are: a) a variable speed drive has a Limited Local User Interface which allows the user to change properties within the drive, but does not allow affecting things outside the drive; and b) a typical home WiFi Router has a Limited Remote User Interface which allows configuration of the Router, but does not allow direct interaction with other devices.

##### 1.3.11.3.3 Full User Interface

A Full User Interface can alter information in devices outside the device with the user interface. For example, a typical Local Display Panel is a Full Local User Interface while a browser-based front end is a Full Remote User Interface.

##### 1.3.11.3.4 View-Only User Interface

See Paragraph "Read-Only User Interface".

#### 1.3.11.4 Other User Interface Terminology

In addition to defining whether a user interface is a Hardware Limited, Read-Only, Limited or Full, and whether it is Local or Remote, user

interfaces are classified by whether they are writable or privileged.

#### 1.3.11.4.1 Writable User Interface

Any User Interface that is not Read-Only is Writable. (Limited User Interfaces and Full User Interfaces are both writable user interfaces (as they are capable of changing a value)).

#### 1.3.11.4.2 Privileged User Interface

A Privileged UI is a UI that has sufficient capabilities or functionality that it requires specific cybersecurity measures to be put in place to limit its unauthorized use. Ultimately, whether a specific user interface is considered a Privileged User Interface must be determined by usage. Unless otherwise specified, user interfaces can be determined to be privileged or not using the following:

- a. Read-Only User Interfaces are not privileged user interfaces.
- b. Full User Interfaces are privileged user interfaces.
- c. User interfaces that allow for configuration of auditing or allows for modification or deletion of audit logs are privileged user interface.
- d. User interfaces that allow for reprogramming a network connected device is a privileged user interface.
- e. Except as specified above, a Limited User Interface must be determined to be privileged or not based on the specific capabilities and use case of the user interface. In general however, user interfaces that do not offer significant capabilities above and beyond those available at that location via other means (e.g. such as a disconnect switch, breaker, or hand-off-auto switch, or physical attack) are not privileged.

#### 1.3.12 Wireless Network

Any network that communicates without using wires or fiber optics as the communication media. Wireless networks include: WiFi, Bluetooth, ZigBee, cellular, satellite, 900 MHz radio, 2.4 GHz, free space optical, point-to-point laser, and IR.

#### 1.3.13 Wired Broadcast Network

Wired Broadcast Networks are any network, such as powerline carrier networks and modem (wired telephony), that use wire-based technologies where there is not a clearly defined boundary for signal propagation.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Device Account Lock Exception Request; G, RO

Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G, RO

Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements;  
G, RO

Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report; G, DO

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Cybersecurity Riser Diagram; G, DO

#### SD-03 Product Data

Control System Cybersecurity Documentation; G, DO

#### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Confidential Password Report; G, RO

Enclosure Keys; G, RO

STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report; G, RO

Control System Inventory Report; G, RO

### 1.5 CYBERSECURITY DOCUMENTATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-7; CCI-003071}

#### 1.5.1 Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report

For each model of network connected or network infrastructure device, use the DISA SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool (available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>) to identify applicable STIGs or SRGs and provide a report indicating applicable STIGs and SRGs for each model.

#### 1.5.2 Control System Inventory Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CM-8(a), SI-17, IA-3; CCI-000389, CCI-000392, CCI-000398, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775, CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

Provide a Control System Inventory report using the Inventory Spreadsheet listed under this Section at

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> documenting all devices, including networked devices, network infrastructure devices, non-networked devices, input devices (e.g. sensors) and output devices (e.g. actuators). For each device provide all applicable information for which there is a field on the spreadsheet in accordance with the instructions on the spreadsheet.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Control System Inventory Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

### 1.5.3 Cybersecurity Riser Diagram

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-2(a), PL-8; CCI-003051, CCI-003053, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075}

Provide a cybersecurity riser diagram of the complete control system including all network and device hardware. If the control system specifications require a riser diagram submittal, provide a copy of that submittal as the cybersecurity riser diagram. Otherwise, provide a riser diagram in one-line format.

### 1.5.4 STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report

For every component (device or software) with an applicable STIG or SRG in the Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report, provide a result report documenting compliance with the STIG or SRG requirements. For components which are scannable by the SCAP (security content automation protocol) tool (available online at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/scap>), provide the SCAP report and raw scan results.

For every component (device or software) with manufacturer provided cybersecurity documentation, procedure, or method for secure configuration or installation, provide a report documenting how the component was configured and any deviation from the manufacturer instructions.

### 1.5.5 Control System Cybersecurity Documentation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-5 (a),(b),(c); CCIs: CCI-003124, CCI-003125, CCI-003126, CCI-003127, CCI-003128, CCI-003129, CCI-003130, CCI-003131}

Provide a Control System Cybersecurity Documentation submittal containing the indicated information for each device and software application.

## 1.6 CYBERSECURITY DURING CONSTRUCTION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, SA-3; CCI-000258}

In addition to the control system cybersecurity requirements indicated in this section, meet following requirement throughout the construction process.

### 1.6.1 Contractor Computer Equipment

Contractor owned computers may be used for construction. Contractor computers connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

#### 1.6.1.1 Operating System

The operating system must be an operating system currently supported by the manufacturer of the operating system. The operating system must be current on security patches and operating system manufacturer required updates.

#### 1.6.1.2 Anti-Malware Software

The computer must run anti-malware software from a reputable software manufacturer. Anti-malware software must be a version currently supported by the software manufacturer, must be current on all patches and updates, and must use the latest definitions file. Computers used on this project must be scanned using the installed software at least once per day.

#### 1.6.1.3 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for computers, applications, and web-based applications supporting passwords must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

#### 1.6.1.4 User-Based Authentication

Each user must have a unique account; sharing of a single account between multiple users is prohibited.

#### 1.6.1.5 Demonstration of Compliance

The Government has the right to require demonstration of computer compliance with these requirements at any time during the project.

#### 1.6.1.6 Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company using contractor owned computers. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>

Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company.

#### 1.6.2 Temporary IP Networks

Temporary contractor-installed IP networks may be used during construction. When used, temporary contractor-installed IP networks connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

##### 1.6.2.1 Network Boundaries and Connections

The network must not extend outside the project site and must not connect to any IP network other than those specifically provided or furnished for this project. Any and all access to the network from outside the project site is prohibited.

#### 1.6.3 Government Access to Network

Government personnel must be allowed to have complete and immediate access to the network at any time in order to verify compliance with this specification.



#### 1.6.4 Temporary Wireless IP Networks

In addition to the other requirements on temporary IP networks, temporary wireless IP (WiFi) networks, when permitted, must not interfere with existing wireless networks, must use WPA2 security and must not broadcast the network name (SSID). Network names (SSID) for wireless networks must be changed from their default values.

#### 1.6.5 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all network devices and network access must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum 8 characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

#### 1.6.6 Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company implementing a temporary IP network. Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company. If no temporary IP networks will be used, provide a single copy of the Statement indicating this.

### 1.7 CYBERSECURITY DURING WARRANTY PERIOD

All work performed on the control system after acceptance must be performed using Government Furnished Equipment or equipment specifically and individually approved by the Government.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

All products used on this project must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 CYBERSECURITY HARDENING AND CONFIGURATION GUIDES

Install, configure, and harden all hardware and software furnished on this project in accordance with manufacturer provided documentation, procedures, or methods for secure configuration or installation. Do not implement specific hardening actions if that action would conflict with required functionality or another requirement of this Section.

### 3.2 NETWORK REQUIREMENTS

#### 3.2.1 Non-IP Control Networks

When control system specifications require particular communication protocols, use only those communication protocols and only as specified. Do not implement any other communication protocol.

When control system specifications do not indicate requirements for communication protocols, use only those protocols required for operation of the system as specified.

### 3.3 ACCESS CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

#### 3.3.1 User Accounts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-2(a), AC-3, AC-6(1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9), CM-11(2), and IA-2; CCI-002110, CCI-000213, CCI-002235, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-001812, and CCI-000764.}

Any user interface supporting user accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must limit access according to specified limitations for each account. Install and configure any device having a STIG or SRG in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

All user interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement user-based authentication where each account is uniquely assigned to a specific user. User interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement at least three (3) levels of user account privilege including: 1) an account with read-only permissions 2) an account with full permissions including account creation and modification and 3) an account with greater permissions than read-only but without account creation and modification.

##### 3.3.1.1 Controllers

For user interfaces provided by controllers, provide access control in accordance with the User Interface Requirements table for the applicable control system and user interface type.

- a. For table entries of "NA": NA means Not Applicable, there are no interfaces in this category.
- b. For table entries of "None Required": The user interface is not required to support user accounts.
- c. For table entries of "MINIMALLY": The user interface must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- d. For table entries of "FULLY": The user interface must at FULLY support user accounts.
- e. For table entries of "KEY": The user interface must have physical security in the form of either a key lock on the interface itself or be furnished inside a locked enclosure. Where this is required for a read only interface, this lock must prevent viewing of data on the interface; for other interfaces, this lock must prevent using the interface to alter data.
- f. For table entries of "Physical Security": For Local FULL interfaces, the interface must be located inside mission space. For Local Limited (not FULL) interfaces, the user interface must either a) be located within mission space or b) be protected by physical security at least as good as the control devices (and equipment controlled by the control devices) affected by the interface. For purposes of this requirement, 'affected' includes controllers with data that can be directly altered by the interface, as well as mechanical and/or electrical equipment directly controlled by those controllers, but does not include other interactions.

- g. Entries of the form "X and Y" must meet both the requirement indicated for X and the requirement indicated for Y. For example, an entry of "MINIMALLY and Physical Security" indicates the user interface must both MINIMALLY support accounts and have physical security.
- h. Entries of the form "X or Y" must meet either the requirement indicated for X or the requirement indicated for Y.

### 3.3.2 Unsuccessful Logon Attempts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-7 (a), AC-7 (b); CCI-000043, CCI-000044, CCI-001423, CCI-002236, CCI-002237, CCI-002238}

Except for high availability user interfaces indicated as exempt, devices must meet the indicated requirements for handling unsuccessful logon attempts. If a device cannot meet these requirements, document device capabilities to protect from subsequent logon attempts and propose alternate protections in a [Device Account Lock Exception Request](#) submittal. Do not implement alternate protection measures in lieu of the indicated requirements without explicit permission from the Government. If no Device Account Lock Exceptions are requested, provide a document stating that no approval is being requested as the Device Account Lock Exception Request.

#### 3.3.2.1 Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

Devices which FULLY support accounts must meet the following requirements.

- a. It must lock the user account when three unsuccessful logon attempts occur within a 15 minute interval.
- b. Once an account is locked, the account must stay locked until unlocked by an administrator. If the account being locked is the sole administrator account on the device, the account must stay locked for 1 hour and then automatically unlock.
- c. Once the indicated number of unsuccessful logon attempts occurs, delay further logon prompts by 5 seconds.

#### 3.3.2.2 High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements

There are no high availability interfaces which are exempt from unsuccessful logon attempts requirements.

### 3.3.3 Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-14; CCI-000061, CCI-000232}

The control system must require identification and authentication before allowing any actions by a user acting from a user interface which MINIMALLY or FULLY supports accounts.

### 3.3.4 Enclosures

Prior to final acceptance of the system, lock all lockable enclosures.

Submit an [Enclosure Keys](#) submittal with all copies of keys for all enclosures and a key inventory list documenting all keys. Label each key with the matching enclosure identifier.

### 3.4 USER IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-2, IA-2(1),IA-2(12), IA-5 IA-5(b), IA-5(c), IA-5(e), IA-5(g), IA-5(1), IA-5(11); CCI-000764, CCI-000765, CCI-001953, CCI-001954, CCI-001544, CCI-001989, CCI-000182, CCI-001610, CCI-000192, CCI-000193, CCI-000194, CCI-000205, CCI-001619, CCI-001611, CCI-001612, CCI-001613, CCI-001614, CCI-000195, CCI-001615, CCI-000196, CCI-000197, CCI-000199, CCI-000198, CCI-001616, CCI-001617, CCI-000200, CCI-001618, CCI-002041, CCI-002002, CCI-002003. }

This subpart indicates requirements for specific methods of identification and authentication for users and user accounts. Where these requirements conflict apply the following order of precedence: 1) If present, Device Specific Requirements take precedence over any other requirements; and then 2) multifactor authentication requirements take precedence over password requirements.

#### 3.4.1 User Identification and Authentication for All System Types

Unless otherwise indicated, all user interfaces supporting accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must implement Identification and Authorization via passwords.

#### 3.4.2 User Identification and Authentication for Specific System Types

System specific requirements are in addition to and supersede those indicated for all system types. When no additional requirements are indicated for a specific system type the requirements for all systems still apply to that system type.

#### 3.4.3 User Identification and Authentication for Specific Devices

There are no additional device specific user interface requirements

#### 3.4.4 Implementation of Identification and Authorization Requirements

Identification and Authorization must be met by one of the following methods:

- a. Direct implementation in the user interface.
- b. For user interfaces on a computer: inheriting the Identification and Authorization from the computer operating system, either by the operating system limiting access to specific applications by user, or by the application itself having permissions based on the user logged into the computer.
- c. For remote interfaces: an implementation shared between the remote user interface server and the remote user interface client. For example, a requirement for PIV authentication may be met on a remote user interface by a PIV reader on a web browser client which sends the authentication information via HTTPS to the remote server.

### 3.4.5 Password-Based Authentication Requirements

#### 3.4.5.1 Passwords for Controllers FULLY Supporting Accounts

All controllers FULLY supporting accounts and supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of twelve (12) characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of sixty (60) days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five (5) passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least fifty percent of the characters.
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

#### 3.4.5.2 Passwords for Devices Minimally Supporting Accounts

Devices MINIMALLY supporting accounts must support passwords with a minimum length of four characters.

#### 3.4.5.3 Password Configuration and Reporting

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Coordinate selection of passwords with the Password Point of Contact. Do not use the same password for more than one device unless specifically instructed to do so. Provide a [Confidential Password Report](#) documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Do not provide the Password Summary Report in electronic format. Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

#### 3.4.6 Authenticator Feedback

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-6; CCI-000206}

Devices must never show authentication information, including passwords, on a display. Devices that momentarily display a character as it is entered, and then obscure the character, are acceptable. For devices that have STIGs or SRGs related to obscuring of authenticator feedback (CCI-000206), comply with the requirements of those STIGs/SRGs.

### 3.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR LEAST FUNCTIONALITY

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts), along with the network communication report submittal specified elsewhere in this section, relates to CM-6(a), CM-6(c), CM-7, CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-000363, CCI-000364, CCI-000365, CCI-001588, CCI-001755, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. }

For devices that have a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port and device I/O access for least functionality), install and configure the device in accordance with that STIG or SRGs.

#### 3.5.1 Software

For software that has a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port access for least functionality), install and configure the software in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

### 3.6 SYSTEM AND COMMUNICATION PROTECTION

#### 3.6.1 Collaborative Computing

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-15(a), SC-15(b); CCI-001150, CCI-001152.}

Without explicit approval from the project site, control systems must not use collaborative computing technologies.

#### 3.6.2 Denial of Service Protection

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-5, SC-39, SC-7(a); CCI-001093, CCI-002385, CCI-002386, CCI-002430, CCI-001097. }

To the greatest extent practical, implement control logic without reliance on the network. Except when required to meet the requirements of the control system Section (where the requirement can only be met using computer hardware), do not implement control logic in computers.

### 3.7 SAFE MODE AND FAIL SAFE OPERATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-12, SI-10(3), SI-17; CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002754, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775}

For all control system components with an applicable STIG or SRG, configure the component in accordance with all applicable STIGs and SRGs.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION 25 05 11.21

### CYBERSECURITY FOR FIRE ALARM CONTROL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

Many subparts in this Section contain text in curly braces ("{" and "}") indicating which cybersecurity control and control correlation identifier (CCI) the requirements of the subpart relate to. The text inside these curly braces is for Government reference only and enables coordination of the requirements of this Section with the RMF process throughout the design and construction process. Text in curly braces are not contractor requirements.

This Section refers to Security Requirements Guide (SRGs) and Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIGs). STIGs and SRGs are available online at the Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) website at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/downloads/> and an SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool is available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>. Not all control system components have applicable STIGs or SRGs. The "Control Systems SRG" does not apply to work performed under this Section; all requirements within this section to apply applicable SRGs DO NOT include the "Control Systems SRG".

#### 1.1 CONTROL SYSTEM APPLICABILITY

There are multiple versions of this Section associated with this project. Different versions have requirements applicable to different control systems. This specific Section applies only to the following control systems: Fire Alarm Controls.

#### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section does not contain sufficient requirements to procure a control system and must be used in conjunction with other Sections which specify control systems. This Section adds cybersecurity requirements to the control systems specified in other Sections, and as these requirements are conditioned on the control system being provided, there may be requirements in this Section that will not apply to this project. All Sections containing facility-related control systems or control system components are related to the requirements of this Section. Review all specification sections to determine related requirements.

In cases where a requirement is specified in both this Section and in another Section, the more stringent requirement must be met. In cases where a requirement in this Section conflicts with the requirements of another Section such that both requirements cannot be met at the same time, request direction from the Contracting Officer Representative to determine which requirement applies to the project.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 802.1x (2010) Local and Metropolitan Area  
Networks - Port Based Network Access  
Control

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST FIPS 140-2 (2001) Security Requirements for  
Cryptographic Modules

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DoD 8140.01 (2020) Cyberspace Workforce Management

DODI 8551.01 (2014) Ports, Protocols, and Services  
Management (PPSM)

DTM 08-060 (2008) Policy on Use of Department of  
Defense (DoD) Information Systems -  
Standard Consent Banner and User Agreement

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

##### 1.4.1 Administrator Account

An administrator account is an account with full permissions to a device, application, or operating system, including the ability to create and modify other user accounts.

Note that the operating system Administrator Account may be different than Administrator Accounts for applications hosted on that operating system. Also, most controllers will not have any support for accounts and will therefore not have an 'Administrator Account'.

##### 1.4.2 Computer

A computer is one of the following:

- a. a device running a non-embedded desktop or server version of Microsoft Windows
- b. a device running a non-embedded version of MacOS
- c. a device running a non-embedded version of Linux
- d. a device running a version or derivative of the Android Operating System, where Android is considered separate from Linux
- e. a device running a version of Apple iOS

Unless otherwise indicated or clear from context use of the word "device" in this Section includes computers.

##### 1.4.3 Controller

A device other than a computer or Ethernet switch. For Fire Protection systems this includes fire alarm control panels, remote operating consoles, and remote annunciators.



#### 1.4.4 Mission Space

A device or media is in mission space if physical access to the device or media is controlled by the organization served by the device. For example, a VAV box controller in a suspended ceiling is in mission space if the VAV box serves that room; an electrical switchgear in an electrical room or an AHU in a mechanical room or on a rooftop may still be considered to be in mission space if the organization (mission) served by that switchgear or AHU controls access to the electrical room, mechanical room or rooftop.

#### 1.4.5 Network

A network is a group of two or more devices that can communicate using a network protocol. Network protocols must provide a method for addressing devices on the network; a communication method that does not provide an addressing scheme is not a networked form of communication. Devices that communicate using a method of communication that does not support device addressing are not using a network.

#### 1.4.6 Network Connected

A component is network connected (or "connected to a network") only when the device has a network transceiver which is directly connected to the network and implements the network protocol. A device lacking a network transceiver (and accompanying protocol implementation) can never be considered network connected. Note that (unlike many IT definitions of "Network Connected") a device connected to a non-IP network is still considered network connected (an IP connection or IP address is not required for a device to be network connected).

##### 1.4.6.1 Wireless Network Connected

Any device that supports wireless network communication is network connected to a wireless network, regardless of whether the device is communicating using wireless. Unless physically disabled, devices with wireless transceivers support wireless, it is not sufficient to disable the wireless in software.

#### 1.4.7 Network Media

The thing that provides the communication channel between the devices on a network. Typically wire, but might include wireless, fiber optic, or even power line (some network protocols allow sending network signals over power wiring).

#### 1.4.8 User Account Support Levels

The support for user accounts is categorized in this Section as one of three levels:

##### 1.4.8.1 FULLY Supported

Device supports configurable individual accounts. Accounts can be created, deleted, modified, etc. Privileges can be assigned to accounts. These devices support user-based (as opposed to role-based) authentication.

#### 1.4.8.2 MINIMALLY Supported

Device supports a small, fixed number of accounts (perhaps only one). Accounts cannot be modified. A device with only a "User" and an "Administrator" account would fit this category. Similarly, a device with two PINs for logon - one for restricted and one for unrestricted rights would fit here (in other words, the accounts do not have to be the traditional "username and password" structure). These devices typically only support role-based authentication.

Examples of devices which MINIMALLY support accounts are a) a variable frequency drive with a single account which requires a PIN for access to configuration; and b) a room lighting control touchpad interface that has a single account.

#### 1.4.8.3 NOT Supported

Device does not support any Access Enforcement therefore the whole concept of "account" is meaningless.

#### 1.4.9 Manual Local Input

Manual Local Inputs are system analog or binary inputs that are adjustable by a person but are, by intrinsic hardware design, very limited in potential capabilities. Manual Local Inputs do not have touch screens or full keyboards, but may have a few buttons or dials to allow input. Manual Local Inputs do not have full graphic screens or dot-matrix displays, but may have simple lights (LEDs) or 7-segment displays. Manual Local Inputs do not have any sort of menu structure, each button has a single well-defined function.

Examples of Manual Local Inputs are H-O-A switches, simple thermostats, and disconnect switches.

#### 1.4.10 Card Reader

A card reader is an input/output device whose primary function is to assist in two-factor authentication. A card reader must have an interface to read data from a card and may be able to write data to a card. A card reader may have a means (such as buttons, keypad, touchscreen, etc.) for a user to input a PIN or password, as well as a limited display.

#### 1.4.11 User Interface

A User Interface (UI) is something other than a Manual Local Input or Card Reader that allows a person to interact with the system or device. Note that while a Card Reader is not by itself a User Interface, a User Interface may contain a Card Reader in order for it to authenticate its user. Within control systems, there are a wide range of User Interfaces.

Two important distinctions are 1) whether the user interface is Local or Remote, and 2) the effective capabilities of the User Interface to alter data, which is the "privilege" of the user interface (where effective privilege available to a specific user at a specific user interface is the combination of the greatest privilege offered by the user interface and the specific account the user is logged into).

#### 1.4.11.1 Local User Interface

A Local User Interface is a user interface where the physical hardware the user interacts with (keyboard, buttons, display, etc.) is physically part of the device being affected. All of the relevant characteristics of the user interface are embodied within a single device.

Note that a Local UI may be able to access data in a different device, Local versus Remote in this context refers to the user interface itself; the capability to access data in a different device is covered under "Full User Interface".

#### 1.4.11.2 Remote User Interface

A Remote User Interface implements a Client/Server model where the physical hardware the user interacts with (Client) is physically distinct from the device being affected (Server). Most or all of the security and functionality characteristics of the user interface are defined by the Server, not the Client. The Client and Server communicate via a network connection. A common example of a remote user interface is a web-based interface where the browser (client) is generally on different hardware than the web server (server). A Remote UI remains a Remote UI even if the user happens to be at a Client on the same hardware as the Server. What is important is that a) the Client may be on different hardware than the Server and b) the majority of the security and functional characteristics of the interface are defined at the Server.

Note that this definition of "remote" is consistent with that generally used in the control industry but is not aligned with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Remote", which refers to "outside the system". The term "Remote" here better aligns with the NIST 800-53 definition of "Network" (remote from within the system) Access.

#### 1.4.11.3 Types of User Interface (by capability)

User interfaces are also categorized by their capabilities as being Read Only, Limited, or Full.

##### 1.4.11.3.1 Read-Only User Interface

A Read Only User Interface (also referred to as a View-Only User Interface) is a user interface that only allows for reading data, it does not allow (have the capability to) modify data. A Read Only User Interface may be either Local or Remote. A User Interface that is configured to be Read Only (by some other means than the interface itself, such as using configuration software on a laptop) is a Read-Only Interface. Note a Read Only User Interface may have buttons (or touch screen, etc.) allowing the user to navigate through the presentation of data.

Examples of a Read Only User Interfaces are a) a publicly viewable "energy dashboard" showing weather data and energy usage within a building and b) digital wayfinding signage.

##### 1.4.11.3.2 Limited User Interface

A Limited User Interface is a user interface that - by design - can only alter information local to the user interface. Note that the determination of "alter" includes only direct interactions, it explicitly excludes

interactions that might occur as secondary effects. For example, an interface changing the flow setpoint in a pump controller is a direct interaction, the subsequent change in flow (as well as any subsequent downstream changes in valve position) are not direct interactions.

Two examples of LIMITED UIs are: a) a variable speed drive has a Limited Local User Interface which allows the user to change properties within the drive, but does not allow affecting things outside the drive; and b) a typical home WiFi Router has a Limited Remote User Interface which allows configuration of the Router, but does not allow direct interaction with other devices.

#### 1.4.11.3.3 Full User Interface

A Full User Interface can alter information in devices outside the device with the user interface. For example, a typical Local Display Panel is a Full Local User Interface while a browser-based front end is a Full Remote User Interface.

#### 1.4.11.3.4 View-Only User Interface

See Paragraph "Read-Only User Interface".

#### 1.4.11.4 Other User Interface Terminology

In addition to defining whether a user interface is a Hardware Limited, Read-Only, Limited or Full, and whether it is Local or Remote, user interfaces are classified by whether they are writable or privileged.

##### 1.4.11.4.1 Writable User Interface

Any User Interface that is not Read-Only is Writable. (Limited User Interfaces and Full User Interfaces are both writable user interfaces (as they are capable of changing a value)).

##### 1.4.11.4.2 Privileged User Interface

A Privileged UI is a UI that has sufficient capabilities or functionality that it requires specific cybersecurity measures to be put in place to limit its unauthorized use. Ultimately, whether a specific user interface is considered a Privileged User Interface must be determined by usage. Unless otherwise specified, user interfaces can be determined to be privileged or not using the following:

- a. Read-Only User Interfaces are not privileged user interfaces.
- b. Full User interfaces for Fire Alarm Systems are privileged user interfaces as indicated and shown, or when another requirement of this Section establishes they are privileged. For all other systems, Full User Interfaces are privileged user interfaces.
- c. User interfaces that allow for configuration of auditing or allows for modification or deletion of audit logs are privileged user interface.
- d. User interfaces that allow for reprogramming a network connected device is a privileged user interface.
- e. For Fire Protection Systems, User Interfaces that can inhibit or force the activation of a fire suppression system (e.g. such as for a

pre-action or deluge system) are privileged user interfaces.

- e. Except as specified above, a Limited User Interface must be determined to be privileged or not based on the specific capabilities and use case of the user interface. In general however, user interfaces that do not offer significant capabilities above and beyond those available at that location via other means (e.g. such as a disconnect switch, breaker, or hand-off-auto switch, or physical attack) are not privileged.

#### 1.4.12 Wireless Network

Any network that communicates without using wires or fiber optics as the communication media. Wireless networks include: WiFi, Bluetooth, ZigBee, cellular, satellite, 900 MHz radio, 2.4 GHz, free space optical, point-to-point laser, and IR.

#### 1.4.13 Wired Broadcast Network

Wired Broadcast Networks are any network, such as powerline carrier networks and modem (wired telephony), that use wire-based technologies where there is not a clearly defined boundary for signal propagation.

### 1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

#### 1.5.1 Points of Contact

Coordinate with the following Points of Contact as indicated in this Section and as required. Not all projects will require coordination with all Points of Contact. When coordination is required and no Point of Contact is indicated, coordinate with The Contracting Office Representative (COR).

- a. Government Computer Access Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)
- b. HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)
- c. Email Address Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)
- d. Password Point of Contact: The Contracting Office Representative (COR)

#### 1.5.2 Coordination

Coordinate the execution of this Section with the execution of all other Sections related to control systems as indicated in the paragraph RELATED REQUIREMENTS. Items that must be considered when coordinating project efforts include but are not limited to:

- b. If requesting permission for alternate account lock permissions, the Device Account Lock Exception Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.
- c. If requesting permission for the use of a device with multiple physical connections to IP networks, the Multiple IP Connection

Device Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.

- d. Wireless testing may be required as part of the control system testing.
- e. If the Device Audit Record Upload Software is to be installed on a computer not being provided as part of the control system, coordination is required to identify the computer on which to install the software.
- f. The Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule must be coordinated with other work that will be interconnected to, and interconnections must be approved by the Government before relying on them for system functionality.
- g. Cybersecurity testing support must be coordinated across control systems and with the Government cybersecurity testing schedule.
- h. Passwords must be coordinated with the indicated contact for the project site.
- i. If applicable, HTTPS web server certificates must be obtained from the indicated HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact.
- j. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must be provided for each contractor using contractor owned computers.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Device Account Lock Exception Request; G, RO

Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G, RO

Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements;  
G, RO

Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report; G, DO

Cybersecurity Subject Matter Expert; G,DO

##### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Network Communication Report; G, DO

Cybersecurity Riser Diagram; G, DO

##### SD-03 Product Data

Control System Cybersecurity Documentation; G, DO

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures; G, RO

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Software Licenses; G, RO

#### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Confidential Password Report; G, RO

Enclosure Keys; G, RO

Software and Configuration Backups; G, RO

Device Audit Record Upload Software; G, RO

STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report; G, RO

Control System Inventory Report; G, RO

### 1.7 CYBERSECURITY SUBJECT MATTER EXPERT

The individual will oversee all work within this Specification and may serve across the Contract. The individual must have Information Assurance Manager Level II Certification, in accordance with DoD 8140.01, and must have experience with DoD Systems security and Risk Management Framework, prior to being hired. Control System Experience is highly desirable. Submit resumes and copies of the certifications within 14 days after notice to proceed.

### 1.8 CYBERSECURITY DOCUMENTATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-7; CCI-003071}

#### 1.8.1 Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report

For each model of network connected or network infrastructure device, use the DISA SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool (available at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/>) to identify applicable STIGs or SRGs and provide a report indicating applicable STIGs and SRGs for each model.

#### 1.8.2 Network Communication Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CA-9, PL-8; CCI-003075; CCI-002102, CCI-002103, CCI-002104, CCI-002105, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075 and also the submittal requirements associated with CM-6, CM-7, SC-8 and SC-41 including CM-7(3), CCI-000388.}

Provide a network communication report. For each networked device, document the communication characteristics of the device including communication protocols, services used, encryption employed, and a general description of what information is communicated over the network. For

each device using IP, document all TCP and UDP ports used. For non-IP communications, document communication protocol and media used. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Network Communication Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

#### 1.8.3 Control System Inventory Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CM-8(a), SI-17, IA-3; CCI-000389, CCI-000392, CCI-000398, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775, CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

Provide a Control System Inventory report using the Inventory Spreadsheet listed under this Section at

<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1>

documenting all devices, including networked devices, network infrastructure devices, non-networked devices, input devices (e.g. sensors) and output devices (e.g. actuators). For each device provide all applicable information for which there is a field on the spreadsheet in accordance with the instructions on the spreadsheet.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Control System Inventory Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

#### 1.8.4 Software and Configuration Backups

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-10; CCI-000550, CCI-000551, CCI-000552}

For each control system device on which software is installed under this project, provide a recovery image of the final as-built control system device where practical. This image must allow for bare-metal restore such that restoration of the image is sufficient to restore system operation to the imaged state without the need for re-installation of software. If additional user permissions are required to meet this requirement, coordinate the creation of the image with the identified Government Access Point of Contact.

If any or all of these are provided under another Section, provide documentation indicating this and referencing those submittals.

#### 1.8.5 Cybersecurity Riser Diagram

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-2(a), PL-8; CCI-003051, CCI-003053, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075}

Provide a cybersecurity riser diagram of the complete control system including all network and device hardware. If the control system specifications require a riser diagram submittal, provide a copy of that submittal as the cybersecurity riser diagram. Otherwise, provide a riser diagram in one-line format.



#### 1.8.6 STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report

For every component (device or software) with an applicable STIG or SRG in the Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report, provide a result report documenting compliance with the STIG or SRG requirements. For components which are scannable by the SCAP (security content automation protocol) tool (available online at <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/scap>), provide the SCAP report and raw scan results.

For every component (device or software) with manufacturer provided cybersecurity documentation, procedure, or method for secure configuration or installation, provide a report documenting how the component was configured and any deviation from the manufacturer instructions.

#### 1.8.7 Control System Cybersecurity Documentation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-5 (a),(b),(c); CCIs: CCI-003124, CCI-003125, CCI-003126, CCI-003127, CCI-003128, CCI-003129, CCI-003130, CCI-003131}

Provide a Control System Cybersecurity Documentation submittal containing the indicated information for each device and software application.

#### 1.9 SOFTWARE LICENSING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-2(a), SI-2(c), SI-7(14); CCI-001227, CCI-002605, CCI-002737}

For all software provided that has not already been licensed to the government or project site, provide a license to the Government for a period of no less than 5 years, and the license must also include the following software updates:

- a. Security and bug-fix patches issued by the software manufacturer.
- b. Security patches to address any vulnerability identified in the National Vulnerability Database at <http://nvd.nist.gov> with a Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) severity rating of MEDIUM or higher.

Provide a single [Software Licenses](#) submittal with documentation of the software licenses for all software provided

#### 1.10 CYBERSECURITY DURING CONSTRUCTION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, SA-3; CCI-000258}

In addition to the control system cybersecurity requirements indicated in this section, meet following requirement throughout the construction process.

##### 1.10.1 Contractor Computer Equipment

Contractor owned computers may be used for construction. Contractor computers connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

#### 1.10.1.1 Operating System

The operating system must be an operating system currently supported by the manufacturer of the operating system. The operating system must be current on security patches and operating system manufacturer required updates.

#### 1.10.1.2 Anti-Malware Software

The computer must run anti-malware software from a reputable software manufacturer. Anti-malware software must be a version currently supported by the software manufacturer, must be current on all patches and updates, and must use the latest definitions file. Computers used on this project must be scanned using the installed software at least once per day.

#### 1.10.1.3 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for computers, applications, and web-based applications supporting passwords must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

#### 1.10.1.4 User-Based Authentication

Each user must have a unique account; sharing of a single account between multiple users is prohibited.

#### 1.10.1.5 Demonstration of Compliance

The Government has the right to require demonstration of computer compliance with these requirements at any time during the project.

#### 1.10.1.6 Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company using contractor owned computers. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company.

#### 1.10.2 Temporary IP Networks

Temporary contractor-installed IP networks may be used during construction. When used, temporary contractor-installed IP networks connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

##### 1.10.2.1 Network Boundaries and Connections

The network must not extend outside the project site and must not connect to any IP network other than those specifically provided or furnished for this project. Any and all access to the network from outside the project site is prohibited.

#### 1.10.3 Government Access to Network

Government personnel must be allowed to have complete and immediate access to the network at any time in order to verify compliance with this specification.

#### 1.10.4 Temporary Wireless IP Networks

In addition to the other requirements on temporary IP networks, temporary wireless IP (WiFi) networks, when permitted, must not interfere with existing wireless networks, must use WPA2 security and must not broadcast the network name (SSID). Network names (SSID) for wireless networks must be changed from their default values.

#### 1.10.5 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all network devices and network access must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum 8 characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

#### 1.10.6 Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company implementing a temporary IP network. Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1> Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company. If no temporary IP networks will be used, provide a single copy of the Statement indicating this.

#### 1.11 CYBERSECURITY DURING WARRANTY PERIOD

All work performed on the control system after acceptance must be performed using Government Furnished Equipment or equipment specifically and individually approved by the Government.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

All products used on this project must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CYBERSECURITY HARDENING AND CONFIGURATION GUIDES

Install, configure, and harden all hardware and software furnished on this project in accordance with manufacturer provided documentation, procedures, or methods for secure configuration or installation. Do not implement specific hardening actions if that action would conflict with required functionality or another requirement of this Section.

#### 3.2 NETWORK REQUIREMENTS

##### 3.2.1 Information Flow Enforcement In MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-4; CCI-001368, CCI-001414, CCI-001548, CCI-001549, CCI-001550,

CCI-001551}

### 3.2.2 Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication for Fire Protection Systems

The use of wireless and wired broadcast communication for fire protection systems within a facility is prohibited. Wireless communication may be used to provide communication from the fire protection system in a facility to the central monitoring station. Communication between the fire protection system and the central monitoring station must be via FIPS 140-2 certified devices.

### 3.2.3 Non-IP Control Networks

When control system specifications require particular communication protocols, use only those communication protocols and only as specified. Do not implement any other communication protocol.

When control system specifications do not indicate requirements for communication protocols, use only those protocols required for operation of the system as specified.

### 3.2.4 IP Control Networks

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CM-6(a), CM-7(a), CM-7(b), CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-001588, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-000381, CCI-000382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. For Moderate Impact Systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to SC-5(1), SC-5(2); CCI-001094 CCI-001095}

IP Networks must be Ethernet networks and must use switches which are Ethernet Switches or Daisy Chain IP Controllers as defined in this Section. Do not use nonsecure functions, ports, protocols and services as defined in DODI 8551.01 unless those ports, protocols and services are specifically required by the control system specifications or otherwise specifically authorized by the Government. Do not use ports, protocols and services that are not specified in the control system specifications or required for operation of the control system.

For MODERATE Impact Systems, unless explicitly authorized, do not use IP networks if the same control functionality is available through the use of non-IP networks.

#### 3.2.4.1 IP Network Routers

Do not install any device that performs IP routing.

### 3.2.5 Device Identification and Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-3; CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to SC-23, SC-23(5); CCI-001184, CCI-002470.}

All computers must support IEEE 802.1x for device authentication to the network.

### 3.3 ACCESS CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

#### 3.3.1 User Accounts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-2(a), AC-3, AC-6(1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9), CM-11(2), and IA-2; CCI-002110, CCI-000213, CCI-002235, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-001812, and CCI-000764. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relate to AC-2 (2), AC-2(3), AC-2(4), AC-6(1), and CM-5(1); CCI-001361, CCI-000017, CCI-000217, CCI-000018, CCI-001403, CCI-001404, CCI-001405, CCI-002130, CCI-001683, CCI-001684, CCI-001685, CCI-001686, CCI-002132, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-001813.}

Any user interface supporting user accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must limit access according to specified limitations for each account. Install and configure any device having a STIG or SRG in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

All user interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement user-based authentication where each account is uniquely assigned to a specific user. User interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement at least three (3) levels of user account privilege including: 1) an account with read-only permissions 2) an account with full permissions including account creation and modification and 3) an account with greater permissions than read-only but without account creation and modification.

##### 3.3.1.1 Controllers

For user interfaces provided by controllers, provide access control in accordance with the User Interface Requirements table for the applicable control system and user interface type.

- a. For table entries of "NA": NA means Not Applicable, there are no interfaces in this category.
- b. For table entries of "None Required": The user interface is not required to support user accounts.
- c. For table entries of "MINIMALLY": The user interface must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- d. For table entries of "FULLY": The user interface must at FULLY support user accounts.
- e. For table entries of "KEY": The user interface must have physical security in the form of either a key lock on the interface itself or be furnished inside a locked enclosure. Where this is required for a read only interface, this lock must prevent viewing of data on the interface; for other interfaces, this lock must prevent using the interface to alter data.
- f. For table entries of "Physical Security": For Local FULL interfaces, the interface must be located inside mission space. For Local Limited (not FULL) interfaces, the user interface must either a) be located within mission space or b) be protected by physical security at least as good as the control devices (and equipment controlled by the control devices) affected by the interface. For purposes of this requirement, 'affected' includes controllers with data that can be

directly altered by the interface, as well as mechanical and/or electrical equipment directly controlled by those controllers, but does not include other interactions.

- g. Entries of the form "X and Y" must meet both the requirement indicated for X and the requirement indicated for Y. For example, an entry of "MINIMALLY and Physical Security" indicates the user interface must both MINIMALLY support accounts and have physical security.
- h. Entries of the form "X or Y" must meet either the requirement indicated for X or the requirement indicated for Y.

#### 3.3.1.1.1 Fire Protection Systems

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact Fire Protection Systems	
<u>User Interface Type</u>	<u>Access Control Requirement</u> (See note 2)
Local Read Only	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	None Required
Local Limited, Privileged	KEY and Physical Security
Local Full	KEY
Remote Read Only	None Required
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	FULLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

#### 3.3.2 Unsuccessful Logon Attempts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-7 (a), AC-7 (b); CCI-000043, CCI-000044, CCI-001423, CCI-002236, CCI-002237, CCI-002238}

Except for high availability user interfaces indicated as exempt, devices must meet the indicated requirements for handling unsuccessful logon attempts. If a device cannot meet these requirements, document device capabilities to protect from subsequent logon attempts and propose alternate protections in a [Device Account Lock Exception Request](#) submittal. Do not implement alternate protection measures in lieu of the indicated requirements without explicit permission from the Government. If no Device Account Lock Exceptions are requested, provide a document stating that no approval is being requested as the Device Account Lock Exception Request.

### 3.3.2.1 High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements

The following high availability interfaces are exempt from unsuccessful logon attempts requirements:

High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements		
User Interface	Location	Action to take in lieu of locking screen
FACP	ESS 128	NONE
FACP	ELECTRICAL 131	NONE
FACP	ELEC 210	NONE

### 3.3.3 System Use Notification

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-8; CCI-000048, CCI-002247, CCI-002243, CCI-002244, CCI-002245, CCI-002246, CCI-000050, CCI-002248}

#### 3.3.3.1 System Use Notification for Remote User Interfaces

Remote user interfaces must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of **DTM 08-060** on screen.

#### 3.3.3.2 System Use Notification for Local User Interfaces

Devices which are connected to a network and have a local user interface must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of **DTM 08-060** on the user interface screen if capable of doing so and must have a permanently affixed label with an approved banner from **DTM 08-060** if unable to display the warning banner on the screen. Where it is impractical (perhaps due to device size) to affix the label to the device, affix the label to the device enclosure.

Labels must be machine printed or engraved, plastic or metal, designed for permanent installation, must use a font no smaller than 14 point, and must provide a high contrast between font and background colors.

#### 3.3.4 Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-14; CCI-000061, CCI-000232}

The control system must require identification and authentication before allowing any actions except read-only actions by a user acting from a user interface which MINIMALLY or FULLY supports accounts.

#### 3.3.5 Physical Security in MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to PE-3(1), PE-4, PE-5, SC-7(a), SC-7(c), SC-8, SC-8(1); CCI-000928, CCI-002926, CCI-000936, CCI-002930, CCI-002931, CCI-000937, CCI-001097, CCI-001109, CCI-002418, CCI-002419, CCI-002421.}

### 3.3.5.1 Physical Security for Media

#### 3.3.5.1.1 Physical Security for Media Inside Mission Space

Install all non-IP network media located inside of the mission space in conduit. Install all IP network media located inside of the mission space in intermediate metallic conduit.

#### 3.3.5.1.2 Physical Security for Media Outside Mission Space

Install all network media (both IP and non-IP) located outside of the mission space in rigid metallic conduit.

#### 3.3.5.1.3 Physical Security for Non-Network Media in Fire Protection Systems

For Fire Suppression Systems which can be inhibited or forced to activate by manipulation of non-network wiring, install all non-network media outside of mission space, including analog and binary instrumentation wiring and power wiring, in rigid metallic conduit.

#### 3.3.5.2 Physical Security for Devices

Install all devices (computers and controllers) which are located outside of mission space in lockable enclosures. (Recall that per definition of mission space, a room controlled by the mission is mission space regardless of whether it is contiguous with other mission space.)

Install all controllers connected to an IP network in lockable enclosures (both inside and outside of mission space).

#### 3.3.5.2.1 Physical Security for Devices in Fire Protection Systems

For Fire Suppression systems with a release panel, install all components of the suppression system either inside mission space, or within locked enclosures. Components of these systems include: release panel, any relay or interface panels, analog and binary inputs or outputs, control valves, manual valves.

#### 3.3.5.3 Physical Security for User Interfaces

Physical security requirements for User Interfaces are specified in the preceding paragraphs of this Section.

### 3.3.6 Enclosures

Prior to final acceptance of the system, lock all lockable enclosures. Submit an [Enclosure Keys](#) submittal with all copies of keys for all enclosures and a key inventory list documenting all keys. Label each key with the matching enclosure identifier.

## 3.4 USER IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-2, IA-2(1), IA-2(12), IA-5 IA-5(b), IA-5(c), IA-5(e), IA-5(g), IA-5(1), IA-5(11); CCI-000764, CCI-000765, CCI-001953, CCI-001954, CCI-001544, CCI-001989, CCI-000182, CCI-001610, CCI-000192, CCI-000193, CCI-000194, CCI-000205, CCI-001619, CCI-001611, CCI-001612, CCI-001613,



CCI-001614, CCI-000195, CCI-001615, CCI-000196, CCI-000197, CCI-000199, CCI-000198, CCI-001616, CCI-001617, CCI-000200, CCI-001618, CCI-002041, CCI-002002, CCI-002003. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to AC-6 (1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9)IA-2(4), IA-5(13); CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-000768, CCI-002007.}

This subpart indicates requirements for specific methods of identification and authentication for users and user accounts. Where these requirements conflict apply the following order of precedence: 1) If present, Device Specific Requirements take precedence over any other requirements; and then 2) multifactor authentication requirements take precedence over password requirements.

#### 3.4.1 User Identification and Authentication for All System Types

Unless otherwise indicated, all user interfaces supporting accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must implement Identification and Authorization via passwords.

#### 3.4.2 User Identification and Authentication for Specific System Types

System specific requirements are in addition to and supersede those indicated for all system types. When no additional requirements are indicated for a specific system type the requirements for all systems still apply to that system type.

#### 3.4.3 User Identification and Authentication for Specific Devices

There are no additional device specific user interface requirements

#### 3.4.4 Implementation of Identification and Authorization Requirements

Identification and Authorization must be met by one of the following methods:

- a. Direct implementation in the user interface.
- b. For user interfaces on a computer: inheriting the Identification and Authorization from the computer operating system, either by the operating system limiting access to specific applications by user, or by the application itself having permissions based on the user logged into the computer.
- c. For remote interfaces: an implementation shared between the remote user interface server and the remote user interface client. For example, a requirement for PIV authentication may be met on a remote user interface by a PIV reader on a web browser client which sends the authentication information via HTTPS to the remote server.

#### 3.4.5 Password-Based Authentication Requirements

##### 3.4.5.1 Passwords for Controllers FULLY Supporting Accounts

All controllers FULLY supporting accounts and supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of twelve (12) characters

- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of sixty (60) days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five (5) passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least fifty percent of the characters.
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

#### 3.4.5.2 Passwords for Devices Minimally Supporting Accounts

Devices MINIMALLY supporting accounts must support passwords with a minimum length of four characters.

#### 3.4.5.3 Password Configuration and Reporting

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Coordinate selection of passwords with the Password Point of Contact. Do not use the same password for more than one device unless specifically instructed to do so. Provide a [Confidential Password Report](#) documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Do not provide the Password Summary Report in electronic format. Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

#### 3.4.6 Authenticator Feedback

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-6; CCI-000206}

Devices must never show authentication information, including passwords, on a display. Devices that momentarily display a character as it is entered, and then obscure the character, are acceptable. For devices that have STIGs or SRGs related to obscuring of authenticator feedback (CCI-000206), comply with the requirements of those STIGS/SRGs.

### 3.5 CYBERSECURITY AUDITING

Where an auditing requirement exists for email notification, notify via email the application administrator and Information System Security Officer (ISSO) of the event. Coordinate with the Email Address Point of Contact for email addresses. If outgoing email is not available to the system, configure the system for these notifications for future support of outgoing email.

### 3.5.1 Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-2(a), AU-2(c), AU-2(d), AU-3, AU-10, AU-12, AU-13(3), AU-14(b), AU-14(1), AU-14(2), AU-14(3), CM-5(1), SC-7 (9); CCI-000123, CCI-001571, CCI-000125, CCI-001485, CCI-000130, CCI-000131, CCI-000132, CCI-00133, CCI-000134, CCI-001487, CCI-000166, CCI-001899, CCI-000169, CCI-001459, CCI-000171, CCI-000172, CCI-001910, CCI-001914, CCI-001919, CCI-001464, CCI-001462, CCI-001920, CCI-001814, CCI-002400. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to AU-3 (1); CCI-000135, CCI-001488}

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit events, content of audit records or audit generation, comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

If auditing requirements can be met using existing control system alarm or event capabilities, those existing capabilities may be used to meet these requirements.

### 3.5.2 Audit Time Stamps

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-8; CCI-000159, CCI-001889, CCI-001890. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to AU-8 (1); CCI-001891, CCI-001892, CCI-002046.}

Any device (computer or controller) generating audit records must have an internal clock capable of providing time with a resolution of one second. Clocks must not drift more than 10 seconds per day. Configure the system so that each device (computer or controller) generating audit records maintains accurate time to within 1 second. Note that if the control system specifications include requirement for clocks, the most stringent requirement applies.

### 3.5.3 Audit Storage Capacity and Audit Upload

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-4; CCI-001848, CCI-001849}

The creation of audit records must never interfere with normal device operation. Devices must cease collection of auditing information if required to maintain normal operation.

- a. For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit storage capacity (CCI-001848 or CCI-001849) comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.
- a. For controllers capable of generating audit records, provide 60 days worth of secure local storage, assuming 10 auditable events per day.

#### 3.5.3.1 Audit Log Storage Notification In MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-5(1); CCI-001855.}

Controllers storing audit logs must provide notification when audit logs reach 75 percent of capacity either directly through email or indirectly by sending a notification to a computer, and the computer sending an

email. Computers storing audit logs must provide notification when audit logs reach 75 percent of capacity directly through email.

#### 3.5.3.2 Device Audit Record Upload Software

For each device (computer or controller) required to audit events and for which audit logs cannot be uploaded over the network by the Auditing Front End Software, provide and license to the Government software implementing a secure mechanism of uploading audit records from the device and exporting them to the Auditing Front End Software. Where different devices use different software, provide software of each type required to upload audit logs from all devices.

Submit copies of device audit record upload software if this function is not part of the software provided with the control system to meet requirements of other Sections. If there are no devices requiring this software, provide a document stating this in lieu of this submittal.

### 3.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR LEAST FUNCTIONALITY

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts), along with the network communication report submittal specified elsewhere in this section, relates to CM-6(a), CM-6(c), CM-7, CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-000363, CCI-000364, CCI-000365, CCI-001588, CCI-001755, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to CM-7(2), CM-7(5)(a), CM-7(5)(b); CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762}

For devices that have a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port and device I/O access for least functionality), install and configure the device in accordance with that STIG or SRGs.

#### 3.6.1 Device Capabilities

Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or full user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

Unless specifically required by the government, do not provide a capability to update device firmware over the network.

### 3.7 SYSTEM AND COMMUNICATION PROTECTION

#### 3.7.1 Collaborative Computing

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-15(a), SC-15(b); CCI-001150, CCI-001152.}

Without explicit approval from the project site, control systems must not use collaborative computing technologies.

#### 3.7.2 Denial of Service Protection and Application Partitioning In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-5, SC-39,

SC-7(a); CCI-001093, CCI-002385, CCI-002386, CCI-002430, CCI-001097. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to SC-2; CCI-001082.}

To the greatest extent practical, implement control logic without reliance on the network. Except when required to meet the requirements of the control system Section (where the requirement can only be met using computer hardware), do not implement control logic in computers. For MODERATE Impact systems, do not implement control logic in a device providing (i.e. acting as a server for) a Full Remote User Interface.

### 3.7.3 Process Isolation and Boundary Protection in Moderate Impact Fire Protection Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-7(a), SC-7(c), SC-7(4)(a), SC-7(4)(c), SC-7(5), SC-7(7), SC-7(9)(a), SC-7(11), SC-7(13), SC-7(13), SC-7(18); CCI-001097, CCI-001098, CCI-001102, CCI-002396, CCI-001109, CCI-002397, CCI-002398, CCI-002399, CCI-002403, CCI-001120, CCI-001119, CCI-001126}

#### 3.7.3.1 Radio Interfaces for Fire Protection Systems

When radios interfacing a local fire protection system to a supervisory system are not NIST FIPS 140-2 validated, use a relay panel interface between the local fire protection system and the radio. Install and configure the relay panel to prohibit initiating any action within the local fire protection system other than causing the system to play a pre-recorded message or causing the system to play a live audio message. Install relays using the normally closed contact such that they pass a signal when they open, and so that a relay that loses power or has a failed coil passes the signal

#### 3.7.3.2 Fire Suppression System Network Isolation

For fire suppression systems including a release panel, any network used in these systems shall be dedicated to these systems and must be isolated from any other network, including other components of the Fire Alarm and Fire Suppression systems. Use only dry contacts and relays to transfer signals from these systems to any other systems. Install relays using the normally closed contact such that they pass a signal when they open, and so that a relay that loses power or has a failed coil passes the signal

### 3.8 SAFE MODE AND FAIL SAFE OPERATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-12, SI-10(3), SI-17; CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002754, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775}

For all control system components with an applicable STIG or SRG, configure the component in accordance with all applicable STIGs and SRGs.

### 3.9 VULNERABILITY SCANNING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to RA-5 RA-5(a), RA-5(b), RA-5(c), RA-5(d); CCI-001054, CCI-001055, CCI-000156, CCI-001641, CCI-001643, CCI-001057, CCI-001058, CCI-001059. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to RA-5(1), RA-5(5); CCI-001062, CCI-001067, CCI-001645, CCI-002906.}

All IP devices must be scannable, such that the device can be scanned by

industry standard IP network scanning utilities without harm to the device, application, or functionality.

### 3.10 CONTROL SYSTEM CYBERSECURITY TESTING

{For Government Reference Only: For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-11(a), SA-11(b), SA-11(c), SA-11(d), SA-11(e); CCI-003171, CCI-003172, CCI-003173, CCI-003174, CCI-003175, CCI-003176, CCI-003177, CCI-003178.}

#### 3.10.1 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures

Prepare Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures explaining step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control system meets the requirements of this Section.

Submit 4 copies of the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

#### 3.10.2 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Execution

Using the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures verify that the control system meets the requirements of this Section. UNLESS GOVERNMENT WITNESSING OF A TEST IS SPECIFICALLY WAIVED BY THE GOVERNMENT, PERFORM ALL TESTS WITH A GOVERNMENT WITNESS. If testing reveals deficiencies in the system, correct the deficiency and retest until successful.

#### 3.10.3 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report

Prepare and submit a Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report documenting all tests performed and their results. Include all tests in the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures and any additional tests performed during testing. Document test failures and repairs conducted with the test results.

Submit four copies of the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL, CYBERSECURITY VALIDATION SUPPORT

In addition to testing and testing support required by other Sections, provide a minimum of 24 hours of technical support for cybersecurity testing of control systems to support the DoD Risk Management Framework process Cybersecurity assessment of the control system. This support is independent of (and in addition to) the Control System Cybersecurity Testing specified in this section.

### 3.12 CYBERSECURITY TRAINING

Provide eight hours of classroom and hands-on training for six Government personnel on the cybersecurity operation and maintenance of the control system provided. This training is in addition to and must be coordinated with control system training specified in other Sections.

Training session must include a question and answer period during which Government staff questions about cybersecurity aspects of the control system are answered. The Government will provide the training location.

Training must cover, at a minimum:

- a. applying software and firmware updates
- b. user account creation, modification, and deletion
- c. audit log upload procedures
- d. identification of privileged user interfaces and system impact of those interfaces

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 20 00

INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI C12.1 (2014; Errata 2016) Electric Meters - Code for Electricity Metering

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B1 (2013) Standard Specification for Hard-Drawn Copper Wire

ASTM B8 (2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft

ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 81 (2012) Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NECA)

NECA NEIS 1 (2015) Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C80.1 (2020) American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit (ERSC)

ANSI C80.3 (2020) American National Standard for Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)

NEMA 250 (2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)

NEMA ICS 1 (2000; R 2015) Standard for Industrial



Control and Systems: General Requirements

NEMA ICS 2	(2000; R 2020) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V
NEMA ICS 4	(2015) Application Guideline for Terminal Blocks
NEMA ICS 6	(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
NEMA KS 1	(2013) Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 V Maximum)
NEMA MG 1	(2018) Motors and Generators
NEMA MG 10	(2017) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase Induction Motors
NEMA MG 11	(1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors
NEMA RN 1	(2005; R 2013) Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit
NEMA TC 2	(2020) Standard for Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit
NEMA TC 3	(2021) Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings for Use With Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing
NEMA WD 1	(1999; R 2020) Standard for General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices
NEMA WD 6	(2016) Wiring Devices Dimensions Specifications
NEMA Z535.4	(2011; R 2017) Product Safety Signs and Labels

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA 20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA 20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14; TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022) National Electrical Code
NFPA 70E	(2021) Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace
NFPA 780	(2020) Standard for the Installation of

Lightning Protection Systems

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-607 (2019d) Generic Telecommunications Bonding  
and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer  
Premises

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.147 The Control of Hazardous Energy (Lock  
Out/Tag Out)

29 CFR 1910.303 Electrical, General

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1 (2005; Reprint Jan 2020) UL Standard for  
Safety Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 6 (2007; Reprint Sep 2019) UL Standard for  
Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel

UL 20 (2018; Reprint Jan 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety General-Use Snap Switches

UL 44 (2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables

UL 50 (2015) UL Standard for Safety Enclosures  
for Electrical Equipment,  
Non-Environmental Considerations

UL 67 (2018; Reprint Jul 2020) UL Standard for  
Safety Panelboards

UL 83 (2017; Reprint Mar 2020) UL Standard for  
Safety Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and  
Cables

UL 360 (2013; Reprint Aug 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for  
Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 486A-486B (2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Wire Connectors

UL 486C (2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Splicing Wire Connectors

UL 489 (2016; Rev 2019) UL Standard for Safety  
Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case  
Switches and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures

UL 498 (2017; Reprint Feb 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Attachment Plugs and Receptacles

UL 506	(2017) UL Standard for Safety Specialty Transformers
UL 508	(2018; Reprint Jul 2021) UL Standard for Safety Industrial Control Equipment
UL 510	(2020) UL Standard for Safety Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene and Rubber Insulating Tape
UL 514A	(2013; Reprint Aug 2017) UL Standard for Safety Metallic Outlet Boxes
UL 514B	(2012; Reprint May 2020) Conduit, Tubing and Cable Fittings
UL 514C	(2014; Reprint Feb 2020) UL Standard for Safety Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers
UL 651	(2011; Reprint Mar 2020) UL Standard for Safety Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings
UL 797	(2007; Reprint Mar 2021) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Metallic Tubing -- Steel
UL 854	(2020) Standard for Service-Entrance Cables
UL 869A	(2006; Reprint Jun 2020) Reference Standard for Service Equipment
UL 943	(2016; Reprint Feb 2018) UL Standard for Safety Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters
UL 984	(1996; Reprint Sep 2005) Hermetic Refrigerant Motor-Compressors
UL 1063	(2017) UL Standard for Safety Machine-Tool Wires and Cables
UL 1242	(2006; Reprint Aug 2020) Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit -- Steel
UL 1449	(2021) UL Standard for Safety Surge Protective Devices
UL 1660	(2019) Liquid-Tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in IEEE 100.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Marking Strips Drawings; G, RO

#### SD-03 Product Data

Receptacles; G, RO

Special Purpose Receptacles; G, RO

Circuit Breakers; G, RO

Switches; G, RO

Motor Controllers; G, RO

Manual Motor Starters; G, RO

Metering; G, RO

Telecommunications Grounding Busbar; G, RO

Surge Protective Devices; G, RO

Equipment Branch Circuit Schedule; G, DO

Conduit and Fittings; G, RO

Outlet Boxes And Covers; G, RO

Load Centers (Target Emplacements); G, RO

#### SD-06 Test Reports

600-volt Wiring Test; G, RO

Grounding System Test; G, RO

Ground-fault Receptacle Test; G, RO

#### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Electrical Systems, Data Package 5; G, RO

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.4.1 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in

these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Provide equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship in accordance with NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated. NECA NEIS 1 shall be considered the minimum standard for workmanship.

#### 1.4.2 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship and:

- a. Have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening including applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size.
- b. Have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period.
- c. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, provide products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

##### 1.4.2.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

##### 1.4.2.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable.

#### 1.5 ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein. Submit operation and maintenance manuals for electrical systems that provide basic data relating to the design, operation, and maintenance of the electrical distribution system for the building. Include the following:

- a. Single line diagram of the "as-built" building electrical system.
- b. Schematic diagram of electrical control system (other than HVAC, covered elsewhere).
- c. Manufacturers' operating and maintenance manuals on active electrical equipment.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

Provide equipment items supported by service organizations that are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

As a minimum, meet requirements of UL, where UL standards are established for those items, and requirements of NFPA 70 for all materials, equipment, and devices.

2.2 CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

Conform to the following:

2.2.1 Rigid Metallic Conduit

2.2.1.1 Rigid, Threaded Zinc-Coated Steel Conduit

ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

2.2.2 Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

PVC Type EPC-40, and EPC-80 in accordance with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651.

2.2.3 Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC)

UL 1242, zinc-coated steel only.

2.2.4 Electrical, Zinc-Coated Steel Metallic Tubing (EMT)

UL 797 and ANSI C80.3.

2.2.5 Plastic-Coated Rigid Steel and IMC Conduit

NEMA RN 1, Type 40( 40 mils thick).

2.2.6 Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 1, limited to 6 feet.

2.2.7 Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit, Steel

UL 360, limited to 6 feet.

2.2.8 Fittings for Metal Conduit, EMT, and Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 514B. Ferrous fittings: cadmium- or zinc-coated in accordance with UL 514B.

2.2.8.1 Fittings for Rigid Metal Conduit and IMC

Threaded-type. Split couplings unacceptable.

2.2.8.2 Fittings for EMT

Steel compression type.

2.2.9 Fittings for Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

NEMA TC 3 for PVC, and UL 514B.

#### 2.2.10 Liquid-Tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit

UL 1660.

#### 2.3 OUTLET BOXES AND COVERS

UL 514A, cadmium- or zinc-coated, if ferrous metal. UL 514C, if nonmetallic. In addition, target power outlet boxes and covers shall meet the requirements of the contract drawings.

#### 2.4 CABINETS, JUNCTION BOXES, AND PULL BOXES

UL 50; volume greater than 100 cubic inches, NEMA Type 1 enclosure; sheet steel, hot-dip, zinc-coated. Where exposed to wet or damp environments, NEMA Type 3R. Where exposed to corrosive environments, NEMA Type 4.

#### 2.5 WIRES AND CABLES

Provide wires and cables in accordance applicable requirements of NFPA 70 and UL for type of insulation, jacket, and conductor specified or indicated. Do not use wires and cables manufactured more than 12 months prior to date of delivery to site.

##### 2.5.1 Conductors

Provide the following:

- a. Conductor sizes and capacities shown are based on copper, unless indicated otherwise.
- b. Conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter: stranded.
- c. Conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter: solid.
- d. Conductors for remote control, alarm, and signal circuits, classes 1, 2, and 3: stranded unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- e. All conductors shall be copper.

##### 2.5.1.1 Equipment Manufacturer Requirements

When manufacturer's equipment requires copper conductors at the terminations or requires copper conductors to be provided between components of equipment, provide copper conductors or splices, splice boxes, and other work required to satisfy manufacturer's requirements.

##### 2.5.1.2 Minimum Conductor Sizes

Provide minimum conductor size in accordance with the following:

- a. Branch circuits: No. 12 AWG.
- b. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits: No. 14 AWG.
- c. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits: No. 16 AWG.
- d. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits: No. 22 AWG.

- e. Digital low voltage lighting control (DLVLC) system at 24 Volts or less: Category 5 UTP cables in accordance with DLVLC system manufacturer requirements.

## 2.5.2 Color Coding

Provide color coding for service, feeder, branch, control, and signaling circuit conductors.

### 2.5.2.1 Ground and Neutral Conductors

Provide color coding of ground and neutral conductors as follows:

- a. Grounding conductors: Green.
- b. Neutral conductors: White.
- c. Exception, where neutrals of more than one system are installed in same raceway or box, other neutrals color coding: white with a different colored (not green) stripe for each.

### 2.5.2.2 Ungrounded Conductors

Provide color coding of ungrounded conductors in different voltage systems as follows:

- a. 120/240 volt, single phase: Black and red

## 2.5.3 Insulation

Unless specified or indicated otherwise or required by NFPA 70, provide power and lighting wires rated for 600-volts, Type THWN/THHN conforming to UL 83 conforming to UL 44, except that grounding wire may be type TW conforming to UL 83; remote-control and signal circuits: Type TW or TF, conforming to UL 83. Where equipment or devices require 90-degree Centigrade (C) conductors, provide only conductors with 90-degree C insulation or better.

## 2.5.4 Bonding Conductors

ASTM B1, solid bare copper wire for sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller diameter; ASTM B8, Class B, stranded bare copper wire for sizes No. 6 AWG and larger diameter.

### 2.5.4.1 Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB)

Provide a copper conductor TBB in accordance with TIA-607 with No. 6 AWG minimum size, and sized at 2 kcmil per linear foot of conductor length up to a maximum size of 3/0 AWG.

### 2.5.4.2 Bonding Conductor for Telecommunications

Provide a copper conductor Bonding Conductor for Telecommunications between the telecommunications primary bonding busbar (PBB) and the electrical service ground in accordance with TIA-607. Size the bonding conductor for telecommunications the same as the TBB.



### 2.5.5 Service Entrance Cables

Service Entrance (SE) and Underground Service Entrance (USE) Cables, [UL 854](#).

## 2.6 SPLICES AND TERMINATION COMPONENTS

[UL 486A-486B](#) for wire connectors and [UL 510](#) for insulating tapes. Connectors for No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter wires: insulated, pressure-type in accordance with [UL 486A-486B](#) or [UL 486C](#) (twist-on splicing connector). Provide solderless terminal lugs on stranded conductors.

## 2.7 DEVICE PLATES

Provide the following:

- a. UL listed, one-piece device plates for outlets to suit the devices installed.
- b. For metal outlet boxes, plates on unfinished walls: zinc-coated sheet steel or cast metal having round or beveled edges.
- c. For nonmetallic boxes and fittings, other suitable plates may be provided.
- d. Plates on finished walls: nylon or lexan, minimum [0.03 inch](#) wall thickness and same color as receptacle or toggle switch with which they are mounted.
- e. Screws: machine-type with countersunk heads in color to match finish of plate.
- f. Sectional type device plates are not be permitted.
- g. Plates installed in wet locations: gasketed and UL listed for "wet locations."

## 2.8 SWITCHES

### 2.8.1 Toggle Switches

[NEMA WD 1](#), [UL 20](#), totally enclosed with bodies of thermoplastic or thermoset plastic and mounting strap with grounding screw. Include the following:

- a. Handles: thermoplastic. Color shall comply with Division 09 series Color Schedule.
- b. Wiring terminals: screw-type, side-wired.
- c. Contacts: silver-cadmium and contact arm - one-piece copper alloy.
- d. Switches: rated quiet-type ac only, 120/277 volts, with current rating and number of poles indicated.

### 2.8.2 Disconnect Switches

[NEMA KS 1](#). Provide heavy duty-type switches where indicated, where switches are rated higher than 240 volts, and for double-throw switches.

Utilize Class R fuseholders and fuses for fused switches, unless indicated otherwise. Provide horsepower rated for switches serving as the motor-disconnect means. Provide switches in NEMA enclosure as indicated per NEMA ICS 6.

## 2.9 RECEPTACLES

Provide the following:

- a. UL 498, general purpose specification grade, grounding-type. Residential grade receptacles are not acceptable.
- b. Ratings and configurations: as indicated.
- c. Bodies: as per NEMA WD 1. Color shall comply with Division 09 series Color Schedule.
- d. Face and body: thermoplastic supported on a metal mounting strap.
- e. Dimensional requirements: per NEMA WD 6.
- f. Screw-type, side-wired wiring terminals.
- g. Grounding pole connected to mounting strap.
- h. The receptacle: containing triple-wipe power contacts and double or triple-wipe ground contacts.

### 2.9.1 Split Duplex Receptacles

Provide separate terminals for each ungrounded pole. One receptacle must be controlled separately.

### 2.9.2 Weatherproof Receptacles

Provide receptacles, UL listed for use in "wet locations" with integral GFCI protection. Include cast metal box with gasketed, hinged, lockable and weatherproof while-in-use, cover plate.

### 2.9.3 Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter Receptacles

UL 943, duplex type for mounting in standard outlet box. Provide device capable of detecting current leak when the current to ground is 6 milliamperes or higher, and tripping per requirements of UL 943 for Class A ground-fault circuit interrupter devices. Provide screw-type, side-wired wiring terminals or pre-wired (pigtail) leads.

### 2.9.4 Special Purpose Receptacles

Provide in ratings indicated. Furnish one matching plug with each receptacle.

### 2.9.5 Plugs

Provide heavy-duty, rubber-covered cord of required size, install plugs thereon, and attach to equipment. Provide UL listed plugs with receptacles, complete with grounding blades. Where equipment is not available, turn over plugs and cord assemblies to the Government.

#### 2.9.6 Dryer Receptacles

NEMA 14-30 configuration, rated 30 amperes, 125/250 volts. Furnish one matching plug with each receptacle.

#### 2.10 PANELBOARDS

Provide panelboards in accordance with the following:

- a. UL 67 and UL 50 having a short-circuit current rating as indicated.
- b. Panelboards for use as service disconnecting means: additionally conform to UL 869A.
- c. Panelboards: circuit breaker-equipped.
- d. Designed such that individual breakers can be removed without disturbing adjacent units or without loosening or removing supplemental insulation supplied as means of obtaining clearances as required by UL.
- e. "Specific breaker placement" is required in panelboards to match the breaker placement indicated in the panelboard schedule on the design drawings
- f. Use of "Subfeed Breakers" is not acceptable.
- g. Main breaker: "separately" mounted "above" or "below" branch breakers.
- h. Where "space only" is indicated, make provisions for future installation of breakers.
- i. Directories: indicate load served by each circuit in panelboard.
- j. Directories: indicate source of service to panelboard (e.g., Panel PA served from Panel MDP).
- k. Type directories and mount in holder behind transparent protective covering.
- l. Panelboards: listed and labeled for their intended use.
- m. Panelboard nameplates: provided in accordance with paragraph FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES.

##### 2.10.1 Enclosure

Provide panelboard enclosure in accordance with the following:

- a. UL 50.
- b. Cabinets mounted outdoors or flush-mounted: hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication.
- c. Cabinets: painted in accordance with paragraph PAINTING.
- d. Outdoor cabinets: NEMA 3R raintight with a removable steel plate 1/4 inch thick in the bottom for field drilling for conduit connections.

- e. Front edges of cabinets: form-flanged or fitted with structural shapes welded or riveted to the sheet steel, for supporting the panelboard front.
- f. All cabinets: fabricated such that no part of any surface on the finished cabinet deviates from a true plane by more than 1/8 inch.
- g. Holes: provided in the back of indoor surface-mounted cabinets, with outside spacers and inside stiffeners, for mounting the cabinets with a 1/2 inch clear space between the back of the cabinet and the wall surface.
- h. Flush doors: mounted on hinges that expose only the hinge roll to view when the door is closed.
- i. Each door: fitted with a combined catch and lock latch.
- j. Keys: two provided with each lock, with all locks keyed alike.
- k. Finished-head cap screws: provided for mounting the panelboard fronts on the cabinets.

#### 2.10.2 Panelboard Buses

Support bus bars on bases independent of circuit breakers. Design main buses and back pans so that breakers may be changed without machining, drilling, or tapping. Provide isolated neutral bus in each panel for connection of circuit neutral conductors. Provide separate ground bus identified as equipment grounding bus per UL 67 for connecting grounding conductors; bond to steel cabinet.

#### 2.10.3 CIRCUIT BREAKERS

UL 489, thermal magnetic-type having a minimum short-circuit current rating equal to the short-circuit current rating of the panelboard in which the circuit breaker will be mounted. Breaker terminals: UL listed as suitable for type of conductor provided. Where indicated on the drawings, provide circuit breakers with shunt trip devices. Series rated circuit breakers and plug-in circuit breakers are unacceptable.

##### 2.10.3.1 Multipole Breakers

Provide common trip-type with single operating handle. Design breaker such that overload in one pole automatically causes all poles to open. Maintain phase sequence throughout each panel so that any three adjacent breaker poles are connected to Phases A, B, and C, respectively.

##### 2.10.3.2 Circuit Breaker With Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter

UL 943 and NFPA 70. Provide with auto-monitoring (self-test) and lockout features, "push-to-test" button, visible indication of tripped condition, and ability to detect and trip when current imbalance is 6 milliamperes or higher per requirements of UL 943 for Class A ground-fault circuit interrupter devices.

#### 2.11 LOAD CENTERS (TARGET EMPLACEMENTS)

Provide residential load centers (RLCs) in accordance with the following:

- a. UL 67 and UL 50.
- b. RLCs for use as service disconnecting means: additionally conform to UL 869A.
- c. Circuit breaker equipped.
- d. Designed such that individual breakers can be removed without disturbing adjacent units or without loosening or removing supplemental insulation supplied as means of obtaining clearances as required by UL.
- e. Where "space only" is indicated, make provisions for future installation of breakers.
- f. Provide printed directories.
- g. In addition, load centers shall meet the requirements of the contract drawings.

#### 2.11.1 RLC Buses

Support bus bars on bases independent of circuit breakers. Design main buses and back pans so that breakers may be changed without machining, drilling, or tapping. Provide isolated groundable neutral bus in each panel for connection of circuit neutral conductors. Provide separate ground bus identified as equipment grounding bus per UL 67 for connecting grounding conductors; bond to steel cabinet.

#### 2.11.2 Circuit Breakers

UL 489 thermal magnetic type having a minimum interrupting capacity as indicated. Breaker terminals: UL listed as suitable for type of conductor provided.

##### 2.11.2.1 Multipole Breakers

Provide common trip-type with single operating handle. Provide a breaker design such that overload in one pole automatically causes all poles to open. Maintain phase sequence throughout each panel so that any two adjacent breaker poles are connected to Phases A and B respectively.

#### 2.12 MOTORS

Provide motors in accordance with the following:

- a. NEMA MG 1 except provide Tank and Pump System (TPS) pump motors as specified in Section 21 21 00 FIRE EXTINGUISHING SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (RESIDENTIAL).
- b. Hermetic-type sealed motor compressors: Also comply with UL 984.
- c. Provide the size in terms of HP, or kVA, or full-load current, or a combination of these characteristics, and other characteristics, of each motor as indicated or specified.
- d. Determine specific motor characteristics to ensure provision of correctly sized starters and overload heaters.

- e. Rate motors for operation on 208-volt, 3-phase circuits with a terminal voltage rating of 200 volts, and those for operation on 480-volt, 3-phase circuits with a terminal voltage rating of 460 volts.
- f. Use motors designed to operate at full capacity with voltage variation of plus or minus 10 percent of motor voltage rating.
- g. Unless otherwise indicated, use continuous duty type motors if rated 1 HP and above.
- h. Where fuse protection is specifically recommended by the equipment manufacturer, provide fused switches in lieu of non-fused switches indicated.
- i. Use Inverter-Rated for equipment with variable torque loads and Inverter-Duty motors for equipment with constant torque loads designed to operate with adjustable speed drives (ASD).

#### 2.12.1 High Efficiency Single-Phase Motors

Single-phase fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors: high efficiency types are not acceptable. In exception, for special purpose motors and motor-driven equipment with a minimum seasonal or overall efficiency rating, such as a SEER rating, provide equipment with motor to meet the overall system rating indicated.

#### 2.12.2 Premium Efficiency Polyphase and Single-Phase Motors

Select polyphase and continuous-duty single phase motors based on high efficiency characteristics relative to typical characteristics and applications as listed in NEMA MG 10 and NEMA MG 11. In addition, continuous rated, polyphase squirrel-cage medium induction motors must meet the requirements for premium efficiency electric motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1, including the NEMA full load efficiency ratings. In exception, for motor-driven equipment with a minimum seasonal or overall efficiency rating, such as a SEER rating, provide equipment with motor to meet the overall system rating indicated.

#### 2.12.3 Motor Sizes

Provide size for duty to be performed, not exceeding the full-load nameplate current rating when driven equipment is operated at specified capacity under most severe conditions likely to be encountered. When motor size provided differs from size indicated or specified, make adjustments to wiring, disconnect devices, and branch circuit protection to accommodate equipment actually provided. Provide controllers for motors rated 1-hp and above with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.

#### 2.12.4 Wiring and Conduit

Provide internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Provide power wiring and conduit for field-installed equipment using adjustable speed drive (ASD) manufacturer required wiring type and length as specified herein. Power wiring and conduit: conform to the requirements specified herein. Control wiring: provided under, and conform to, the requirements of the section specifying

the associated equipment.

## 2.13 MOTOR CONTROLLERS

Provide motor controllers in accordance with the following:

- a. **UL 508, NEMA ICS 1, and NEMA ICS 2**, except fire pump controllers as specified in Section **21 21 00 FIRE EXTINGUISHING SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (RESIDENTIAL)S**.
- b. Provide controllers with thermal overload protection in each phase, and one spare normally open auxiliary contact, and one spare normally closed auxiliary contact.
- c. Provide controllers for motors rated 1-hp and above with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage.
- d. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.
- e. When used with pressure, float, or similar automatic-type or maintained-contact switch, provide a hand/off/automatic selector switch with the controller.
- f. Connections to selector switch: wired such that only normal automatic regulatory control devices are bypassed when switch is in "hand" position.
- g. Safety control devices, such as low and high pressure cutouts, high temperature cutouts, and motor overload protective devices: connected in motor control circuit in "hand" and "automatic" positions.
- h. Control circuit connections to hand/off/automatic selector switch or to more than one automatic regulatory control device: made in accordance with indicated or manufacturer's approved wiring diagram.
- i. Provide selector switch with the means for locking in any position.
- j. Provide a disconnecting means, capable of being locked in the open position, for the motor that is located in sight from the motor location and the driven machinery location. As an alternative, provide a motor controller disconnect, capable of being locked in the open position, to serve as the disconnecting means for the motor if it is in sight from the motor location and the driven machinery location.
- k. Overload protective devices: provide adequate protection to motor windings; be thermal inverse-time-limit type; and include manual reset-type pushbutton on outside of motor controller case.
- l. Cover of combination motor controller and manual switch or circuit breaker: interlocked with operating handle of switch or circuit breaker so that cover cannot be opened unless handle of switch or circuit breaker is in "off" position.
- m. Minimum short circuit withstand rating of combination motor controller shall equal that of its upstream panelboard.

### 2.13.1 Control Wiring

Provide control wiring in accordance with the following:

- a. All control wire: stranded tinned copper switchboard wire with 600-volt flame-retardant insulation Type SIS meeting [UL 44](#), or Type MTW meeting [UL 1063](#), and passing the VW-1 flame tests included in those standards.
- b. Hinge wire: Class K stranding.
- c. Current transformer secondary leads: not smaller than No. 10 AWG.
- d. Control wire minimum size: No. 14 AWG.
- e. Power wiring for 480-volt circuits and below: the same type as control wiring with No. 12 AWG minimum size.
- f. Provide wiring and terminal arrangement on the terminal blocks to permit the individual conductors of each external cable to be terminated on adjacent terminal points.

### 2.13.2 Control Circuit Terminal Blocks

Provide control circuit terminal blocks in accordance with the following:

- a. [NEMA ICS 4](#).
- b. Control circuit terminal blocks for control wiring: molded or fabricated type with barriers, rated not less than 600 volts.
- c. Provide terminals with removable binding, fillister or washer head screw type, or of the stud type with contact and locking nuts.
- d. Terminals: not less than No. 10 in size with sufficient length and space for connecting at least two indented terminals for 10 AWG conductors to each terminal.
- e. Terminal arrangement: subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer with not less than four spare terminals or 10 percent, whichever is greater, provided on each block or group of blocks.
- f. Modular, pull apart, terminal blocks are acceptable provided they are of the channel or rail-mounted type.
- g. Submit data showing that any proposed alternate will accommodate the specified number of wires, are of adequate current-carrying capacity, and are constructed to assure positive contact between current-carrying parts.

#### 2.13.2.1 Types of Terminal Blocks

- a. Short-Circuiting Type: Short-circuiting type terminal blocks: furnished for all current transformer secondary leads with provision for shorting together all leads from each current transformer without first opening any circuit. Terminal blocks: comply with the requirements of paragraph CONTROL CIRCUIT TERMINAL BLOCKS above.
- b. Load Type: Load terminal blocks rated not less than 600 volts and of



adequate capacity: provided for the conductors for NEMA Size 3 and smaller motor controllers and for other power circuits, except those for feeder tap units. Provide terminals of either the stud type with contact nuts and locking nuts or of the removable screw type, having length and space for at least two indented terminals of the size required on the conductors to be terminated. For conductors rated more than 50 amperes, provide screws with hexagonal heads. Conducting parts between connected terminals must have adequate contact surface and cross-section to operate without overheating. Provide each connected terminal with the circuit designation or wire number placed on or near the terminal in permanent contrasting color.

#### 2.13.3 Control Circuits

Control circuits: maximum voltage of 120 volts derived from control transformer in same enclosure. Transformers: conform to [UL 506](#), as applicable. Transformers, other than transformers in bridge circuits: provide primaries wound for voltage available and secondaries wound for correct control circuit voltage. Size transformers so that 80 percent of rated capacity equals connected load. Provide disconnect switch on primary side. Provide fuses in each ungrounded primary feeder. Provide one fused secondary lead with the other lead grounded.

#### 2.13.4 Enclosures for Motor Controllers

[NEMA ICS 6](#).

#### 2.13.5 Multiple-Speed Motor Controllers and Reversible Motor Controllers

Across-the-line-type, electrically and mechanically interlocked. Multiple-speed controllers: include compelling relays and multiple-button, station-type with pilot lights for each speed.

#### 2.13.6 Pushbutton Stations

Provide with "start/stop" momentary contacts having one normally open and one normally closed set of contacts, and red lights to indicate when motor is running. Stations: heavy duty, oil-tight design.

#### 2.13.7 Pilot and Indicating Lights

Provide LED cluster lamps. Provide transformer, resistor, or diode type.

#### 2.14 [MANUAL MOTOR STARTERS](#) (MOTOR RATED SWITCHES)

Designed for surface mounting with overload protection and pilot lights.

##### 2.14.1 Pilot Lights

Provide yoke-mounted, seven element LED cluster light module. Color: in accordance with [NEMA ICS 2](#).

#### 2.15 LOCKOUT REQUIREMENTS

Provide circuit breakers, disconnecting means, and other devices that are electrical energy-isolating capable of being locked out for machines and other equipment to prevent unexpected startup or release of stored energy in accordance with [29 CFR 1910.147](#), [NFPA 70E](#) and [29 CFR 1910.303](#). Comply with requirements of Division 23, "Mechanical" for mechanical isolation of

machines and other equipment.

## 2.16 BACKBOARDS

Provide void-free, fire-retardant, interior grade A-C plywood  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch thick with no added urea formaldehyde. Do not cover the fire stamp on the backboard.

## 2.17 GROUNDING AND BONDING EQUIPMENT

### 2.17.1 Ground Rods

UL 467. Ground rods: cone pointed copper-clad steel, with minimum diameter of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch and minimum length 10 feet.

### 2.17.2 Ground Bus

Copper ground bus: provided in the electrical equipment rooms as indicated.

### 2.17.3 Grounding Busbar

Provide corrosion-resistant grounding busbar suitable for indoor installation in accordance with TIA-607. Busbars: plated for reduced contact resistance. If not plated, clean the busbar prior to fastening the conductors to the busbar and apply an anti-oxidant to the contact area to control corrosion and reduce contact resistance. Provide a secondary bonding busbar (SBB) in the Electronic Security Room. Provide grounding busbars with the following:

- a. Predrilled copper busbar provided with holes for use with standard sized lugs.
- b. Minimum dimensions of 0.25 inches thick by 4 inches wide by 20 inches long.
- c. Listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

## 2.18 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Provide on each item of equipment a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

## 2.19 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

Provide field fabricated nameplates in accordance with the following:

- a. ASTM D709.
- b. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified or as indicated on the drawings.
- c. Each nameplate inscription: identify the function and, when applicable, the position.
- d. Nameplates: melamine plastic, 0.125 inch thick, white with black

center core.

- e. Surface: matte finish. Corners: square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core.
- f. Minimum size of nameplates: one by 2.5 inches.
- g. Lettering size and style: a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.

## 2.20 WARNING SIGNS

Provide warning signs for flash protection in accordance with NFPA 70E and NEMA Z535.4 for switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, and motor control centers that are in other than dwelling occupancies and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized. Provide field installed signs to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc flash hazards when warning signs are not provided by the manufacturer. Provide marking that is clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment.

## 2.21 FIRESTOPPING MATERIALS

Provide firestopping around electrical penetrations in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

## 2.22 METERING

ANSI C12.1. Provide meters where indicated. Meters shall measure, log, digitally display, and transmit Phase Voltage (V), Current (A), Real Power (W), Reactive Power (VAR), Apparent Power (VA), Power Factor (PF), and Frequency (HZ). The meters shall have user-selectable data logging intervals of 5, 10, 15, 30, 60 minutes, or 1 day. The meters shall transmit data at least daily. The meters shall comply with ANSI C12.1. See Division 23 control system specifications for communication protocol type. The electrical contractor shall coordinate the meter communication protocol and conductor types with the control contractor prior to ordering. Coordinate the interface compatibility requirements with the Installation's UMCS Manager through the COR.

## 2.23 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

Provide parallel type surge protective devices (SPD) which comply with UL 1449 where indicated SPD must have the same short-circuit current rating as the protected equipment and shall not be installed at a point of system where the available fault current is in excess of that rating. Use Type 1 or Type 2 SPD and connect on the load side of a dedicated circuit breaker. Submit performance and characteristic curves.

Provide the following modes of protection:

FOR SINGLE PHASE AND THREE PHASE WYE CONNECTED SYSTEMS-  
Phase to phase ( L-L )  
Each phase to neutral ( L-N )  
Neutral to ground ( N-G )  
Phase to ground ( L-G )

SPDs at the service entrance: provide with a minimum surge current rating

of 80,000 amperes for L-L mode minimum and 40,000 amperes for other modes (L-N, L-G, and N-G) and downstream SPDs rated 40,000 amperes for L-L mode minimum and 20,000 amperes for other modes (L-N, L-G, and N-G).

Provide SPDs per NFPA 780 for the lightning protection system.

Maximum L-N, and N-G Voltage Protection Rating:

600V for 208Y/120V, three phase system  
1,200V for 480Y/277V, three phase system

Maximum L-G Protection Rating:

700V for 208Y/120V, three phase system  
1,200V for 480Y/277V, three phase system

Maximum L-L Voltage Protection Rating:

1,200V for 208Y/120V, three phase system  
1,800V for 480Y/277V, three phase system

The minimum MCOV (Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage) rating for L-N and L-G modes of operation: 120 percent of nominal voltage for 240 volts and below; 115 percent of nominal voltage above 240 volts to 480 volts.

## 2.24 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Provide factory-applied finish on electrical equipment in accordance with the following:

- a. **NEMA 250** corrosion-resistance test and the additional requirements as specified herein.
- b. Interior and exterior steel surfaces of equipment enclosures: thoroughly cleaned followed by a rust-inhibitive phosphatizing or equivalent treatment prior to painting.
- c. Exterior surfaces: free from holes, seams, dents, weld marks, loose scale or other imperfections.
- d. Interior surfaces: receive not less than one coat of corrosion-resisting paint in accordance with the manufacturer's standard practice.
- e. Exterior surfaces: primed, filled where necessary, and given not less than two coats baked enamel with semigloss finish.
- f. Equipment located indoors: ANSI Light Gray, and equipment located outdoors: ANSI Light Gray.
- g. Provide manufacturer's coatings for touch-up work and as specified in paragraph FIELD APPLIED PAINTING.

## 2.25 COORDINATED POWER SYSTEM PROTECTION

Prepare analyses as specified in Section **26 28 01.00 10** COORDINATED POWER SYSTEM PROTECTION.

## 2.26 EQUIPMENT BRANCH CIRCUIT SCHEDULE

Submit manufacturer's product data for each piece of equipment identified in the Electrical Connection Schedules (See EP60x sheets.). The product data shall identify the voltage, phase, circuit sizing information (e.g., motor HP, minimum circuit ampacity (MCA), maximum overcurrent protection (MOCP), etc.), and other miscellaneous information and requirements (e.g., factory-installed equipment such as control transformers or disconnects, ancillary equipment provided such as VFD's, manufacturer's electrical installation instructions, etc.). The submittal shall verify that the submitted data matches the Electrical Connection Schedules on the drawings. The submittal shall indicate any discrepancies and shall make recommendations for corrective action. The submittal shall be submitted and approved 1 month prior to ordering of mechanical or electrical equipment.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations, including weatherproof and hazardous locations and ducts, plenums and other air-handling spaces: conform to requirements of NFPA 70 and IEEE C2 and to requirements specified herein.

#### 3.1.1 Underground Service

Underground service conductors and associated conduit: continuous from service entrance equipment to outdoor power system connection.

#### 3.1.2 Service Entrance Identification

Service entrance disconnect devices, switches, and enclosures: labeled and identified as such.

Where work results in service entrance disconnect devices in more than one enclosure, as permitted by NFPA 70, label each enclosure, new and existing, as one of several enclosures containing service entrance disconnect devices. Label, at minimum: indicate number of service disconnect devices housed by enclosure and indicate total number of enclosures that contain service disconnect devices. Provide laminated plastic labels conforming to paragraph FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES. Use lettering of at least 0.25 inch in height, and engrave on black-on-white matte finish. Service entrance disconnect devices in more than one enclosure: provided only as permitted by NFPA 70.

#### 3.1.3 Wiring Methods

Provide insulated conductors installed in rigid steel conduit, IMC, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or EMT, except where specifically indicated or specified otherwise or required by NFPA 70 to be installed otherwise. Grounding conductor: separate from electrical system neutral conductor. Provide insulated green equipment grounding conductor for circuit(s) installed in conduit and raceways. Minimum conduit size: 1/2 inch in diameter for low voltage lighting and power circuits. Vertical distribution in multiple story buildings: made with metal conduit in fire-rated shafts, with metal conduit extending through shafts for minimum distance of 6 inches. Firestop conduit which penetrates fire-rated walls, fire-rated partitions, or fire-rated floors in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.1.3.1 Pull Wire

Install pull wires in empty conduits. Pull wire: plastic having minimum 200-pound force tensile strength. Leave minimum 36 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.

### 3.1.4 Conduit Installation

Unless indicated otherwise, conceal conduit under floor slabs and within finished walls, ceilings, and floors. Keep conduit minimum 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot water pipes. Install conduit parallel with or at right angles to ceilings, walls, and structural members where located above accessible ceilings and where conduit will be visible after completion of project.

#### 3.1.4.1 Restrictions Applicable to EMT

- a. Do not install underground.
- b. Do not encase in concrete, mortar, grout, or other cementitious materials.
- c. Do not use in areas subject to physical damage including but not limited to equipment rooms where moving or replacing equipment could physically damage the EMT. Do not use below 5 ft AFF in mechanical equipment rooms.
- d. Do not use in hazardous areas.
- e. Do not use outdoors.
- f. Do not use in fire pump rooms.
- g. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

#### 3.1.4.2 Restrictions Applicable to Nonmetallic Conduit

- a. PVC Schedule 40.
  - (1) Do not use where subject to physical damage, including but not limited to, mechanical equipment rooms, electrical equipment rooms, fire pump rooms, and where restrictions are applying to both PVC Schedule 40 and PVC Schedule 80.
  - (2) Do not use above grade, except where allowed in this section for rising through floor slab or indicated otherwise.
- b. PVC Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
  - (1) Do not use where subject to physical damage, including but not limited to, power plant, missile magazines, and other such areas.
  - (2) Do not use in hazardous (classified) areas.
  - (3) Do not use in penetrating fire-rated walls or partitions, or fire-rated floors.

-

#### 3.1.4.3 Restrictions Applicable to Flexible Conduit

Use only as specified in paragraph FLEXIBLE CONNECTIONS. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

#### 3.1.4.4 Service Entrance Conduit, Underground

PVC, Type-EPC 40. Underground portion shall be encased in minimum of 3 inches of concrete and shall be installed minimum 18 inches below slab or grade. Convert nonmetallic conduit to plastic-coated rigid steel conduit before rising through floor slab. Plastic coating: extend minimum 6 inches above floor.

#### 3.1.4.5 Underground Conduit Other Than Service Entrance

PVC, Type-EPC 40. Convert nonmetallic conduit to rigid steel conduit before rising through floor slab.

#### 3.1.4.6 Conduit Installed Under Floor Slabs

Conduit run under floor slab: located a minimum of 8 inches below the vapor barrier. Seal around conduits at penetrations thru vapor barrier.

#### 3.1.4.7 Conduit Through Floor Slabs

Where conduits rise through floor slabs, do not allow curved portion of bends to be visible above finished slab. Where conduit rises through slab-on grade, seal all electrical penetrations to prevent infiltration of air, insects, and vermin.

#### 3.1.4.8 Stub-Ups

Provide conduits stubbed up through concrete floor for connection to free-standing equipment with adjustable top or coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Extend conductors to equipment in rigid steel conduit, except that flexible metal conduit may be used 6 inches above floor. Where no equipment connections are made, install screwdriver-operated threaded flush plugs in conduit end.

#### 3.1.4.9 Conduit Support

Support conduit by pipe straps, wall brackets, threaded rod conduit hangers, or ceiling trapeze. Fasten by wood screws to wood; by toggle bolts on hollow masonry units; by concrete inserts or expansion bolts on concrete or brick; and by machine screws, welded threaded studs, or spring-tension clamps on steel work. Threaded C-clamps may be used on rigid steel conduit only. Do not weld conduits or pipe straps to steel structures. Do not exceed one-fourth proof test load for load applied to fasteners. Provide vibration resistant and shock-resistant fasteners attached to concrete ceiling. Do not cut main reinforcing bars for any holes cut to depth of more than 1 1/2 inches in reinforced concrete beams or to depth of more than 3/4 inch in concrete joints. Fill unused holes. In partitions of light steel construction, use sheet metal screws. In suspended-ceiling construction, run conduit above ceiling. Do not support conduit by ceiling support system. Conduit and box systems: supported independently of both (a) tie wires supporting ceiling grid system, and (b) ceiling grid system into which ceiling panels are placed. Do not share supporting means between electrical raceways and mechanical piping

or ducts. Coordinate installation with above-ceiling mechanical systems to assure maximum accessibility to all systems. Spring-steel fasteners may be used for lighting branch circuit conduit supports in suspended ceilings in dry locations. Support exposed risers in wire shafts of multistory buildings by U-clamp hangers at each floor level and at 10 foot maximum intervals. Where conduit crosses building expansion joints, provide suitable expansion fitting that maintains conduit electrical continuity by bonding jumpers or other means. For conduits greater than 2 1/2 inches inside diameter, provide supports to resist forces of 0.5 times the equipment weight in any direction and 1.5 times the equipment weight in the downward direction.

#### 3.1.4.10 Directional Changes in Conduit Runs

Make changes in direction of runs with symmetrical bends or cast-metal fittings. Make field-made bends and offsets with hickey or conduit-bending machine. Do not install crushed or deformed conduits. Avoid trapped conduits. Prevent plaster, dirt, or trash from lodging in conduits, boxes, fittings, and equipment during construction. Free clogged conduits of obstructions.

#### 3.1.4.11 Locknuts and Bushings

Fasten conduits to sheet metal boxes and cabinets with two locknuts where required by NFPA 70, where insulated bushings are used, and where bushings cannot be brought into firm contact with the box; otherwise, use at least minimum single locknut and bushing. Provide locknuts with sharp edges for digging into wall of metal enclosures. Install bushings on ends of conduits, and provide insulating type where required by NFPA 70.

#### 3.1.4.12 Flexible Connections

Provide flexible steel conduit between 3 and 6 feet in length for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures; for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for motors. Install flexible conduit to allow 20 percent slack. Minimum flexible steel conduit size: 1/2 inch diameter. Provide liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit in wet and damp locations for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, movement or motors. Provide separate ground conductor across flexible connections.

#### 3.1.5 Boxes, Outlets, and Supports

Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures. Boxes for metallic raceways: cast-metal, hub-type when located in wet locations, when surface mounted on outside of exterior surfaces, when surface mounted on interior walls exposed up to 7 feet above floors and walkways, or when installed in hazardous areas and when specifically indicated. Boxes in other locations: sheet steel, except that nonmetallic boxes may be used with nonmetallic conduit system. Provide each box with volume required by NFPA 70 for number of conductors enclosed in box. Boxes for mounting lighting fixtures: minimum 4 inches square, or octagonal, except that smaller boxes may be installed as required by fixture configurations, as approved. Boxes for use in masonry-block or tile walls: square-cornered, tile-type, or standard boxes having square-cornered, tile-type covers. Provide gaskets for cast-metal boxes installed in wet locations and boxes installed flush with outside of exterior surfaces. Provide separate boxes for flush or recessed fixtures



when required by fixture terminal operating temperature; provide readily removable fixtures for access to boxes unless ceiling access panels are provided. Support boxes and pendants for surface-mounted fixtures on suspended ceilings independently of ceiling supports. Fasten boxes and supports with bolts and expansion shields on concrete or brick, with toggle bolts on hollow masonry units, and with machine screws or welded studs on steel. In open overhead spaces, cast boxes threaded to raceways need not be separately supported except where used for fixture support; support sheet metal boxes directly from building structure or by bar hangers. Where bar hangers are used, attach bar to raceways on opposite sides of box, and support raceway with approved-type fastener maximum 24 inches from box. When penetrating reinforced concrete members, avoid cutting reinforcing steel.

#### 3.1.5.1 Boxes

Boxes for use with raceway systems: minimum 1 1/2 inches deep, except where shallower boxes required by structural conditions are approved. Boxes for other than lighting fixture outlets: minimum 4 inches square, except that 4 by 2 inch boxes may be used where only one raceway enters outlet. Telecommunications outlets: a minimum of 4 11/16 inches square by 2 1/8 inches deep, except for wall mounted telephones. Mount outlet boxes flush in finished walls.

#### 3.1.5.2 Pull Boxes

Construct of at least minimum size required by NFPA 70 of code-gauge aluminum or galvanized sheet steel, and compatible with nonmetallic raceway systems, except where cast-metal boxes are required in locations specified herein. Provide boxes with screw-fastened covers. Where several feeders pass through common pull box, tag feeders to indicate clearly electrical characteristics, circuit number, and panel designation.

#### 3.1.6 Mounting Heights

Mount panelboards, enclosed circuit breakers, motor controllers and disconnecting switches so height of operating handle at its highest position is maximum 78 inches above floor. Mount receptacles and telecommunications outlets 18 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated. Wall-mounted telecommunications outlets: mounted at height 60 inches above finished floor. Mount other devices as indicated. Measure mounting heights of wiring devices and outlets in non-hazardous areas to center of device or outlet. Measure mounting heights of receptacle outlet boxes in the hazardous areas to the bottom of the outlet box.

#### 3.1.7 Conductor Identification

Provide conductor identification within each enclosure where tap, splice, or termination is made. For conductors No. 6 AWG and smaller diameter, provide color coding by factory-applied, color-impregnated insulation. For conductors No. 4 AWG and larger diameter, provide color coding by plastic-coated, self-sticking markers; colored nylon cable ties and plates; or heat shrink-type sleeves. Identify control circuit terminations in accordance with Division 23 and manufacturer's recommendations. Provide telecommunications system conductor identification as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEMS.

#### 3.1.7.1 Marking Strips

Provide marking strips for identification of power distribution, control, data, and communications cables in accordance with the following:

- a. Provide white or other light-colored plastic marking strips, fastened by screws to each terminal block, for wire designations.
- b. Use permanent ink for the wire numbers
- c. Provide reversible marking strips to permit marking both sides, or provide two marking strips with each block.
- d. Size marking strips to accommodate the two sets of wire numbers.
- e. Assign a device designation in accordance with **NEMA ICS 1** to each device to which a connection is made. Mark each device terminal to which a connection is made with a distinct terminal marking corresponding to the wire designation used on the Contractor's schematic and connection diagrams.
- f. The wire (terminal point) designations used on the Contractor's wiring diagrams and printed on terminal block marking strips may be according to the Contractor's standard practice; however, provide additional wire and cable designations for identification of remote (external) circuits for the Government's wire designations.
- g. Prints of the **marking strips** drawings submitted for approval will be so marked and returned to the Contractor for addition of the designations to the terminal strips and tracings, along with any rearrangement of points required.

#### 3.1.8 Splices

Make splices in accessible locations. Make splices in conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter with insulated, pressure-type connector. Make splices in conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter with solderless connector, and cover with insulation material equivalent to conductor insulation.

#### 3.1.9 Covers and Device Plates

Install with edges in continuous contact with finished wall surfaces without use of mats or similar devices. Plaster fillings are not permitted. Install plates with alignment tolerance of **1/16 inch**. Use of sectional-type device plates are not permitted. Provide gasket for plates installed in wet locations.

#### 3.1.10 Electrical Penetrations

Seal openings around electrical penetrations through fire resistance-rated walls, partitions, floors, or ceilings in accordance with Section **07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING**.

#### 3.1.11 Grounding and Bonding

Provide in accordance with **NFPA 70** and **NFPA 780**. Ground exposed, non-current-carrying metallic parts of electrical equipment, metallic raceway systems, grounding conductor in metallic and nonmetallic raceways,

telecommunications system grounds, and neutral conductor of wiring systems. Make ground connection at main service equipment, and extend grounding conductor to point of entrance of metallic water service. Make connection to water pipe by suitable ground clamp or lug connection to plugged tee. If flanged pipes are encountered, make connection with lug bolted to street side of flanged connection. Supplement metallic water service grounding system with additional made electrode in compliance with [NFPA 70](#). Interconnect all grounding media in or on the structure to provide a common ground potential. This includes lightning protection, electrical service, telecommunications system grounds, as well as underground metallic piping systems. Make interconnection to the gas line on the customer's side of the meter. Use main size lightning conductors for interconnecting these grounding systems to the lightning protection system. In addition to the requirements specified herein, provide telecommunications grounding in accordance with [TIA-607](#). Where ground fault protection is employed, ensure that connection of ground and neutral does not interfere with correct operation of fault protection.

#### 3.1.11.1 Ground Rods

Provide ground rods and measure the resistance to ground using the fall-of-potential method described in [IEEE 81](#). If the resultant resistance exceeds 25 ohms measured not less than 48 hours after rainfall, notify the Contracting Officer who will decide on the number of ground rods to add.

#### 3.1.11.2 Grounding Connections

Make grounding connections which are buried or otherwise normally inaccessible, excepting specifically those connections for which access for periodic testing is required, by exothermic weld or high compression connector.

- a. Make exothermic welds strictly in accordance with the weld manufacturer's written recommendations. Welds which are "puffed up" or which show convex surfaces indicating improper cleaning are not acceptable. Mechanical connectors are not required at exothermic welds.
- b. Make high compression connections using a hydraulic or electric compression tool to provide the correct circumferential pressure. Provide tools and dies as recommended by the manufacturer. Use an embossing die code or other standard method to provide visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on the ground wire.

#### 3.1.11.3 Ground Bus

Provide a copper ground bus in the electrical equipment rooms as indicated. Noncurrent-carrying metal parts of transformer neutrals and other electrical equipment: effectively grounded by bonding to the ground bus. Bond the ground bus to both the entrance ground, and to ground rods as specified above having the upper ends terminating approximately 4 inches above the floor. Make connections and splices of the brazed, welded, bolted, or pressure-connector type, except use pressure connectors or bolted connections for connections to removable equipment.

### 3.1.12 Equipment Connections

Provide power wiring for the connection of motors and control equipment under this section of the specification. Except as otherwise specifically noted or specified, automatic control wiring, control devices, and protective devices within the control circuitry are not included in this section of the specifications and are provided under the section specifying the associated equipment.

### 3.1.13 Watthour Meters

ANSI C12.1.

### 3.1.14 Surge Protective Devices

Connect the surge protective devices in parallel to the power source, keeping the conductors as short and straight as practically possible. Maximum allowed lead length is 3 feet avoiding 90 degree bends.

## 3.2 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

## 3.3 WARNING SIGN MOUNTING

Provide the number of signs required to be readable from each accessible side. Space the signs in accordance with NFPA 70E.

## 3.4 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Where field painting of enclosures for panelboards, load centers or the like is specified to match adjacent surfaces, to correct damage to the manufacturer's factory applied coatings, or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria, provide manufacturer's recommended coatings and apply in accordance to manufacturer's instructions.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Furnish test equipment and personnel and submit written copies of test results. Give Contracting Officer 5 working days notice prior to each test.

### 3.5.1 Devices Subject to Manual Operation

Operate each device subject to manual operation at least five times, demonstrating satisfactory operation each time.

### 3.5.2 600-Volt Wiring Test

Test wiring rated 600 volt and less to verify that no short circuits or accidental grounds exist. Perform insulation resistance tests on wiring No. 6 AWG and larger diameter using instrument which applies voltage of 1,000 volts DC for 600 volt rated wiring and 500 volts DC for 300 volt rated wiring per NETA ATS to provide direct reading of resistance. All existing wiring to be reused shall also be tested.

### 3.5.3 Ground-Fault Receptacle Test

Test ground-fault receptacles with a "load" (such as a plug in light) to verify that the "line" and "load" leads are not reversed. Press the TEST button and then the RESET button to verify by LED status that the device is a self-test model as specified in [UL 943](#).

### 3.5.4 Grounding System Test

Test grounding system to ensure continuity, and that resistance to ground is not excessive. Test each ground rod for resistance to ground before making connections to rod; tie grounding system together and test for resistance to ground. Make resistance measurements in dry weather, not earlier than 48 hours after rainfall. Submit written results of each test to Contracting Officer, and indicate location of rods as well as resistance and soil conditions at time measurements were made.

### 3.5.5 Watthour Meter

#### a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Examine for broken parts, shipping damage, and tightness of connections.
- (2) Verify that meter type, scales, and connections are in accordance with approved shop drawings.

#### b. Electrical tests

- (1) Determine accuracy of meter.
- (2) Calibrate watthour meters to one-half percent.
- (3) Verify that correct multiplier has been placed on face of meter, where applicable.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 28 01.00 10

COORDINATED POWER SYSTEM PROTECTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 242 (2001; Errata 2003) Recommended Practice  
for Protection and Coordination of  
Industrial and Commercial Power Systems -  
Buff Book

IEEE 399 (1997) Brown Book IEEE Recommended  
Practice for Power Systems Analysis

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The power system covered by this specification consists of: .

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Fault Current Analysis

Protective Device Coordination Study

System Coordinator

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 System Coordinator

System coordination, recommended ratings and settings of protective devices, and design analysis must be accomplished by a registered professional electrical power engineer with a minimum of 3 years of current experience in the coordination of electrical power systems. Submit verification of experience and license number, of a registered Professional Engineer as specified above. Provide experience data consisting of at least five references for work of a magnitude comparable to this contract, including points of contact, addresses and telephone numbers.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COORDINATED POWER SYSTEM PROTECTION

Prepare analyses to demonstrate that the equipment selected and system constructed meet the contract requirements for ratings, coordination, and protection. Include a load flow analysis, a [fault current analysis](#), and a [protective device coordination study](#). Submit the study along with protective device equipment submittals. No time extensions or similar contract modifications will be granted for work arising out of the requirements for this study. Approval of protective devices proposed will be based on recommendations of this study. The Government is not responsible for any changes to equipment, device ratings, settings, or additional labor for installation of equipment or devices ordered and/or procured prior to approval of the study. The studies must be performed by a registered professional engineer with demonstrated experience in power system coordination in the last 3 years. Provide a list of references complete with points of contact, addresses and telephone numbers. The selection of the engineer is subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer.

#### 2.1.1 Scope of Analyses

The fault current analysis and protective device coordination study must begin at: the source bus and extend through outgoing breakers .

#### 2.1.2 Determination of Facts

Determine and document the time-current characteristics, features, and nameplate data for each existing protective device. Coordinate with the Sand Hills Utility Services for fault current availability at the site.

#### 2.1.3 Single Line Diagram

Prepare a single line diagram to show the electrical system buses, devices, transformation points, and all sources of fault current (including generator and motor contributions). A fault-impedance diagram or a computer analysis diagram may be provided. Each bus, device or transformation point must have a unique identifier. If a fault-impedance diagram is provided, show impedance data. Show location of switches, breakers, and circuit interrupting devices on the diagram together with available fault data, and the device interrupting rating.

#### 2.1.4 Fault Current Analysis

##### 2.1.4.1 Method

Perform the fault current analysis in accordance with methods described in [IEEE 242](#), and [IEEE 399](#).

##### 2.1.4.2 Data

Utilize actual data in fault calculations. Bus characteristics and transformer impedance must be those proposed. Document data in the report.

##### 2.1.4.3 Fault Current Availability

Provide balanced three-phase fault, bolted line-to-line fault, and

line-to-ground fault current values at each voltage transformation point and at each power distribution bus. Show the maximum and minimum values of fault available at each location in tabular form on the diagram or in the report.

#### 2.1.5 Coordination Study

Demonstrate that the maximum possible degree of selectivity has been obtained between devices specified, consistent with protection of equipment and conductors from damage from overloads and fault conditions. Include a description of the coordination of the protective devices in this project. Provide a written narrative describing: which devices may operate in the event of a fault at each bus; the logic used to arrive at device ratings and settings; situations where system coordination is not achievable due to device limitations (an analysis of any device curves which overlap); coordination between upstream and downstream devices; and relay settings. Provide recommendations to improve or enhance system reliability, and detail where such changes would involve additions or modifications to the contract and cost damages (addition or reduction). Provide composite coordination plots on log-log graph paper.

#### 2.1.6 Study report

- a. Include a narrative describing: the analyses performed; the bases and methods used; and the desired method of coordinated protection of the power system.
- b. Include descriptive and technical data for existing devices and new protective devices proposed. Include manufacturers published data, nameplate data, and definition of the fixed or adjustable features of the existing or new protective devices.
- c. Document utility company data including system voltages, fault MVA, system X/R ratio, time-current characteristic curves, current transformer ratios, and relay device numbers and settings; and existing power system data including time-current characteristic curves and protective device ratings and settings.
- d. The report must contain fully coordinated composite time-current characteristics curves for each bus in the system, as required to ensure coordinated power system protection between protective devices or equipment. Include recommended ratings and settings of all protective devices in tabulated form.
- e. Provide the calculation performed for the analyses, including computer analysis programs utilized. Provide the name of the software package, developer, and version number.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --



SECTION 26 41 00

LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALLIANCE FOR TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY SOLUTIONS (ATIS)

ATIS ANSI O5.1 (2017) Wood Poles -- Specifications & Dimensions

AMERICAN WOOD PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (AWPA)

AWPA U1 (2021) Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A475 (2003; R 2020) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Wire Strand

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 81 (2012) Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA 20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA 20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14; TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022) National Electrical Code

NFPA 780 (2020) Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

RUS Bull 1728F-700 (2011) Specification for Wood Poles, Stubs, and Anchor Logs

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 96 (2016a) UL Standard for Safety Lightning Protection Components

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL Electrical Construction (2012) Electrical Construction Equipment  
Directory

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Verification of Dimensions

Confirm all details of work, verify all dimensions in field, and advise Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing work. Obtain prior approval of Contracting Officer before making any departures from the design.

1.2.2 System Requirements

Provide a system furnished under this specification consisting of the latest UL Listed products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in production of lightning protection system components. Comply with NFPA 70, NFPA 780, and UL 96.

1.2.3 Lightning Protection System Installers Documentation

Provide documentation showing that the installer is certified with a commercial third-party inspection company whose sole work is lightning protection, or is a UL Listed Lightning Protection Installer. In either case, the documentation must show that they have completed and passed the requirements for certification or listing, and have a minimum of 2 years documented experience installing lightning protection systems for DoD projects of similar scope and complexity.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Overall lightning protection systems; G, RO

Each major component; G, RO

SD-06 Test Reports

Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test Plan; G, RO

Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test; G, RO

SD-07 Certificates

Lightning Protection System Installers Documentation; G, RO

Component UL Listed and Labeled; G, RO

Lightning protection system inspection certificate; G, RO

Roof manufacturer's warranty; G, RO

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

In each standard referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word "shall" or "must" has been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these standards to "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean Contracting Officer.

##### 1.4.1 Installation Drawings

###### 1.4.1.1 Overall System Drawing

Submit installation shop drawings for the overall lightning protection systems. Include on the drawings the physical layout of the equipment (plan view and elevations), mounting details, relationship to other parts of the work, and wiring diagrams.

###### 1.4.1.2 Major Components

Submit detail drawings for each major component including manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, catalog cuts, and installation instructions.

###### 1.4.2 Component UL Listed and Labeled

Submit proof of compliance that components are UL Listed and Labeled. Listing alone in UL Electrical Construction, which is the UL Electrical Construction Directory, is not acceptable evidence. In lieu of Listed and Labeled, submit written certificate from an approved, nationally recognized testing organization equipped to perform such services, stating that items have been tested and conform to requirements and testing methods of Underwriters Laboratories.

##### 1.4.3 Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test Plan

Provide a lightning protection and grounding system test plan. Detail both the visual inspection and electrical testing of the system and components in the test plan. Identify (number) the system test points/locations along with a listing or description of the item to be tested and the type of test to be conducted. As a minimum, include a sketch of the facility and surrounding lightning protection system as part of the specific test plan for each structure. Include the requirements specified in paragraph, "Testing of Integral Lightning Protection System" in the test plan.

##### 1.4.4 Lightning Protection System Inspection Certificate

Inspection must cover every connection, air terminal, conductor, fastener, accessible grounding point and other components of the lightning protection system to ensure 100% system compliance. This includes witnessing the tests for the resistance measurements for ground rods, and for continuity measurements for bonds. It also includes verification of proper surge protective devices for power, data and telecommunication systems. Random sampling or partial inspection of a facility is not acceptable.

## 1.5 SITE CONDITIONS

Confirm all details of work, verify all dimensions in field, and advise Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing work. Obtain prior approval of Contracting Officer before changing the design.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

Do not use a combination of materials that forms an electrolytic couple of such nature that corrosion is accelerated in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from the junction of such metals. Where unusual conditions exist which would cause corrosion of conductors, provide conductors with protective coatings, such as tin or lead, or oversize conductors. Where a mechanical hazard is involved, increase conductor size to compensate for the hazard or protect conductors. When metallic conduit or tubing is provided, electrically bond conductor to conduit or tubing at the upper and lower ends by clamp type connectors or welds (including exothermic). All lightning protection components, such as bonding plates, air terminals, air terminal supports and braces, chimney bands, clips, connector fittings, and fasteners are to comply with the requirements of [UL 96](#) classes as applicable.

#### 2.1.1 Main and Bonding Conductors

[NFPA 780](#) and [UL 96](#) Class I materials.

### 2.2 COMPONENTS

#### 2.2.1 Air Terminals

Provide solid air terminals with a blunt tip. Tubular air terminals are not permitted. Support air terminals more than [24 inches](#) in length by suitable brace, supported at not less than one-half the height of the terminal.

#### 2.2.2 Ground Rods

Provide ground rods made of copper-clad steel conforming to conform to [UL 467](#). Provide ground rods that are not less than [3/4 inch](#) in diameter and [10 feet](#) in length. Do not mix ground rods of copper-clad steel or solid copper on the job.

#### 2.2.3 Connections and Terminations

Provide connectors for splicing conductors that conform to [UL 96](#), class as applicable. Conductor connections can be made by clamps or welds (including exothermic). Provide style and size connectors required for the installation.

#### 2.2.4 Connector Fittings

Provide connector fittings for "end-to-end", "Tee", or "Y" splices that conform to [NFPA 780](#) and [UL 96](#).

#### 2.2.5 Roofing Contractor Components and Accessories

Roofing Contractor shall provide and install components and accessories

(e.g., flashing boots, washers, sealant, etc.) as required by the roofing manufacturer to meet the requirements of the warranty.

#### 2.2.6 Poles for catenary lightning protection system

##### 2.2.6.1 Wood Poles

ATIS ANSI O5.1, RUS Bull 1728F-700. Provide wood poles of Southern Yellow Pine. Provide poles that meet the following requirements:

- a. AWP A U1. RUS Bull 1728F-700. Treated full length with chromated copper arsenate (CCA) or ammoniacal copper arsenate (ACA). Poles must be galled, bored, and roofed before treatment.
- b. Branded by manufacturer with manufacturer's mark and date of treatment, height and class of pole, wood species, preservation code, and retention. Place the brand so that the bottom of the brand or disc is 10 feet from the pole butt for poles up to 50 feet long.

##### 2.2.7 Guy Strand

ASTM A475, Class A or B, galvanized strand steel cable. Guy strand must be 3/8 inch in diameter with a minimum breaking strength of 3,000 pounds. Provide guy terminations designed for use with the particular strand and developing at least the ultimate breaking strength of the strand.

##### 2.2.8 Guy Marker

Vinyl or PVC material, yellow colored, 8 feet long and shatter resistant at sub-zero temperatures.

##### 2.2.8.1 Guy Attachment

Thimble eye guy attachment.

##### 2.2.9 Anchors and Anchor Rods

Anchors must present holding area indicated on drawings as a minimum. Anchor rods must be triple thimble-eye, 3/4 inch diameter by 8 feet long. Anchors and anchor rods must be hot dip galvanized.

##### 2.2.9.1 Screw Anchors

Screw type anchors having a manufacturer's rating of not less than 3000 pounds in loose to medium sand/clay soil, Class 6.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INTEGRAL SYSTEM

Provide a lightning protection system that meets the requirements of **NFPA 780**. Lightning protection system consists of air terminals, roof conductors, down conductors, ground connections, grounding electrodes and ground ring electrode conductor. Bond secondary conductors with grounded metallic parts within the building. Make interconnections within side-flash distances at or below the level of the grounded metallic parts.

### 3.1.1.1 Roof-Mounted Components

Coordinate with the roofing manufacturer and provide certification that the [roof manufacturer's warranty](#) is not violated by the installation methods for air terminals and roof conductors, and other components and accessories.

#### 3.1.1.1.1 Air Terminals

Use a standing seam base for installation of air terminals on a standing seam metal roof that does not produce any roof penetrations.

#### 3.1.1.1.2 Roof Conductors

Use a standing seam base for installation of roof conductors on a standing seam metal roof that does not produce any roof penetrations.

### 3.1.2 Down Conductors

Where indicated on the drawings, bond down conductors at the top of columns in accordance with the applicable lightning protection details. Where indicated on the drawings, conceal down conductors within the wall cavities in Schedule 80 PVC conduit.

### 3.1.3 Ground Connections

Attach each down conductor and ground ring electrode to ground rods by welding (including exothermic), brazing, or compression. All connections to ground rods below ground level must be by exothermic weld connection or with a high compression connection using a hydraulic or electric compression tool to provide the correct circumferential pressure. Accessible connections above ground level and in test wells can be accomplished by mechanical clamping.

### 3.1.4 Grounding Electrodes

Extend driven ground rods vertically into the existing undisturbed earth for a distance of not less [10 feet](#). Set ground rods not less than [3 feet](#) nor more than [8 feet](#), from the structure foundation, and at least beyond the drip line for the facility. After the completed installation, measure the total resistance to ground using the fall-of-potential method described in [IEEE 81](#). For ground ring electrode, provide continuous No. 1/0 bare stranded copper cable. Lay ground ring electrode around the perimeter of the structure in a trench not less than [3 feet](#) nor more than [8 feet](#) from the nearest point of the structure foundation, and at least beyond the drip line for the facility. Install ground ring electrode to a minimum depth of [30 inches](#). Install a ground ring electrode in earth undisturbed by excavation, not earth fill, and do not locate beneath roof overhang, or wholly under paved areas or roadways where rainfall cannot penetrate to keep soil moist in the vicinity of the cable.

## 3.2 APPLICATIONS

### 3.2.1 Nonmetallic Exterior Walls with Metallic Roof

Bond metal roof sections together which are insulated from each other so that they are electrically continuous, having a surface contact of at least [3 square inches](#).

### 3.3 INTERFACE WITH OTHER STRUCTURES

#### 3.3.1 Fences

Bond metal fence and gate systems to the lightning protection system whenever the fence or gate is within 6 feet of any part of the lightning protection system in accordance with ANSI C2.

### 3.4 LIGHTNING PROTECTION AND GROUNDING SYSTEM TEST

Test the lightning protection and grounding system to ensure continuity is not in excess of 1 ohm and that resistance to ground is not in excess of 25 ohms. Provide documentation for the measured values at each test point. Test the ground rod for resistance to ground before making connections to the rod. Tie the grounding system together and test for resistance to ground. Make resistance measurements in dry weather, not earlier than 48 hours after rainfall. Include in the written report: locations of test points, measured values for continuity and ground resistances, and soil conditions at the time that measurements were made. Submit results of each test to the Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 51 00

INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY (IES)

ANSI/IES LM-79	(2019) Approved Method: Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid State Lighting Products
ANSI/IES LM-80	(2020) Approved Method: Measuring Luminous Flux and Color Maintenance of LED Packages, Arrays and Modules
ANSI/IES TM-21	(2019) Technical Memorandum: Projecting Long-Term Lumen, Photon, and Radiant Flux Maintenance of LED Light Sources
IES Lighting Library	IES Lighting Library

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100	(2000; Archived) The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms
IEEE C2	(2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250	(2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
NEMA ICS 2	(2000; R 2020) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V
NEMA ICS 6	(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 101	(2021) Life Safety Code
NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA 20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA 20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14; TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022)



National Electrical Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

- UL 1598 (2021; Reprint Jun 2021) Luminaires
- UL 8750 (2015; Reprint Jul 2021) UL Standard for Safety Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products
- UL 924 (2016; Reprint May 2020) UL Standard for Safety Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Materials not considered to be luminaires, luminaire accessories, or lighting equipment are specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Luminaires and accessories that are mounted in exterior environments and not attached to the exterior of the building are specified in Section 26 56 00 EXTERIOR LIGHTING. Cybersecurity requirements are specified in Section 25 05 11 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Data, drawings, and reports shall employ the terminology, classifications, and methods prescribed by the IES Lighting Library, as applicable, for the lighting system specified.

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, shall be as defined in IEEE 100.
- b. For LED luminaire light sources, "Useful Life" is the operating hours before reaching 70 percent of the initial rated lumen output (L70) with no catastrophic failures under normal operating conditions. This is also known as 70 percent "Rated Lumen Maintenance Life" as defined in ANSI/IES LM-80.
- c. For LED luminaires, "Luminaire Efficacy" (LE) is the appropriate measure of energy efficiency, measured in lumens/watt. This is gathered from ANSI/IES LM-79 data for the luminaire, in which absolute photometry is used to measure the lumen output of the luminaire as one entity, not the source separately and then the source and housing together.
- d. Total harmonic distortion (THD) is the root mean square (RMS) of all the harmonic components divided by the total fundamental current.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" classification. Submittals not having a "G" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Solid State (LED) Luminaires; G, DO

IES TM-21 Lumen Maintenance Projections; G, DO

Low Voltage, Multi-Button Wallstations; G, DO

Room Controllers; G, DO

Partition Control Interface Device; G, DO

Occupancy and Vacancy Sensors; G, DO

Exit Signs; G, DO

Emergency Lighting Units; G, DO

Emergency Lighting Inverters; G, DO

Lighting Contactors; G, DO

#### SD-05 Design Data

Occupancy Sensor Coverage Layouts; G, CA

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Occupancy Sensor Verification Tests; G, DO

Emergency Lighting Inverter Verification Tests; G, DO

Lighting Scene Verification Tests; G, DO

Lighting Contactor Verification Tests; G, DO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Approval Certification; G, DO

Training Materials; G, RO

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.5.1 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

#### 1.5.2 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products shall have been in

satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

#### 1.5.2.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

#### 1.5.2.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 1 year prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

### 1.6 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract. Enhanced warranty requirements can be found in PART 2, PRODUCTS.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOLID STATE (LED) LUMINAIRES

**UL 8750.** LED luminaires shall have Minimum Delivered Lumens and Nominal Watts as indicated in the building Luminaire Schedules. LED luminaires shall also comply with Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP)-Designated Efficiency Requirements for its respective luminaire type (e.g., ceiling-mounted fluorescent luminaires). Luminaires shall have a L70 value at a minimum of 50,000 hours unless other indicated in the Luminaire Details. Where L70 values are not indicated on submitted SD-03 Product Data catalog cut sheets, submit IES TM-21 Lumen Maintenance Projections for each LED luminaire in accordance with ANSI/IES TM-21. Data used for projections shall be obtained from testing in accordance with ANSI/IES LM-80. The luminaire shall be lead-free and each luminaire shall be burned in for a full 7 days.

LED luminaires shall be furnished with the manufacturer's warranty for a minimum of 5 years. Warranty shall provide complete replacement of entire luminaire and all shippings costs to facility. Warranty shall cover material, luminaire finish, and workmanship. LED arrays shall be considered defective when 15 percent or more of the individual light emitting diodes in the product fail to illuminate. Finish warranty shall include warranty against failure and against substantial deterioration such as blistering, cracking, peeling, chalking, or fading. Warranty period shall begin on date of beneficial occupancy.

#### 2.1.1 Solid State (LED) Drivers

Solid state drivers shall have a minimum efficiency of 85 percent at full load, a minimum power factor of 0.95, and a minimum operating temperature of 0 degrees F unless otherwise indicated. Where indicated the in the Luminaire Schedule, provide drivers suitable for high ambient temperatures (131 degrees F). Provide the following solid state drivers:

- a. Where indicated in the Luminaire Schedule, provide 1 percent, 0-10V dimming drivers. Dimming drivers must be on the multi-button wallstation's approved device list or must be tested for 100 percent compatibility by the multi-button wallstation manufacturer at no additional cost to the Government. Submit the LED 0-10V Dimming Driver and Multi-button wallstation Approval Certification letter to the Government.
- b. Where not otherwise specified, provide 10 percent, 0-10V dimming drivers.

#### 2.1.2 Solid State (LED) Modules

Solid state modules shall have a correlated color temperature (CCT) of 4000 degrees K and a minimum color rendering index (CRI) of 80 unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 SUSPENDED LUMINAIRES

Provide hangers capable of supporting twice the combined weight of luminaires supported by hangers. Provide with swivel hangers to ensure a plumb installation. Hangers shall be cadmium-plated steel with a swivel-ball tapped for the conduit, unless otherwise indicated. Hangers shall allow luminaires to swing within an angle of 45 degrees. Single-unit suspended luminaires shall have twin-stem hangers.

#### 2.3 SWITCHES

Color shall comply with Division 09 series Color Schedule.

##### 2.3.1 Low Voltage, Multi-Button Wallstations

Low voltage, multi-button wallstations shall provide continuous, flicker-free dimming with 0-10V, dimming drivers. Wallstations shall have the buttons as indicated on the drawings. Wallstations shall be 100 percent fully compatible with the dimming drivers. Wallstation buttons shall be engraved or marked with their corresponding descriptions. Wallstations shall be from the same manufacturer as the room controllers.

#### 2.4 ROOM CONTROLLERS

Room controllers shall work in conjunction with low voltage, multi-button wallstations, occupancy/vacancy sensors, and receptacle-rated switchpacks, etc. to provide a fully functional lighting control system that meets the operational requirements indicated in the contract documents. Room controllers shall be provided with the necessary features (e.g., number of relays, inputs, outputs, etc.) as required to meet each room's operational requirements. Each room controller relay shall be capable of controlling a combined lighting load of 20A at 120/277 VAC. Room controllers in rooms with sensor-controlled receptacles shall have the capability to interface with receptacle-rated switchpacks in order to provide sensor control of

the indicated receptacles. Room controllers shall have an alert mode input capability that allows for the fire alarm system to set all controlled lighting to a full ON condition. Provide low voltage wiring to switchpacks as required. Room controllers and ancillary devices (e.g., wallstations, sensors, etc.) shall be from a single manufacturer. Provide low voltage wiring between room controller and ancillary devices per manufacturer's requirements. Wireless controls are not allowed. Furnish any programming devices required to program or adjust the room controllers. Room controllers shall be furnished with the manufacturer's warranty for a minimum of 5 years.

Mount room controllers above the entrance door of the room being controlled. Provide ceiling access panels where room controllers are installed above inaccessible ceilings (e.g., gypsum board ceilings).

## 2.5 PARTITION CONTROL INTERFACE DEVICE

Provide a partition control interface device that automatically reconfigures the space lighting controls based on when movable wall partitions are open or closed. When movable wall partitions are closed to separate spaces, each local switch shall control only the lighting in its respective space. When movable wall partitions are open for one combined space, each local switch shall control all lighting in the combined space.

The partition control interface device shall be from the same manufacturer as the room controller. The partition control interface device shall be capable of controlling the number of room controllers and supporting the number of movable wall partitions indicated on the drawings. Provide all wall partition sensors, wiring, and accessories to meet the operational requirements.

## 2.6 OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

Sensor technology shall be either ultrasonic, passive infrared (PIR), or dual technology (combination ultrasonic and passive infrared) as indicated on the drawings. Acoustically passive sensor technology shall not be used. Sensors shall have an LED occupant detection indicator. Sensors shall have self-adaptive technology that continuously self-adjusts sensitivity and time delay in real time to compensate for constantly changing levels of activity and air flow. Sensors shall be UL listed and shall be furnished with the manufacturer's warranty for a minimum of 5 years. Sensors shall be from the same manufacturer as the room controllers. Wall-mounted and ceiling mounted occupancy sensors shall be white.

Provide occupancy sensor coverage layouts that demonstrate hand-motion detection coverage in offices, classrooms, conference rooms, and similar spaces and half-step walking-motion in corridors, restrooms, and similar spaces. Sensor coverage patterns and ranges shall be determined by the sensor manufacturer and additional occupancy sensors shall be provided at no additional cost to the government as required to provide full detection coverage throughout all spaces. However, occupancy sensor quantities shall not be reduced fewer than what is shown on the plans. Sensor layout shall account for installed conditions such as ceiling heights, installed furniture, HVAC supply and return diffusers, etc. Provide all room controllers, devices, components, wiring, and accessories required in support of sensors, as well as to interface with other lighting control devices (e.g., emergency lighting equipment, etc.) to provide a fully functional lighting control system that meets the operational requirements

indicated in the contract documents.

## 2.7 EXIT SIGNS

UL 924, NFPA 70, and NFPA 101. Exit signs shall be LED, self-powered type with die cast aluminum housing, brushed aluminum face, and red letters. Exit signs shall use no more than 2 watts unless otherwise indicated.

Exit signs in the maintenance bays shall be wet location rated.

Provide with automatic power failure device, integral self-testing module and fully automatic high/low trickle charger in a self-contained power pack. Batteries shall be maintenance-free, sealed nickel cadmium with a 15-year pro-rata warranty.

## 2.8 EMERGENCY LIGHTING INVERTERS (ELI)

The emergency lighting inverter shall consist of maintenance free sealed batteries, charger, and electronic circuitry contained in one enclosure. An illuminated test switch shall be provided to monitor charger and battery. All installation hardware shall be provided. The inverter shall be capable of powering the LED lighting load and voltage indicated at 0°C to 40°C for a minimum 90 minutes regardless of local switch position. Sine wave ac system shall have an inverter output distortion of not more than 10 percent at unity power factor. The system shall be designed to handle surges during loss and recovery of power. Submit certification from the emergency lighting inverter manufacturer stating the inverters are fully compatible with the luminaires. Emergency lighting inverters shall be UL 924 Listed.

With normal power applied, batteries shall be automatically charged. Upon loss of normal power, system shall automatically disengage from the normal input line and switch to a self-contained inverter within 1 second when serving solid state (LED) luminaires. The inverter shall allow the connected luminaires to be on or off without affecting emergency operation. Inverter shall have built-in protection when output is shorted or overloaded. When normal power resumes, the emergency system shall automatically switch back to normal operation before the power loss. Size transfer switch for this function to handle 125 percent of full load.

The emergency lighting inverter shall be furnished with the manufacturer's full coverage warranty for a minimum of 5 years (not including batteries). The ELI batteries shall be furnished with the manufacturer's full coverage warranty for a minimum of 1 years plus 9 additional pro-rated years.

### 2.8.1 Batteries

Batteries shall be sealed lead-calcium type, shall operate unattended, and shall require no maintenance, including no additional water, for a period of not less than 10 years.

### 2.8.2 Battery Charger

Provide two-rate charger for lead-calcium batteries. The charger shall be solid-state, completely automatic, maintaining the batteries in a fully charged condition, and recharging the batteries to full capacity as specified in UL 924.

### 2.8.3 Accessories

Provide visual indicators to indicate normal power, inverter power, and battery charger operation. Provide test switch to simulate power failure by interrupting the input line.

## 2.9 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

Emergency lighting units must be rated for 12 volts. Equip units with brown-out sensitive circuit to activate battery when input voltage falls to 75 percent of normal. Equip with two LED, MR-16 type light sources, automatic power failure device, test switch, and pilot light, and fully automatic high/low trickle charger in a self-contained power pack. Emergency lighting units shall be provided with the high output option to power remote heads as required. Battery must be sealed, maintenance free nickel-cadmium type, and must operate unattended for a period of not less than five years. Emergency run time must be a minimum of 1 1/2 hours. LEDs must have a minimum rated life of 10 years.

Provide remote heads for emergency lighting units were indicated. Remote heads shall be fully capatible with the emergency lighting units. Remote heads shall be rated for wet locations.

## 2.10 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

NEMA ICS 2. Provide mechanically-held lighting contactors housed in a NEMA 1 enclosure conforming to NEMA ICS 6. Provide contactors with contacts and coil operating voltages as indicated on the contract drawings.

## 2.11 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

### 2.11.1 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

### 2.11.2 Labels

Provide labeled luminaires in accordance with UL 1598 requirements. All luminaires shall be clearly marked for operation of specific drivers. All markings shall be clear and located to be readily visible to service personnel, but unseen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

## 2.12 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Electrical equipment shall have factory-applied painting systems which shall, as a minimum, meet the requirements of NEMA 250 corrosion-resistance test.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations shall conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and to the requirements specified herein. Do not commence installation of lighting circuits (conductors, conduit, junction boxes, etc.) until the luminaire

submittals have been approved.

### 3.1.1 Luminaires

Set luminaires plumb, square, and level with ceiling and walls, in alignment with adjacent luminaires, and secure in accordance with manufacturers' directions and approved drawings. Installation shall meet requirements of **NFPA 70**. Mounting heights indicated shall be to the bottom of luminaire for ceiling-mounted luminaires and to center of luminaire for wall-mounted luminaires unless otherwise indicated. Obtain approval of the exact mounting for luminaires on the job before commencing installation and, where applicable, after coordinating with the type, style, and pattern of the ceiling being installed. Recessed and semi-recessed luminaires shall be independently supported from the building structure by a minimum of four wires per luminaire and located near each corner of each luminaire. Ceiling grid clips are not allowed as an alternative to independently supported luminaires. Round luminaires or luminaires smaller in size than the ceiling grid shall be independently supported from the building structure by a minimum of four wires per luminaire spaced approximately equidistant around the luminaire. Do not support luminaires by ceiling acoustical panels. Where luminaires of sizes less than the ceiling grid are indicated to be centered in the acoustical panel, support such luminaires independently and provide at least two **3/4 inch** metal channels spanning, and secured to, the ceiling tees for centering and aligning the luminaire. Provide wires for luminaire support in this section.

### 3.1.2 Drivers

Electronic dimming drivers controlled by the same controller shall be of the same manufacturer.

### 3.1.3 Exit Signs and Emergency Lighting

Wire exit signs and emergency lighting ahead of the switch to the normal lighting circuit located in the same room or area.

### 3.1.4 Occupancy and Vacancy Sensors

Provide quantity of sensor units indicated on the plans as a minimum. Provide additional units as indicated by the sensor manufacturer's occupancy sensor coverage layout. Locate the sensor(s) as indicated and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to avoid nuisance activation and deactivation due to sudden temperature or airflow changes and usage. Set sensor "on" duration to 20 minutes unless otherwise indicated. Set restrooms sensor "on" duration to 30 minutes.

## 3.2 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Painting shall be as specified in Section **09 90 00** PAINTS AND COATINGS.

## 3.3 VERIFICATION TESTS

Upon completion of installation, a manufacturer's representative shall be employed to conduct verification tests that verify that the lighting systems are properly installed, connected, adjusted, and operate in accordance with the contract documents and manufacturer's



recommendations. The verification tests shall be conducted after the furniture has been installed, but prior to the start of commissioning. Verification tests shall be completed separately from all commissioning activities. Verification tests shall NOT be combined with or completed in lieu of any commissioning activities required by other Sections. The manufacturer's representative shall also be present for the commissioning of the systems below. Verification tests shall be conducted for each of the following systems:

#### 3.3.1 Occupancy Sensor Verification Tests

The Contractor shall employ the sensor manufacturer's representative to conduct verification tests for occupancy sensors, wall switch sensors, and other control devices. The manufacturer's representative shall verify that the control devices are located per the manufacturer's occupancy sensor coverage layout and the contract documents. The manufacturer's representative shall verify that the control devices are installed properly and verify the initial device settings are per the contract documents. The manufacturer's representative shall complete a checklist that lists each room and the type of coverage (hand motion or half-step walking motion) tested for each room. The checklist shall include the types and quantities of sensors installed. The checklist shall denote whether the control devices in each room provided full room coverage or if there were any coverage gaps or false ON triggers (e.g., HVAC diffusers). The checklist shall also provide recommendations, such as adjustment of sensors or installation of additional sensors, to fix any problems. The Contractor shall then perform the recommendations at no additional cost to the Government. After correction of deficiencies, the manufacturer's representative shall conduct additional verification tests on all rooms that failed to provide full coverage or had false ON triggers. After all rooms have passed the verification tests, the Contractor shall submit all verification test reports and checklists to the Government for approval.

#### 3.3.2 Emergency Lighting Inverter Verification Tests

The Contractor shall employ the emergency lighting inverter (ELI) manufacturer's representative to conduct verification tests for each ELI. The manufacturer's representative shall verify that the ELI operates per the contract documents and the manufacturer's recommendations. The manufacturer's representative shall complete a checklist that lists each ELI and its required operation per the contract documents. The checklist shall denote whether each ELI operated correctly or if there were any problems. The checklist shall also provide recommendations to fix any problems. The Contractor shall then perform the recommendations at no additional cost to the Government. After correction of deficiencies, the manufacturer's representative shall conduct additional verification tests on all ELIs that failed to operate correctly. After all ELIs have passed the verification tests, the Contractor shall submit all verification test reports and checklists to the Government for approval.

#### 3.3.3 Lighting Scene Verification Tests

The Contractor shall conduct verification tests for each low voltage, multi-button wallstation. The Contractor shall verify that the light scenes operate as indicated in the contract documents by measuring the light level output of each zone for each scene in each room. The Contractor shall tabulate the light level measurements for each zone for each scene in each room. The table shall also indicate the dimming level specified in the contract documents. The Contractor shall correct any

deficiencies between the contract requirements and the measured light level at no additional cost to the Government. After all rooms have been corrected, the Contractor shall submit the verification report to the Government for approval.

#### 3.3.4 Electronic Dimming Drivers

Test for full range of dimming capability. Observe for visually detectable flicker over full dimming range.

#### 3.3.5 Lighting Contactor Verification Tests

The Contractor shall conduct verification tests for each lighting contactor. The Contractor shall verify that the lighting contactors operate the site lighting and building lighting circuits for all operation modes (H-O-A) as indicated in the contract documents. The Contractor shall tabulate the results for each circuit and operation mode for each lighting contactor. The Contractor shall denote any deficiencies between the contract requirements and verification tests in the verification report. The Contractor shall correct any deficiencies at no additional cost to the government. After all deficiencies have been corrected, the Contractor shall retabulate the results. Submit the original and corrected verification test results in a report to the Government for approval.

### 3.4 TRAINING

Training shall consist a minimum of 24 hours total, and at least 4 hours shall be spent on each system. Training shall be taught for six personnel and shall be taught at the project site. Training dates shall be coordinated with the base DPW through the COR. [Training materials](#) shall be submitted for approval at least one month prior to the start of the training. An additional six copies of training materials shall be provided on the first day of training. For each system covered, training shall cover the operation, calibration, adjustment, troubleshooting, maintenance, repair, and replacement for all devices and components. Training shall also cover the system documentation provided at each major piece of equipment (e.g., Room Controller). Training shall be provided for all of the following systems:

- a. Room controllers, occupancy and vacancy sensors, low voltage, multi-button wallstations, wall switch sensors, etc.
- b. 0-10V Dimming Drivers.
- c. [Lighting Contactors.](#)
- d. [Emergency Lighting Units.](#)

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 56 00

EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALLIANCE FOR TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY SOLUTIONS (ATIS)

ATIS ANSI O5.1 (2017) Wood Poles -- Specifications & Dimensions

AMERICAN WOOD PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (AWPA)

AWPA U1 (2021) Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

EUROPEAN UNION (EU)

Directive 2011/65/EU (2011) Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment

U.S. FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION (FAA)

FAA AC 150/5345-43 (2019; Rev J) Specification for Obstruction Lighting Equipment

FAA AC 150/5345-53 (2012; Rev D) Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program

ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY (IES)

ANSI/IES LM-79 (2019) Approved Method: Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid State Lighting Products

ANSI/IES LM-80 (2020) Approved Method: Measuring Luminous Flux and Color Maintenance of LED Packages, Arrays and Modules

ANSI/IES LS-1 (2020) Lighting Science: Nomenclature and Definitions for Illuminating Engineering

ANSI/IES RP-8 (2018) Recommended Practice for Design and Maintenance of Roadway and Parking Facility Lighting

ANSI/IES TM-15	(2020) Technical Memorandum: Luminaire Classification System for Outdoor Luminaires
ANSI/IES TM-21	(2019) Technical Memorandum: Projecting Long-Term Lumen, Photon, and Radiant Flux Maintenance of LED Light Sources
IES Lighting Library	IES Lighting Library
INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)	
IEEE 100	(2000; Archived) The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms
IEEE C2	(2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code
IEEE C62.41.2	(2002) Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits
NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)	
ANSI C136.3	(2020) Roadway and Area Lighting Equipment - Luminaire Attachments
ANSI C136.13	(2020) Roadway and Area Lighting Equipment - Metal Brackets for Wood Poles
ANSI C136.21	(2014) American National Standard for Roadway and Area Lighting Equipment - Vertical Tenons Used with Post-Top-Mounted Luminaires
NEMA 250	(2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
NEMA ANSLG C78.377	(2017) Electric Lamps- Specifications for the Chromaticity of Solid State Lighting Products
NEMA C82.77-10	(2020) Harmonic Emission Limits - Related Power Quality Requirements
NEMA C136.31	(2018) Roadway and Area Lighting Equipment - Luminaire Vibration
NEMA SSL 1	(2016) Electronic Drivers for LED Devices, Arrays, or Systems
NEMA SSL 3	(2011) High-Power White LED Binning for General Illumination
NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)	
NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA

20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA  
20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14;  
TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022)  
National Electrical Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

RUS Bull 1728F-700 (2011) Specification for Wood Poles,  
Stubs, and Anchor Logs

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1310 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Class 2  
Power Units

UL 1598 (2021; Reprint Jun 2021) Luminaires

UL 8750 (2015; Reprint Jul 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Light Emitting Diode (LED)  
Equipment for Use in Lighting Products

## 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Materials not considered to be luminaires, luminaire accessories, or lighting equipment are specified in Section(s) 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Luminaires and accessories installed in interior of buildings or attached to the exterior of a building are specified in Section 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING. Cybersecurity requirements are specified in Section 25 05 11 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications and on the drawings must be as defined in IEEE 100 and ANSI/IES LS-1.
- b. For LED luminaire light sources, "Useful Life" is the operating hours before reaching 70 percent of the initial rated lumen output (L70) with no catastrophic failures under normal operating conditions. This is also known as 70 percent "Rated Lumen Maintenance Life" as defined in ANSI/IES LM-80.
- c. For LED luminaires, "Luminaire Efficacy" (LE) is the appropriate measure of energy efficiency, measured in lumens/watt. This is gathered from LM-79 data for the luminaire, in which absolute photometry is used to measure the lumen output of the luminaire as one entity, not the source separately and then the source and housing together.
- d. Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) is the Root Mean Square (RMS) of all the harmonic components divided by the total fundamental current.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Luminaire Drawings; G, DO

SD-03 Product Data

Luminaires; G, DO

Obstruction Light; G, DO

Luminaire Warranty; G, RO

Pole Warranty; G, RO

Poles; G, DO

SD-05 Design Data

Luminaire Design Data; G, DO

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Lighting System, Data Package 5; G, RO

Maintenance Staff Training Plan; G, RO

End-User Training Plan; G, RO

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Data, drawings, and reports must employ the terminology, classifications and methods prescribed by the IES Lighting Library as applicable, for the lighting system specified.

1.5.1 Drawing Requirements

1.5.1.1 Luminaire Drawings

Include dimensions, effective projected area (EPA), weight, accessories, and installation and construction details. Photometric data, including CRI, CCT, TM-15-11 BUG rating, LED driver type, zonal lumen data, and candlepower distribution data per LM-79 must accompany shop drawings.

1.5.2 Luminaire Design Data

- a. Provide distribution data according to IES classification type as defined in IES Lighting Library and ANSI/IES RP-8.
- b. B.U.G. rating for the installed position as defined by ANSI/IES TM-15 and shielding as defined by ANSI/IES RP-8.
- c. Provide safety certification and file number for the luminaire family. Include listing, labeling and identification in accordance with NFPA 70 (NEC). Applicable testing bodies are determined by the US Occupational Safety Health Administration (OSHA) as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories (NRTL) and include: CSA (Canadian

Standards Association), ETL (Edison Testing Laboratory), and UL (Underwriters Laboratories).

### 1.5.3 Regulatory Requirements

Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship must be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated. Provide luminaires and assembled components that are approved by and bear the label of UL for the applicable location and conditions unless otherwise specified.

### 1.5.4 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for six months prior to bid opening. The six-month period must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the six-month period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items must be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

#### 1.5.4.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a six-month field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

#### 1.5.4.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Do not use products manufactured more than six months prior to date of delivery to site, unless specified otherwise.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING OF POLES

### 1.6.1 Wood Poles

Do not store poles on ground. Stack poles stored for more than 2 weeks on decay-resisting skids arranged to support the poles without producing noticeable distortion. Store poles to permit free circulation of air; the bottom poles in the stack must be at least one foot above ground level and growing vegetation. Do not permit decayed or decaying wood to remain underneath stored poles. Do not drag treated poles along the ground. Do not use pole tongs, cant hooks, and other pointed tools capable of producing indentation more than one inch in depth in handling the poles. Do not apply tools to the groundline section of any pole.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

Support all equipment items by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

#### 1.7.1 Luminaire Warranty

Provide and transfer to the government the original LED luminaire manufacturers standard commercial warranty for each different luminaire manufacturer used in the project.

- a. Provide a written five year minimum replacement warranty for material, luminaire finish, and workmanship. Provide written warranty document that contains all warranty processing information needed, including customer service point of contact, whether or not a return authorization number is required, return shipping information, and closest return location to the luminaire location.

- (1) Finish warranty must include failure and substantial deterioration such as blistering, cracking, peeling, chalking, or fading.

- (2) Material warranty must include:

- (a) All LED drivers and integral control equipment.

- (b) Replacement when more than 10 percent of LED sources in any lightbar or subassembly(s) are defective, non-starting, or operating below 70 percent of specified lumen output.

- b. Warranty period must begin in accordance with the manufacturer's standard warranty starting date.

- c. Provide replacements that are promptly shipped, without charge, to the using Government facility point of contact and that are identical to or an improvement upon the original equipment. All replacements must include testing of new components and installation.

#### 1.7.2 Pole Warranty

Provide and transfer to the government the original pole manufacturers standard commercial warranty for each different pole manufacturer used in the project. Warranty coverage must begin from date of final system commissioning or three months from date of delivery, whichever is the earliest. Provide a written three year minimum replacement warranty for material, luminaire finish, and workmanship. Warranty service must be performed by a factory-trained engineer or technician.

### 1.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

#### 1.8.1 Lighting System

Provide operation and maintenance manuals for the lighting system in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA that provide basic data relating to the design, operation, and maintenance of the lighting system. Include the following:

- a. Manufacturers' operating and maintenance manuals.
- b. Luminaire shop drawings for modified and custom luminaires.
- c. Luminaire Manufacturers' standard commercial warranty information as specified in paragraph LUMINAIRE WARRANTY.



## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT COORDINATION

### 2.2 OBSTRUCTION LIGHT

Use obstruction marker lights emitting aviation red steady burning light. Use FAA AC 150/5345-43, Type L-810 luminaires. Do not use LED-based obstruction lights on military facilities.

Use only approved equipment listed in FAA AC 150/5345-53 with addendum for the date of delivery. Inspect wire and cable for date of manufacture. Materials must be certified and listed as "Approved Airport Lighting Equipment". Do not use wire and cable manufactured more than one year before delivery to job site.

### 2.3 LUMINAIRES

UL 1598, NEMA C82.77-10. Provide luminaires as indicated in the luminaire schedule and XL plates or details on project plans, complete with light source, wattage, and lumen output indicated. All luminaires of the same type must be provided by the same manufacturer. Luminaires must be specifically designed for use with the LED driver and light source provided.

#### 2.3.1 Luminaires

UL 8750, ANSI/IES LM-79, ANSI/IES LM-80. For all luminaires, provide:

- a. Complete system with LED drivers and light sources.
- b. Housing constructed of non-corrosive materials. All new aluminum housings must be anodized or powder-coated. All new steel housings must be treated to be corrosion resistant.
- c. ANSI/IES TM-21, ANSI/IES LM-80. Minimum L70 lumen maintenance value of 50,000 hours unless otherwise indicated in the luminaire schedule. Luminaire drive current value must be identical to that provided by test data for luminaire in question.
- d. Minimum efficacy as specified in the luminaire schedule. Theoretical models of initial lamp lumens per watt are not acceptable.
- e. Product rated for operation within an ambient temperature range of minus 22 degrees F to 104 degrees F.
- f. UL listed for wet locations.
- g. IES Lighting Library. Light distribution and NEMA field angle classifications as indicated in luminaire schedule on project plans.
- h. Housing finish that is baked-on enamel, anodized, or baked-on powder coat paint. Finish must be capable of surviving ASTM B117 salt fog environment testing for 2500 hours minimum without blistering or peeling.
- i. LED driver and light source package, array, or module are accessible for service or replacement without removal or destruction of luminaire.

- j. **ANSI/IES TM-15**. Does not exceed the BUG ratings as listed in the luminaire schedule.
- k. Fully assembled and electrically tested prior to shipment from factory.
- l. Finish color is as indicated in the luminaire schedule or detail on the project plans.
- m. Lenses constructed of clear tempered glass or UV-resistant acrylic.
- n. All factory electrical connections are made using crimp, locking, or latching style connectors. Twist-style wire nuts are not acceptable.
- o. **NEMA C136.31**. Comply with 3G vibration testing.
- q. Wiring compartment on pole-mounted, area luminaires is accessible without the use of hand tools to manipulate small screws, bolts, or hardware.
- s. **ANSI C136.3**. For all area luminaires, provide products with an integral tilt adjustment of plus or minus 5 degrees to allow the unit to be leveled.

## 2.4 LIGHT SOURCES

**NEMA ANSLG C78.377, NEMA SSL 3**. Provide type, lumen rating, and wattage as indicated in luminaire schedule on project plans.

### 2.4.1 LED Light Sources

Provide LED light sources that meet the following requirements:

- a. **NEMA ANSLG C78.377**. Emit white light and have a nominal Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) of 4000 Kelvin.
- b. Minimum Color Rendering Index (CRI) of 70.
- c. **Directive 2011/65/EU**. Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) compliant.
- d. Light source color consistency by utilizing a binning tolerance within a 4-step McAdam ellipse.

## 2.5 LED DRIVERS

**NEMA SSL 1, UL 1310**. Provide LED Drivers that are electronic, UL Class 1 or Class 2, constant-current type and meet the following requirements:

- a. The combined LED driver and LED light source system is greater than or equal to the minimum luminaire efficacy values as listed in the luminaire schedule provided.
- b. Operate at a voltage of 120-277 volts at 50/60 hertz, with input voltage fluctuations of plus or minus 10 percent.
- c. Power Factor (PF) greater than or equal to 0.90 at full input power and across specified dimming range.
- d. Maximum Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) less than or equal to 20

percent at full input power and across specified dimming range.

- e. Operates for at least 50,000 hours at maximum case temperature and 90 percent non-condensing relative humidity.
- f. Meets the "Elevated" (10kV/10kA) requirements per IEEE C62.41.2 -2002. Manufacturer must indicate whether failure of the electrical immunity system can possibly result in disconnect of power to luminaire. Provide surge protection that is integral to the LED driver.
- g. Contains integral thermal protection that reduces the output power to protect the driver and light source from damage if the case temperature approaches or exceeds the driver's maximum operating temperature.
- h. Complies with the requirements of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and regulations, Title 47 CFR part 15, Non-Consumer (Class A) for EMI/RFI (conducted and radiated).
- i. Class A sound rating for all drivers mounted under a covered structure, such as a canopy, or where otherwise appropriate.
- j. Directive 2011/65/EU. Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) compliant.
- k. UL listed for wet locations typical of exterior installations.
- l. Dimmable, and compatible with a standard dimming control circuit of 0 - 10V.
- m. Rated to operate between ambient temperatures of minus 22 degrees F and 104 degrees F.

## 2.6 LIGHTING CONTROLS

Exterior lighting shall be controlled through lighting contactors specified in Section 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING.

## 2.7 POLES

### 2.7.1 Wood Poles

ATIS ANSI O5.1, RUS Bull 1728F-700. Provide wood poles of Southern Yellow Pine. Provide poles that meet the following requirements:

- a. AWPA U1. RUS Bull 1728F-700. Treated full length with chromated copper arsenate (CCA) or ammoniacal copper arsenate (ACA). Poles must be gained, bored, and roofed before treatment.
- b. Branded by manufacturer with manufacturer's mark and date of treatment, height and class of pole, wood species, preservation code, and retention. Place the brand so that the bottom of the brand or disc is 6 feet from the pole butt for poles up to 40 feet long.

### 2.7.2 Brackets and Supports

ANSI C136.3, ANSI C136.13, and ANSI C136.21. Provide pole brackets that are not less than 1 1/4 inch aluminum secured to pole. Slip-fitter or

pipe-threaded brackets may be used, but brackets must be coordinated to luminaires provided, and brackets for use with one type of luminaire must be identical. Brackets for pole-mounted street lights must correctly position luminaire no lower than mounting height indicated. Mount brackets not less than 24 feet above street. Provide special mountings or brackets as indicated and of metal which will not promote galvanic reaction with luminaire head.

## 2.8 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

### 2.8.1 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Each item of equipment must have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

### 2.8.2 Labels

**UL 1598.** Luminaires must be clearly marked for operation of specific light sources and drivers according to proper light source type. Note the following luminaire characteristics in the format "Use Only \_\_\_\_\_":

- a. Correlated color temperature (CCT) and color rendering index (CRI) for all luminaires.
- b. Driver and dimming protocol.

Markings related to light source type must be clear and located to be readily visible to service personnel, but unseen from normal viewing angles when light sources are in place. LED drivers must have clear markings indicating dimming type and indicate proper terminals for the various outputs.

## 2.9 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

**NEMA 250.** Provide all luminaires and lighting equipment with factory-applied painting system that as a minimum meets requirements of corrosion-resistance testing.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

**IEEE C2, NFPA 70.**

#### 3.1.1 Luminaires

Install all luminaires in accordance with the luminaire manufacturer's written instructions. Install all luminaires at locations and heights as indicated on the project plans. Level all luminaires in accordance to manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 3.1.2 LED Drivers

Provide LED drivers integral to luminaire as constructed by the manufacturer.

### 3.1.3 Wood Poles

Pole holes must be at least as large at the top as at the bottom and must be large enough to provide 4 inches of clearance between the pole and the side of the hole.

- a. Setting depth: Provide pole setting depths as follows:

Length of Pole (feet)	Setting in Soil (feet)
20	5.0
25	5.5
30	5.5
35	6.0
40	6.0
45	6.5
50	7.0
55	7.5
60	8.0

- b. Soil setting: "Setting in Soil" depths must apply where pole holes are in soil, sand, or gravel or any combination of these. At corners, dead ends and other points of extra strain, poles 40 feet long or more must be set 6 inches deeper.
- c. Setting on sloping ground: On sloping ground, measure the depth of the hole from the low side of the hole.
- d. Backfill: Tamp pole backfill for the full depth of the hole and mound the excess fill around the pole.

### 3.1.4 Grounding

Ground noncurrent-carrying parts of equipment including metal poles, luminaires, mounting arms, brackets, and metallic enclosures as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Where copper grounding conductor is connected to a metal other than copper, provide specially treated or lined connectors suitable for this purpose.

## 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

### 3.2.1 Tests

Upon completion of installation, verify that equipment is properly installed, connected, and adjusted. Perform initial operational test, consisting of the entire system energized for 72 consecutive hours without any failures of any kind occurring in the system. All circuits must test clear of faults, grounds, and open circuits.

#### 3.2.1.1 Lighting Control Verification Test

Verify lighting control system and devices operate according to approved sequence of operations. Verification tests are to be completed after commissioning.

### 3.3 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

#### 3.3.1 Training

Provide on-site training to the Owner's personnel in the operation and maintenance of lighting and lighting control system. Provide training that includes calibration, adjustment, troubleshooting, maintenance, repair, and replacement.

##### 3.3.1.1 Maintenance Staff Training

Submit a [Maintenance Staff Training Plan](#) at least 30 calendar days prior to training session that describes training procedures for Owner's personnel in the operation and maintenance of lighting and lighting control system. Provide on-site training which demonstrate full system functionality, assigning schedules, calibration adjustments for light levels and sensor sensitivity, integration procedures for connecting to third-party devices, and manual override including information on appropriate use. Provide protocols for troubleshooting, maintenance, repair, and replacement, and literature on available system updates and process for implementing updates.

##### 3.3.1.2 End-User Training

Submit a [End-User Training Plan](#) at least 30 calendar days prior to training session that describes training procedures for end-users on the lighting control system. Provide demonstration for each type of user interface. Provide users with the curfew schedule as currently commissioned, including conditional programming based on astronomic time clock functionality. Provide users with the correct contact information for maintenance personnel who will be available to address any lighting control issues.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 27 10 00

BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for  
Laminated Thermosetting Materials

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

FT. BRAGG NEC IDC (Aug 2017) INSTALLATION DESIGN CRITERIA  
FOR FORT BRAGG SPECIFIC COMMUNICATIONS  
INFRASTRUCTURE REQUIREMENTS

ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (ECIA)

ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E (2005) Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and  
Associated Equipment

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative  
Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

INSULATED CABLE ENGINEERS ASSOCIATION (ICEA)

ICEA S-83-596 (2016) Indoor Optical Fiber Cables

ICEA S-90-661 (2012) Category 3, 5, & 5e Individually  
Unshielded Twisted Pair Indoor Cables for  
Use in General Purpose and LAN  
Communications Wiring Systems Technical  
Requirements

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NECA)

NECA/BICSI 568 (2006) Standard for Installing Building  
Telecommunications Cabling

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA WC 66 (2019) Performance Standard for Category 6  
and Category 7 100 Ohm Shielded and  
Unshielded Twisted Pairs

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020;

ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA 20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA 20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14; TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022)  
National Electrical Code

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-455-21	(1988a; R 2012) FOTP-21 - Mating Durability of Fiber Optic Interconnecting Devices
TIA-526-7	(2015a; R 2022) Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant, Adoption of IEC 61280-4-2 edition 2: Fibre-Optic Communications Subsystem Test Procedures - Part 4-2: Installed Cable Plant - Single-Mode Attenuation and Optical Return Loss Measurement
TIA-568.0	(2020e) Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises
TIA-568.1	(2020e) Commercial Building Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard
TIA-568.2	(2018d) Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards
TIA-568.3	(2016d; Add 1 2019) Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard
TIA-569	(2019e; Add 1 2022) Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
TIA-606	(2021d) Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Cabling Infrastructure
TIA-607	(2019d) Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises
TIA-1152	(2016; R 2021) Requirements for Field Test Instruments and Measurements for Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling
TIA/EIA-598	(2014D; Add 2 2018) Optical Fiber Cable Color Coding
TIA/EIA-604-10	(2002a) FOCIS 10 Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standard - Type LC

U.S. FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC)

FCC Part 68	Connection of Terminal Equipment to the Telephone Network (47 CFR 68)
-------------	--



UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 50	(2015) UL Standard for Safety Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations
UL 444	(2017; Reprint Jun 2021) UL Standard for Safety Communications Cables
UL 467	(2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment
UL 514C	(2014; Reprint Feb 2020) UL Standard for Safety Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers
UL 969	(2017; Reprint Mar 2018) UL Standard for Safety Marking and Labeling Systems
UL 1666	(2007; Reprint Jun 2012) Test for Flame Propagation Height of Electrical and Optical-Fiber Cables Installed Vertically in Shafts
UL 1863	(2004; Reprint Oct 2019) UL Standard for Safety Communication Circuit Accessories

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM and Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS, OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP), apply to this section with additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in this specification shall be as defined in TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2, TIA-568.3, TIA-569, TIA-606 and IEEE 100 and herein.

1.3.1 Campus Distributor (CD)

A distributor from which the campus backbone cabling emanates. (International expression for main cross-connect (MC).)

1.3.2 Building Distributor (BD)

A distributor in which the building backbone cables terminate and at which connections to the campus backbone cables may be made. (International expression for intermediate cross-connect (IC).)

1.3.3 Floor Distributor (FD)

A distributor used to connect horizontal cable and cabling subsystems or equipment. (International expression for horizontal cross-connect (HC).)

1.3.4 Telecommunications Room (TR)

An enclosed space for housing telecommunications equipment, cable,

terminations, and cross-connects. The room is the recognized cross-connect between the backbone cable and the horizontal cabling.

#### 1.3.5 Entrance Facility (EF) (Telecommunications)

An entrance to the building for both private and public network service cables (including wireless) including the entrance point at the building wall and continuing to the equipment room.

#### 1.3.6 Equipment Room (ER) (Telecommunications)

An environmentally controlled centralized space for telecommunications equipment that serves the occupants of a building. Equipment housed therein is considered distinct from a telecommunications room because of the nature of its complexity.

#### 1.3.7 Open Cable

Cabling that is not run in a raceway as defined by NFPA 70. This refers to cabling that is "open" to the space in which the cable has been installed and is therefore exposed to the environmental conditions associated with that space.

#### 1.3.8 Open Office

A floor space division provided by furniture, moveable partitions, or other means instead of by building walls.

#### 1.3.9 Pathway

A physical infrastructure utilized for the placement and routing of telecommunications cable.

### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The building telecommunications cabling and pathway system shall include permanently installed backbone and horizontal cabling, horizontal and backbone pathways, service entrance facilities, work area pathways, telecommunications outlet assemblies, conduit, raceway, and hardware for splicing, terminating, and interconnecting cabling necessary to transport telephone and data (including LAN) between equipment items in a building. The horizontal system shall be wired in a star topology from the telecommunications work area to the floor distributor or campus distributor at the center or hub of the star. The backbone cabling and pathway system includes intrabuilding and interbuilding interconnecting cabling, pathway, and terminal hardware. The intrabuilding backbone provides connectivity from the floor distributors to the building distributors or to the campus distributor and from the building distributors to the campus distributor as required. The backbone system shall be wired in a star topology with the campus distributor at the center or hub of the star. The interbuilding backbone system provides connectivity between the campus distributors and is specified in Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP). Provide telecommunications pathway systems referenced herein as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S"

classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Telecommunications Drawings; G, RO

Telecommunications Space Drawings; G, RO

In addition to Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide shop drawings in accordance with paragraph SHOP DRAWINGS.

#### SD-03 Product Data

Telecommunications Cabling (backbone and horizontal); G, RO

Patch Panels; G, RO

Telecommunications Outlet/Connector Assemblies; G, RO

Equipment Support Frame; G, RO

Connector Blocks; G, RO

Grounding Busbar; G, RO

Tower Junction Box; G, RO

Lightning Arrestor Modules; G, RO

Submittals shall include the manufacturer's name, trade name, place of manufacture, and catalog model or number. Include performance and characteristic curves. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references. Should manufacturer's data require supplemental information for clarification, the supplemental information shall be submitted as specified in paragraph REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS and as required in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Telecommunications Cabling Testing; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Telecommunications Contractor Qualifications; G, RO

Key Personnel Qualifications; G, RO

Manufacturer Qualifications; G, RO

Test Plan; G, RO

#### SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Factory Reel Tests; G, RO

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Telecommunications Cabling and Pathway System Data Package 5; G, RO

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Record Documentation; G, RO

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### 1.6.1 Shop Drawings

In exception to Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, submitted plan drawings shall be a minimum of 11 by 17 inches in size using a minimum scale of 1/8 inch per foot. Include wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Wiring diagrams shall identify circuit terminals and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Drawings shall indicate adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices. Submittals shall include the nameplate data, size, and capacity. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references.

#### 1.6.1.1 Telecommunications Drawings

Provide registered communications distribution designer (RCDD) approved, drawings in accordance with TIA-606. The identifier for each termination and cable shall appear on the drawings. Drawings shall depict final telecommunications installed wiring system infrastructure in accordance with TIA-606. The drawings should provide details required to prove that the distribution system shall properly support connectivity from the EF telecommunications and ER telecommunications, CD's, and FD's to the telecommunications work area outlets. The following drawings shall be provided as a minimum:

- a. T1 - Layout of complete building per floor - Building Area/Serving Zone Boundaries, Backbone Systems, and Horizontal Pathways. Layout of complete building per floor. The drawing indicates location of building areas, serving zones, vertical backbone diagrams, telecommunications rooms, access points, pathways, grounding system, and other systems that need to be viewed from the complete building perspective.
- b. T2 - Serving Zones/Building Area Drawings - Drop Locations and Cable Identification (ID'S). Shows a building area or serving zone. These drawings show drop locations, telecommunications rooms, access points and detail call outs for common equipment rooms and other congested areas.
- c. T4 - Typical Detail Drawings - Faceplate Labeling, Firestopping, Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Safety, Department of Transportation (DOT). Detailed drawings of symbols and typicals such as faceplate labeling, faceplate types, faceplate population installation procedures, detail racking, and raceways.

#### 1.6.1.2 Telecommunications Space Drawings

Provide T3 drawings in accordance with TIA-606 that include telecommunications rooms plan views, pathway layout (cable tray, racks, ladder-racks, etc.), mechanical/electrical layout, and rack, backboard and wall elevations. Drawings shall show layout of applicable equipment including incoming cable stub or connector blocks, building protector assembly, outgoing cable connector blocks, patch panels and equipment spaces and cabinet/racks. Drawings shall include a complete list of equipment and material, equipment rack details, proposed layout and anchorage of equipment and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearance for maintenance and operation. Drawings may also be an enlargement of a congested area of T1 or T2 drawings.

#### 1.6.2 Telecommunications Qualifications

Work under this section shall be performed by and the equipment shall be provided by the approved telecommunications contractor and key personnel. Qualifications shall be provided for: the telecommunications system contractor, the telecommunications system installer, and the supervisor (if different from the installer). A minimum of 30 days prior to installation, submit documentation of the experience of the telecommunications contractor and of the key personnel.

##### 1.6.2.1 Telecommunications Contractor

The telecommunications contractor shall be a firm which is regularly and professionally engaged in the business of the applications, installation, and testing of the specified telecommunications systems and equipment. The telecommunications contractor shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems within the past 3 years of similar scope and size. Submit documentation for a minimum of three and a maximum of five successful telecommunication system installations for the telecommunications contractor.

##### 1.6.2.2 Key Personnel

Provide key personnel who are regularly and professionally engaged in the business of the application, installation and testing of the specified telecommunications systems and equipment. There may be one key person or more key persons proposed for this solicitation depending upon how many of the key roles each has successfully provided. Each of the key personnel shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems within the past 3 years.

Supervisors and installers assigned to the installation of this system or any of its components shall be Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI) Registered Cabling Installers, Technician Level. Submit documentation of current BICSI certification for each of the key personnel.

Supervisors and installers assigned to the installation of this system or any of its components shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the installation of the specified copper and fiber optic cable and components. They shall have factory or factory approved certification from each equipment manufacturer indicating that they are qualified to install and test the provided products. Submit documentation for a

minimum of three and a maximum of five successful telecommunication system installations for each of the key personnel. Documentation for each key person shall include at least two successful system installations provided that are equivalent in system size and in construction complexity to the telecommunications system proposed for this solicitation. Include specific experience in installing and testing telecommunications systems and provide the names and locations of at least two project installations successfully completed using optical fiber and copper telecommunications cabling systems. All of the existing telecommunications system installations offered by the key persons as successful experience shall have been in successful full-time service for at least 18 months prior to the issuance date for this solicitation. Provide the name and role of the key person, the title, location, and completed installation date of the referenced project, the referenced project owner point of contact information including name, organization, title, and telephone number, and generally, the referenced project description including system size and construction complexity.

Indicate that all key persons are currently employed by the telecommunications contractor, or have a commitment to the telecommunications contractor to work on this project. All key persons shall be employed by the telecommunications contractor at the date of issuance of this solicitation, or if not, have a commitment to the telecommunications contractor to work on this project by the date that the bid was due to the Contracting Officer.

Note that only the key personnel approved by the Contracting Officer in the successful proposal shall do work on this solicitation's telecommunications system. Key personnel shall function in the same roles in this contract, as they functioned in the offered successful experience. Any substitutions for the telecommunications contractor's key personnel requires approval from The Contracting Officer.

#### 1.6.2.3 Minimum Manufacturer Qualifications

Cabling, equipment and hardware manufacturers shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the manufacturing, assembly, and factory testing of components which comply with TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2 and TIA-568.3.

#### 1.6.3 Test Plan

Provide a complete and detailed test plan for the telecommunications cabling system including a complete list of test equipment for the components and accessories for each cable type specified, 60 days prior to the proposed test date. Include procedures for certification, validation, and testing.

#### 1.6.4 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

#### 1.6.5 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

##### 1.6.5.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

##### 1.6.5.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 1 year prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Provide protection from weather, moisture, extreme heat and cold, dirt, dust, and other contaminants for telecommunications cabling and equipment placed in storage.

#### 1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Connecting hardware shall be rated for operation under ambient conditions of 32 to 140 degrees F and in the range of 0 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

#### 1.10 MAINTENANCE

##### 1.10.1 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Commercial off the shelf manuals shall be furnished for operation, installation, configuration, and maintenance of products provided as a part of the telecommunications cabling and pathway system, Data Package 5. Submit operations and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. In addition to requirements of Data Package 5, include the requirements of paragraphs TELECOMMUNICATIONS DRAWINGS, TELECOMMUNICATIONS SPACE DRAWINGS, and RECORD DOCUMENTATION. Ensure that these drawings and documents depict the

as-built configuration.

#### 1.10.2 Record Documentation

Provide T5 drawings including documentation on cables and termination hardware in accordance with TIA-606. T5 drawings shall include schedules to show information for cut-overs and cable plant management, patch panel layouts and cover plate assignments, cross-connect information and connecting terminal layout as a minimum. T5 drawings shall be provided in hard copy format and on electronic media using Windows based computer cable management software. A licensed copy of the cable management software including documentation, shall be provided. Provide the following T5 drawing documentation as a minimum:

- a. Cables - A record of installed cable shall be provided in accordance with TIA-606. The cable records shall include the required data fields for each cable and complete end-to-end circuit report for each complete circuit from the assigned outlet to the entry facility in accordance with TIA-606. Include manufacture date of cable with submittal.
- b. Termination Hardware - A record of installed patch panels, cross-connect points, distribution frames, terminating block arrangements and type, and outlets shall be provided in accordance with TIA-606. Documentation shall include the required data fields as a minimum in accordance with TIA-606.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPONENTS

Components shall be UL or third party certified. Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry and technical society reference standards of the organizations, submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance. In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. The certificate shall state that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard. Provide a complete system of telecommunications cabling and pathway components using star topology. Provide support structures and pathways, complete with outlets, cables, connecting hardware and telecommunications cabinets/racks. Cabling and interconnecting hardware and components for telecommunications systems shall be UL listed or third party independent testing laboratory certified, and shall comply with NFPA 70 and conform to the requirements specified herein.

### 2.2 TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAY

Provide telecommunications pathways in accordance with TIA-569, as specified herein, and as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

### 2.3 TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING

Cabling shall be UL listed for the application and shall comply with TIA-568.0, TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2, TIA-568.3 and NFPA 70. Provide a



labeling system for cabling as required by TIA-606 and UL 969. Ship cable on reels or in boxes bearing manufacture date for for unshielded twisted pair (UTP) in accordance with ICEA S-90-661 and optical fiber cables in accordance with ICEA S-83-596 for all cable used on this project. Cabling manufactured more than 12 months prior to date of installation shall not be used.

### 2.3.1 Backbone Cabling

#### 2.3.1.1 Backbone Copper

Copper backbone cable shall be solid conductor, 24 AWG, 100 ohm, Category 3, UTP, in accordance with ICEA S-90-661, TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2 and UL 444, formed into 25 pair binder groups covered with a gray thermoplastic jacket. Cable shall be imprinted with manufacturers name or identifier, flammability rating, gauge of conductor, transmission performance rating (category designation) at regular length marking intervals in accordance with ICEA S-90-661. Provide plenum (CMP), riser (CMR), or general purpose (CM or CMG) communications rated cabling in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70.

#### 2.3.1.2 Backbone Optical Fiber

Provide in accordance with ICEA S-83-596, TIA-568.3, UL 1666 and NFPA 70. Cable shall be imprinted with fiber count, fiber type and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

Provide the number of strands indicated, (but not less than 12 strands between the main telecommunication room and each of the other telecommunication rooms), of single-mode(OS1), tight buffered fiber optic cable.

Provide plenum (OFNP), riser (OFNR), or general purpose (OFN or OFNG) rated non-conductive, fiber optic cable in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. The cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be in accordance with TIA/EIA-598.

Provide plenum (OFNP) riser (OFNR), or general purpose (OFN or OFNG) rated non-conductive, fiber optic cable in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. The cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be in accordance with TIA/EIA-598.

### 2.3.2 Horizontal Cabling

Provide horizontal cable in compliance with NFPA 70 and performance characteristics in accordance with TIA-568.1.

#### 2.3.2.1 Horizontal Copper

Provide horizontal copper cable, UTP, 100 ohm in accordance with TIA-568.2, UL 444, ANSI/NEMA WC 66, ICEA S-90-661. Provide four each individually twisted pair, minimum size 24 AWG conductors, Category 6, with a green thermoplastic jacket. Cable shall be imprinted with manufacturers name or identifier, flammability rating, gauge of conductor, transmission performance rating (category designation) and length marking at regular intervals in accordance with ICEA S-90-661. Provide plenum (CMP), riser

(CMR), or general purpose (CM or CMG) communications rated cabling in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. Cables installed in conduit within and under slabs shall be UL listed and labeled for wet locations in accordance with NFPA 70.

## 2.4 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SPACES

Provide connecting hardware and termination equipment to facilitate installation as shown on design drawings for terminating and cross-connecting permanent cabling. Provide telecommunications interconnecting hardware color coding in accordance with TIA-606.

### 2.4.1 Backboards

Provide void-free, interior grade A-C plywood 3/4 inch thick as indicated. Backboards shall be fire rated by manufacturing process. Fire stamp shall be clearly visible. NEC QA/QC shall inspect and initial each backboard before the contractor installs the backboard in each TR.

### 2.4.2 Equipment Support Frame

Provide in accordance with ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E and UL 50.

- a. Racks, floor mounted modular type, 11 gauge aluminum construction, minimum, treated to resist corrosion. Provide rack with vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug and a surge protected power strip with 6 duplex 20 amp receptacles. Per UFC 3-580-01, power strip shall have indicator lights, but no integral on/off switch. Rack shall be compatible with 19 inches panel mounting.
- b. Cabinets, wall-mounted modular type, 16 gauge steel or 11 gauge aluminum construction, minimum, treated to resist corrosion. Cabinet shall have lockable front and swing-out rear access to equipment, ground lug, and top and bottom cable access. Cabinet shall be compatible with 19 inches panel mounting. All cabinets shall be keyed per Ft. Bragg NEC standards. A surge protected power strip with 6 duplex 20 amp receptacles shall be provided within the cabinet.

### 2.4.3 Connector Blocks

Provide insulation displacement connector (IDC) Type 110 for Category 6 systems. Provide blocks for the number of horizontal and backbone cables terminated on the block plus 25 percent spare.

### 2.4.4 Cable Guides

Provide cable guides specifically manufactured for the purpose of routing cables, wires and patch cords horizontally and vertically on 19 inches equipment racks and telecommunications backboards. Cable guides of ring or bracket type devices mounted on rack and backboard for horizontal cable management and individually mounted for vertical cable management. Mount cable guides with screws, and nuts and lockwashers.

### 2.4.5 Patch Panels

Provide ports for the number of horizontal and backbone cables terminated on the panel plus 25 percent spare. Provide pre-connectorized optical

fiber and copper patch cords for patch panels. Provide patch cords, as complete assemblies, with matching connectors as specified. Provide fiber optic patch cables with crossover orientation in accordance with TIA-568.3. Patch cords shall meet minimum performance requirements specified in TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2 and TIA-568.3 for cables, cable length and hardware specified.

#### 2.4.5.1 Modular to 110 Block Patch Panel

Provide in accordance with TIA-568.1 and TIA-568.2. Panels shall be third party verified and shall comply with EIA/TIA Category 6 requirements. Panel shall be constructed of 0.09 inches minimum aluminum and shall be rack mounted and compatible with an ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E 19 inches equipment rack. Panel shall provide 48 non-keyed, 8-pin modular ports, wired to T568A. Patch panels shall terminate the building cabling on Type 110 IDCs and shall utilize a printed circuit board interface. The rear of each panel shall have incoming cable strain-relief and routing guides. Panels shall have each port factory numbered and be equipped with laminated plastic nameplates above each port.

#### 2.4.5.2 Fiber Optic Patch Panel

Provide panel for maintenance and cross-connecting of optical fiber cables. Panel shall be constructed of 11 gauge aluminum minimum and shall be rack mounted and compatible with a ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E 19 inches equipment rack. Each panel shall provide 12 single-mode adapters as duplex LC in accordance with TIA/EIA-604-10 with zirconia ceramic alignment sleeves alignment sleeves. Provide dust cover for unused adapters. The rear of each panel shall have a cable management tray a minimum of 8 inches deep with removable cover, incoming cable strain-relief and routing guides. Panels shall have each adapter factory numbered and be equipped with laminated plastic nameplates above each adapter.

### 2.5 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTOR ASSEMBLIES

#### 2.5.1 Outlet/Connector Copper

Outlet/connectors shall comply with FCC Part 68, TIA-568.1, and TIA-568.2. UTP outlet/connectors shall be UL 1863 listed, non-keyed, 8-pin modular, constructed of high impact rated thermoplastic housing and shall be third party verified and shall comply with TIA-568.2 Category 6 requirements. Outlet/connectors provided for UTP cabling shall meet or exceed the requirements for the cable provided. Outlet/connectors shall be terminated using a Type 110 IDC PC board connector, color-coded for both T568A and T568B wiring. Each outlet/connector shall be wired T568A. UTP outlet/connectors shall comply with TIA-568.2 for 200 mating cycles.

#### 2.5.2 Optical Fiber Adapters(Couplers)

Provide optical fiber adapters suitable for duplex LC in accordance with TIA/EIA-604-10 with zirconia ceramic alignment sleeves. Provide dust cover for adapters. Optical fiber adapters shall comply with TIA-455-21 for 500 mating cycles.

#### 2.5.3 Optical Fiber Connectors

Provide in accordance with TIA-455-21. Optical fiber connectors shall be duplex LC in accordance with TIA/EIA-604-10 with zirconia ceramic

alignment sleeves, compatible with 8/125 single-mode fiber. The connectors shall provide a maximum attenuation of 0.3 dB at 1310 nm with less than a 0.2 dB change after 500 mating cycles.

#### 2.5.4 Cover Plates

Telecommunications cover plates shall comply with UL 514C, and TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2; oversized design constructed of high impact thermoplastic material to match color of receptacle/switch cover plates specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide labeling in accordance with the paragraph LABELING in this section.

#### 2.6 TOWER JUNCTION BOX

NEMA 3R enclosure with hinged door, locking latch, and weatherproof gasket seal. Enclosure shall be suitable for unistrut mounting. Enclosure shall be provided with 5/8 inch backboard with two-coat varnish finish. Match trim, hardware, doors, and finishes with panelboards. Provide label and identification systems for telecommunications wiring and components consistent with TIA-606.

#### 2.7 LIGHTNING ARRESTOR MODULES

Provide 3-stage lightning arrestor modules for cat 6 cables. The first stage is comprised of a differential gas discharge tube. Stage two is a pair of current limiting series resistors and the final stage is a low capacitance diode array.

The lightning arrestor module shall have a failsafe feature for a catastrophic surge where the resistors will fuse and portions of the diode array will short to disconnect the line in order to limit damage to sensitive equipment.

#### 2.8 TELECOMMUNICATIONS GROUNDING BUSBAR

Provide grounding products in accordance with UL 467, TIA-607, and NFPA 70. Identify the components as required by TIA-606. Provide bonding conductors as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

Provide corrosion-resistant grounding busbar suitable for indoor installation in accordance with TIA-607. Busbars: plated for reduced contact resistance. If not plated, clean the busbar prior to fastening the conductors to the busbar and apply an anti-oxidant to the contact area to control corrosion and reduce contact resistance. Provide a primary bonding busbar (PBB) in the telecommunications entrance facility and a secondary bonding busbar (SBB) in all other telecommunications rooms and equipment rooms. Provide telecommunications grounding busbars with the following:

- a. Predrilled copper busbar provided with holes for use with standard sized lugs.
- b. Minimum dimensions of 0.25 in thick by 4 in wide x 20 in long.
- c. Listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

#### 2.9 FIRESTOPPING MATERIAL

Provide as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

## 2.10 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

## 2.11 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

**ASTM D709.** Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified or as indicated on the drawings. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic, **0.125 inches** thick, white with black center core. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be **one by 2.5 inches**. Lettering shall be a minimum of **0.25 inches** high normal block style.

## 2.12 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

### 2.12.1 Factory Reel Tests

Provide documentation of the testing and verification actions taken by manufacturer to confirm compliance with **TIA-568.1**, **TIA-568.2**, **TIA-568.3**, **TIA-526-7** for single mode optical fiber cables.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Install telecommunications cabling and pathway systems, including the horizontal and backbone cable, pathway systems, telecommunications outlet/connector assemblies, and associated hardware in accordance with **NECA/BICSI 568**, **TIA-568.1**, **TIA-568.2**, **TIA-568.3**, **TIA-569**, **NFPA 70**, and UL standards as applicable. Provide cabling in a star topology network. Pathways and outlet boxes shall be installed as specified **herein and in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM**. Install telecommunications cabling with copper media in accordance with the following criteria to avoid potential electromagnetic interference between power and telecommunications equipment. The interference ceiling shall not exceed 3.0 volts per meter measured over the usable bandwidth of the telecommunications cabling. Cabling shall be run with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.

#### 3.1.1 Cabling

Install UTP, and optical fiber telecommunications cabling system as detailed in **TIA-568.1**, **TIA-568.2**, **TIA-568.3**. Screw terminals shall not be used except where specifically indicated on plans. Use an approved insulation displacement connection (IDC) tool kit for copper cable terminations. Do not exceed manufacturers' cable pull tensions for copper and optical fiber cables. Provide a device to monitor cable pull tensions. Do not exceed **25 pounds** pull tension for four pair copper cables. Do not chafe or damage outer jacket materials. Use only lubricants approved by cable manufacturer. Do not over cinch cables, or crush cables with staples. For UTP cable, bend radii shall not be less than four times the cable diameter. Cables shall be terminated; no cable

shall contain unterminated elements. Cables shall not be spliced. Label cabling in accordance with paragraph LABELING in this section.

#### 3.1.1.1 Backbone Cable

- a. Copper Backbone Cable. Install intrabuilding backbone copper cable, in indicated pathways, between the campus distributor, located in the telecommunications entrance facility or room, the building distributors and the floor distributors located in telecommunications rooms and telecommunications equipment rooms as indicated on drawings.
- b. Optical fiber Backbone Cable. Install intrabuilding backbone optical fiber in indicated pathways. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended bending radii and pull tension. Prepare cable for pulling by cutting outer jacket **10 inches** leaving strength members exposed for approximately **10 inches**. Twist strength members together and attach to pulling eye. Vertical cable support intervals shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 3.1.1.2 Horizontal Cabling

Install horizontal cabling as indicated on drawings. Do not untwist Category 6 UTP cables more than **one half inch** from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry. Provide slack cable in the form of a figure eight (not a service loop) on each end of the cable, **10 feet** in the telecommunications room, and **12 inches** in the work area outlet.

#### 3.1.2 Telecommunications and Signal System Pathway

Install telecommunications pathways in accordance with TIA-569, NFPA 70, and as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM..

- a. Horizontal Pathway: Telecommunications pathways from the work area to the telecommunications room: installed and cabling length requirements in accordance with TIA-568.1.
- b. Backbone Pathway: Telecommunication pathways from the telecommunications entrance facility to telecommunications rooms, and, telecommunications equipment rooms (backbone cabling): installed in accordance with TIA-569.

#### 3.1.3 Service Entrance Conduit, Underground

Provide service entrance underground as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

#### 3.1.4 Cable Tray Installation

Install cable tray as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

#### 3.1.5 Work Area Outlets

##### 3.1.5.1 Terminations

Terminate UTP cable in accordance with **TIA-568.1**, **TIA-568.2** and wiring configuration as specified.

#### 3.1.5.2 Cover Plates

As a minimum, each outlet/connector shall be labeled as to its function and a unique number to identify cable link in accordance with the paragraph LABELING in this section.

#### 3.1.5.3 Cables

Unshielded twisted pair and fiber optic cables shall have a minimum of 12 inches of slack cable loosely coiled into the telecommunications outlet boxes. Minimum manufacturer's bend radius for each type of cable shall not be exceeded.

#### 3.1.5.4 Pull Cords

Pull cords shall be installed in conduit serving telecommunications outlets that do not have cable installed.

#### 3.1.6 Telecommunications Space Termination

Install termination hardware required for Category 6 and optical fiber system. An insulation displacement tool shall be used for terminating copper cable to insulation displacement connectors.

##### 3.1.6.1 Connector Blocks

Connector blocks shall be wall mounted in orderly rows and columns. Adequate vertical and horizontal wire routing areas shall be provided between groups of blocks. Install in accordance with industry standard wire routing guides in accordance with TIA-569.

##### 3.1.6.2 Patch Panels

Patch panels shall be mounted in equipment racks with sufficient ports to accommodate the installed cable plant plus 25 percent spares.

- a. Copper Patch Panel. Copper cable entering a patch panel shall be secured to the panel with cable ties or as recommended by the manufacturer to prevent movement of the cable.
- b. Fiber Optic Patch Panel. Fiber optic cable loop shall be 3 feet in length or provided as recommended by the manufacturer. The outer jacket of each cable entering a patch panel shall be secured to the panel to prevent movement of the fibers within the panel, using clamps or brackets specifically manufactured for that purpose.

##### 3.1.6.3 Equipment Support Frames

Install in accordance with TIA-569:

- a. Racks, floor mounted modular type. Permanently anchor rack to the floor in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- b. Cabinets, wall-mounted modular type. Mount cabinet to plywood backboard in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Mount cabinet so height of highest panel does not exceed 78 inches above floor.

### 3.1.7 Electrical Penetrations

Seal openings around electrical penetrations through fire resistance-rated wall, partitions, floors, or ceilings as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.1.8 Grounding and Bonding

Provide in accordance with TIA-607, NFPA 70 and as follows:

- a. **Telecommunications Grounding Busbars:** Provide a telecommunications primary bonding busbar (PBB) in the telecommunications entrance facility. Install the PBB as close to the electrical service entrance grounding connection as practicable. Provide a telecommunications secondary bonding busbar (SBB) in all other telecommunications rooms and telecommunications equipment rooms. Install the SBB as close to the telecommunications room panelboard as practicable, when equipped. In addition, locate the SBB to provide for the shortest and straightest routing of the grounding conductors. Where a panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located within the same room or space as the PBB or a SBB, bond that panelboard's alternating current equipment ground (ACEG) bus (when equipped) or the panelboard enclosure to the PBB or SBB. Install telecommunications grounding busbars to maintain clearances as required by NFPA 70 and insulated from its support. A minimum of 2 inches separation from the wall is recommended to allow access to the rear of the busbar and adjust the mounting height to accommodate overhead or underfloor cable routing.
- b. **Telecommunications Bonding Conductors:** Provide main telecommunications service equipment ground consisting of separate bonding conductor for telecommunications, between the PBB and readily accessible grounding connection of the electrical service. Grounding and bonding conductors should not be placed in ferrous metallic conduit. If it is necessary to place grounding and bonding conductors in ferrous metallic conduit that exceeds 3 feet in length, bond the conductors to each end of the conduit using a grounding bushing or a No. 6 AWG conductor, minimum. Provide a telecommunications bonding backbone (TBB) that originates at the PBB and extends throughout the building using the telecommunications backbone pathways, and connects to the SBBs in all telecommunications rooms and equipment rooms. Install the TBB conductors such that they are protected from physical and mechanical damage. The TBB conductors should be installed without splices and routed in the shortest possible straight-line path. Make the bonding conductor between a TBB and a SBB continuous. Where splices are necessary, the number of splices should be a minimum. Make the splices accessible and located in telecommunications spaces. Connect joined segments of a TBB using exothermic welding, irreversible compression-type connectors, or equivalent. Install all joints to be adequately supported and protected from damage.
- c. **Telecommunications Grounding Connections:** Telecommunications grounding connections to the PBB or SBB: utilize listed compression two-hole lugs, exothermic welding, suitable and equivalent one hole non-twisting lugs, or other irreversible compression type connections. Bond all metallic pathways, cabinets, and racks for telecommunications cabling and interconnecting hardware located within the same room or space as the PBB or SBB to the PBB or SBB respectively. In a metal frame (structural steel) building, where the steel framework is readily accessible within the room; bond each PBB



and SBB to the vertical steel metal frame using a minimum No. 6 AWG conductor. Where the metal frame is external to the room and readily accessible, bond the metal frame to the PBB or SBB with a minimum No. 6 AWG conductor. When practicable because of shorter distances and, where horizontal steel members are permanently electrically bonded to vertical column members, the SBB may be bonded to these horizontal members in lieu of the vertical column members. All connectors used for bonding to the metal frame of a building must be listed for the intended purpose.

### 3.2 LABELING

#### 3.2.1 Labels

Provide labeling in accordance with TIA-606. Handwritten labeling is unacceptable. Stenciled lettering for voice and data circuits shall be provided using laser printer.

#### 3.2.2 Cable

Cables shall be labeled using color labels on both ends with identifiers in accordance with TIA-606.

#### 3.2.3 Termination Hardware

Workstation outlets and patch panel connections shall be labeled using color coded labels with identifiers in accordance with TIA-606.

### 3.3 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Painting shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

#### 3.3.1 Painting Backboards

If backboards are required to be painted, then the manufactured fire retardant backboard must be painted with fire retardant paint, so as not to increase flame spread and smoke density and must be appropriately labeled. Label and fire rating stamp must be unpainted.

### 3.4 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

### 3.5 TESTING

The Contractor shall provide hard and soft copies of all test data within seven (7) days of system final testing to the appropriate Contracting Officer. A record of all installed cable shall be provided in hard copy format per the most current version of TIA-606 and the Ft. Bragg NEC Labeling Scheme. The cable records shall include the required data fields for each cable and complete end-to-end circuit report for each complete circuit from the assigned outlet to the entrance facility. For all fiber optic cables, power meter test (1310 and 1550 bi-directional) results shall be provided in a hard and soft copy format as well. Bi-directional

OTDR traces shall be required for every OSP fiber strand including dark fibers left for spares. These traces will include both connectors to be within cursers. All twisted pair copper cables shall have a disk copy output of the test results with station ID assigned.

### 3.5.1 Telecommunications Cabling Testing

Verification Testing and Inspection is a final quality check of the telecommunications installation by the NEC. Prior to the NEC conducting final verification testing and inspection, the contractor shall provide test results of the installed ISP and/or OSP to the NEC for review. Once the NEC has received and reviewed the test results, the NEC will work with the Army Corps of Engineers to schedule the date for verification testing and inspection to begin. A minimum of 10 percent of the installed cabling plant will be tested and the NEC reserves the right to test up to 100 percent of the installed cabling for compliance with standards. If 10 percent or more of the ISP cabling plant has failures during verification testing, the verification testing can be halted and the NEC can request that the contractor conduct a 100 percent retest of the building at no additional cost to the government. Labeling errors and swapped drop/jack locations will be counted as failures during verification testing. Prior to verification testing the contractor should ensure that all WAO terminations are complete and in their final resting location, painting of walls that house WAOs is complete, TRs are clean, TR HVAC systems are in working order, and all labeling is complete. Failure of the verification testing and inspection may result in a delay to the installation of the Ft. Bragg NEC's networking switch which in-turn could have a negative impact on contractor required testing necessary for project completion. Before a switch installation date will be given to the contractor, all OSP, ISP and TRs must be inspected and accepted by the government. Once the switch has been installed, the contractor will no longer have free access to the TRs, therefore it is imperative that everything pertaining to the TRs must be complete prior to final verification testing and inspection. Once all of the above has been completed, USACE will request a switch install date from NEC.

Perform telecommunications cabling inspection, verification, and performance tests in accordance with TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2, TIA-568.3. Test equipment shall conform to TIA-1152. Perform optical fiber field inspection tests via attenuation measurements on factory reels and provide results along with manufacturer certification for factory reel tests. Remove failed cable reels from project site upon attenuation test failure.

An electronic copy of the test results shall be provided to the NEC's BOB section on a Compact Disc so that a comprehensive review can be conducted on the installed cabling system. Test results shall include information as specified in the FT. BRAGG NEC IDC.

Submit test reports in booklet form with witness signatures verifying execution of tests. Reports shall show the field tests performed to verify compliance with the specified performance criteria. Test reports shall include record of the physical parameters verified during testing, a copy of certificate of calibration for test equipment, and a copy of the test administrator's certification on the test equipment used for testing. Test reports shall be submitted within seven (7) business days after completion of testing to NEC, BOB for Quality Assurance Inspection purposes

#### 3.5.1.1 Inspection

Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber jacket materials for UL or third party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in telecommunications rooms and at workstations to confirm color code for T568A or T568B pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2, TIA-568.3. Visually confirm Category 6, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels. Any cable with insulation that has been scraped, kinked, painted, chaffed or otherwise damaged is not acceptable and is subject to having to be replaced.

#### 3.5.1.2 Verification Tests

UTP backbone copper cabling shall be tested for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors, and between conductors and shield, if cable has overall shield. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but prior to being cross-connected.

For single-mode optical fiber, perform optical fiber end-to-end attenuation tests in accordance with TIA-568.3 and TIA-526-7 using Method A, Optical Power Meter and Light Source for single-mode optical fiber. Perform verification acceptance tests.

#### 3.5.1.3 Performance Tests

Perform testing for each outlet as follows:

- a. Perform Category 6 link tests in accordance with TIA-568.1 and TIA-568.2. Tests shall include wire map, length, insertion loss, NEXT, PSNEXT, ELFEXT, PSELFEXT, return loss, propagation delay, and delay skew. Any cable that fails shall be re-terminated and tested again. If the cable does not meet specifications after terminating again, replace the cable, terminate, and test. If the cable still does not meet acceptable standards, the NEC will be contacted to further evaluate the issue and make a final determination of cable status. All cables tested under the project installation must receive a "Pass" result. A Marginal Pass (or Pass\*) will be considered a failure and will not be accepted on Ft. Bragg. Even though certain test equipment may qualify a link over 295', Ft. Bragg NEC regards any permanent link that surpasses 295' as a fail.
- b. Riser and wall field copper cables. Test all riser and wall field copper cable for cable faults (grounds, shorts, crosses, opens, splits, reverses, transpositions).
- c. Optical fiber Links. Perform optical fiber end-to-end link tests in accordance with TIA-568.3.

#### 3.5.1.4 Final Verification Tests

Perform verification tests for UTP and optical fiber systems after the complete telecommunications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.

- a. Voice Tests. These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test

number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and DSN telephone call.

- b. Data Tests. These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and are available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 28 31 70

INTERIOR FIRE ALARM SYSTEM, ADDRESSABLE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide  
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41.1 (2002; R 2008) Guide on the Surges  
Environment in Low-Voltage (1000 V and  
Less) AC Power Circuits

IEEE C62.41.2 (2002) Recommended Practice on  
Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage  
(1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 4 (2018) Standard for Integrated Fire  
Protection and Life Safety System Testing

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020;  
ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA  
20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA  
20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA  
20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14;  
TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022)  
National Electrical Code

NFPA 72 (2019; TIA 19-1; ERTA 1 2019; TIA 21-1;  
ERTA 1 2021) National Fire Alarm and  
Signaling Code

NFPA 170 (2021) Standard for Fire Safety and  
Emergency Symbols

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-601-02 (2010) Operations and Maintenance:  
Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of  
Fire Protection Systems

UFC 4-010-06 (2016; with Change 1, 2017) Cybersecurity  
of Facility-Related Control Systems

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

47 CFR 15	Radio Frequency Devices
47 CFR 90	Private Land Mobile Radio Services

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 268	(2016; Reprint Oct 2019) UL Standard for Safety Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems
UL 464	(2016; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for Safety Audible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories
UL 497A	(2001; Bul. 2019) UL Standard for Safety Secondary Protectors for Communications Circuits
UL 497B	(2004; Reprint Dec 2012) Protectors for Data Communication Circuits
UL 864	(2014; Reprint May 2020) UL Standard for Safety Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems
UL 1283	(2017) UL Standard for Safety Electromagnetic Interference Filters
UL 1449	(2021) UL Standard for Safety Surge Protective Devices
UL 1638	(2016; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for Safety Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories
UL 1971	(2002; Reprint Oct 2008) Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired
UL Fire Prot Dir	(2012) Fire Protection Equipment Directory

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Section 25 05 11.21 Cybersecurity for Fire Alarm Control Systems, applies to this section, with the additions and modifications specified herein. In addition, refer to the following sections for related work and coordination:

Section 21 21 00 FIRE EXTINGUISHING SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (RESIDENTIAL)  
Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING for additional work related to firestopping.

### 1.3 SUMMARY

#### 1.3.1 Scope

- a. This work includes designing and providing a new, complete, fire alarm system as described herein and on the contract drawings. Include system wiring, raceways, pull boxes, terminal cabinets, outlet and mounting boxes, control equipment, initiating devices, notification appliances, supervising station fire alarm transmitters, and other accessories and miscellaneous items required for a complete operational system even though each item is not specifically mentioned or described. Provide system complete and ready for operation. Design and installation must comply with UFGS 25 05 11, UFC 4-010-06 and AFGM 2019-320-02.
- b. Provide equipment, materials, installation, workmanship, inspection, and testing in strict accordance with NFPA 72, except as modified herein.
- d. The fire alarm system must monitor and transmit the fire pump and tank system controller signals in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 72.
- f. The fire alarm system must be independent of the building security, building management, and energy/utility monitoring systems other than for control functions.

#### 1.3.2 Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE)

Services of the QFPE must include:

- a. Reviewing SD-02, SD-03, and SD-05 submittal packages for completeness and compliance with the provisions of this specification. Construction (shop) drawings and calculations must be prepared by, or prepared under the immediate supervision of, the QFPE. The QFPE must affix their professional engineering stamp with signature to the shop drawings, calculations, and material data sheets, indicating approval prior to submitting the shop drawings to the DFPE.
- b. Providing a letter documenting that the SD-02, SD-03, and SD-05 submittal package has been reviewed and noting any outstanding comments.
- c. Performing in-progress construction surveillance prior to installation of ceilings (rough-in inspection).
- d. Witnessing pre-Government functional performance testing and performing a final installation review.
- e. Signing applicable certificates under SD-07.

### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

Wherever mentioned in this specification or on the drawings, the equipment, devices, and functions must be defined as follows:

#### 1.4.1 Interface Device

An addressable device that interconnects hard wired systems or devices to an analog/addressable system.

#### 1.4.2 Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU)

A master control unit having the features of a fire alarm control unit (FACU).

#### 1.4.3 Remote Fire Alarm Control Unit

A control unit, physically remote from the fire alarm control unit, that receives inputs from automatic and manual fire alarm devices; may supply power to detection devices and interface devices; may provide transfer of power to the notification appliances; may provide transfer of condition to relays or devices connected to the control unit; and reports to and receives signals from the fire alarm and mass notification control unit.

#### 1.4.4 Terminal Cabinet

A steel cabinet with locking, hinge-mounted door where terminal strips are securely mounted inside the cabinet.

#### 1.4.5 Control Module and Relay Module

Terms utilized to describe emergency control function interface devices as defined by NFPA 72.

#### 1.4.6 Designated Fire Protection Engineer (DFPE)

The DoD fire protection engineer that oversees that Area of Responsibility for that project. This is sometimes referred to as the "cognizant" fire protection engineer. Interpret reference to "authority having jurisdiction" and/or AHJ in referenced standards to mean the Designated Fire Protection Engineer (DFPE). The DFPE may be responsible for review of the contractor submittals having a "G" designation, and for witnessing final inspection and testing.

#### 1.4.7 Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE)

A QFPE is an individual who is a licensed professional engineer (P.E.), who has passed the fire protection engineering written examination administered by the National Council of Examiners for Engineering and Surveying (NCEES) and has relevant fire protection engineering experience.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government.

Shop drawings (SD-02), product data (SD-03) and calculations (SD-05) must be prepared by the fire alarm designer and combined and submitted as one complete package. The QFPE must review the SD-02/SD-03/SD-05 submittal package for completeness and compliance with the Contract provisions prior to submission to the Government. The QFPE must provide a Letter of Confirmation that they have reviewed the submittal package for compliance with the contract provisions. This letter must include their registered professional engineer stamp and signature. Partial submittals and submittals not reviewed by the QFPE will be returned by the Government disapproved without review.



Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL  
PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Qualified Fire Protection Engineer (QFPE); G, RO

Fire alarm system designer; G, RO

Supervisor; G, RO

Technician; G, RO

Installer; G, RO

Test Technician; G, RO

Fire Alarm System Site-Specific Software Acknowledgement; G, RO

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Nameplates; G, RO

Instructions; G, RO

Wiring Diagrams; G, RO

System Layout; G, RO

Notification Appliances; G, RO

Initiating devices; G, RO

Battery Power; G, RO

Voltage Drop Calculations; G, RO

SD-03 Product Data

Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU); G, RO

Smoke Sensors; G, RO

Addressable Interface Devices; G, RO

Addressable Control Modules; G, RO

Notification Appliances; G, RO

Batteries; G, RO

Battery Chargers; G, RO

Surge Protective Devices; G, RO

Alarm Wiring; G, RO

Terminal Cabinets; G, RO

Automatic Fire Alarm Transmitters (including housing); G, RO

Radio Transmitter and Interface Panels; G, RO

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Test Procedures; G, RO

Smoke Sensor Test Procedures; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Verification of Compliant Installation; G, RO

Request for Government Final Test; G, RO

#### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G, RO

Instruction of Government Employees; G, RO

#### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

As-Built Drawings; G, RO

Document Storage Cabinet; G, RO

Spare Parts; G, RO

### 1.6 SYSTEM OPERATION

Fire alarm system components requiring power, except for the FACU(s) power supply, must operate on 24 volts DC unless noted otherwise in this section.

The interior fire alarm system must be a complete, supervised, noncoded, analog/addressable fire alarm system conforming to NFPA 72, and UL 864. Systems meeting UL 2017 only are not acceptable. The system must be activated into the alarm mode by actuation of an alarm initiating device. The system must remain in the alarm mode until the initiating device is reset and the control unit is reset and restored to normal.

#### 1.6.1 Alarm Initiating Devices and Notification Appliances (Visual, Audible)

- a. Connect alarm initiating devices to signaling line circuits (SLC) Class "B" and installed in accordance with NFPA 72.
- b. Connect notification appliances to notification appliance circuits (NAC) Class "B".

#### 1.6.2 Functions and Operating Features

The system must provide the following functions and operating features:

- a. Power, annunciation, supervision, and control for the system. Addressable systems must be microcomputer (microprocessor or microcontroller) based with a minimum word size of eight bits with

sufficient memory to perform as specified.

- b. Visual alarm notification appliances must be synchronized as required by NFPA 72.
- c. Electrical supervision of the primary power (AC) supply, presence of the battery, battery voltage, and placement of system modules within the control unit.
- d. An audible and visual trouble signal to activate upon a single break or open condition, or ground fault. The trouble signal must also operate upon loss of primary power (AC) supply, absence of a battery supply, low battery voltage, or removal of alarm or supervisory control unit modules. After the system returns to normal operating conditions, the trouble signal must again sound until the trouble is acknowledged. A smoke detector in the process of being verified for the actual presence of smoke must not initiate a trouble condition.
- e. A trouble signal silence feature that must silence the audible trouble signal, without affecting the visual indicator.
- f. Program capability via switches in a locked portion of the FACU to bypass the automatic notification appliance circuits, fire reporting system features. Operation of this programmed action must indicate on the FACU display as a supervisory or trouble condition.
- g. Alarm functions must override trouble or supervisory functions. Supervisory functions must override trouble functions.
- h. The system must be capable of being programmed from the control unit keyboard. Programmed information must be stored in non-volatile memory.
- i. The system must be capable of operating, supervising, and/or monitoring non-addressable alarm and supervisory devices.
- j. There must be no limit, other than maximum system capacity, as to the number of addressable devices that may be in alarm simultaneously.
- k. Where the fire alarm system is responsible for initiating an action in another emergency control device or system, such as HVAC, the addressable fire alarm relay must be located in the vicinity of the emergency control device.
- l. An alarm signal must automatically initiate the following functions:
  - (1) Transmission of an alarm signal to the fire department.
  - (2) Visual indication of the device operated on the FACU.
  - (3) Actuation of alarm notification appliances.
  - (4) Recording of the event electronically in the history log of the FACU.
- m. A supervisory signal must automatically initiate the following functions:
  - (1) Visual indication of the device operated on the FACU.

(2) Transmission of a supervisory signal to the fire department.

(3) Recording of the event electronically in the history log of the FACU.

n. A trouble condition must automatically initiate the following functions:

(1) Visual indication of the device operated on the FACU.

(2) Transmission of a trouble signal to the fire department.

(3) Recording of the event electronically in the history log of the FACU.

o. System control equipment must be programmed to provide a 60-minute to 180-minute delay in transmission of trouble signals resulting from primary power failure.

#### 1.7 TECHNICAL DATA AND SITE-SPECIFIC SOFTWARE

Technical data and site-specific software (meaning technical data that relates to computer software) that are specifically identified in this project, and may be required in other specifications, must be delivered, strictly in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSES. The fire alarm system manufacturer must submit written confirmation of this contract provision as "[Fire Alarm System Site-Specific Software Acknowledgement](#)". Identify data delivered by reference to the specification paragraph against which it is furnished. Data to be submitted must include complete system, equipment, and software descriptions. Descriptions must show how the equipment will operate as a system to meet the performance requirements of this contract. The site-specific software data package must also include the following:

- a. Items identified in NFPA 72, titled "Site-Specific Software".
- b. Identification of programmable portions of the system equipment and capabilities.
- c. Description of system revision and expansion capabilities and methods of implementation detailing both equipment and software requirements.
- d. Provision of operational software data on all modes of programmable portions for fire alarm .
- e. Description of Fire Alarm Control Unit equipment operation.
- f. Description of auxiliary and remote equipment operations.
- g. Library of application software.
- h. Operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### 1.8.1 Submittal Documents

#### 1.8.1.1 Preconstruction Submittals

Within 36 days of contract award but not less than 14 days prior to commencing any work on site, the Contractor must submit the following for review and approval. SD-02, SD-03 and SD-05 submittals received prior to the review and approval of the qualifications of the fire alarm subcontractor and QFPE must be returned disapproved without review. All resultant delays must be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

#### 1.8.1.2 Shop Drawings

Shop drawings must not be smaller than the Contract Drawings. Drawings must comply with the requirements of NFPA 72 and NFPA 170. Minimum scale for floor plans must be 1/8"=1'.

#### 1.8.1.3 Nameplates

Nameplate illustrations and data to obtain approval by the Contracting Officer before installation.

#### 1.8.1.4 Wiring Diagrams

Six copies of point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the points of connection and terminals used for electrical field connections in the system, including interconnections between the equipment or systems that are supervised or controlled by the system. Diagrams must show connections from field devices to the FACU and remote FACU, initiating circuits, switches, relays and terminals, including pathway diagrams between the control unit and shared communications equipment within the protected premises. Point-to-point wiring diagrams must be job specific and must not indicate connections or circuits not being utilized. Provide complete riser diagrams indicating the wiring sequence of all devices and their connections to the control equipment. Include a color-code schedule for the wiring.

#### 1.8.1.5 System Layout

Six copies of plan view drawing showing device locations, terminal cabinet locations, junction boxes, other related equipment, conduit routing, conduit sizes, wire counts, conduit fill calculations, wire color-coding, circuit identification in each conduit, and circuit layouts for all floors. Indicate candela rating of each visual notification appliance. Clearly identify the locations of isolation modules. Indicate the addresses of all devices, modules, relays, and similar. Indicate if the environment for the FACU is within its environmental listing (e.g. temperature/humidity).

Provide a complete description of the system operation in matrix format similar to the "Typical Input/Output Matrix" included in the Annex of NFPA 72.

#### 1.8.1.6 Notification Appliances

Calculations and supporting data on each circuit to indicate that there is at least 100 percent spare capacity for notification appliances. Annotate

data for each circuit on the drawings.

#### 1.8.1.7 Initiating Devices

Calculations and supporting data on each circuit to indicate that there is at least 100 percent spare capacity for initiating devices. Annotate data for each circuit on the drawings.

#### 1.8.1.8 Battery Power

Calculations and supporting data as required in paragraph Battery Power Calculations for alarm, alert, and supervisory power requirements. Calculations including ampere-hour requirements for each system component and each control unit component, and the battery recharging period, must be included on the drawings.

#### 1.8.1.9 Voltage Drop Calculations

Voltage drop calculations for each notification circuit indicating that sufficient voltage is available for proper operation of the system and all components, at a minimum rated voltage of the system operating on batteries. Include the calculations on the system layout drawings.

#### 1.8.1.10 Product Data

Six copies of annotated descriptive data to show the specific model, type, and size of each item. Catalog cuts must also indicate the NRTL listing. The data must be highlighted to show model, size, and options that are intended for consideration. Data must be adequate to demonstrate compliance with all contract requirements. Product data for all equipment must be combined into a single submittal.

Provide an equipment list identifying the type, quantity, make, and model number of each piece of equipment to be provided under this submittal. The equipment list must include the type, quantity, make and model of spare equipment. Types and quantities of equipment submitted must coincide with the types and quantities of equipment used in the battery calculations and those shown on the shop drawings.

#### 1.8.1.11 Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions

Six copies of the Operation and Maintenance Instructions. The O&M Instructions must be prepared in a single volume or in multiple volumes, with each volume indexed, and may be submitted as a Technical Data Package. Manuals must be approved prior to training. The Interior Fire Alarm System Operation and Maintenance Instructions must include the following:

- a. "Manufacturer Data Package five" as specified in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.
- b. Operating manual outlining step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, and shutdown. The manual must include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and preliminary equipment list complete with description of equipment and their basic operating features.
- c. Maintenance manual listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guide. The manuals must

include conduit layout, equipment layout and simplified wiring, and control diagrams of the system as installed.

- d. Complete procedures for system revision and expansion, detailing both equipment and software requirements.
- e. Software submitted for this project on CD/DVD media utilized.
- f. Printouts of configuration settings for all devices.
- g. Routine maintenance checklist. The routine maintenance checklist must be arranged in a columnar format. The first column must list all installed devices, the second column must state the maintenance activity or state no maintenance required, the third column must state the frequency of the maintenance activity, and the fourth column provided for additional comments or reference. All data (devices, testing frequencies, and similar) must comply with [UFC 3-601-02](#).
- h. A final Equipment List must be submitted with the Operating and Maintenance (O&M) manual.

#### 1.8.2 Qualifications

##### 1.8.2.1 [Fire Alarm System Designer](#)

The fire alarm system designer must be certified as a Level III (minimum) Technician by National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) in the Fire Alarm Systems subfield of Fire Protection Engineering Technology or meet the qualifications for a QFPE.

##### 1.8.2.2 [Supervisor](#)

A NICET Level III or IV fire alarm technician must supervise the installation of the fire alarm system. The fire alarm technicians supervising the installation of equipment must be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the drawings.

##### 1.8.2.3 [Technician](#)

Fire alarm technicians with a minimum of four years of experience must be utilized to install and terminate fire alarm devices, cabinets and control units. The fire alarm technicians installing the equipment must be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the drawings.

##### 1.8.2.4 [Installer](#)

Fire alarm installer with a minimum of two years of experience utilized to assist in the installation of fire alarm devices, cabinets and control units. A licensed electrician must be allowed to install wire, cable, conduit and backboxes for the fire alarm system system. The fire alarm installer must be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the drawings.

##### 1.8.2.5 [Test Technician](#)

Fire alarm technicians with a minimum of eight years of experience and

NICET Level III or IV utilized in testing and certification of the installation of the fire alarm devices, cabinets and control units. The fire alarm technicians testing the equipment must be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment installed as part of this project.

#### 1.8.2.6 Manufacturer

Components must be of current design and must be in regular and recurrent production at the time of installation. Provide design, materials, and devices for a protected premises fire alarm system, complete, conforming to NFPA 72, except as specified herein.

#### 1.8.3 Regulatory Requirements

Equipment and material must be listed or approved. Listed or approved, as used in this Section, means listed, labeled or approved by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) such as UL Fire Prot Dir or FM APP GUIDE. The omission of these terms under the description of any item of equipment described must not be construed as waiving this requirement. All listings or approvals by testing laboratories must be from an existing ANSI or UL published standard. The recommended practices stated in the manufacturer's literature or documentation must be considered as mandatory requirements.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect equipment delivered and placed in storage from the weather, humidity, and temperature variation, dirt and dust, and other contaminants.

#### 1.10 MAINTENANCE

##### 1.10.1 Spare Parts

Furnish the following spare parts in the manufacturers original unopened containers:

- a. Five complete sets of system keys.
- b. Two of each type of fuse required by the system.
- c. One manual stations.
- d. One of each type of detector installed.
- g. One smoke detector manufacturer's test screen, card or magnet for each ten beam smoke detectors, or fraction thereof, installed in the system.
- i. One of each type of audible and visual alarm device installed.
- j. One of each type of addressable monitor module installed.
- k. One of each type of addressable control module installed.
- l. One 120 VAC surge protective device.



#### 1.10.2 Special Tools

Software, connecting cables and proprietary equipment, necessary for the maintenance, testing, and reprogramming of the equipment must be furnished to the Contracting Officer, prior to the instruction of Government employees.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENT

All fire alarm equipment must be listed for use under the applicable reference standards.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

##### 2.2.1 Standard Products

Provide materials, equipment, and devices that have been tested by a nationally recognized testing laboratory and listed for fire protection service when so required by **NFPA 72** or this specification. Select material from one manufacturer, where possible, and not a combination of manufacturers, for any particular classification of materials. Material and equipment must be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products for at least 2 years prior to bid opening.

##### 2.2.2 Nameplates

Major components of equipment must have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, catalog number, date of installation, installing Contractor's name and address, and the contract number provided on a new name plate permanently affixed to the item or equipment. Major components include, but are not limited to, the following:

###### a. FACU

Nameplates must be etched metal or plastic, permanently attached by screws to control units or adjacent walls.

##### 2.2.3 Keys

Keys and locks for equipment, control units and devices must be identical. Master all keys and locks to a single key as required by the Installation Fire Department.

##### 2.2.4 Instructions

Provide a typeset printed or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a Lexan plastic or glass cover in a stainless steel or aluminum frame. Install the instructions on the interior of the FACU. The card must show those steps to be taken by an operator when a signal is received as well as the functional operation of the system under all conditions, normal, alarm, supervisory, and trouble. The instructions and their mounting location must be approved by the Contracting Officer before being posted.

## 2.3 FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT

Provide a complete fire alarm control unit (FACU) fully enclosed in a lockable steel cabinet as specified herein. Operations required for testing or for normal care, maintenance, and use of the system must be performed from the front of the enclosure. If more than a single unit is required at a location to form a complete control unit, the unit cabinets must match exactly. The system must be capable of defining any module as an alarm module and report alarm trouble, loss of polling, or as a supervisory module, and reporting supervisory short, supervisory open or loss of polling such as waterflow switches, valve supervisory switches, fire pump monitoring, independent smoke detection systems, relays for output function actuation.

- a. Each control unit must provide power, supervision, control, and logic for the entire system, utilizing solid state, modular components, internally mounted and arranged for easy access. Each control unit must be suitable for operation on a 120 volt, 60 hertz, normal building power supply. Provide each control unit with supervisory functions for power failure, internal component placement, and operation.
- b. Visual indication of alarm, supervisory, or trouble initiation on the FACU must be by liquid crystal display or similar means with a minimum of 80 characters.

### 2.3.1 Cabinet

Install control unit components in cabinets large enough to accommodate all components and also to allow ample gutter space for interconnection of control units as well as field wiring. The cabinet must be a sturdy steel housing, complete with back box, hinged steel door with cylinder lock, and surface mounting provisions. The enclosure must be identified by an engraved phenolic resin nameplate. Lettering on the nameplate must say "Fire Alarm control unit" and must not be less than 1-inch high. Provide prominent rigid plastic or metal identification plates for lamps, circuits, meters, fuses, and switches.

### 2.3.2 Silencing Switches

#### 2.3.2.1 Alarm Silencing Switch

Provide an alarm silencing switch at the FACU that must silence the audible and visual notification appliances. Subsequent activation of initiating devices must cause the notification appliances to re-activate.

#### 2.3.2.2 Supervisory/Trouble Silencing Switch

Provide supervisory and trouble silencing switch(es) that must silence the audible trouble and supervisory signal(s), but not extinguish the visual indicator. This switch must be overridden upon activation of a subsequent supervisory or trouble condition. Audible trouble indication must resound automatically every 24 hours after the silencing feature has been operated if the supervisory or trouble condition still exists.

### 2.3.3 Non-Interfering

Power and supervise each circuit such that a signal from one device does not prevent the receipt of signals from any other device. Initiating

devices must be manually reset by switch from the FACU after the initiating device or devices have been restored to normal.

#### 2.3.4 Memory

Provide each control unit with non-volatile memory and logic for all functions. The use of long life batteries, capacitors, or other age-dependent devices must not be considered as equal to non-volatile processors, PROMS, or EPROMS.

#### 2.3.5 Field Programmability

Provide control units and control units that are fully field programmable for both input and output of control, initiation, notification, supervisory, and trouble functions. The system program configuration must be menu driven. System changes must be password protected. Any proprietary equipment and proprietary software needed by qualified technicians to implement future changes to the fire alarm system must be provided as part of this contract.

#### 2.3.6 Input/Output Modifications

The FACU must contain features that allow the bypassing of input devices from the system or the modification of system outputs. These control features must consist of a control unit mounted keypad. Any bypass or modification to the system must indicate a trouble condition on the FACU.

#### 2.3.7 Resetting

Provide the necessary controls to prevent the resetting of any alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal while the alarm, supervisory or trouble condition on the system still exists.

#### 2.3.8 Walk Test

The FACU must have a walk test feature. When using this feature, operation of initiating devices must result in limited system outputs, so that the notification appliances operate for only a few seconds and the event is indicated in the history log, but no other outputs occur.

#### 2.3.9 History Logging

The control unit must have the ability to store a minimum of 400 events in a log. These events must be stored in a battery-protected memory and must remain in the memory until the memory is downloaded or cleared manually. Resetting of the control unit must not clear the memory.

#### 2.3.10 Manual Access

An operator at the control unit, having a proper access level, must have the capability to manually access the following information for each initiating device.

- a. Primary status.
- b. Device type.
- c. Present average value.

- d. Present sensitivity selected.
- e. Detector range (normal, dirty).

## 2.4 SMOKE SENSORS

### 2.4.1 Photoelectric Smoke Sensors

Provide addressable photoelectric smoke sensors as follows:

- a. Provide intelligent(analog)/addressable photoelectric smoke sensors utilizing the photoelectric light scattering principle for operation in accordance with UL 268. Smoke sensors shall be listed for use with the fire alarm control panel. Smoke detectors shall provide dual alarm and power/polling LEDs. LEDs shall flash green under normal conditions, indicating that the detector is operational and in regular communication with the control panel, and both LEDs shall be placed into steady red illumination by the control panel, indicating that an alarm condition has been detected. If required, the LED flash shall have the ability to be removed from the system program. An output connection shall also be provided in the base to connect an external remote alarm LED.
- b. Provide self-restoring type sensors that do not require any re-adjustment after actuation at the FACP to restore them to normal operation. Sensors shall be UL listed as smoke-automatic fire sensors.
- c. Components shall be rust and corrosion resistant. Vibration shall have no effect on the sensor's operation. Protect the detection chamber with a fine mesh metallic screen that prevents the entrance of insects or airborne materials. The screen shall not inhibit the movement of smoke particles into the chamber.
- d. The sensor address shall identify the particular unit, its location within the system, and its sensitivity setting. Sensors shall be of the low voltage type rated for use on a 24 VDC system.
- e. An operator at the control panel, having a proper access level, shall have the capability to manually access the following information for each initiating device.
  - (1) Primary status
  - (2) Device type
  - (3) Present average value
  - (4) Present sensitivity selected
  - (5) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.)
- f. The Fire Alarm control panel shall permit detector sensitivity adjustment through field programming of the system. The panel shall automatically adjust sensitivity on a time-of-day basis.
- g. Using software in the Fire Alarm control panel, detectors shall compensate for dust accumulation and other slow environmental changes that affect their performance. Detectors shall be listed by UL as meeting the calibrated sensitivity test requirements of NFPA Standard

72, Chapter 14 (2013).

- h. The detectors shall provide a test means whereby they will simulate an alarm condition and report that condition to the control panel. Such a test may be initiated at the detector itself or initiated remotely on command from the control panel.
- i. Detectors shall store an internal identifying type code that the control panel shall use to identify the type of device (ion, photo, thermal, etc.).
- j. Detectors shall operate in an analog fashion, where the detector simply measures its designed environment variable and transmits an analog value to the Fire Alarm control panel based on real-time measured values. FACP software, not the detector, shall make the alarm/normal decision, permitting the sensitivity of each detector to be set in the FACP program and allowing the system operator to view the current analog value reaching 100% of the alarm threshold.

#### 2.4.2 Smoke Sensor Testing

Smoke sensors shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 72 and manufacturer's recommended calibrated test method. Submit smoke sensor test procedures for approval. In addition to the NFPA 72 requirements, smoke detector sensitivity shall be tested during the preliminary tests.

#### 2.5 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICES

The initiating device being monitored must be configured as a Class "B" initiating device circuits. The module must be listed as compatible with the control unit. The module must provide address setting means compatible with the control unit's SLC supervision and store an internal identifying code. Monitor module must contain an integral LED that flashes each time the monitor module is polled and is visible through the device cover plate. Pull stations with a monitor module in a common backbox are not required to have an LED. Modules must be listed for the environmental conditions in which they will be installed.

#### 2.6 ADDRESSABLE CONTROL MODULES

The control module must be capable of operating as a relay (dry contact form C) for interfacing the control unit with other systems, and to control door holders or initiate elevator fire service. The module must be listed as compatible with the control unit. The indicating device or the external load being controlled must be configured as Class B notification appliance circuits. The system must be capable of supervising, audible, visual and dry contact circuits. The control module must have both an input and output address. The supervision must detect a short on the supervised circuit and must prevent power from being applied to the circuit. The control model must provide address setting means compatible with the control unit's SLC supervision and store an internal identifying code. The control module must contain an integral LED that flashes each time the control module is polled and is visible through the device cover plate. Control Modules must be listed for the environmental conditions in which they will be installed.

## 2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

### 2.7.1 Audible Notification Appliances

Audible appliances must conform to the applicable requirements of [UL 464](#). Appliances must be connected into notification appliance circuits. Surface mounted audible appliances must be painted red. Recessed audible appliances must be installed with a grill that is painted red.

#### 2.7.1.1 Horns

Horns must be semi-flush mounted. Horns must produce a sound rating of at least 85 dBA at [10 feet](#). Horns used in exterior locations must be specifically listed or approved for outdoor use and be provided with metal housing and protective grilles.

### 2.7.2 Visual Notification Appliances

Visual notification appliances must conform to the applicable requirements of [UL 1638](#), [UL 1971](#) and conform to the Architectural Barriers Act (ABA). Visual Notification Appliances must have clear high intensity optic lens, xenon flash tubes, or light emitting diode (LED) and be marked "Alert" in letters of contrasting color. The light pattern must be disbursed so that it is visible above and below the strobe and from a 90 degree angle on both sides of the strobe. Strobe flash rate must be 1 flash per second and a minimum of 15 candela based on the [UL 1971](#) test. Strobe must be semi-flush mounted.

## 2.8 ELECTRIC POWER

### 2.8.1 Primary Power

Power must be 120 VAC 60 Hz service for the FACU from the AC service to the building in accordance with [NFPA 72](#).

## 2.9 SECONDARY POWER SUPPLY

Provide for system operation in the event of primary power source failure. Transfer from normal to auxiliary (secondary) power or restoration from auxiliary to normal power must be automatic and must not cause transmission of a false alarm.

### 2.9.1 [Batteries](#)

Provide sealed, maintenance-free, sealed lead acid batteries as the source for emergency power to the FACU. Batteries must contain suspended electrolyte. The battery system must be maintained in a fully charged condition by means of a solid state battery charger. Provide an automatic transfer switch to transfer the load to the batteries in the event of the failure of primary power.

#### 2.9.1.1 Capacity

Battery size must be the following capacity. This capacity applies to every control unit associated with this system, including [supplemental notification appliance circuit panels](#), [auxiliary power supply panels](#), and fire alarm transmitters.

- a. Sufficient capacity to operate the fire alarm system under supervisory

and trouble conditions, including audible trouble signal devices for 48 hours and audible and visual signal devices under alarm conditions for an additional 15 minutes.

#### 2.9.1.2 Battery Power Calculations

- a. Verify that battery capacity exceeds supervisory and alarm power requirements for the criteria noted in the paragraph "Capacity" above.
  - (1) Substantiate the battery calculations for alarm and supervisory power requirements. Include ampere-hour requirements for each system component and each control unit component, and compliance with [UL 864](#).
  - (2) Provide complete battery calculations for both the alarm and supervisory power requirements. Submit ampere-hour requirements for each system component with the calculations.
  - (3) Provide voltage drop calculations to indicate that sufficient voltage is available for proper operation of the system and all components. Calculations must be performed using the minimum rated voltage of each component.
- b. For battery calculations assume a starting voltage of 24 VDC for starting the calculations to size the batteries. Calculate the required Amp-Hours for the specified standby time, and then calculate the required Amp-Hours for the specified alarm time. Using 20.4 VDC as starting voltage, perform a voltage drop calculation for circuits containing device and/or appliances remote from the power sources.

#### 2.9.2 Battery Chargers

Provide a solid state, fully automatic, variable charging rate battery charger. The charger must be capable of providing 120 percent of the connected system load and must maintain the batteries at full charge. In the event the batteries are fully discharged (20.4 Volts dc), the charger must recharge the batteries back to 95 percent of full charge within 48 hours after a single discharge cycle as described in paragraph CAPACITY above. Provide pilot light to indicate when batteries are manually placed on a high rate of charge as part of the unit assembly if a high rate switch is provided.

#### 2.10 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

[Surge protective devices](#) must be provided to suppress all voltage transients which might damage fire alarm control unit components. Systems having circuits located outdoors, communications equipment must be protected against surges induced on any signaling line circuit. Cables and conductors, that serve as communications links, must have surge protection circuits installed at each end. The surge protective device must wire in series to the power supply of the protected equipment with screw terminations. Line voltage surge arrestor must be installed directly adjacent to the power panel where the FACU breaker is located.

- a. Surge protective devices for nominal 120 VAC must be [UL 1449](#) listed with a maximum 500 volt suppression level and have a maximum response time of 5 nanoseconds. The surge protective device must also meet [IEEE C62.41.1](#) and [IEEE C62.41.2](#) category B tests for surge capacity. The surge protective device must feature multi-stage construction and

be provided with a long-life indicator lamp (either light emitting diode or neon) which extinguishes upon failure of protected components. Any unit fusing must be externally accessible.

- b. Surge protective devices for nominal 24 VAC, fire alarm telephone dialer, or ethernet connection must be [UL 497B](#) listed, meet [IEEE C62.41.1](#) and have a maximum response time of 1-nanosecond. The surge protective device must feature multi-stage construction and be self-resetting. The surge protective device must be a base and plug style. The base assembly must have screw terminals for fire [alarm wiring](#). The base assembly must accept "plug-in" surge protective module.
- c. All surge protective devices (SPD) must be the standard product of a single manufacturer and be equal or better than the following:
  - (1) For 120 VAC nominal line voltage: [UL 1449](#) and [UL 1283](#) listed, series connected 120 VAC, 20A rated, surge protective device in a NEMA 4x enclosure. Minimum 50,000 amp surge current rating with EMI/RFI filtering and a dry contact circuit for remote monitoring of surge protection status.
  - (2) For 24-volt nominal line voltage: [UL 497B](#) listed, series connected low voltage, 24-volt, 5A rated, loop circuit protector, base and replaceable module.
  - (3) For alarm telephone dialers: [UL 497A](#) listed, series connected, 130-volt, 150 mA rated with self-resetting fuse, dialer circuit protector with modular plug and play.
  - (4) For IP-DACTS: [UL 497B](#) listed, series connected, 6.4-volt, 1.5A rated with 20 kA/pair surge current, data network protector with modular plug and play.

## 2.11 WIRING

Provide wiring materials under this section as specified in Section [26 20 00](#) INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM with the additions and modifications specified herein.

### 2.11.1 Alarm Wiring

IDC and SLC wiring must be solid copper cable in accordance with the manufacturers requirements. Copper signaling line circuits and initiating device circuit field wiring must be No. 18 AWG size conductors at a minimum. Visual notification appliance circuit conductors, that contain audible alarm appliances, must be copper No. 14 AWG size conductors at a minimum. Wire size must be sufficient to prevent voltage drop problems. Circuits operating at 24 VDC must not operate at less than the listed voltages for the detectors and/or appliances. Power wiring, operating at 120 VAC minimum, must be a minimum No. 12 AWG solid copper having similar insulation. Acceptable power-limited cables are FPL, FPLR or FPLP as appropriate with red colored covering. Nonpower-limited cables must comply with [NFPA 70](#).



## 2.12 AUTOMATIC FIRE ALARM TRANSMITTERS

### 2.12.1 Radio Transmitter and Interface Panels

Transmitters must be compatible with proprietary supervising station receiving equipment. Each radio alarm transmitter must be the manufacturer's recognized commercial product, completely assembled, wired, factory tested, and delivered ready for installation and operation. Transmitters must be provided in accordance with applicable portions of NFPA 72, Federal Communications Commission (FCC) 47 CFR 90 and Federal Communications Commission (FCC) 47 CFR 15. Transmitter electronics module must be contained within the physical housing as an integral, removable assembly. At the contractors option, and if listed, the transmitter may be housed in the same control unit as the FAC. The transmitter must be narrowband radio, with FCC certification for narrowband operation and meets the requirements of the NTIA (National Telecommunications and Information Administration) Manual of Regulations and Procedures for Federal Frequency Management.

#### 2.12.1.1 Operation

Operate each transmitter from 120-volt ac power. In the event of 120-volt ac power loss, the transmitter must automatically switch to battery operation. Switchover must be accomplished with no interruption of protective service, and must automatically transmit a trouble message. Upon restoration of ac power, transfer back to normal ac power supply must also be automatic.

#### 2.12.1.2 Battery Power

Transmitter standby battery capacity must provide sufficient power to operate the transmitter in a normal standby status for a minimum of 72 hours and be capable of transmitting alarms during that period.

#### 2.12.1.3 Transmitter Housing

Use NEMA Type 1 for housing. The housing must contain a lock that is keyed identical to the fire alarm system for the building. Radio alarm transmitter housing must be factory painted with a suitable priming coat and not less than two coats of a hard, durable weatherproof enamel.

#### 2.12.1.4 Antenna

Antenna must be omnidirectional, coaxial, halfwave dipole antennas for radio alarm transmitters with a driving point impedance to match transmitter output. The antenna and antenna mounts must be corrosion resistant and designed to withstand wind velocities of 100 mph. Do not mount antennas to any portion of the building roofing system. Protect the antenna from physical damage.

### 2.12.2 Signals to Be Transmitted to the Base Receiving Station

The following signals must be sent to the base receiving station:

- a. Sprinkler waterflow
- b. Manual pull stations
- c. Smoke detectors

i. Sprinkler valve supervision

2.13 SYSTEM MONITORING

2.13.1 Valves

Each valve affecting the proper operation of a fire protection system, including automatic sprinkler control valves, sprinkler service entrance valve, isolating valves for pressure type waterflow or supervision switches, and valves at backflow preventers, whether supplied under this contract or existing, must be electrically monitored to ensure its proper position. Provide each tamper switch with a separate address.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 VERIFYING ACTUAL FIELD CONDITIONS

Before commencing work, examine all adjoining work on which the contractor's work is in any way dependent for perfect workmanship according to the intent of this specification section, and report to the Contracting Officer's Representative any condition which prevents performance of first class work. No "waiver of responsibility" for incomplete, inadequate or defective adjoining work will be considered unless notice has been filed before submittal of a proposal.

3.2 INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU)

Locate the FACU where indicated on the drawings. Surface mount the enclosure with the top of the cabinet 6 feet above the finished floor or center the cabinet at 5 feet, whichever is lower. Conductor terminations must be labeled and a drawing containing conductors, their labels, their circuits, and their interconnection must be permanently mounted in the FACU. Locate the document storage cabinet adjacent to the FACU unless the Contracting Officer directs otherwise.

3.2.2 Battery Cabinets

When batteries will not fit in the FACU, locate battery cabinets below or adjacent to the FACU. Battery cabinets must be installed at an accessible location when standing at floor level. Battery cabinets must not be installed lower than 12 inches above finished floor, measured to the bottom of the cabinet, nor higher than 36 inches above the floor, measured to the top of the cabinet. Installing batteries above drop ceilings or in inaccessible locations is prohibited. Battery cabinets must be large enough to accommodate batteries and also to allow ample gutter space for interconnection of control units as well as field wiring. The cabinet must be provided in a sturdy steel housing, complete with back box, hinged steel door with cylinder lock, and surface mounting provisions. The cabinet must be identified by an engraved phenolic resin nameplate. Lettering on the nameplate must indicate the control unit(s) the batteries power and must not be less than 1-inch high.

3.2.3 Manual Stations

Locate manual stations as required by NFPA 72 and as indicated on the drawings. Mount stations so they are located no farther than 5 feet from

the exit door they serve, measured horizontally. Manual stations must be mounted at 42 inches measured to the operating handle.

#### 3.2.4 Notification Appliances

- a. Locate notification appliance devices where indicated. Where more than two visual notification appliances are located in the same room or corridor or field of view, provide synchronized operation. Devices must use screw terminals for all field wiring.
- b. Audible and visual notification appliances mounted on the exterior of the building, within unconditioned spaces, or in the vicinity of showers must be listed weatherproof appliances installed on weatherproof backboxes.
- c. Speakers must not be located in close proximity to the FACU or LOC so as to cause feedback when the microphone is in use.

#### 3.2.5 Smoke Sensors

Locate detectors as required by NFPA 72 and their listing on a 4-inch mounting box. Smoke sensors are permitted to be on the wall no lower than 12 inches from the ceiling with no minimum distance from the ceiling. Install smoke sensors no closer than 3 feet from air handling supply diffusers. Detectors installed in acoustical ceiling tiles must be centered in the tiles plus or minus 2 inches.

### 3.3 SYSTEM FIELD WIRING

#### 3.3.1 Wiring within Cabinets, Enclosures, and Boxes

Provide wiring installed in a neat and workmanlike manner and installed parallel with or at right angles to the sides and back of any box, enclosure, or cabinet. Conductors that are terminated, spliced, or otherwise interrupted in any enclosure, cabinet, mounting, or junction box must be connected to screw-type terminal blocks. Mark each terminal in accordance with the wiring diagrams of the system. The use of wire nuts or similar devices is prohibited. Wiring to conform with NFPA 70.

Indicate the following in the wiring diagrams:

- a. Point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the points of connection and terminals used for electrical field connections in the system, including interconnections between the equipment or systems that are supervised or controlled by the system. Diagrams must show connections from field devices to the FACU and remote fire alarm control units, initiating circuits, switches, relays and terminals.
- b. Complete riser diagrams indicating the wiring sequence of devices and their connections to the control equipment. Include a color code schedule for the wiring. Include floor plans showing the locations of devices and equipment.

#### 3.3.2 Terminal Cabinets

Provide a terminal cabinet at the base of any circuit riser, on each floor at each riser, and where indicated on the drawings. Terminal size must be appropriate for the size of the wiring to be connected. Conductor terminations must be labeled and a drawing containing conductors, their

labels, their circuits, and their interconnection must be permanently mounted in the terminal cabinet. Minimum size is 8 inches by 8 inches. Only screw-type terminals are permitted. Provide an identification label, that displays "FIRE ALARM TERMINAL CABINET" with 2-inch lettering, on the front of the terminal cabinet.

### 3.3.3 Alarm Wiring

- a. Voltages must not be mixed in any junction box, housing or device, except those containing power supplies and control relays.
- b. Utilize shielded wiring where recommended by the manufacturer. For shielded wiring, ground the shield at only one point, in or adjacent to the FACU.
- c. Pigtail or T-tap connections to signal line circuits, initiating device circuits, supervisory alarm circuits, and notification appliance circuits are prohibited.
- d. Color coding is required for circuits and must be maintained throughout the circuit. Conductors used for the same functions must be similarly color coded. Conform wiring to NFPA 70.
- e. Pull all conductors splice free. The use of wire nuts, crimped connectors, or twisting of conductors is prohibited. Where splices are unavoidable, the location of the junction box or pull box where they occur must be identified on the as-built drawings. The number and location of splices must be subject to approval by the Designated Fire Protection Engineer (DFPE).
- f. Provide all wiring in electrical metallic tubing. Electrical metallic tubing and conduit shall be no less than 3/4-inch diameter. Conceal conduit in finished areas of new construction. The use of flexible conduit not exceeding a 6 foot length shall be permitted in initiating device or notification appliance circuits. Run conduit or tubing (rigid, IMC, EMT, FMC, etc. as permitted by NFPA 72 and NFPA 70) concealed unless specifically indicated otherwise.

### 3.3.4 Conductor Terminations

Labeling of conductors at terminal blocks in terminal cabinets, FACU, and remote FACU must be provided at each conductor connection. Each conductor or cable must have a shrink-wrap label to provide a unique and specific designation. Each terminal cabinet, FACU, and remote FACU must contain a laminated drawing that indicates each conductor, its label, circuit, and terminal. The laminated drawing must be neat, using 12 point lettering minimum size, and mounted within each cabinet, control unit, or unit so that it does not interfere with the wiring or terminals. Maintain existing color code scheme where connecting to existing equipment.

## 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

Provide firestopping for holes at conduit penetrations through floor slabs, fire-rated walls, partitions with fire-rated doors, corridor walls, and vertical service shafts in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.5 PAINTING

fire alarm conduit shall be factory-painted red. All fire alarm junction boxes, covers, coupling, etc. shall be factory-painted or field-painted red. Painting must comply with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.6.1 Test Procedures

Submit detailed test procedures, prepared and signed by the NICET Level III or IV Fire Alarm Technician, and the representative of the installing company, and reviewed by the QFPE 60 days prior to performing system tests. Detailed test procedures must list all components of the installed system such as initiating devices and circuits, notification appliances and circuits, signaling line devices and circuits, control devices/equipment, batteries, transmitting and receiving equipment, power sources/supply, annunciators, special hazard equipment, emergency communication equipment, interface equipment, and surge protective devices. Test procedures must include sequence of testing, time estimate for each test, and sample test data forms. The test data forms must be in a check-off format (pass/fail with space to add applicable test data; similar to the forma in NFPA 72 and NFPA 4.) The test procedures and accompanying test data forms must be used for the pre-Government testing and the Government testing. The test data forms must record the test results and must:

- a. Identify the NFPA Class of all Initiating Device Circuits (IDC), and Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC), and Signaling Line Circuits (SLC).
- b. Identify each test required by NFPA 72 Test Methods and required test herein to be performed on each component, and describe how these tests must be performed.
- c. Identify each component and circuit as to type, location within the facility, and unique identity within the installed system. Provide necessary floor plan sheets showing each component location, test location, and alphanumeric identity.
- d. Identify all test equipment and personnel required to perform each test (including equipment necessary for smoke detector testing. The use of magnets is not permitted.
- e. Provide space to identify the date and time of each test. Provide space to identify the names and signatures of the individuals conducting and witnessing each test.

#### 3.6.2 Pre-Government Testing

##### 3.6.2.1 Verification of Compliant Installation

Conduct inspections and tests to ensure that devices and circuits are functioning properly. Tests must meet the requirements of paragraph entitled "Minimum System Tests" as required by NFPA 72. The contractor and an authorized representative from each supplier of equipment must be in attendance at the pre-Government testing to make necessary adjustments. After inspection and testing is complete, provide a signed Verification of Compliant Installation letter by the QFPE that the

installation is complete, compliant with the specification and fully operable. The letter must include the names and titles of the witnesses to the pre-Government tests. Provide all completion documentation as required by NFPA 72 including all referenced annex sections and the test reports noted below.

- a. NFPA 72 Record of Completion.
- b. NFPA 72 Record of Inspection and Testing.
- c. Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication System Inspection and Testing Form.
- d. Audibility test results with marked-up test floor plans.
- e. Documentation that all tests identified in the paragraph "Minimum System Tests" are complete.

#### 3.6.2.2 Request for Government Final Test

When the verification of compliant installation has been completed, submit a formal request for Government final test to the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR). Government final testing will not be scheduled until the DFPE has received copies of the request for Government final testing and Verification of Compliant Installation letter with all required reports. Government final testing will not be performed until after the connections to the installation-wide fire reporting system has been completed and tested to confirm communications are fully functional. Submit request for test at least 15 calendar days prior to the requested test date.

#### 3.6.3 Correction of Deficiencies

If equipment was found to be defective or non-compliant with contract requirements, perform corrective actions and repeat the tests. Tests must be conducted and repeated if necessary until the system has been demonstrated to comply with all contract requirements.

#### 3.6.4 Government Final Tests

The tests must be performed in accordance with the approved test procedures in the presence of the DFPE. Furnish instruments and personnel required for the tests. The following must be provided at the job site for Government Final Testing:

- a. The manufacturer's technical representative.
- c. Marked-up red line drawings of the system as actually installed.
- d. Loop resistance test results.
- e. Complete program printout including input/output addresses.
- f. Copy of pre-Government Test Certificate, test procedures and completed test data forms.
- g. Audibility test results with marked-up floor plans.

Government Final Tests will be witnessed by the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR). At this time, any and all required tests noted in the paragraph "Minimum System Tests" must be repeated at their discretion.

### 3.7 MINIMUM SYSTEM TESTS

#### 3.7.1 System Tests

Test the system in accordance with the procedures outlined in NFPA 72. The required tests are as follows:

- a. Loop Resistance Tests: Measure and record the resistance of each circuit with each pair of conductors in the circuit short-circuited at the farthest point from the circuit origin. The tests must be witnessed by the Contracting Officer and test results recorded for use at the final Government test.
- b. Verify the absence of unwanted voltages between circuit conductors and ground. The tests must be accomplished at the pre-Government test with results available at the final system test.
- c. Verify that the control unit is in the normal condition as detailed in the manufacturer's O&M manual.
- d. Test each initiating device and notification appliance and circuit for proper operation and response at the control unit. Smoke sensors must be tested in accordance with manufacturer's recommended calibrated test method. Use of magnets is prohibited. Testing of duct smoke detectors must comply with the requirements of NFPA 72 except disconnect at least 20 percent of devices. If there is a failure at these devices, then supervision must be tested at each device.
- f. Test the system for specified functions in accordance with the contract drawings and specifications and the manufacturer's O&M manual.
- g. Test both primary power and secondary power. Verify, by test, the secondary power system is capable of operating the system for the time period and in the manner specified.
- h. Determine that the system is operable under trouble conditions as specified.
- i. Visually inspect wiring.
- j. Test the battery charger and batteries.
- k. Verify that software control and data files have been entered or programmed into the FACU. Hard copy records of the software must be provided to the Contracting Officer.
- l. Verify that red-line drawings are accurate.
- m. Measure the current in circuits to ensure there is the calculated spare capacity for the circuits.
- n. Measure voltage readings for circuits to ensure that voltage drop is not excessive.
- o. Disconnect the verification feature for smoke detectors during tests

to minimize the amount of smoke needed to activate the sensor. Testing of smoke detectors must be conducted using real smoke or the use of canned smoke which is permitted.

- p. Measure the voltage drop at the most remote appliance (based on wire length) on each notification appliance circuit.
- q. Verify the documentation cabinet is installed and contains all as-built shop drawings, product data sheets, design calculations, site-specific software data package, and all documentation required by paragraph titled "Test Reports".

### 3.7.2 Audibility Tests

Sound pressure levels from audible notification appliances must be a minimum of 15 dBa over ambient with a maximum of 110 dBa in any occupiable area. The provisions for audible notification (audibility and intelligibility) must be met with doors, fire shutters, movable partitions, and similar devices closed.

### 3.8 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE

Following acceptance of the system, [as-built drawings](#) and O&M manuals must be delivered to the Contracting Officer for review and acceptance. The drawings must show the system as installed, including deviations from both the project drawings and the approved shop drawings. These drawings must be submitted within two weeks after the final Government test of the system. At least one set of as-built (marked-up) drawings must be provided at the time of, or prior to the Final Government Test.

- a. The drawings must be prepared electronically and sized no less than the contract drawings. Furnish one set of CDs or DVDs containing software back-up and CAD based drawings in latest version of AutoCAD, and portable document formats of as-built drawings and schematics.
- b. Include complete wiring diagrams showing connections between devices and equipment, both factory and field wired.
- c. Include a riser diagram and drawings showing the as-built location of devices and equipment.
- d. Provide [Operation and Maintenance \(O&M\) Instructions](#).

### 3.9 [INSTRUCTION OF GOVERNMENT EMPLOYEES](#)

#### 3.9.1 Instructor

Provide the services of an instructor, who has received specific training from the manufacturer for the training of other persons regarding the operation, inspection, testing, and maintenance of the system provided. The instructor must train the Government employees designated by the Contracting Officer, in the care, adjustment, maintenance, and operation of the fire alarm system. The instructor must be thoroughly familiar with all parts of this installation. The instructor must be trained in operating theory as well as in practical O&M work. Submit the instructors information and qualifications including the training history.



### 3.9.2 Required Instruction Time

Provide 8 hours of instruction after final acceptance of the system. The instruction must be given during regular working hours on such dates and times selected by the Contracting Officer. The instruction may be divided into two or more periods at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. The training must allow for rescheduling for unforeseen maintenance and/or fire department responses.

#### 3.9.2.1 Technical Training

Equipment manufacturer or a factory representative must provide 1 days of on site. Training must allow for classroom instruction as well as individual hands on programming, troubleshooting and diagnostics exercises.

### 3.9.3 Technical Training Manual

Provide, in manual format, lesson plans, operating instructions, maintenance procedures, and training data for the training courses. The operations training must familiarize designated government personnel with proper operation of the installed system. The maintenance training course must provide the designated government personnel adequate knowledge required to diagnose, repair, maintain, and expand functions inherent to the system.

## 3.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

### 3.10.1 Repair Service/Replacement Parts

Repair services and replacement parts for the system must be available for a period of 10 years after the date of final acceptance of this work by the Contracting Officer. During the warranty period, the service technician must be on-site within 24 hours after notification. All repairs must be completed within 24 hours of arrival on-site.

During the warranty period, the installing fire alarm contractor is responsible for conducting all required testing and maintenance in accordance with the requirements and recommended practices of [NFPA 72](#) and the system manufacturers. Installing fire alarm contractor is NOT responsible for any damage resulting from abuse, misuse, or neglect of equipment by the end user.

### 3.10.2 Spare Parts

Spare parts furnished must be directly interchangeable with the corresponding components of the installed systems. Spare parts must be suitably packaged and identified by nameplate, tagging, or stamping. Spare parts must be delivered to the Contracting Officer at the time of the Government testing and must be accompanied by an inventory list.

### 3.10.3 Document Storage Cabinet

Upon completion of the project, but prior to project close-out, place in the document storage cabinet copies of the following record documentation:

- a. As-built shop drawings
- b. Product data sheets

- c. Design calculations
- d. Site-specific software data package
- e. All documentation required by SD-06.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 31 00 00

EARTHWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 CRITERIA FOR BIDDING

Base bids on the following criteria:

- a. Surface elevations are as indicated.
- b. Ground water elevations indicated by the boring logs were those existing at the time subsurface investigations were made and do not necessarily represent ground water elevation at the time of construction.
- c. Material character is indicated by the boring logs.
- d. Hard materials and rock will not be encountered.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO T 180 (2017) Standard Method of Test for  
Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using  
a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm  
(18-in.) Drop

AASHTO T 224 (2010) Standard Method of Test for  
Correction for Coarse Particles in the  
Soil Compaction Test

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D422 (1963; R 2007; E 2014; E 2014)  
Particle-Size Analysis of Soils

ASTM D1140 (2017) Standard Test Methods for  
Determining the Amount of Material Finer  
than 75- $\mu$ m (No. 200) Sieve in Soils by  
Washing

ASTM D1556/D1556M (2015; E 2016) Standard Test Method for  
Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place  
by Sand-Cone Method

ASTM D1557 (2012; E 2015) Standard Test Methods for  
Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of  
Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000  
ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup>) (2700 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>)

ASTM D2216	(2019) Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass
ASTM D2487	(2017; E 2020) Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D2937	(2017; E 2017; E 2018) Standard Test Method for Density of Soil in Place by the Drive-Cylinder Method
ASTM D4318	(2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D6938	(2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA 600/4-79/020	(1983) Methods for Chemical Analysis of Water and Wastes
EPA SW-846.3-3	(1999, Third Edition, Update III-A) Test Methods for Evaluating Solid Waste: Physical/Chemical Methods

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.3.1 Satisfactory Materials (Structural Fill or Controlled Fill)

1.3.1.1 Beneath Buildings, Earthwork, Roadwork, and Utilities Systems

Materials selected for use as structural fill shall be free from roots and other organic matter, trash, debris, frozen soil, and stones larger than 3 inches in any dimension, and in general, shall have a liquid limit less than 50 percent and a plasticity index of less than 30.

The following soils represented by their Unified Soil Classification System (ASTM D2487) group symbols will be suitable for use as structural fill: GP, GW, GC, GM, SP, SP-SM, SP-SC, SW, SC, SM, SM-SC, CL, and ML.

1.3.1.2 Geosynthetic-Reinforced Zone Behind MSE Walls

Only materials classified as GP, GW, GC, GM, SP, SP-SM, SP-SC, SW, SC, SM, and SM-SC with less than 35% passing the #200 sieve, a liquid limit (LL) less than 35, and a plasticity index (PI) less than 10 will be suitable for use as structural fill in the geosynthetic-reinforced zone behind mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) walls.

1.3.2 Unsatisfactory Materials

Materials which do not comply with the requirements for satisfactory materials are unsatisfactory. Unsatisfactory materials also include man-made fills; trash; refuse; backfills from previous construction; and

material classified as satisfactory which contains root and other organic matter or frozen material. Notify the Contracting Officer when encountering any contaminated materials.

The following soil types are considered unsuitable for use as structural fill in any portion of the site: PT, OH, OL, CH, and MH.

#### 1.3.3 Degree of Compaction

Degree of compaction required, except as noted in the second sentence, is expressed as a percentage of the maximum dry density obtained by the test procedure presented in [ASTM D1557](#) abbreviated as a percent of laboratory maximum density. Since [ASTM D1557](#) applies only to soils that have 30 percent or less by weight of their particles retained on the [3/4 inch](#) sieve, express the degree of compaction for material having more than 30 percent by weight of their particles retained on the [3/4 inch](#) sieve as a percentage of the maximum density in accordance with [AASHTO T 180](#) and corrected with [AASHTO T 224](#). To maintain the same percentage of coarse material, use the "remove and replace" procedure as described in NOTE 8 of Paragraph 7.2 in [AASHTO T 180](#).

#### 1.3.4 Topsoil

Material suitable for topsoils obtained from offsite areas is defined as: Natural, friable soil representative of productive, well-drained soils in the area, free of subsoil, stumps, rocks larger than [3/4 inch](#) diameter in any dimension, brush, weeds, toxic substances, and other material detrimental to plant growth. Amend topsoil pH range to obtain a pH of 5.5 to 7. Submit topsoil test reports indicating the suitability of the topsoil for the approved permanent turf to the Contracting Officer for approval before distributing the 8" of topsoil over the site.

#### 1.3.5 Hard/Unyielding Materials

Hard/Unyielding materials comprise weathered rock, dense consolidated deposits, or conglomerate materials which are not included in the definition of "rock" with stones greater than [3 inch](#) in any dimension or as defined by the pipe manufacturer, whichever is smaller. These materials usually require the use of heavy excavation equipment, ripper teeth, or jack hammers for removal. Hard/Unyielding materials are not expected to be encountered.

#### 1.3.6 Rock

Solid homogeneous interlocking crystalline material with firmly cemented, laminated, or foliated masses or conglomerate deposits, neither of which can be removed without systematic drilling and blasting, drilling and the use of expansion jacks or feather wedges, or the use of backhoe-mounted pneumatic hole punchers or rock breakers; also large boulders, buried masonry, or concrete other than pavement exceeding [1/2 cubic yard](#) in volume. Removal of hard material will not be considered rock excavation because of intermittent drilling and blasting that is performed merely to increase production. Rock excavation is NOT permitted as rock is not expected to be encountered.

#### 1.3.7 Unstable Material

Unstable materials are too wet to properly support the utility pipe, conduit, or appurtenant structure.

### 1.3.8 Select Granular Material

#### 1.3.8.1 General Requirements

Select granular material consist of materials classified as GW, GP, SW, or SP by [ASTM D2487](#) where indicated. The liquid limit of such material must not exceed 35 percent when tested in accordance with [ASTM D4318](#). The plasticity index must not be greater than 10 percent when tested in accordance with [ASTM D4318](#), and not more than 35 percent by weight may be finer than No. 200 sieve when tested in accordance with [ASTM D1140](#).

#### 1.3.8.2 California Bearing Ratio Values

Perform California Bearing Ratio (CBR) tests on compacted subgrades in areas to receive pavement for both existing material and each material imported from offsite. CBR value shall be equal to or above pavement design subgrade CBR value of 8, as indicated on construction drawings.

#### 1.3.9 Initial Backfill Material

Initial backfill consists of select granular material or satisfactory materials. When the pipe is coated or wrapped for corrosion protection, free the initial backfill material of stones as recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

#### 1.3.10 Expansive Soils

Expansive soils are defined as soils that have a plasticity index equal to or greater than 30 when tested in accordance with [ASTM D4318](#).

#### 1.3.11 Maximum Dry Density

The maximum dry density is expressed as the maximum density obtained when the soil is compacted in accordance with [ASTM D1557](#), abbreviated as laboratory maximum density.

### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Subsurface soil boring logs and locations are shown on the drawings. The Subsurface Exploration and Geotechnical Engineering Report that was prepared for this project by the Savannah District is included in the project's design analyses. This report provides recommendations for certain geotechnical and foundation design parameters, and may be obtained upon request through the Contracting Officer. It should be noted that although this report represents the best subsurface information available, variations may exist in the subsurface between boring locations.

#### 1.4.1 Classification of Excavation

No consideration will be given to the nature of the materials, and all excavation will be designated as unclassified excavation.

##### 1.4.1.1 Common Excavation

Include common excavation with the satisfactory removal and disposal of all materials not classified as rock excavation.

#### 1.4.1.2 Hard Drilling Material and Rock Excavation

The Contractor shall review the Geotechnical Report and soil boring logs to determine the extent of potential hard drilling material and rock excavation. Hard drilling materials and rock were not encountered in any of the test borings performed on the site, and are not expected to be encountered during construction activities.

#### 1.4.2 Blasting

Blasting will not be permitted.

#### 1.4.3 Dewatering Work Plan

Submit procedures for accomplishing dewatering work at least 15 days prior to starting work.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Shoring; G, RO  
Dewatering Work Plan; G, RO

#### SD-03 Product Data

Utilization of Excavated Materials

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Borrow Site Testing; G, RO  
Soil Test Results; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Testing Qualifications; G, RO

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR OFFSITE SOILS

Test offsite soils brought in for use as backfill for Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons (TPH), Benzene, Toluene, Ethyl Benzene, and Xylene (BTEX) and full Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure (TCLP) including ignitability, corrosivity and reactivity.

Offsite soils shall contain a maximum of 100 parts per million (ppm) of TPH and a maximum of 10 ppm of the sum of BTEX and shall pass the TCPL test. Determine TPH concentrations by using EPA 600/4-79/020 Method 9071. Determine BTEX concentrations by using EPA SW-846.3-3 Method 8260b. Perform TCLP in accordance with EPA SW-846.3-3 Method 1311.

Provide Borrow Site Testing for TPH, BTEX and TCLP from a composite sample

of material from the borrow site, with at least one test from each borrow site. Do not bring material onsite until tests have been approved by the Contracting Officer. Within 24 hours of conclusion of physical tests, submit 3 copies of test results, including calibration curves and results of calibration tests.

## 2.2 BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE

Provide polyethylene plastic warning tape manufactured specifically for warning and identification of buried utility lines. Provide tape on rolls, 3 inches minimum width, color coded as specified below for the intended utility with warning and identification imprinted in bold black letters continuously over the entire tape length. Warning and identification to read, "CAUTION, BURIED (intended service) LINE BELOW" or similar wording. Provide permanent color and printing, unaffected by moisture or soil.

Warning Tape Color Codes	
Red	Electric
Yellow	Gas, Oil; Dangerous Materials
Orange	Telephone and Other Communications
Blue	Water Systems
Green	Sewer Systems
White	Steam Systems
Gray	Compressed Air

### 2.2.1 Warning Tape for Metallic Piping

Provide acid and alkali-resistant polyethylene plastic tape conforming to the width, color, and printing requirements specified above, with a minimum thickness of 0.003 inch and a minimum strength of 1500 psi lengthwise, and 1250 psi crosswise, with a maximum 350 percent elongation.

### 2.2.2 Detectable Warning Tape for Non-Metallic Piping

Provide polyethylene plastic tape conforming to the width, color, and printing requirements specified above, with a minimum thickness of 0.004 inch, and a minimum strength of 1500 psi lengthwise and 1250 psi crosswise. Manufacture tape with integral wires, foil backing, or other means of enabling detection by a metal detector when tape is buried up to 3 feet deep. Encase metallic element of the tape in a protective jacket or provide with other means of corrosion protection.

## 2.3 CAPILLARY WATER BARRIER

Provide capillary water barrier for all concrete slabs-on-grade consisting of a minimum of 4 inches of open graded, washed pea gravel, or stone to prevent the capillary rise of the groundwater. Use stone size of 57, 67, 78, or 89. The capillary water barrier may be omitted under slabs-on-grade in unenclosed areas. However, ALL slabs-on-grade shall be provided with a vapor barrier having a minimum thickness of 10 mils.



## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 STRIPPING OF TOPSOIL

Following clearing and grubbing, the construction footprint, including 10 feet beyond the outer edges of structures and pavements, shall be stripped of vegetation, topsoil, organics, and other deleterious materials to full depth. Topsoil shall be spread on areas already graded and prepared for topsoil, or transported and deposited in stockpiles convenient to areas that are to receive application of the topsoil later, or at locations indicated or specified. Keep topsoil separate from other excavated materials, brush, litter, objectionable weeds, roots, stones larger than 3/4 inches in diameter in any dimension, and other materials that would interfere with planting and maintenance operations. Remove from the site any surplus of topsoil from excavations and gradings.

### 3.2 GENERAL EXCAVATION

Perform excavation of every type of material encountered within the limits of the project to the lines, grades, and elevations indicated and as specified. Perform the grading in accordance with the typical sections shown and the tolerances specified in paragraph FINISHING. Transport satisfactory excavated materials and place in fill or embankment within the limits of the work. Excavate unsatisfactory materials encountered within the limits of the work below grade and replace with satisfactory materials as directed. Include such excavated material and the satisfactory material ordered as replacement in excavation. Dispose surplus satisfactory excavated material, not required for fill or embankment, in areas approved for surplus material storage or designated waste areas. Dispose unsatisfactory excavated material in designated waste or spoil areas. During construction, perform excavation and fill in a manner and sequence that will provide proper drainage at all times. Materials required for fill or embankment, in excess of that produced by onsite excavation within the limits of construction, shall be obtained by the Contractor from an approved offsite borrow site.

#### 3.2.1 Ditches, Gutters, and Channel Changes

Finish excavation of ditches, gutters, and channel changes by cutting accurately to the cross sections, grades, and elevations shown on Drawings. Do not excavate ditches and gutters below grades shown. Backfill the excessive open ditch or gutter excavation with satisfactory, thoroughly compacted, material to grades shown. Dispose of excess satisfactory material and all unsatisfactory materials from excavation offsite as directed. Maintain excavations free from detrimental quantities of leaves, brush, sticks, trash, and other debris until final acceptance of the work.

#### 3.2.2 Drainage Structures

Make excavations to the lines, grades, and elevations shown, or as directed. Provide trenches and foundation pits of sufficient size to permit the placement and removal of forms for the full length and width of structure footings and foundations as shown. Do not disturb the bottom of the excavation when concrete or masonry is to be placed in an excavated area. Do not excavate to the final grade level until just before the concrete or masonry is to be placed.

### 3.2.3 Drainage

Provide for the collection and disposal of surface and subsurface water encountered during construction in accordance with Drawings and the Contractor's approved Dewatering Work Plan. Completely drain construction site during periods of construction to keep soil materials sufficiently dry. When unsuitable working platforms for equipment operation and unsuitable soil support for subsequent construction features develop, remove unsuitable material and provide new soil material as specified herein. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to assess the soil and ground water conditions presented by the plans and specifications and to employ necessary measures to permit construction to proceed.

### 3.2.4 Dewatering

Control groundwater flowing toward or into excavations to prevent sloughing of excavation slopes and walls, boils, uplift and heave in the excavation and to eliminate interference with orderly progress of construction. Do not permit french drains, sumps, ditches or trenches within 3 feet of the foundation of any structure, except with specific written approval, and after specific contractual provisions for restoration of the foundation area have been made. Take control measures by the time the excavation reaches the water level in order to maintain the integrity of the in situ material. While the excavation is open, maintain the water level continuously, at least 3 feet below the working level, in accordance with Contractor's approved Dewatering Work Plan.

### 3.2.5 Trench Excavation Requirements

Excavate the trench as recommended by the manufacturer of the pipe to be installed. Slope trench walls below the top of the pipe, or make vertical, and of such width as recommended in the manufacturer's printed installation manual. Provide vertical trench walls where no manufacturer's printed installation manual is available. Shore trench walls more than 4 feet high, cut back to a stable slope, or provide with equivalent means of protection for employees who may be exposed to moving ground or cave in. Shore vertical trench walls more than 4 feet high. Excavate trench walls which are cut back to at least the angle of repose of the soil. Give special attention to slopes which may be adversely affected by weather or moisture content. Do not exceed the trench width below the pipe top of 24 inches plus pipe outside diameter (O.D.) for pipes of less than 24 inches inside diameter, and do not exceed 36 inches plus pipe outside diameter for sizes larger than 24 inches inside diameter. Where recommended trench widths are exceeded, provide redesign, stronger pipe, or special installation procedures by the Contractor. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of redesign, stronger pipe, or special installation procedures without any additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.2.5.1 Bottom Preparation

Grade the bottoms of trenches accurately to provide uniform bearing and support for the bottom quadrant of each section of the pipe. Excavate bell holes to the necessary size at each joint or coupling to eliminate point bearing.

#### 3.2.5.2 Removal of Unyielding Material

Where unyielding material is encountered in the bottom of the trench,

remove such material 4 inches below the required grade or in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, whichever is greater. Replace with select granular materials as provided in paragraph TRENCH BACKFILL.

#### 3.2.5.3 Removal of Unstable Material

Where unstable material is encountered in the bottom of the trench, remove such material to the depth directed and replace it to the proper grade with select granular material as provided in paragraph TRENCH BACKFILL. When removal of unstable material is required due to the Contractor's fault or neglect in performing the work, the Contractor is responsible for excavating the resulting material and replacing it without additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.2.5.4 Excavation for Appurtenances

Provide excavation for manholes, catch-basins, inlets, or similar structures of sufficient size to permit the placement and removal of forms for the full length and width of structure footings and foundations as shown. Remove thin strata or loose debris from trench and cut to a firm surface either level, stepped, or serrated. When concrete or masonry is to be placed in an excavated area, take special care not to disturb the bottom of the excavation. Do not excavate to the final grade level until just before the concrete or masonry is to be placed.

#### 3.2.6 Underground Utilities

The Contractor is responsible for movement of construction machinery and equipment over pipes and utilities during construction. Support uncovered lines or other existing work affected by the contract excavation until approval for backfill is granted by the Contracting Officer. Report damage to utility lines or subsurface construction immediately to the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.2.7 Structural Excavation

Ensure that footing subgrades have been inspected and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to concrete placement. Verify that soil capable of supporting the design bearing pressure has been obtained in the base of each footing excavation. Report unsuitable or soft materials encountered in the base of footing excavations immediately to the Contracting Officer. Footing excavations with unsuitable or soft soil should be over excavated and backfilled with crushed stone or concrete or as otherwise directed by the COR.

### 3.3 SELECTION OF BORROW MATERIAL

Select borrow material to meet the requirements and conditions of the particular fill or embankment for which it is to be used. Obtain borrow material from the approved borrow site. Unless otherwise provided in the contract, the Contractor is responsible for obtaining the right to procure material, pay royalties and other charges involved, and bear the expense of developing the sources, including rights-of-way for hauling from the owners. Unless specifically provided, do not obtain borrow within the limits of the project site without prior written approval. Consider necessary clearing, grubbing, and satisfactory drainage of borrow pits and the disposal of debris thereon related operations to the borrow excavation.

### 3.4 SHORING

#### 3.4.1 General Requirements

Submit a Shoring and Sheeting plan for approval 15 days prior to starting work. Submit drawings and calculations, certified by a registered professional engineer, describing the methods for shoring and sheeting of excavations. Finish shoring, including sheet piling, and install as necessary to protect workmen, banks, adjacent paving, structures, and utilities. Remove shoring, bracing, and sheeting as excavations are backfilled, in a manner to prevent caving.

#### 3.4.2 Geotechnical Engineer

Hire a Professional Geotechnical Engineer to provide inspection of excavations and soil/groundwater conditions throughout construction. The Geotechnical Engineer is responsible for performing pre-construction and periodic site visits throughout construction to assess site conditions. The Geotechnical Engineer is responsible for updating the excavation, sheeting and dewatering plans as construction progresses to reflect changing conditions and submit an updated plan if necessary. Submit a monthly written report, informing the Contractor and Contracting Officer of the status of the plan and an accounting of the Contractor's adherence to the plan addressing any present or potential problems. The Contracting Officer is responsible for arranging meetings with the Geotechnical Engineer at any time throughout the contract duration.

### 3.5 GRADING AREAS

Place and grade stockpiles of satisfactory, unsatisfactory, and waste materials as necessary throughout construction. Keep stockpiles in a neat and well drained condition, giving due consideration to drainage at all times. Clear, grub, and seal by rubber-tired equipment, the ground surface at stockpile locations; separately stockpile excavated satisfactory and unsatisfactory materials. Protect stockpiles of satisfactory materials from contamination which may destroy the quality and fitness of the stockpiled material. If the Contractor fails to protect the stockpiles, and any material becomes unsatisfactory, remove and replace such material with satisfactory material from approved sources.

### 3.6 FINAL GRADE OF SURFACES TO SUPPORT CONCRETE

Do not excavate to final grade until just before concrete is to be placed. Roughen the level surfaces, and cut the sloped surfaces, as indicated, into rough steps or benches to provide a satisfactory bond. Protect shales from slaking and all surfaces from erosion resulting from ponding or water flow.

### 3.7 GROUND SURFACE PREPARATION

#### 3.7.1 General Requirements

Ground surface on which fill is to be placed shall be:

stripped of live, dead, or decayed vegetation, rubbish, debris, and other unsatisfactory material;

plowed, disked, or otherwise broken up to a depth of 6 to 8 inches;

pulverized; moistened or aerated as necessary to plus or minus 2.5 percent of optimum moisture;

thoroughly mixed;

and compacted to a density as specified in paragraph FILLING AND BACKFILLING.

Compaction shall be accomplished by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, vibratory compactors, or other approved equipment well suited to the type of material being compacted.

The prepared ground surface shall be scarified and moistened or aerated as required just prior to placement of backfill materials to ensure adequate bond between backfill material and the prepared ground surface.

### 3.7.2 Frozen Material

Do not place material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost.

## 3.8 UTILIZATION OF EXCAVATED MATERIALS

Use satisfactory material, removed from excavations, insofar as practicable, in the construction of fills, embankments, subgrades, shoulders, bedding (as backfill), and for similar purposes. Do not waste satisfactory excavated material without specific written authorization. Dispose of satisfactory material, authorized to be wasted, and unsatisfactory material in approved offsite areas developed by the Contractor. Contractor is responsible for erosion and sediment control at offsite areas. Submit procedures and locations for disposal of unused satisfactory material. Submit advanced notice on the opening of excavations.

### 3.9 BURIED DETECTABLE WARNING TAPE

Provide buried utility lines with detectable warning tape. Bury tape 1.5 feet below finished grade; under pavements and slabs, bury tape 1 foot below top of subgrade.

### 3.10 MOISTURE CONTENT

Satisfactory materials in each layer of fill shall contain the amount of moisture within the limits specified below. Materials that are not within the specified limits after compaction shall be reworked regardless of density. The moisture content after compaction shall be as uniform as practicable throughout any one layer and shall be within the limits of 2 percentage points above optimum moisture content and 2 percentage points below optimum moisture content as allowed in ASTM D1557. Materials which are too wet shall be disked, harrowed, plowed, bladed, or otherwise manipulated to reduce the moisture content to within the specified limits. Materials which are too dry shall be broken up, sprinkled, and thoroughly mixed to bring the moisture content uniformly up to within specified limits of moisture content specified above, the Contractor shall either adjust the moisture content to bring it within the specified limits or remove it from the fill.

### 3.11 FILLING AND BACKFILLING AND COMPACTION

#### 3.11.1 General

Filling and backfilling shall not begin until construction below finish grade has been approved, underground utilities systems have been inspected, tested and approved, forms removed and the excavation cleaned of trash and debris. Backfill shall not be placed in areas that are wet, muddy, contain organic materials or are otherwise unacceptable to the Contracting Officer. Satisfactory materials shall be used in bringing fills and backfills to the lines and grades indicated and for replacing unsatisfactory materials. Where pipe and/or utility lines are coated or wrapped for protection against corrosion, the backfill material up to an elevation of 2 feet above sewer lines and 1 foot above other utility lines shall be free from stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension.

#### 3.11.2 Placement

Satisfactory materials shall be placed in horizontal layers not exceeding 8 inches in loose thickness, or 4 inches in loose thickness where hand-operated compactors are used. After placing, each layer shall be plowed, disked, or otherwise broken up, moistened or aerated as necessary, thoroughly mixed and compacted as specified. Backfill shall be brought to the indicated finish grade. Heavy equipment for spreading and compacting backfill shall not be operated closer to foundation or retaining walls than a distance equal to the height of backfill above the top of footing; the area remaining shall be compacted in layers not more than 4 inches in loose thickness with power-driven hand tampers suitable for the material being compacted. Backfill shall be placed carefully around pipes or tanks to avoid damage to coatings, wrappings, or tanks. Backfill shall not be placed against foundation walls prior to 7 days after completion. Each layer shall be thoroughly and uniformly blended throughout its entire thickness.

#### 3.11.3 Compaction

Compaction shall be accomplished by sheepsfoot roller, pneumatic-tired rollers, smooth-drum vibratory rollers or other approved equipment well suited to the soil being compacted. Generally, sheepsfoot rollers are best suited for compacting cohesive material while smooth-drum vibratory rollers are best suited for compacting cohesionless materials. In areas inaccessible to heavy equipment, or where in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, use of heavy equipment may cause damage to pipes, conduits, or structures, approved power-driven hand tampers suitable for the material being compacted shall be used. Each layer of fill and backfill shall be compacted to not less than the percentage of maximum dry density specified below.

Fill, Embankment, and Backfill	Percent Laboratory Maximum Dry Density
In trenches and except the top 24 inches beneath structures and building slabs to 10 feet beyond building and structure line.	92

Fill, Embankment, and Backfill	Percent Laboratory Maximum Dry Density
Beneath paved areas, except top 24 inches.	92
Top 24 inches beneath structures and paved areas.	95
Within the geosynthetic-reinforced zone behind retaining walls.	92
Beneath shoulders.	92
Base course beneath paved areas.	100

Approved compacted subgrades that are disturbed by the Contractor's operations or adverse weather shall be scarified and recompactd to the required density prior to further construction thereon. Recompaction over underground utilities and heating lines shall be by hand tamping. For compacted subgrades and/or any lift of fill or backfill that fails to meet the specified density and/or moisture requirements, the entire subgrade and/or entire lift of fill shall be broken up to a minimum depth of 6 inches, pulverized, the moisture content adjusted as necessary, and recompactd to the specified density, even if this action requires the removal and replacement of subsequently placed satisfactory lifts of fill. Tests on recompactd areas shall be performed to determine conformance with specification requirements. Lifts of fill placed without being field density tested will not be accepted as satisfactory under any circumstances.

#### 3.11.4 Slopes

Fill slopes should be compacted in horizontal lifts not to exceed 8 inches in loose thickness as fill is placed. Fill slopes should be constructed by adequately benching and overfilling a minimum of 3 horizontal feet and then cutting back to the design slope gradient to expose the dense inner core of the slope surface. Fill slopes should not be constructed or extended horizontally by placing soil on an existing slope face and/or by compacted track walking.

### 3.12 BACKFILLING AND COMPACTION FOR UTILITY SYSTEMS

#### 3.12.1 Trench Backfill

Trenches shall be backfilled to the grade shown. The trench shall be backfilled to 2 feet above the top of pipe prior to performing the required pressure tests. The joints and couplings shall be left uncovered during the pressure test. The trench shall not be backfilled until all specified tests are performed.

##### 3.12.1.1 Replacement of Unyielding Material

Replace unyielding material removed from the bottom of the trench with select granular material or initial backfill material.

#### 3.12.1.2 Replacement of Unstable Material

Replace unstable material removed from the bottom of the trench or excavation with select granular material placed in layers not exceeding a loose thickness of 4 inches for hand-operated equipment and 8 inches for mechanically-operated equipment.

#### 3.12.1.3 Initial Backfill

Initial backfill material shall be placed and compacted with approved tampers to a height of at least 1 foot above the utility pipe or conduit. The backfill shall be brought up evenly on both sides of the pipe for the full length of the pipe. Care shall be taken to ensure thorough compaction of the fill under the haunches of the pipe.

#### 3.12.1.4 Final Backfill

Fill the remainder of the trench, except for special materials for roadways, with satisfactory material. Place backfill material and compact as follows:

- a. Roadways: Place backfill up to the required elevation as specified and compacted to the maximum dry density as shown in paragraph COMPACTION. Do not permit water flooding or jetting methods of compaction.
- b. Sidewalks, Turfed or Seeded Areas and Miscellaneous Areas: Deposit backfill in layers of a maximum of 8 inches loose thickness, and compact it to the maximum dry density as shown in the paragraph 3.11.3 COMPACTION above. Do not permit compaction by water flooding or jetting. Apply this requirement to all other areas not specifically designated above.

#### 3.12.2 Backfill for Appurtenances

After the manhole, catch basin, inlet, or similar structures have been constructed, place backfill in such a manner that the structures will not be damaged by the shock of falling earth. Deposit the backfill material, compact it as specified for final backfill, and bring up the backfill evenly on all sides of the structure to prevent eccentric loading and excessive stress.

### 3.13 FILLING AND BACKFILLING FOR RETAINING WALLS

#### 3.13.1 Stationary and Moving Infantry Targets

Heavy equipment for spreading and compacting backfill material shall not be operated any closer to the walls than 3 feet. Backfill within this area shall be compacted in loose layers not more than 6 inches in thickness with manually operated internal combustion tampers, small walk-behind trench rollers, or vibratory plate compactors as appropriate for the material being compacted.

#### 3.13.2 Segmental Concrete Block Retaining Walls

Filling and backfilling shall be in accordance with Section 32 32 23.13 SEGMENTAL CONCRETE BLOCK RETAINING WALL.



### 3.14 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Special requirements for both excavation and backfill relating to the specific utilities are as follows:

#### 3.14.1 Water Lines

Excavate trenches to a depth that provides a minimum cover of 3 feet from the existing ground surface, or from the indicated finished grade, whichever is lower, to the top of the pipe.

#### 3.14.2 Electrical Distribution System

See the Electrical and Telecommunication contract drawings.

### 3.15 EARTH EMBANKMENTS

Earth embankments shall be constructed from satisfactory materials free of organic or frozen material and rocks with any dimension greater than 3 inches. The material shall be placed in successive horizontal layers of loose material not more than 8 inches in depth. Each layer shall be spread uniformly on a soil surface that has been moistened or aerated as necessary, and scarified or otherwise broken up so that the fill will bond with the surface on which it is placed.

After spreading, each layer shall be plowed, disked, or otherwise broken up; moistened or aerated as necessary; thoroughly mixed; and compacted to the appropriate percent laboratory maximum dry density as shown in Paragraph COMPACTION.

### 3.16 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

#### 3.16.1 Proof Rolling

Proof rolling shall be done on an exposed subgrade free of surface water (wet conditions resulting from rainfall) which would promote degradation of an otherwise acceptable subgrade. After stripping, proof roll the existing subgrade of all areas to remain at grade or to receive structural fill with a fully loaded tandem axle dump truck or similar rubber-tired equipment in the presence of the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR). Cut areas shall be proof rolled once rough subgrade has been reached. Soils which are observed to rut or deflect excessively under the moving loads shall be stabilized as directed.

#### 3.16.2 Construction

Subgrade shall be shaped to line, grade, and cross section, and compacted as specified. This operation shall include plowing, disking, and any moistening or aerating required to obtain specified compaction. Materials shall be moistened or aerated as necessary to plus or minus 2 percent of optimum moisture. Soft or otherwise unsatisfactory material shall be removed and replaced with satisfactory excavated material or other approved material as directed. Low areas resulting from removal of unsatisfactory material shall be brought up to required grade with satisfactory materials, and the entire subgrade shall be shaped to line, grade, and cross section and compacted as specified. When the subgrade is in cut, the top 6 inches of subgrade shall be scarified, windrowed, moistened or aerated as necessary to plus or minus 2 percent of optimum moisture, thoroughly blended, reshaped, and compacted. The elevation of

the finish subgrade shall not vary more than 0.05 foot from the established grade and cross section.

The subsurface investigation indicates that loose sandy soils may be encountered in the top 5 feet of the subsurface at isolated locations on the project site. Loose surface soils where encountered may be unable to support the anticipated loads from paved surfaces and fill material without experiencing excessive settlement. After stripping and grading operations in parking and drive areas that require five feet or less of fill to reach design grade, stabilize any remaining loose soils by undercutting and replacing with suitable compacted fill materials as directed by the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR). Undercut materials will be suitable for re-use as compacted fill if they are free of organics or otherwise deleterious materials and if their moisture content is within a suitable range to achieve adequate compaction. Backfilling shall be in accordance with paragraphs 3.11.2 Placement and 3.11.3 Compaction of this specification 31 00 00 EARTHWORK.

### 3.16.3 Compaction

#### 3.16.3.1 Subgrade for Pavements

Compact subgrade for pavements to the maximum dry density as shown in paragraph 3.11.3 COMPACTION.

#### 3.16.3.2 Subgrade for Shoulders

Compact subgrade for shoulders to the maximum dry density as shown in paragraph 3.11.3 COMPACTION.

### 3.17 SHOULDER CONSTRUCTION

Shoulders shall be constructed of satisfactory excavated or borrow material or as otherwise shown or specified. Shoulders shall be constructed as soon as possible after adjacent paving is complete, but in the case of rigid pavements, shoulders shall not be constructed until permission of the Contracting Officer has been obtained. The entire shoulder area shall be compacted to at least the percentage of maximum dry density as specified in paragraph COMPACTION. Shoulder construction shall be done in proper sequence in such a manner that adjacent ditches will be drained effectively and that no damage of any kind is done to the adjacent completed pavement. The completed shoulders shall be true to alignment and grade and shaped to drain in conformity with the cross section shown.

### 3.18 FINISHING

Finish the surface of excavations, embankments, and subgrades to a smooth and compact surface in accordance with the lines, grades, and cross sections or elevations shown. Provide the degree of finish for graded areas within 0.1 foot of the grades and elevations indicated except that the degree of finish for subgrades specified in paragraph SUBGRADE PREPARATION. Finish gutters and ditches in a manner that will result in effective drainage. Finish the surface of areas to be turfed from settlement or washing to a smoothness suitable for the application of turfing materials. Repair graded, topsoiled, or backfilled areas prior to acceptance of the work, and re-established grades to the required elevations and slopes.

### 3.18.1 Subgrade and Embankments

During construction, keep embankments and excavations shaped and drained. Maintain ditches and drains along subgrade to drain effectively at all times. Do not disturb the finished subgrade by traffic or other operation. Protect and maintain the finished subgrade in a satisfactory condition until ballast, subbase, base, or pavement is placed. Do not permit the storage or stockpiling of materials on the finished subgrade. Do not lay subbase, base course, ballast, or pavement until the subgrade has been checked and approved, and in no case place subbase, base, surfacing, pavement, or ballast on a muddy, spongy, or frozen subgrade.

### 3.18.2 Capillary Water Barrier

Place a capillary water barrier under concrete floor slabs-on-grade directly on the subgrade and compact with a minimum of two passes of a hand-operated plate-type vibratory compactor.

### 3.18.3 Grading Around Structures

Construct areas within 10 feet outside of each building and structure line true-to-grade, shape to drain, and maintain free of trash and debris until final inspection has been completed and the work has been accepted.

## 3.19 PLACING TOPSOIL

\*5

On areas to receive topsoil, prepare the compacted subgrade soil to a 2-inch depth for bonding of topsoil with subsoil. Spread topsoil evenly to a thickness of 8 inches and grade to the elevations and slopes shown. Do not spread topsoil when frozen or excessively wet or dry. Obtain material required for topsoil in excess of that produced by excavation within the grading limits from offsite areas.

## 3.20 TESTING

Perform testing and provide a copy of all soil test results at no additional cost to the Government. Tests shall be performed by a USACE validated commercial testing laboratory. Submit the testing qualifications of the Government's validated commercial laboratory or the Contractor's Government-validated testing facilities. Field in-place density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D1556/D1556M, ASTM D6938, and ASTM D2937. When test results indicate that compaction is not as specified, the material shall be removed, replaced, and recompact to meet specification requirements. Tests on recompact areas shall be performed to determine conformance with specification requirements. Inspections and test results shall be certified by a commercial testing laboratory and approved by a registered professional civil engineer. These certifications shall state that the tests and observations were performed by or under the direct supervision of the engineer and that the results are representative of the materials or conditions being certified by the tests. The following number of tests, if performed at the appropriate time, will be the minimum acceptable for each type operation.

### 3.20.1 Fill and Backfill Material Gradation, Classification, and Moisture Content

Gradation of fill and backfill material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D422 and ASTM D1140, without hydrometer. Liquid limit and plasticity index shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D4318.

Classification of soils shall be in accordance with ASTM D2487. Moisture content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D2216.

### 3.20.2 Compaction

Compaction tests shall be performed by the test procedure presented in ASTM D1557. Adequate testing shall be conducted to establish at least five points with at least one point falling within plus or minus 2.0 percentage points of the plotted optimum moisture content.

### 3.20.3 Test Required on Material Prior to Placement

#### 3.20.3.1 General

All material from required excavations and borrow shall be tested prior to incorporation into the permanent work. The tests shall be performed on samples representative of the various materials to be utilized. Samples shall be carefully selected to represent the full range of materials to be used as fill and/or backfill. The following minimum number of tests shall be performed on the materials prior to the placement of the materials in the work. Additional tests of these types shall be performed when materials of different classification or compaction characteristics are encountered to determine the properties of the materials. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to direct additional testing as required.

#### 3.20.3.2 Classification Tests

Classification tests shall be performed to determine the acceptability of materials in accordance with paragraph MATERIALS. Such tests on materials proposed for use as fill and/or backfill shall be performed prior to their use. Sufficient classification tests shall be performed to define the full range of all materials proposed for use. A minimum of two classification tests shall be performed on each material classified as satisfactory for use. The Contracting Officer may at any time require additional classification tests to confirm material acceptability.

#### 3.20.3.3 Compaction Tests

Compaction tests shall be performed prior to commencement of construction in order to determine the moisture-density relationships of all satisfactory materials proposed for use as fill and/or backfill. For each compaction test performed, an associated or companion classification test and moisture content test shall be performed. Compaction tests shall be performed in sufficient number to establish the full range of maximum dry density and optimum water content for the materials to be utilized on the project as structural fill. Samples for these tests shall not be obtained from the same locations. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to direct where samples for additional compaction tests are obtained. In the event that the compaction characteristics of materials having the same classification vary appreciably, additional compaction tests shall be performed.

#### 3.20.3.4 Moisture Content Tests

Moisture content tests shall be performed on all materials proposed for use as fill and/or backfill to determine their suitability for use in accordance with paragraph Moisture Content. Moisture content tests shall be performed in sufficient number to determine the full range of moisture contents. Moisture content test shall be performed for each compaction

test and as required to determine acceptability of material prior to placement. Not less than two moisture content tests shall be performed on each material classified as satisfactory for use.

#### 3.20.4 Tests Required During Placement

##### 3.20.4.1 In-Place Density Tests for General Earthwork

One density test shall be performed for each 12,500 square feet, or portion thereof, for pavements, of compacted native soil subgrade and in each lift of compacted structural fill.

Density tests shall be performed at 100-foot intervals along roadway subgrades.

Density test shall be performed for each 100 linear feet of backfill placed per 6 inch loose lift in the geosynthetic-reinforced zone behind mechanically stabilized earth retaining walls.

Where other areas are compacted separately by manually operated compactors, a minimum of one density test shall be performed for every 250 square feet, or portion thereof, of fill placed per foot of depth.

##### 3.20.4.2 In-Place Tests for Buildings

Acceptance of the compacted materials shall be determined by the results of field in-place density tests. Density tests in randomly selected locations shall be performed in the material and at the minimum frequency specified below:

Material Type	Location of Material	Minimum of Test Frequency
Fill, embankment, and backfill	Beneath structures, to the 10-foot building line	One test per lift per each increment or fraction of 4,000 square feet
Fill and backfill	Areas beside structures, footings, walls, and areas enclosed by grade beams that are compacted by hand-operated compaction equipment	One test per foot of depth per each increment or fraction of 200 square feet, or for each 50 linear feet or long, narrow (less than 3 feet wide) fills
Subgrade (native soils)	Under building slabs on grade and paved areas	One test per each increment or fraction of 2,500 square feet
Subgrade (native soils)	Under footings	One test per every fifth column footing and for each increment or fraction of 75 linear feet of wall footings

#### 3.20.4.3 In-Place Density Tests for Utility Systems

Tests shall be performed in sufficient numbers to ensure that the specified density is being obtained. A minimum of one field density test per lift of backfill for every 150 linear feet, or fraction thereof, of installation shall be performed.

#### 3.20.4.4 Moisture Content

In the stockpile(s), excavation, or borrow areas, a minimum of two tests, each with a one-point or two-point compaction test, shall be performed per day per type of material or source of material being placed during stable weather conditions. During unstable weather, tests shall be made as dictated by the local conditions to ensure the moisture content of the placed materials is within the specified limits.

#### 3.20.4.5 Time and Location of Tests

The Government reserves the right to specify the location of any test. Whenever there is doubt as to the adequacy of the testing or validity of results, the Contracting Officer may direct that additional tests be performed, at no additional cost to the Government. The field density tests shall be performed at times and locations which will ensure the specified compaction is being obtained throughout each lift for all materials placed. Additional field density tests shall be performed in areas where the Contracting Officer determines there is reason to doubt the adequacy of the natural subgrade.

#### 3.20.4.6 Field Density Control

The results of field density tests shall be compared to results of compaction tests performed as required elsewhere in these specifications by the use of the appropriate procedures described in the following paragraphs.

#### 3.20.5 Compaction Control

For fine grained (clayey and silty) soils and for sands with appreciable fines such that normal shaped compaction curves are obtained, results of all compaction tests shall be plotted on a common plot as a family of curves. For each field density test performed, a one-point compaction test, with additional points as needed, shall be performed on the same material on which the field density test was conducted. The one-point compaction test shall be performed on the dry side of the optimum moisture content. For comparison of field density data to the proper laboratory compaction test results, the procedures for the one-point and/or two-point compaction control methods as described in paragraph Compaction Procedure, shall be used. Compaction curves plotted on the family of curves shall be of such a scale that the optimum moisture content can be interpreted to the nearest 0.1 percent and the maximum dry density can be interpreted to the nearest( 0.5 pounds per cubic foot). When a one-point test plots outside the range of the family of curves, an additional five-point compaction test shall be performed.

#### 3.20.6 Compaction Procedures

##### 3.20.6.1 General

The following paragraphs describe methods of relating field density data

to desired or specified values. Compaction control of soils requires comparison of fill water content and/or dry density values obtained in field density tests with optimum water content and/or maximum dry density. At a minimum, control shall be in accordance with the One-Point Compaction Method. Where conditions require, the Two-Point Compaction Method shall be used.

#### 3.20.6.2 One-Point Compaction Method

The material from the field density test is allowed to dry to a water content on the dry side of estimated optimum, and then compacted using the same equipment and procedures used in the five-point compaction test. Thorough mixing is required to obtain uniform drying; otherwise, results obtained may be erroneous. The water content and dry density of the compacted sample are determined and then used to estimate its optimum water content and maximum dry density. The one-point method shall be used only when the data define a relatively good line of optimums.

#### 3.20.6.3 Two-Point Compaction Method

In the two-point test, one sample of material from the location of the field density test is compacted at the fill water content if thought to be at or on the dry side of optimum water content (otherwise, reduced by drying to this condition) using the same equipment and procedures used in the five-point compaction test. A second sample of material is allowed to dry back about 2 to 3 percentage points dry of the water content of the first sample and then compacted in the same manner. At least one point shall fall within 3 percent of the line of optimum. After compaction, the water contents and dry densities for the two samples are determined. The results are used to identify the appropriate compaction curve for the material being tested.

#### 3.20.7 Displacement of Sewers

After other required tests have been performed and the trench backfill compacted to the finished grade surface, inspect the pipe to determine whether significant displacement has occurred. Conduct this inspection in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Inspect pipe sizes larger than 36 inches, while inspecting smaller diameter pipe by shining a light or laser between manholes or manhole locations, or by the use of television cameras passed through the pipe. If, in the judgment of the Contracting Officer, the interior of the pipe shows poor alignment or any other defects that would cause improper functioning of the system, replace or repair the defects as directed at no additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.21 DISPOSITION OF SURPLUS MATERIAL

Surplus material or other soil material not required or suitable for filling or backfilling, and brush, refuse, stumps, roots, and timber shall be removed from Government property. Locations shall be approved by the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.22 PROTECTION

Settlement or washing that occurs in graded, topsoiled, or backfilled areas prior to acceptance of the work, shall be repaired and grades reestablished to the required elevations and slopes.

Automated Multipurpose Training Range (MPTR)  
Fort Liberty, North Carolina

23B3001

-- End of Section --



SECTION 31 05 19.13

GEOTEXTILES FOR EARTHWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D123	(2015b; R 2017) Standard Terminology Relating to Textiles
ASTM D4354	(2012; R 2020) Sampling of Geosynthetics for Testing
ASTM D4355/D4355M	(2014) Deterioration of Geotextiles from Exposure to Light, Moisture and Heat in a Xenon-Arc Type Apparatus
ASTM D4491/D4491M	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4533/D4533M	(2015) Standard Test Method for Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles
ASTM D4632/D4632M	(2015a) Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles
ASTM D4751	(2020) Standard Test Method for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile
ASTM D4873/D4873M	(2017) Standard Guide for Identification, Storage, and Handling of Geosynthetic Rolls and Samples
ASTM D4884/D4884M	(2014a) Strength of Sewn or Thermally Bonded Seams of Geotextiles
ASTM D6241	(2014) Standard Test Method for the Static Puncture Strength of Geotextiles and Geotextile-Related Products Using a 50-mm Probe

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 1110-2-1601	(1991; 1994 Change 1) Engineering and Design -- Hydraulic Design of Flood Control Channels
----------------	--

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL

PROCEDURES:

### SD-04 Samples

#### Geotextiles

Minimum of 60 days prior to the beginning of installation of the same textile

### SD-06 Test Reports

#### Geotextiles

### SD-07 Certificates

#### Geotextiles

#### Needle Punched Geotextile

## 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver only approved geotextile rolls to the project site. All geotextile shall be labeled, shipped, stored, and handled in accordance with ASTM D4873/D4873M. No hooks, tongs, or other sharp instruments shall be used for handling geotextile.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

#### 2.1.1 General

Provide geotextile that is a non-woven pervious sheet of plastic yarn as defined by ASTM D123 matching or exceeding the minimum average roll values listed in TABLE 1. Strength values indicated in the table are for the weaker principal direction.

TABLE 1 MINIMUM PHYSICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR DRAINAGE GEOTEXTILE			
PROPERTY	UNITS	ACCEPTABLE VALUES	TEST METHOD
GRAB STRENGTH	lb	120	ASTM D4632/D4632M
SEAM STRENGTH	lb	50	ASTM D4632/D4632M
PUNCTURE	lb	65	ASTM D6241
TRAPEZOID TEAR	lb	50	ASTM D4533/D4533M

PERMEABILITY	cm/sec	0.21	ASTM D4491/D4491M
APPARENT OPENING SIZE	U.S. SIEVE	70	ASTM D4751
PERMITTIVITY	sec -1	1.8	ASTM D4491/D4491M
ULTRAVIOLET DEGRADATION	Percent	70 at 500 Hrs	ASTM D4355/D4355M

### 2.1.1.2 Geotextile Fiber

Fibers used in the manufacturing of the geotextile shall consist of a long-chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85 percent by weight of polyolefins, polyesters, or polyamides. Add stabilizers and/or inhibitors to the base polymer, if necessary to make the filaments resistant to deterioration caused by ultraviolet light and heat exposure. Reclaimed or recycled fibers or polymer shall not be added to the formulation. Geotextile shall be formed into a network such that the filaments or yarns retain dimensional stability relative to each other, including the edges. Finish the edges of the geotextile to prevent the outer fiber from pulling away from the geotextile.

### 2.1.1.3 Seams

Sew the seams of the geotextile with thread of a material meeting the chemical requirements given above for geotextile yarn or bond the seams by cementing or by heat. Test seams in accordance with method [ASTM D4884/D4884M](#). The strength of the seam shall be not less than 90 percent of the required grab tensile strength of the unaged geotextile in any principal direction.

### 2.1.1.4 Securing Pins

Secure the geotextile to the embankment or foundation soil by pins to prevent movement prior to placement of revetment materials. Other appropriate means to prevent movement such as staples, sand bags, and stone could also be used. Insert securing pins through both strips of overlapped geotextile along the line passing through midpoints of the overlap. Remove securing pins as placement of revetment materials are placed to prevent tearing of geotextile or enlarging holes. Maximum spacing between securing pins depends on the steepness of the embankment slope. The maximum pins spacing shall be equal to or less than the values listed in TABLE 2. When windy conditions prevail at the construction site, increase the number of pins upon the demand of the Contracting Officer. Anchor terminal ends of the geotextile with key trench or apron at crest, toe of the slope and upstream and downstream limits of installation.

TABLE 2 MAXIMUM SPACING FOR SECURING PINS	
EMBANKMENT	SPACING, <a href="#">feet</a>
STEEPER THAN 1V ON 3H	<a href="#">2</a>

TABLE 2 MAXIMUM SPACING FOR SECURING PINS	
1V ON 3H TO 1V ON 4H	3
FLATTER THAN 1V ON 4H	5

## 2.2 INSPECTIONS, VERIFICATIONS, AND TESTING

### 2.2.1 Manufacturing and Sampling

Geotextiles and factory seams shall meet the requirements specified in TABLE 1.

#### 2.2.1.1 Conformance Testing

Perform conformance testing in accordance with the manufacturers approved quality control manual. Submit manufacturer's quality control conformance test results.

#### 2.2.1.2 Factory Sampling

Randomly sample geotextiles in accordance with ASTM D4354 (Procedure Method A). Sample factory seams at the frequency specified in ASTM D4884/D4884M. Provide all samples from the same production lot as will be supplied for the contract, of the full manufactured width of the geotextile by at least 10 feet long, except that samples for seam strength may be a full width sample folded over and the edges stitched for a length of at least 5 feet. Samples submitted for testing shall be identified by manufacturers lot designation.

#### 2.2.1.3 Needle Punched Geotextile

For needle punched geotextile, provide manufacturer certification that the geotextile has been inspected using permanent on-line metal detectors and does not contain any needles.

#### 2.2.1.4 Manufacturer Certification

All brands of geotextile and all seams to be used will be accepted on the basis of mill certificates or affidavits. Submit duplicate copies of the mill certificate or affidavit signed by a legally authorized official from the company manufacturing the geotextile. The mill certificate or affidavit shall attest that the geotextile meets the chemical, physical and manufacturing requirements stated in this specification.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 SURFACE PREPARATION

Prepare surface, on which the geotextile will be placed, to a relatively smooth surface condition in accordance with the applicable portion of this specification and shall be free from obstruction, debris, depressions, erosion feature, or vegetation. Remove any irregularities so as to ensure continuous, intimate contact of the geotextile with all the surface. Any loose material, soft or low density pockets of material, shall be removed; erosion features such as rills, gullies etc. shall be graded out of the surface before geotextile placement.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF THE GEOTEXTILE

#### 3.2.1 General

Place the geotextile in the manner and at the locations shown. At the time of installation, reject the geotextile if it has defects, rips, holes, flaws, deterioration or damage incurred during manufacture, transportation or storage.

#### 3.2.2 Placement

Place the geotextile with the long dimension parallel to the centerline of the channel and laid smooth and free of tension, stress, folds, wrinkles, or creases. Place the strips to provide a minimum width of 24 inches of overlap for each joint. Adjust the actual length of the geotextile used based on initial installation experience. Temporary pinning of the geotextile to help hold it in place until the riprap is placed will be allowed. Remove the temporary pins as the riprap is placed to relieve high tensile stress which may occur during placement of material on the geotextile. Design protection of riprap in compliance with EM 1110-2-1601. Perform trimming in such a manner that the geotextile is not damaged in any way.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

Protect the geotextile at all times during construction from contamination by surface runoff; remove any geotextile so contaminated and replaced with uncontaminated geotextile. Replace any geotextile damaged during its installation or during placement of riprap at no cost to the Government. Schedule the work so that the covering of the geotextile with a layer of the specified material is accomplished within 7 calendar days after placement of the geotextile. Failure to comply shall require replacement of geotextile. Protect the geotextile from damage prior to and during the placement of riprap or other materials. This may be accomplished by limiting the height of drop to less than 1 foot, by placing a cushioning layer of sand or gravel on top of the geotextile before placing the material, or other methods deemed necessary. Care should be taken to ensure that the utilized cushioning materials will not impede the flow of water. Before placement of riprap or other materials, demonstrate that the placement technique will not cause damage to the geotextile. In no case shall any type of equipment be allowed on the unprotected geotextile.

### 3.4 PLACEMENT OF CUSHIONING MATERIAL

Perform placing of cushioning material in a manner to ensure intimate contact of the geotextile with the prepared surface and with the cushioning material. The placement shall also be performed in a manner that will not damage the geotextile including tear, puncture, or abrasion. On sloping surfaces place the cushioning material from the bottom of the slopes upward. During placement, the height of the drop of riprap material shall not be greater than 12 inches. Uncover any geotextile damaged beneath the cushioning material, as necessary, and replaced at no cost to the Government.

### 3.5 OVERLAPPING AND SEAMING

#### 3.5.1 Overlapping

The overlap of geotextile rolls shall be 24 inches. Appropriate measures will be taken to ensure required overlap exists after cushion placement.

#### 3.5.2 Sewn Seams

High strength thread should be used so that seam test conforms to ASTM D4884/D4884M. The thread shall meet the chemical, ultraviolet, and physical requirements of the geotextile, and the color shall be different from that of the geotextile. The seam strength shall be equal to the strength required for the geotextile in the direction across the seam. Overlapping J-type seams are preferable over prayer-type seams as the overlapping geotextile reduces the chance of openings to occur at the seam. Use double sewing, specially for field seams, to provide a safety factor against undetected missed stitches.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 31 11 00

CLEARING AND GRUBBING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 WORK COVERED IN THIS SPECIFICATION

Clearing and thinning, except for grubbing, as defined by the boundaries shown on the contract drawings shall be accomplished by Others prior to the start of construction. Required grubbing and disposal thereof shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Tree Wound Paint

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Tree Wound Paint

Use bituminous based paint from standard manufacture specially formulated for tree wounds.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ENVIRONMENTAL RESTRICTIONS

See Section 01 11 00 SUMMARY OF WORK for environmental restrictions related to work covered in this specification.

3.2 PREPARATION

3.2.1 Protection

3.2.1.1 Roads and Walks

Keep roads and walks free of dirt and debris at all times.

3.2.1.2 Trees, Shrubs, and Existing Facilities

Protect trees and vegetation to be left standing from damage incident to clearing, grubbing, and construction operations by the erection of barriers or by such other means as the circumstances require.

### 3.2.1.3 Utility Lines

Protect existing utility lines that are indicated to remain from damage. Notify the Contracting Officer immediately of damage to or an encounter with an unknown existing utility line. The Contractor is responsible for the repair of damage to existing utility lines that are indicated or made known to the Contractor prior to start of clearing and grubbing operations. When utility lines which are to be removed are encountered within the area of operations, notify the Contracting Officer in ample time to minimize interruption of the service. Refer to Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS and Section 01 57 19 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS for additional utility protection.

### 3.3 CLEARING

Clearing shall be accomplished by others prior to the start of construction.

### 3.4 GRUBBING

Grubbing consists of the removal and disposal of stumps, roots larger than 3 inches in diameter, and matted roots from the designated grubbing areas. Remove material to be grubbed, together with logs and other organic or metallic debris not suitable for foundation purposes, to a depth of not less than 18 inches below the original surface level of the ground in areas indicated to be grubbed and in areas indicated as construction areas under this contract, such as areas for buildings, and areas to be paved. Fill depressions made by grubbing with suitable material and compact to make the surface conform with the original adjacent surface of the ground. Grubbing is only required in areas of the project where proposed features and grading are designated to be constructed.

### 3.5 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS

Dispose of excess materials in accordance with the approved solid waste management permit and include those materials in the solid waste management report.

All wood or wood like materials, except for salable timber, remaining from clearing, pruning or grubbing such as limbs, tree tops, roots, stumps, logs, rotten wood, and other similiar materials shall become the property of the Contractor and disposed of as specified. All non-saleable timber and wood or wood like materials remaining from timber harvesting such as limbs, tree tops, roots, stumps, logs, rotten wood, and other similiar materials shall become the property of the Contractor and disposed as specified.

North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality (NCDEQ) has regulations (15A NCAC 02D, 1900 Open Burning) pertaining to the open burning of materials left over from clearing and grubbing operations. Other options include the use of tub grinders that make mulch for use on or off-site or removing the materials by hauling to an inert materials landfill. Comply with all federal and state laws and regulations and with reasonable practice relative to the building of fires. Burning or other disposal of refuse and debris and any accidental loss or damage attendant thereto shall be the Contractor's responsibility.



3.5.1 Saleable Timber

The Government will, by separate contract, harvest all saleable timber from the project site.

3.6 FINAL CLEARING

Any vegetation within the clearing limits that has grown to 12 inches height or greater by the date of substantial completion shall be mowed, bush hogged, or cleared by the Contractor prior to final acceptance of the project.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 31 31 16.13

CHEMICAL TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DODI 4150.07

(2019) DOD Pest Management Program

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Coordinate work related to final grades, landscape plantings, foundations, or any other alterations to finished construction which might alter the condition of treated soils with this specification.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Termiticide Application Plan; G

SD-03 Product Data

Termiticides

SD-05 Design Data

Mixing Formulation

SD-06 Test Reports

Soil Moisture

Calibration Test

SD-07 Certificates

Qualifications; G

Foundation Exterior

Utilities and Vents

Crawl and Plenum Air Spaces

List of Equipment

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Termiticides

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Verification of Measurement

Warranty

Pest Management Report

#### 1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

##### 1.4.1 Regulatory Requirements

Comply with **DODI 4150.07** for requirements on Contractor's licensing, certification, and record keeping. Maintain daily records using the Pest Management Maintenance Record, DD Form 1532-1, or a computer generated equivalent, and submit copies of records when requested by the Contracting Officer. These forms may be obtained from the main web site:

<http://www.dtic.mil/whs/directives/forms/eforms/dd1532-1.pdf>

##### 1.4.2 Qualifications

For the application of pesticides, use the services of an applicator whose principal business is pest control. The applicator must be commercially certified in the state where the work is to be performed as required by DODI 4150.07. Termiticide applicators must also be certified in the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) pesticide applicator category which includes structural pest control. Submit a copy of the pest control business license and pesticide applicator certificates.

##### 1.4.3 Safety Requirements

Formulate, treat, and dispose of termiticides and their containers in accordance with label directions. Draw water for formulating only from sites designated by the Contracting Officer, and fit the filling hose with a backflow preventer meeting local plumbing codes or standards. Perform filling operations under the direct and continuous observation of a contractor's representative to prevent overflow. Secure pesticides and related materials under lock and key when unattended. Ensure that proper protective clothing and equipment are worn and used during all phases of termiticide application. Dispose of used pesticide containers off Government property.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

##### 1.5.1 Delivery

Deliver termiticide material to the site in the original unopened containers bearing legible labels indicating the EPA registration number, manufacturer's registered uses and in new or otherwise good condition as supplied by the manufacturer or formulator.

### 1.5.2 Inspection

Inspect termiticides upon arrival at the job site for conformity to type and quality in accordance with paragraph TERMITICIDES. Each label must bear evidence of registration under the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA), as amended or under appropriate regulations of the host county. Inspect other materials for conformance with specified requirements. Remove unacceptable materials from the job site.

### 1.5.3 Storage

Storage of pesticides on the installation will not be permitted unless it is written into the contract.

### 1.5.4 Handling

Handle and mix termiticides in accordance with the manufacturer's label and SDS, preventing contamination by dirt, water, and organic material. Protect termiticides from weather elements as recommended by the manufacturer's label and SDS. Spill kits must be maintained on pest control vehicles and must be available at the mixing site. Conduct termiticide mixing in an area with adequate spill containment.

## 1.6 SITE CONDITIONS

The following site conditions determine the acceptable time of application.

### 1.6.1 Soil Moisture

Test soils to be treated immediately before application. Test soil moisture content to a minimum depth of 3 inches. The soil moisture must be as recommended by the termiticide manufacturer. Application of the termiticide is not permitted when soil moisture content exceeds manufacturer's recommendations.

### 1.6.2 Runoff and Wind Drift

Application of termiticide will not be permitted during or immediately following heavy rains, when conditions may allow runoff, or create an environmental hazard or when average wind speed exceeds 10 miles per hour. Termiticide is not permitted to enter water systems, aquifers, or endanger humans or animals.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

Provide a 5 year written warranty against infestations or reinfestations by subterranean termites of the buildings or building additions constructed under this contract. Include in the warranty annual inspections of the buildings or building additions during the warranty period. If live subterranean termite infestation or subterranean termite damage is discovered during the warranty period, and the soil and building conditions have not been altered in the interim:

- a. Retreat the site and perform other treatment as may be necessary for elimination of subterranean termite infestation;
- b. Repair damage caused by termite infestation; and
- c. Reinspect the building approximately 180 days after the re-treatment.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Chemical termite control uses liquid termiticide treatments applied to the soil to form a continuous chemical barrier in the soil around both sides of the foundation. The application can be surface applied or rodded and trenched. This barrier prevents foraging termites from reaching the foundation and piers. Only the soil adjacent to these foundation elements is treated. For slab construction (including foundations, patios and garages), the entire soil (or gravel) surface is treated before the vapor barrier is installed and the slab poured over it. Soil treatment is coordinated with all building activities from foundation construction through final grading of the soil around the building's exterior. In order for the treatment to be effective, the final phase of the application must be done after final grading and sometimes after landscaping is completed so that the treated soil is not disturbed.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

#### 2.2.1 Termiticides

Provide termiticides currently registered by the EPA or approved for such use by the appropriate agency of the host county and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Select non-repellant termiticides for maximum effectiveness and duration after application. Select a termiticide that is suitable for the soil and climatic conditions at the project site and apply at the highest labeled rate. Submit manufacturer's label and Safety Data Sheet (SDS) for termiticides proposed for use.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

Eliminate food sources by removing debris from clearing and grubbing and post construction wood scraps such as ground stakes, form boards, and scrap lumber from the site, before termiticide application begins.

#### 3.1.1 Verification

Before work starts, verify that final grades are as indicated and smooth grading has been completed in accordance with Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK. Finely grade soil and remove particles larger than 1 inch. Compact soil particles to eliminate soil movement.

#### 3.1.2 Foundation Exterior

If the exterior perimeter treatment is applied when the horizontal barrier is applied it will be damaged or removed before construction is completed. The exterior foundation perimeter treatment will have to occur in phases when any pads, porches, aprons, sidewalks, final grading or landscape planting are simultaneously involved adjacent to the building foundation. This treatment area should be coordinated after all major construction but before any pads, porches, or other items requiring special consideration are poured adjacent to the foundation walls. Submit written verification that final grading, landscape planting and other items adjacent to the foundation will not disturb treatment of the soil on the exterior sides of foundation walls, grade beams, and similar

structures.

### 3.1.3 Utilities and Vents

Turn off and block HVAC ducts and vents located in treatment area prior to application, to protect people and animals from termiticide. Submit written verification that the HVAC ducts and vents, water and sewer lines, and plumbing have been turned off or blocked prior to applying termiticide.

### 3.1.4 Crawl and Plenum Air Spaces

Submit written verification that crawl and plenum air spaces have been located and identified prior to applying termiticide.

### 3.1.5 Application Plan

Prior to commencing application of termiticide, submit a [Termiticide Application Plan](#) addressing the following items:

- a. proposed sequence of treatment work including dates and times of application
- b. termiticide trade name
- c. EPA registration number
- d. chemical composition
- e. concentration of original and diluted material
- f. formulation
- g. manufacturer's recommended application rates
- h. regional requirements
- i. application rate of active ingredients
- j. method of application
- k. area or volume to be treated
- l. amount to be applied
- m. copy of the pest control business license
- n. copy of the pesticide applicator certificates

## 3.2 APPLICATION

For areas to be treated, establish complete and unbroken vertical and horizontal soil poison barriers between the soil and all portions of the intended structure which may allow termite access to wood and wood related products. Make applications to crawl spaces in accordance with label directions. Applications to crawl space areas that are used as plenum air spaces will not be permitted.

### 3.2.1 Equipment Calibration and Tank Measurement

Submit a [list of equipment](#) to be used. Conduct [calibration test](#) on the application equipment to be used immediately prior to commencement of termiticide application. Measure the volume and contents of the application tank. Testing must confirm that the application equipment is operating within the manufacturer's specifications and meets the specified requirements. Submit written certification of the equipment calibration test results within 1 week of testing. Where results from the equipment calibration and tank measurements tests are unsatisfactory, re-treatment will be required.

### 3.2.2 Mixing and Application

Perform all work related to formulating, mixing, and application in the presence of the Contracting Officer and a DOD certified pesticide

applicator, Pest Management QAE/PAR, or Integrated Pest Management Coordinator. Submit [mixing formulation](#):

- a. Quantity of pesticide used.
- b. Rate of dispersion.
- c. Percent of use.
- d. Total amount used.

A closed system is recommended as it prevents the termiticide from coming into contact with the applicator or other persons. Only use water from designated locations. Fit filling hoses with a backflow preventer meeting local plumbing codes or standards. Prevent overflow during the filling operation. Spill kits must be maintained on pest control vehicles and must be available at the mixing site. Termiticide mixing must be conducted in an area that has been designated by the Government representative and that has adequate spill containment. Inspect the application equipment for applying termiticides prior to each day of use for leaks, clogging, wear, or damage. Immediately perform repairs on the application equipment to prevent or eliminate leaks and clogging.

#### 3.2.2.1 Application Method

##### 3.2.2.1.1 Surface Application

Use surface application for establishing horizontal barriers. Apply surface applicants as a coarse spray and provide uniform distribution over the soil surface. Termiticide must penetrate a minimum of [1 inch](#) into the soil, or as recommended by the manufacturer. If soils are treated to a depth less than specified or approved, repeat work performed to the depth specified at no additional cost to the Government.

##### 3.2.2.1.2 Rodding and Trenching

Use rodding and trenching for establishing vertical soil barriers. Trenching must be to the depth of the foundation footing. Width of trench must be as recommended by the manufacturer, or as indicated. Rodding or other approved method may be implemented for saturating the base of the trench with termiticide. Backfill the trench immediately after termiticide has reached maximum penetration as recommended by the manufacturer. If maximum penetration is not achieved, as recommended by the manufacturer, repeat work performed to maximum penetration as recommended by the manufacturer at no additional cost to the Government. Backfill in [6 inch](#) rises or layers. Treat each rise or layer with termiticide.

#### 3.2.3 Sampling

The Contracting Officer may draw samples for analysis, at any time and without prior notice, from stocks at the job site to determine if the amount of active ingredient specified on the label is being applied. When analysis, performed by the Government, indicates samples contain less than the amount of active ingredient specified on the label, repeat work performed with pesticides conforming to this specification at no additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.2.4 Vapor Barriers and Waterproof Membranes

Apply termiticide prior to placement of a vapor barrier or waterproof membrane.

#### 3.2.5 Placement of Concrete

Place concrete covering treated soils as soon as the termiticide has reached maximum penetration into the soil as recommended by the manufacturer.

#### 3.2.6 Clean Up, Disposal, And Protection

Once application has been completed, proceed with clean up and protection of the site without delay.

##### 3.2.6.1 Clean Up

Clean the site of all material associated with the treatment measures, according to label instructions, and as indicated. Remove and dispose of excess and waste material off Government property.

##### 3.2.6.2 Disposal of Termiticide

Dispose of residual termiticides and containers off Government property, and in accordance with label instructions and EPA criteria.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.3.1 [Verification of Measurement](#)

Once termiticide application has been completed, measure tank contents to determine the remaining volume. The total volume measurement of used contents for the application must equal the application rate established in the application plan. Submit written verification that the volume of termiticide used meets the application rate established in the application plan.

#### 3.3.2 Inspection

##### 3.3.2.1 Technical Representative

Provide a technical representative who is a DOD certified pesticide applicator or Pest Management Quality Assurance Evaluator (QAE)/Performance Assessment Representative (PAR). The technical representative must be present at all meetings concerning treatment measures for subterranean termites and during treatment application. Contact the Integrated Pest Management Coordinator prior to starting work.

### 3.4 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

Upon completion of this work, submit the [Pest Management Report](#) DD Form 1532, or an equivalent computer product, to the Integrated Pest Management Coordinator. This form identifies the target pest, type of operation, brand name and manufacturer of pesticide, formulation, concentration or rate of application used.



### 3.5 PROTECTION

#### 3.5.1 Protection of Treated Area

Immediately after the application, protect the area from other use by erecting barricades as required or directed. Place signage inside the entrances to crawl spaces and identify the space as treated with termiticide and not safe for children or animals. Cover treated areas with plastic if slab is not to be poured immediately following termiticide application.

#### 3.5.2 Disturbance of Treated Soils

Re-treat soil and fill material disturbed after treatment before placement of slabs or other covering structures.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 01 19.61

SEALING OF JOINTS IN RIGID PAVEMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1016	(2014) Standard Test Method for Determination of Water Absorption of Sealant Backing (Joint Filler) Material
ASTM D789	(2015) Determination of Relative Viscosity and Moisture Content of Polyamide (PA)
ASTM D5249	(2010; R 2016) Standard Specification for Backer Material for Use with Cold-and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants in Portland-Cement Concrete and Asphalt Joints
ASTM D5893/D5893M	(2016) Standard Specification for Cold Applied, Single Component, Chemically Curing Silicone Joint Sealant for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Sealants

Submit catalog cuts, specifications, Safety Data Sheets and other information documenting conformance to Contract requirements.

Manufacturer's Recommendations

SD-06 Test Reports

Certified Copies of the Test Reports

SD-07 Certificates

Equipment List

## SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

### Sealants

Provide instructions that include, but not limited to: storage requirements, ambient temperature and humidity ranges, and moisture condition of joints for successful installation; requirements for preparation of joints; safe heating temperature; mixing instructions; installation equipment and procedures; application and disposal requirements; compatibility of sealant with filler material; curing requirements; and restrictions to be adhered to in order to reduce hazards to personnel or to the environment. Submit instructions at least 30 days prior to use.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.3.1 Test Requirements

Test the sealant and backup or separating material for conformance with the referenced material specification. Perform testing of the materials in an approved independent laboratory and submit [certified copies of the test reports](#) for approval 30 days prior to the use of the materials at the job site. Submit samples to be retained by the Government for possible future testing if the materials appear defective during or after application. Conformance with the requirements of the laboratory tests specified does not constitute final acceptance of the materials. Base final acceptance on the performance of the in-place materials. Do not use material until it has been approved.

### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Inspect materials delivered to the site for visible damage, and unload and store with a minimum of handling. Deliver joint materials in original sealed containers and protect from freezing or overheating. Provide jobsite storage facilities capable of maintaining temperature ranges within manufacturers recommendations.

### 1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not proceed with work when weather conditions detrimentally affect the quality of cleaning joints or applying sealants. Proceed with joint preparation and sealing only when weather conditions are in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Install joint sealant to dry surfaces and protect sealant and bond breakers from moisture.

### 1.6 TRAFFIC CONTROL

Do not permit vehicular or heavy equipment traffic on the pavement in the area of the joints being sealed during the protection and curing period of the sealant. Permit traffic on the pavement at the end of the curing period.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 [SEALANTS](#)

Use materials for sealing cracks in accordance with [ASTM D5893/D5893M](#).

## 2.2 PRIMERS

Use primers in accordance with the recommendation of the manufacturer.

## 2.3 BOND BREAKERS

### 2.3.1 Blocking Media/Backup Materials

Provide backup (joint filler) material that is a compressible, nonshrinking, nonstaining, nonabsorbing, nonreactive material with the sealant. Use backup material compliant with [ASTM D5249](#). Use material with a melting point at least [5 degrees F](#) greater than the pouring temperature of the sealant being used when tested in accordance with [ASTM D789](#). Use material with a water absorption of not more than 5 percent of the sample weight when tested in accordance with [ASTM C1016](#). Use backup (joint filler) material that is 25 plus or minus 5 percent larger in diameter than the nominal width of the crack. Use blocking media consistent with the sealant manufacturer's installation instructions.

### 2.3.2 Bond Breaking Tapes

Provide a bond breaking tape or separating material that is a flexible, nonshrinkable, nonabsorbing, nonstaining, and nonreacting adhesive-backed tape. Use material with a melting point at least [5 degrees F](#) greater than the pouring temperature of the sealant being used when tested in accordance with [ASTM D789](#). Use bond breaker tape approximately [1/8 in](#) wider than the nominal width of the joint and that does not bond to the sealant. Use bond breaking tape consistent with the sealant manufacturer's installation instructions.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXECUTING EQUIPMENT

Submit [equipment list](#) and description of the equipment to be used and a statement from the supplier of the sealant that the proposed equipment is acceptable for installing the specified sealant. Use equipment for heating, mixing, and installing seals in accordance with the instructions provided by the sealant manufacturer. Provide equipment, tools, and accessories necessary to clean existing joints and install liquid joint sealants. Maintain machines, tools, and other equipment in proper working condition. Submit a list of proposed equipment to be used in performance of construction work including descriptive data, 30 days prior to use on the project.

#### 3.1.1 Joint Cleaning Equipment

##### 3.1.1.1 Tractor-Mounted Routing and Plowing Tool

Use routing tools for removing old sealant from the joints, of such shape and dimensions and so mounted on the tractor that do not damage the sides of the joints. Use tools designed to be adjusted to remove the old material to varying depths and widths as required. Use equipment capable of maintaining accurate cutting depth and width control. Use a joint plow equipped with a spring or hydraulic mechanism to release pressure on the tool prior to spalling the concrete. Do not permit the use of V-shaped tools or rotary impact routing devices. Permit the use of hand-operated spindle routing devices to clean and enlarge random cracks.

#### 3.1.1.2 Concrete Saw

Provide a self-propelled power saw, with water-cooled diamond or abrasive saw blades, for cutting joints to the depths and widths specified, for refacing joints, cleaning sawed joints where sandblasting does not provide a clean joint, widening, or deepening existing joints as specified without damaging the sides, bottom, or top edge of joints. Permit single or gang type blades with one or more blades mounted in tandem for fast cutting. Select saw adequately powered and sized to cut specified opening with not more than two passes of the saw through the joint.

#### 3.1.1.3 Sandblasting Equipment

Include with the sandblasting equipment an air compressor, hose, and long-wearing venturi-type nozzle of proper size, shape and opening. Do not permit the maximum nozzle opening to exceed 1/4 in. Use a portable air compressor capable of providing not less than 150 cfm and maintaining a line pressure of not less than 90 psi at the nozzle while in use. Demonstrate compressor capability, under job conditions, before approval. Use a compressor equipped with traps that maintain the compressed air free of oil and water. Use a nozzle with an adjustable guide that holds the nozzle aligned with the joint approximately 1 in above the pavement surface. Adjust the height, angle of inclination and the size of the nozzle to secure satisfactory results.

#### 3.1.1.4 Waterblasting Equipment

Include with the waterblasting equipment a trailer-mounted water tank, pumps, high-pressure hose, wand with safety release cutoff control, nozzle, and auxiliary water resupply equipment. Provide water tank and auxiliary resupply equipment of sufficient capacity to permit continuous operations. Use a nozzle with an adjustable guide that holds the nozzle aligned with the joint approximately 1 in above the pavement surface. Adjust the height, angle of inclination and the size of the nozzle to obtain satisfactory results. Use a pressure gauge mounted at the pump that shows the pressure in psi at which the equipment is operating.

#### 3.1.1.5 Air Compressor

Use a portable air compressor capable of operating the sandblasting equipment and capable of blowing out sand, water, dust adhering to sidewalls of concrete, and other objectionable materials from the joints. Use a compressor that provides air at a pressure not less than 90 psi and a minimum rate of 150 cubic ft of air per minute at the nozzles and free of oil.

#### 3.1.1.6 Vacuum Sweeper

Use a self-propelled, vacuum pickup sweeper capable of completely removing loose sand, water, joint material, and debris from pavement surface.

#### 3.1.1.7 Hand Tools

Permit the use of hand tools, such as brooms and chisels, when approved, for removing defective sealant from a crack and repairing or cleaning the crack faces.

### 3.1.2 Sealing Equipment

Use joint sealing equipment of a type required by the sealant manufacturer's installation instructions. Use equipment capable of installing sealant to the depths, widths and tolerances indicated. Do not proceed with joint sealing when malfunctions are noted until the malfunctions are corrected.

#### 3.1.2.1 Cold-Applied, Single-Component Sealing Equipment

Use equipment for installing [ASTM D5893/D5893M](#) single component joint sealants that consists of an extrusion pump, air compressor, following plate, hoses, and nozzle for transferring the sealant from the storage container into the joint opening. Use a nozzle with dimensions that allows the tip of the nozzle to extend into the joint to allow sealing from the bottom of the joint to the top. Maintain the initially approved equipment in good working condition, serviced in accordance with the supplier's instructions, and unaltered in any way without obtaining prior approval. Use lined hoses and seals to prevent moisture penetration and withstand pumping pressures. Use equipment free of contamination from previously used or other type sealant. Permit use of small hand-held air-powered equipment (i.e., caulking guns) for small applications.

### 3.2 SAFETY

Do not place sealant within [25 ft](#) of LOX equipment, LOX storage, or LOX piping. Clean joints in this area and leave them unsealed.

In accordance with the provisions of the Contract respecting "Accident Prevention," take appropriate measures to control worker exposure to toxic substances during the work. Provide personnel protective equipment as required. Make Material Safety Data Sheets (Department of Labor Form OSHA-20 or comparable form) available on the site.

### 3.3 PREPARATION OF JOINTS

Unless otherwise indicated, remove existing material, saw, clean and reseal joints. Do not proceed with final cleaning operations by more than one working day in advance of sealant. Clean joints by removing existing joint sealing compound, bond-breakers, dirt, laitance, curing compound, filler, and protrusions of hardened concrete from the sides and upper edges of the joint space to be sealed and other foreign material with the equipment. Do not permit cleaning procedures that damage joints or previously repaired patches by chipping or spalling. Remove existing sealant to the required depth. Precise shape and size of existing joints vary, and conditions of joint walls and edges vary and include but are not limited to rounding, square edges, sloping, chips, voids, depressions, and projections.

#### 3.3.1 Sawing

##### 3.3.1.1 Facing of Joints

Accomplish facing of joints using a concrete saw as specified in paragraph EQUIPMENT to saw through sawed and filler-type joints to loosen and remove material until the joint is clean and open to the full specified width and depth. Provide exposure of newly clean concrete through removal. Remove burrs and irregularities from sides of joint faces. Stiffen the blade with a sufficient number of dummy (used) blades or washers. Clean,

immediately following the sawing operation, the joint opening using a water jet to remove saw cuttings and debris and adjacent concrete surface. Protect adjacent previously cleaned joint spaces from receiving water and debris during the cleaning operation.

### 3.3.1.2 Facing of Random Cracks

Accomplish sawing of the cracks using a power-driven concrete saw as specified in paragraph EQUIPMENT. Use a saw blade 6 in or less in diameter to enable the saw to follow the trace of the crack. Stiffen the blade with dummy (or used) blades or washers. Immediately following the sawing operation, clean the crack opening using a water jet to remove saw cuttings and debris.

### 3.3.2 Final Cleaning of Joints

#### 3.3.2.1 Sandblasting

Following removal of existing sealant, and sawing, and immediately before resealing, clean newly exposed concrete joint faces and pavement surface extending to a minimum of 1/2 in up to 2 in from each joint edge by sandblasting until concrete surfaces in the joint space are free of sealants, dust, dirt, water and other foreign materials that prevent bonding of new sealants to the concrete. Use sand particles of the proper size and quality for the work. Perform sandblasting with specified nozzles, air compressor, and other appurtenant equipment. Position nozzles to clean the joint faces. Make at least two passes; one for each joint face. Make as many passes as required for proper cleaning. Immediately prior to sealing the joint, blow out the joint spaces with compressed air until completely free of sand, water, and dust. Install joint sealants to dry joints. Replace expansion joint filler material damaged in performing the work with new materials of the same type and dimensions as the existing material, or with appropriate blocking media.

### 3.3.3 Bond Breaker

At the time the joints receive the final cleaning and are dry, install bond breaker material as indicated with a steel wheel or other approved device.

#### 3.3.3.1 Blocking Media (Backer Rod) (Except for Expansion Joints)

When the joint opening is of a greater depth than indicated for the sealant depth, plug or seal off the lower portion of the joint opening using a blocking media/back-up material to prevent the entrance of the sealant below the specified depth. Take care to ensure that the blocking media/backup material is placed at the specified depth and is not stretched or twisted during installation.

#### 3.3.3.2 Bond Breaking Tape

Where inserts or filler materials contain bitumen, or the depth of the joint opening does not allow for the use of a backup material, insert a bond breaker separating tape to prevent incompatibility with the filler materials and three-sided adhesion of the sealant. Bond the tape to the bottom of the joint opening to prevent it from floating up into the new sealant.

### 3.3.4 Rate of Progress of Joint Preparation

Limit the stages of joint preparation, including sandblasting, air pressure cleaning and placing of the back-up material to only that lineal footage that can be sealed during the same day.

### 3.3.5 Disposal of Debris

Sweep pavement surface to remove excess joint material, dirt, water, sand, and other debris by vacuum sweepers or hand brooms. Remove the debris immediately to a point off station.

## 3.4 PREPARATION OF SEALANT

### 3.4.1 Single-Component, Cold-Applied Sealants

Inspect the [ASTM D5893/D5893M](#) sealant and containers prior to use. Reject materials that contain water, hard caking of any separated constituents, nonreversible jell, or materials that are otherwise unsatisfactory. Do not reject sealants that exhibit settlement of constituents in a soft mass that can be readily and uniformly remixed in the field with simple tools.

## 3.5 INSTALLATION OF SEALANT

### 3.5.1 Time of Application

After approval of the test section, seal joints immediately following final cleaning and placing of bond breakers. Commence sealing joints when walls are dust free and dry, and when weather conditions meet sealant manufacturer's instructions. If the above conditions cannot be met, or when rain interrupts sealing operations, reclean and permit the joints to dry prior to installing the sealant.

### 3.5.2 Sealing Joints

Do not install joint sealant until joints to be sealed have been inspected and approved. Install bond breaker just prior to pouring sealant. Fill the joints with sealant from bottom up until joints are uniformly filled solid from bottom to top using the specified equipment for the type of sealant required. Fill joints to [1/4 in](#) plus or minus [1/16 in](#) below top of pavement, and without formation of voids or entrapped air. Do not permit gravity methods or pouring pots to be used to install the sealant material. Except as otherwise permitted, tool the sealant immediately after application to provide firm contact with the joint walls and to form the indicated sealant profile below the pavement surface. Remove excess sealant that has been inadvertently spilled on the pavement surface. Do not permit traffic over newly sealed pavement until authorized. When a primer is recommended by the manufacturer, apply it evenly to the joint faces in accordance with the [manufacturer's recommendations](#). Check sealed joints frequently to ensure that newly installed sealant is cured to a tack-free condition within the specified time. Protect new sealant from rain during curing period.

## 3.6 INSPECTION/FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

### 3.6.1 Joint Cleaning

Inspect joints during the cleaning process to correct improper equipment and cleaning techniques that damage the concrete pavement in any manner.



Approve cleaned joints prior to installation of the separating or back-up material and joint sealant.

### 3.6.2 Sampling Sealant

Obtain a **one gal** sample of each type of sealant on the project from material used for each **10,000 linear ft** or less of joints sealed. Store samples according to sealant manufacturer's instructions. Retain samples until final acceptance of the work.

### 3.6.3 Sealant Application Equipment

Inspect the application equipment to ensure conformance to temperature requirements, proper proportioning and mixing (if two-component sealant) and proper installation. Suspend operations if there is evidences of bubbling, improper installation, or failure to cure or set until causes of the deficiencies are determined and corrected.

### 3.6.4 Joint Sealant

Inspect the joint sealant for proper rate of cure and set, bonding to the joint walls, cohesive separation within the sealant, reversion to liquid, entrapped air and voids. Remove sealants exhibiting these deficiencies prior to the final acceptance of the project from the joint, wasted, and replace at no additional cost to the Government. Obtain approval for each joint seal installation.

## 3.7 ACCEPTANCE

Reject sealer that fails to cure properly, or fails to bond to joint walls, or reverts to the uncured state, or fails in cohesion, or shows excessive air voids, blisters, surface defects, swelling, or other deficiencies, or is not properly recessed within indicated tolerances. Remove rejected sealer and reclean and reseal joints. Perform removal and reseal work promptly by and at the expense of the Contractor.

## 3.8 CLEAN-UP

Upon completion of the project, remove unused materials from the site and leave the pavement in a clean condition.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 11 23

AGGREGATE BASE COURSES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO T 180 (2017) Standard Method of Test for  
Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using  
a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm  
(18-in.) Drop

AASHTO T 224 (2010) Standard Method of Test for  
Correction for Coarse Particles in the  
Soil Compaction Test

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C131/C131M (2020) Standard Test Method for Resistance  
to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse  
Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the  
Los Angeles Machine

ASTM D75/D75M (2019) Standard Practice for Sampling  
Aggregates

ASTM D1557 (2012; E 2015) Standard Test Methods for  
Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of  
Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000  
ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup>) (2700 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>)

ASTM D2487 (2017; E 2020) Standard Practice for  
Classification of Soils for Engineering  
Purposes (Unified Soil Classification  
System)

ASTM D5821 (2013; R 2017) Standard Test Method for  
Determining the Percentage of Fractured  
Particles in Coarse Aggregate

1.2 DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this specification, the following definitions apply.

1.2.1 Aggregate Base Course

Aggregate base course (ABC) is well graded, durable aggregate uniformly  
moistened and mechanically stabilized by compaction.

### 1.2.2 Degree of Compaction

Degree of compaction required, except as noted in the second sentence, is expressed as a percentage of the maximum laboratory dry density obtained by the test procedure presented in [ASTM D1557](#) abbreviated as a percent of laboratory maximum dry density. Since [ASTM D1557](#) applies only to soils that have 30 percent or less by weight of their particles retained on the [3/4 inch](#) sieve, the degree of compaction for material having more than 30 percent by weight of their particles retained on the [3/4 inch](#) sieve will be expressed as a percentage of the laboratory maximum dry density in accordance with [AASHTO T 180](#) Method D and corrected with [AASHTO T 224](#).

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00](#) SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### [SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Plant, Equipment, and Tools; G](#)

#### [SD-06 Test Reports](#)

[Initial Tests; G](#)

[In-Place Tests; G](#)

### 1.4 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS, AND MACHINES

All [plant, equipment, and tools](#) used in the performance of the work will be subject to approval by the Contracting Officer before the work is started. Maintain all plant, equipment, and tools in satisfactory working condition at all times. Submit a list of proposed equipment, including descriptive data. Use equipment capable of minimizing segregation, producing the required compaction, meeting grade controls, thickness control, and smoothness requirements as set forth herein.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Sampling and testing are the responsibility of the Contractor. Perform sampling and testing using a laboratory approved in accordance with Section [01 45 00.00 10](#) QUALITY CONTROL. Work requiring testing will not be permitted until the testing laboratory has been inspected and approved. Test the materials to establish compliance with the specified requirements and perform testing at the specified frequency. The Contracting Officer may specify the time and location of the tests. Furnish copies of test results to the Contracting Officer within 24 hours of completion of the tests.

#### 1.5.1 Sampling

Take samples for laboratory testing in conformance with [ASTM D75/D75M](#). When deemed necessary, the sampling will be observed by the Contracting Officer.

### 1.5.2 Quality Control Tests

Perform the following tests in conformance with the applicable standards listed:

- a. In-place density of the aggregate base course shall be performed, at a minimum, every 600 square yards per lift in accordance with ASTM D 1556 and ASTM D 2922. ASTM D 1556 shall be used as a check at least once per lift for every 3,000 square yards of completed aggregate base course.
- b. Before starting work, at least one sample of aggregate base course material shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C 136. After the initial test, a minimum of one sieve analysis (ASTM C 136 and ASTM D 422) shall be performed for every 1,000 tons of aggregate base course placed, with a minimum of one analysis performed for each day's run until the course is completed. One liquid limit and plasticity index shall be performed for each sieve analysis per ASTM D 4318.
- c. Wear tests shall be performed in accordance with ASTM C 131. A minimum of one test per aggregate base course material source shall be run.
- d. Thickness of aggregate base course shall be measured for every 600 square yards of material placed. Compacted thickness of the aggregate base course shall be as shown in the contract drawings, and the completed section shall be within 3/8-inch of the required thickness.

### 1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform construction when the atmospheric temperature is above 35 degrees F. When the temperature falls below 35 degrees F, protect all completed areas by approved methods against detrimental effects of freezing. Correct completed areas damaged by freezing, rainfall, or other weather conditions to meet specified requirements.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AGGREGATES

Provide ABC consisting of clean, sound, durable particles of crushed stone, crushed gravel, angular sand, or other approved material. Provide ABC that is free of lumps of clay, organic matter, and other objectionable materials or coatings. The portion retained on the No. 4 sieve is known as coarse aggregate; that portion passing the No. 4 sieve is known as fine aggregate. When the coarse and fine aggregate is supplied from more than one source, provide aggregate from each source that meets the specified requirements.

#### 2.1.1 Coarse Aggregate

Provide coarse aggregates with angular particles of uniform density. Separately stockpile coarse aggregate supplied from more than one source.

- a. Crushed Gravel: Provide crushed gravel that has been manufactured by crushing gravels and that meets all the requirements specified below.
- b. Crushed Stone: Provide crushed stone consisting of freshly mined quarry rock, meeting all the requirements specified below.

#### 2.1.1.1 Aggregate Base Course

The percentage of loss of ABC coarse aggregate must not exceed 40 percent when tested in accordance with [ASTM C131/C131M](#). Provide aggregate that contains no more than 30 percent flat and elongated particles. A flat particle is one having a ratio of width to thickness greater than 3; an elongated particle is one having a ratio of length to width greater than 3. In the portion retained on each sieve specified, the crushed aggregates must contain at least 50 percent by weight of crushed pieces having two or more freshly fractured faces determined in accordance with [ASTM D5821](#). When two fractures are contiguous, the angle between planes of the fractures must be at least 30 degrees in order to count as two fractured faces. Manufacture crushed gravel from gravel particles 50 percent of which, by weight, are retained on the maximum size sieve listed in TABLE 1.

#### 2.1.2 Fine Aggregate

Provide fine aggregates consisting of angular particles of uniform density.

##### 2.1.2.1 Aggregate Base Course

Provide ABC fine aggregate that consists of screenings, angular sand, crushed recycled concrete fines, or other finely divided mineral matter processed or naturally combined with the coarse aggregate.

#### 2.1.3 Gradation Requirements

The gradation shall conform to the requirements of NC DOT Standard Specification Section 520 and 1005 for Aggregate Base Course.

#### 2.2 LIQUID LIMIT AND PLASTICITY INDEX

Apply liquid limit and plasticity index requirements to the completed course and to any component that is blended to meet the required gradation. The portion of any component or of the completed course passing the [No. 40](#) sieve must be either nonplastic or have a liquid limit not greater than 25 and a plasticity index not greater than 5.

#### 2.3 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

##### 2.3.1 Initial Tests

Perform one of each of the following tests, on the proposed material prior to commencing construction, to demonstrate that the proposed material meets all specified requirements when furnished. Complete this testing for each source if materials from more than one source are proposed.

- a. Sieve Analysis.
- b. Liquid limit and plasticity index.
- c. Moisture-density relationship.
- d. Wear.

Submit certified copies of test results for approval not less than 30 days before material is required for the work.

### 2.3.2 Approval of Material

Tentative approval of material will be based on initial test results.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

When the ABC is constructed in more than one layer, clean the previously constructed layer of loose and foreign matter by sweeping with power sweepers or power brooms, except that hand brooms may be used in areas where power cleaning is not practicable. Provide adequate drainage during the entire period of construction to prevent water from collecting or standing on the working area.

### 3.2 OPERATION OF AGGREGATE SOURCES

Condition aggregate sources on private lands in accordance with local laws or authorities.

### 3.3 STOCKPILING MATERIAL

Clear and level storage sites prior to stockpiling of material. Stockpile all materials, including approved material available from excavation and grading, in the manner and at the locations designated. Stockpile aggregates on the cleared and leveled areas designated by the Contracting Officer to prevent segregation. Stockpile materials obtained from different sources separately.

### 3.4 PREPARATION OF UNDERLYING COURSE OR SUBGRADE

Clean the underlying course or subgrade of all foreign substances prior to constructing the base course(s). Do not construct base course(s) on underlying course or subgrade that is frozen. Construct the surface of the underlying course or subgrade to meet specified compaction and surface tolerances. Correct ruts or soft yielding spots in the underlying courses, areas having inadequate compaction, and deviations of the surface from the specified requirements set forth herein by loosening and removing soft or unsatisfactory material and adding approved material, reshaping to line and grade, and recompacting to specified density requirements. For cohesionless underlying courses or subgrades containing sands or gravels, as defined in [ASTM D2487](#), stabilize the surface prior to placement of the base course(s). Stabilize by mixing ABC into the underlying course and compacting by approved methods. Consider the stabilized material as part of the underlying course and meet all requirements of the underlying course. Do not allow traffic or other operations to disturb the finished underlying course and maintain in a satisfactory condition until the base course is placed.

### 3.5 GRADE CONTROL

Provide a finished and completed base course conforming to the lines, grades, and cross sections shown. Place line and grade stakes as necessary for control.

### 3.6 MIXING AND PLACING MATERIALS

Mix the coarse and fine aggregates in a stationary plant. Make

adjustments in mixing procedures or in equipment, as directed, to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation or degradation, to obtain the required water content, and to insure a satisfactory base course meeting all requirements of this specification. Place the mixed material on the prepared subgrade or subbase in layers of uniform thickness with an approved spreader. Place the layers so that when compacted they will be true to the grades or levels required with the least possible surface disturbance. Where the base course is placed in more than one layer, clean the previously constructed layers of loose and foreign matter by sweeping with power sweepers, power brooms, or hand brooms, as directed. Make adjustments in placing procedures or equipment as may be directed by the Contracting Officer to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation and degradation, to adjust the water content, and to insure an acceptable base course.

### 3.7 LAYER THICKNESS

Compact the completed base course to the thickness indicated. No individual layer may be thicker than 6 inches nor be thinner than 3 inches in compacted thickness. Compact the base course(s) to a total thickness that is within 1/2 inch of the thickness indicated. Where the measured thickness is more than 1/2 inch deficient, correct such areas by scarifying, adding new material of proper gradation, reblading, and recompacting as directed. Where the measured thickness is more than 1/2 inch thicker than indicated, the course will be considered as conforming to the specified thickness requirements. The average job thickness will be the average of all thickness measurements taken for the job and must be within 1/4 inch of the thickness indicated. Measure the total thickness of the base course at intervals of one measurement for each 500 square yards of base course. Measure total thickness using 3 inch diameter test holes penetrating the base course.

### 3.8 COMPACTION

Compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. Maintain water content during the compaction procedure to within plus or minus 2 percent of the optimum water content determined from laboratory tests as specified in this Section. Begin rolling at the outside edge of the surface and proceed to the center, overlapping on successive trips at least one-half the width of the roller. Slightly vary the length of alternate trips of the roller. Adjust speed of the roller as needed so that displacement of the aggregate does not occur. Compact mixture with hand-operated power tampers in all places not accessible to the rollers. Continue compaction until each layer is compacted through the full depth to at least 100 percent of laboratory maximum density. Make such adjustments in compacting or finishing procedures as may be directed by the Contracting Officer to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation and degradation, to reduce or increase water content, and to ensure a satisfactory base course. Remove any materials found to be unsatisfactory and replace with satisfactory material or rework, as directed, to meet the requirements of this specification.

### 3.9 PROOF ROLLING

In addition to the compaction specified, proof roll areas designated on the drawings by application of 6 coverages of a heavy pneumatic-tired roller having four or more tires abreast, each tire loaded to a minimum of 30,000 pounds and inflated to a minimum of 125 psi. A coverage is defined

as the application of one tire print over the designated area. In the areas designated, apply proof rolling to the top of the underlying material on which the base course is laid and to the top of each layer of the completed base course. Maintain water content of the underlying material and each layer of the base course as specified in Paragraph COMPACTION from start of compaction to completion of proof rolling of that layer. Remove any base course materials or any underlying materials that produce unsatisfactory results by proof rolling and replace with satisfactory materials. Then recompact and proof roll to meet these specifications.

### 3.10 EDGES OF BASE COURSE

Place approved material along the outer edges of the base course in sufficient quantity to compact to the thickness of the course being constructed. When the course is being constructed in two or more layers, simultaneously roll and compact at least a 2 foot width of this shoulder material with the rolling and compacting of each layer of the base course, as directed.

### 3.11 FINISHING

Finish the surface of the top layer of base course after final compaction and proof rolling by cutting any overbuild to grade and rolling with a steel-wheeled roller. Do not add thin layers of material to the top layer of base course to meet grade. If the elevation of the top layer of base course is 1/2 inch or more below grade, scarify the top layer to a depth of at least 3 inches and blend new material in and compact and proof roll to bring to grade. Make adjustments to rolling and finishing procedures as directed by the Contracting Officer to minimize segregation and degradation, obtain grades, maintain moisture content, and insure an acceptable base course. Should the surface become rough, corrugated, uneven in texture, or traffic marked prior to completion, scarify the unsatisfactory portion and rework and recompact it or replace as directed.

### 3.12 SMOOTHNESS TEST

Construct the top layer so that the surface shows no deviations in excess of 3/8 inch when tested with a 12 foot straightedge. Take measurements in successive positions parallel to the centerline of the area to be paved. Also take measurements perpendicular to the centerline at 50 foot intervals. Correct deviations exceeding this amount by removing material and replacing with new material, or by reworking existing material and compacting it to meet these specifications.

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.13.1 In-Place Tests

See paragraph entitled "Quality Control Tests".

#### 3.13.2 Approval of Material

Final approval of the materials will be based on the quality control tests performed on samples taken from the completed and fully compacted course(s).



#### 3.14 TRAFFIC

Completed portions of the base course may be opened to limited traffic, provided there is no marring or distorting of the surface by the traffic. Do not allow heavy equipment on the completed base course except when necessary for construction. When it is necessary for heavy equipment to travel on the completed base course, protect the area against marring or damage to the completed work.

#### 3.15 MAINTENANCE

Maintain the base course in a satisfactory condition until the full pavement section is completed and accepted. Immediately repair any defects and repeat repairs as often as necessary to keep the area intact. Retest any base course that was not paved over prior to the onset of winter to verify that it still complies with the requirements of this specification. Rework or replace any area of base course that is damaged as necessary to comply with this specification.

#### 3.16 DISPOSAL OF UNSATISFACTORY MATERIALS

Dispose of any unsuitable materials that have been removed outside the limits of Government-controlled land. No additional payments will be made for materials that have to be replaced.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 13 13.06

PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT FOR ROADS AND SITE FACILITIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| ACI 211.1 | (1991; R 2009) Standard Practice for<br>Selecting Proportions for Normal,<br>Heavyweight and Mass Concrete |
| ACI 305R  | (2020) Guide to Hot Weather Concreting   |
| ACI 306R  | (2016) Guide to Cold Weather Concreting  |

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| ASTM A184/A184M | (2019) Standard Specification for Welded<br>Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete<br>Reinforcement                       |
| ASTM A615/A615M | (2020) Standard Specification for Deformed<br>and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete<br>Reinforcement                 |
| ASTM A966/A966M | (2015; R 2020) Standard Test Method for<br>Magnetic Particle Examination of Steel<br>Forgings Using Alternating Current |
| ASTM C31/C31M   | (2021a) Standard Practice for Making and<br>Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field                                 |
| ASTM C33/C33M   | (2018) Standard Specification for Concrete<br>Aggregates  |
| ASTM C42/C42M   | (2020) Standard Test Method for Obtaining<br>and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams<br>of Concrete                   |
| ASTM C78/C78M   | (2021) Standard Test Method for Flexural<br>Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam<br>with Third-Point Loading)        |
| ASTM C88        | (2018) Standard Test Method for Soundness<br>of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or<br>Magnesium Sulfate             |
| ASTM C94/C94M   | (2021a) Standard Specification for<br>Ready-Mixed Concrete  |

ASTM C143/C143M	(2020) Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C150/C150M	(2021) Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C171	(2020) Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete
ASTM C172/C172M	(2017) Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C260/C260M	(2010a; R 2016) Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C309	(2019) Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
ASTM C494/C494M	(2019) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C595/C595M	(2021) Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C618	(2019) Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C881/C881M	(2020a) Standard Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete
ASTM C989/C989M	(2018a) Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM C1017/C1017M	(2013; E 2015) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete
ASTM C1077	(2017) Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM C1240	(2020) Standard Specification for Silica Fume Used in Cementitious Mixtures
ASTM C1260	(2021) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1542/C1542M	(2019) Standard Test Method for Measuring Length of Concrete Cores

ASTM C1567	(2021) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali-Silica Reactivity of Combinations of Cementitious Materials and Aggregate (Accelerated Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1602/C1602M	(2018) Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM D1751	(2018) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D1752	(2018) Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber, Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction
ASTM D2995	(1999; R 2009) Determining Application Rate of Bituminous Distributors

NATIONAL READY MIXED CONCRETE ASSOCIATION (NRMCA)

NRMCA QC 3	(2015) Quality Control Manual: Section 3, Plant Certifications Checklist: Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities
------------	---

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

### SD-03 Product Data

Curing Materials

Reinforcement

Epoxy Resin

Cementitious Materials; G

Dowel Bars

Expansion Joint Filler

### SD-05 Design Data

Mix Design Report; G

### SD-06 Test Reports

Concrete Slump Tests

Concrete Uniformity

Flexural Strength

Air Content

SD-07 Certificates

Batch Tickets

NRMCA Certificate Of Conformance

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Diamond Grinding Plan

### 1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

#### 1.3.1 NRMCA Certificate of Conformance

Provide a batching and mixing plant consisting of a stationary-type central mix plant, including permanent installations and portable or relocatable plants installed on stable foundations. Provide a plant designed and operated to produce concrete within the specified tolerances, with a minimum capacity of 250 cubic yards per hour. Submit [NRMCA Certificate of Conformance](#) that conforms to the requirements of [NRMCA QC 3](#) including provisions addressing:

1. Material Storage and Handling
2. Batching Equipment
3. Central Mixer
4. Ticketing System
5. Delivery System

#### 1.3.2 Qualifications

##### 1.3.2.1 Laboratory Accreditation

Perform sampling and testing using an approved commercial testing laboratory or on-site facilities that are accredited in accordance with [ASTM C1077](#). Do not start work requiring testing until the facilities have been inspected and approved. The Government will inspect all laboratories requiring validation for equipment and test procedures prior to the start of any concreting operations for conformance to [ASTM C1077](#). Schedule and provide payment for laboratory inspections. Additional payment or a time extension due to failure to acquire the required laboratory validation is not allowed. Maintain this certification for the duration of the project.

##### 1.3.2.2 Field Technicians

Provide field technicians meeting one of the following criteria:

- a. Have at least one National Ready Mixed Concrete Association (NRMCA) certified concrete craftsman and at least one American Concrete Institute (ACI) Flatwork Finisher Certified craftsman on site, overseeing each placement crew during all concrete placement.
- b. Have no less than three NRMCA certified concrete installers and at least two American Concrete Institute (ACI) Flatwork Finisher Certified installers on site working as members of each placement crew during all concrete placement.

#### 1.3.3 Batch Tickets

Submit [batch tickets](#) for each load of ready-mixed concrete in accordance with [ASTM C94/C94M](#).

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver concrete paving in accordance with [ASTM C94/C94M](#).

#### 1.5 ACCEPTANCE

##### 1.5.1 Tolerances

Acceptance of Portland cement concrete pavement is based on compliance with the tolerances presented in Table 1. Remove and replace concrete pavement represented by the failing tests or submit repair plan for approval.

Table 1	
Measurement	Tolerance
PLASTIC CONCRETE	
Slump	plus 0, minus <a href="#">1.5 inches</a>
Air Content	plus/minus 1.5 percent
Flexural Strength	No individual specimen less than <a href="#">100 psi</a> below specified strength.
HARDENED CONCRETE	
Grade	plus/minus <a href="#">0.05 feet</a> from plan
Smoothness	No abrupt change exceeding <a href="#">1/8 inch</a>
Straightedge	Not more than <a href="#">1/8 in</a> for roads. Not more than <a href="#">1/4 in</a> for open storage areas.
Profilograph	Not more than <a href="#">9 inches/mile</a>
Thickness	minus <a href="#">1/2 inch</a>

Table 1	
Edge Slump	85 percent less than 1/4 inch and 100 percent less than 3/8 inch.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

#### 2.1.1 Cementitious Materials

Provide cementitious materials in concrete mix with 20 to 50 percent non-portland cement pozzolanic materials by weight.

##### 2.1.1.1 Portland Cement

Conforming to ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II.

##### 2.1.1.2 Blended Cement

Provide blended cement conforming to ASTM C595/C595M, Type IP, IS, or IL including the optional requirement for mortar expansion. Provide pozzolan added to the Type IP blend consisting of ASTM C618 Class F or Class N and that is interground with the cement clinker. Include in written statement from the manufacturer that the amount of pozzolan in the finished cement does not vary more than plus or minus 5 mass percent of the finished cement from lot to lot or within a lot. The percentage and type of mineral admixture used in the blend are not allowed to change from that submitted for the aggregate evaluation and mixture proportioning. The requirements of paragraph Supplementary Cementitious Materials (SCM) Content do not apply to the SCM content of blended cement.

##### 2.1.1.3 Fly Ash and Pozzolan

Conforming to ASTM C618, Type F, or N, with a loss on ignition not exceeding 3 percent. Include test results in accordance with ASTM C618.

##### 2.1.1.4 Ultra Fine Fly Ash and Ultra Fine Pozzolan

Ultra Fine Fly Ash (UFFA) and Ultra Fine Pozzolan (UFP) conforming to ASTM C618, Class F or N, and the following additional requirements:

- The strength activity index at 28 days of age at least 95 percent of the control specimens.
- The average particle size not exceeding 6 microns.
- Loss on ignition not exceeding 3 percent.

##### 2.1.1.5 Silica Fume

Provide silica fume that conforms to ASTM C1240, including the optional limits on reactivity with cement alkalis. Provide silica fume as a dry, densified material or as a slurry. Provide the services of a manufacturer's technical representative, experienced in mixing,

proportioning, placement procedures, and curing of concrete containing silica fume, at no expense to the Government. This representative is required to be present on the project prior to and during at least the first 4 days of concrete production and placement using silica fume.

#### 2.1.1.6 Slag

Conforming to [ASTM C989/C989M](#), Slag Cement (formerly Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag) Grade 100 or 120. Include test results in accordance with [ASTM C989/C989M](#).

#### 2.1.1.7 Supplementary Cementitious Materials (SCM) Content

Include one of the SCMs listed in Table 2 within the range specified therein, whether or not the aggregates are found to be reactive in accordance with the paragraph Alkali Reactivity Test.

TABLE 2 SUPPLEMENTARY CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS CONTENT		
Supplementary Cementitious Material	Minimum Content (percent)	Maximum Content (percent)
Class N Pozzolan and Class F Fly Ash		
SiO <sub>2</sub> + Al <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> + Fe <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> greater than 70 percent	25	35
SiO <sub>2</sub> + Al <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> + Fe <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> greater than 80 percent	20	35
SiO <sub>2</sub> + Al <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> + Fe <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> greater than 90 percent	15	35
UFFA and UFP	7	16
GGBF Slag	40	50
Silica Fume	7	10

#### 2.1.2 Water

Water conforming to [ASTM C1602/C1602M](#).

#### 2.1.3 Aggregate

##### 2.1.3.1 Durability

Evaluate and test all fine and coarse aggregates to be used in all concrete for durability in accordance with [ASTM C88](#). Provide fine and coarse aggregates with a maximum of 18 percent loss when subjected to 5 cycles using Magnesium Sulfate or a maximum of 12 percent loss when subjected to 5 cycles of Sodium Sulfate.

##### 2.1.3.2 Alkali Reactivity Test

Evaluate and test fine and coarse aggregates to be used in all concrete for alkali-aggregate reactivity. Test all size groups and sources proposed for use.



- a. Evaluate the fine and coarse aggregates separately, using [ASTM C1260](#). Reject individual aggregates with test results that indicate an expansion of greater than 0.08 percent after 28 days of immersion in 1N NaOH solution, or perform additional testing as follows: utilize the proposed low alkali portland cement, blended cement, or SCM in combination with each individual aggregate. Test in accordance with [ASTM C1567](#). Determine the quantity that meets all the requirements of these specifications and that lowers the expansion equal to or less than 0.08 percent after 28 days of immersion in a 1N NaOH solution. Base the mixture proportioning on the highest percentage of SCM required to mitigate ASR-reactivity.
- b. If any of the above options does not lower the expansion to less than 0.08 percent after 28 days of immersion in a 1N NaOH solution, reject the aggregate(s) and submit new aggregate sources for retesting. Submit the results of testing for evaluation and acceptance.

#### 2.1.3.3 Fine Aggregates

Conforming to the quality and gradation of [ASTM C33/C33M](#).

#### 2.1.3.4 Coarse Aggregates

Coarse aggregate consisting of crushed or uncrushed gravel, crushed stone, or a combination thereof. Provide aggregates, as delivered to the mixers, consisting of clean, hard, uncoated particles. Wash coarse aggregate sufficient to remove dust and other coatings. Provide fine aggregate consisting of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of the two, and composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Provide both coarse and fine aggregates meeting the requirements of [ASTM C33/C33M](#).

#### 2.1.4 Chemical Admixtures

##### 2.1.4.1 Water Reducing Admixtures

Provide admixture conforming to [ASTM C494/C494M](#): Type A, water reducing; Type B, retarding; Type C, accelerating; Type D, water-reducing and retarding; and Type E, water-reducing and accelerating admixture. Do not use calcium chloride admixtures. [ASTM C494/C494M](#) Type S specific performance admixtures and [ASTM C1017/C1017M](#) flowable admixtures are not allowed.

##### 2.1.4.2 Air Entraining Admixture

Conforming to [ASTM C260/C260M](#): Air-entraining.

##### 2.1.4.3 High Range Water Reducing Admixture

[ASTM C494/C494M](#) Type F and G high range water reducing admixtures are not allowed.

#### 2.1.5 Reinforcement

##### 2.1.5.1 Dowel Bars

[Dowel bars](#) conforming to [ASTM A615/A615M](#), [Grade 60](#) for plain billet-steel bars of the size and length indicated. Remove all burrs and projections from the bars.

#### 2.1.5.2 Tie Bars

Billet or axle steel deformed bars conforming to ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A966/A966M Grade 60.

#### 2.1.5.3 Reinforcement

Deformed steel bar mats conforming to ASTM A184/A184M. Bar reinforcement conforming to ASTM A615/A615M , Grade 60.

#### 2.1.6 Curing Materials

Provide curing materials consisting of:

##### 2.1.6.1 White-Burlap-Polyethylene Sheet

Conforming to ASTM C171, 0.004 inch thick white opaque polyethylene bonded to 10 oz/linear yard (40 inch) wide burlap.

##### 2.1.6.2 Liquid Membrane-Forming Compound

Conforming to ASTM C309, white pigmented, Type 2, Class B, free of paraffin or petroleum.

##### 2.1.6.3 Liquid Chemical Sealer-Hardener Compound

Compound consisting of magnesium fluosilicate which when mixed with water seals and hardens the surface of the concrete. Do not use on exterior slabs exposed to freezing conditions.

#### 2.1.7 Joint Fillers and Sealants

Provide as specified in Section 32 01 19.61 SEALING OF JOINTS IN RIGID PAVEMENT.

#### 2.1.8 Epoxy Resin

Provide epoxy-resin materials that consist of two-component materials conforming to the requirements of ASTM C881/C881M, Class as appropriate for each application temperature to be encountered, except that in addition, the materials meet the following requirements:

- a. Type IV, Grade 3, for use for embedding dowels and anchor bolts.
- b. Type III, Grade as approved, for use as patching materials for complete filling of spalls and other voids and for use in preparing epoxy resin mortar.
- c. Type IV, Grade 1, for use for injecting cracks.
- d. Type V, Grade as approved, for bonding freshly mixed portland cement concrete or mortar or freshly mixed epoxy resin concrete or mortar to hardened concrete.

#### 2.1.9 Joint Materials

##### 2.1.9.1 Expansion Joint Materials

Provide preformed expansion joint filler material conforming to ASTM D1751

or [ASTM D1752](#). Provide expansion joint filler that is [3/4 inch](#) thick, unless otherwise indicated, and provided in a single full depth piece.

#### 2.1.9.2 Slip Joint Material

Provide slip joint material that is [1/4 inch](#) thick expansion joint filler, unless otherwise indicated, conforming to paragraph EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL.

### 2.2 MIX DESIGN

Proportion concrete mix in accordance with [ACI 211.1](#) except as modified herein.

#### 2.2.1 Specified Concrete Properties

##### 2.2.1.1 Flexural Strength

Provide concrete with a minimum flexural strength of [750 psi](#) at 28 days of age.

##### 2.2.1.2 Air Entrainment

Provide an entrained air content of 6.0 percent.

##### 2.2.1.3 Slump

For fixed form and hand placement, provide a maximum slump of [3 inches](#). For slipformed pavement, at the start of the project, select a maximum allowable slump which will produce in-place pavement meeting the specified tolerances for control of edge slump. The selected slump is applicable to both pilot and fill-in lanes.

##### 2.2.1.4 Water/Cementitious Materials Ratio

Maximum allowable water-cementitious material ratio is 0.45. The water-cementitious material ratio is based on absolute volume equivalency, where the ratio is determined using the weight of cement for a cement only mix, or using the total volume of cement plus pozzolan converted to an equivalent weight of cement by the absolute volume equivalency method described in [ACI 211.1](#).

#### 2.2.2 Mix Design Report

Perform trial design batches, mixture proportioning studies, testing, and include test results demonstrating that the proposed mixture proportions produce concrete of the qualities indicated. An existing mix design may be submitted if developed within the previous 12 months. Submit test results in a [mix design report](#) to include:

- a. Coarse and fine aggregate gradations and plots.
- b. Coarse and fine aggregate quality test results, include deleterious materials and ASR testing.
- c. Mill certificates for cement and supplemental cementitious materials.
- d. Certified test results for all proposed admixtures.

- e. Specified flexural strength, slump, and air content.
- f. Recommended proportions and volumes for proposed mixture and each of three trial water-cementitious materials ratios.
- g. Individual beam breaks.
- h. Flexural strength summaries and plots.
- i. Historical record of test results, documenting production standard deviation (if available).
- j. Narrative discussing methodology on how the mix design was developed.

### 2.2.3 Mix Verification

Mix verification tests may be performed by the Government. Provide quantities of cementitious materials, aggregates and admixtures as requested.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

### 2.3.1 Batching and Mixing

Provide stationary mixers or truck mixers. Provide a batch plant conforming to [ASTM C94/C94M](#) and as specified. Do not weigh water or measure cumulatively with another ingredient. Batch all concrete materials in accordance with [ASTM C94/C94M](#) requirements. Verify batching, mixers, mixing time, permitted reduction of mixing time, and [concrete uniformity](#) in accordance with the requirements of [ASTM C94/C94M](#), and document in the initial weekly QC Report. Do not use truck mixers for mixing slipformed concrete. Provide only truck mixers designed for mixing or transporting paving concrete with extra large blading and rear opening specifically for low-slump paving concrete and conforming to the requirements of [ASTM C94/C94M](#).

### 2.3.2 Transporting Equipment

Provide transporting equipment in conformance with [ASTM C94/C94M](#) and as specified herein. Transport concrete to the paving site in rear-dump trucks, in truck mixers designed with extra large blading and rear opening specifically for low slump concrete, or in agitators. Do not permit bottom-dump trucks for delivery of concrete.

### 2.3.3 Delivery Equipment

When concrete transport equipment cannot operate on the paving lane, provide side-delivery transport equipment consisting of self-propelled moving conveyors to deliver concrete from the transport equipment and discharge it in front of the paver. Do not permit front-end loaders, dozers, or similar equipment to distribute the concrete.

### 2.3.4 Paver-Finisher

Provide a heavy-duty, self-propelled paver-finisher machine designed specifically for paving and finishing high quality pavement and capable of spreading, consolidating, and shaping the plastic concrete to the desired cross section in one pass. Equip the paver-finisher with a full width "knock-down" auger, capable of operating in both directions, which

will evenly spread the fresh concrete in front of the screed or extrusion plate. Gang-mount immersion vibrators at the front of the paver on a frame equipped with suitable controls so that all vibrators can be operated at any desired depth within the slab or completely withdrawn from the concrete. Automatically control the vibrators so they will be immediately stopped as forward motion of the paver ceases. Space the immersion vibrators across the paving lane as necessary to properly consolidate the concrete, but limit the clear distance between vibrators not to exceed 30 inches, and the outside vibrators not to exceed 12 inches from the edge of the lane. Vibrators may be pneumatic, gas driven, or electric, and operated at frequencies within the concrete between 6,000 and 7,000 vibrations per minute, with an amplitude of vibration such that noticeable vibrations occur at 1.5 foot radius when the vibrator is inserted in the concrete to the depth specified. Equip the paver-finisher with a transversely oscillating screed or an extrusion plate to shape, compact, and smooth the surface.

#### 2.3.4.1 Paver-Finisher with Fixed Forms

Equip the paver-finisher with wheels designed to ride the forms, keep it aligned with the forms, and to prevent deformation of the forms.

#### 2.3.4.2 Slipform Paver-Finisher

Provide a track-mounted slipform paver-finisher with automatic controls and padded tracks. Electronically reference horizontal alignment to a taut wire guideline. Electronically reference vertical alignment on both sides of the paver to a taut wire guideline, to an approved laser control system, or to a ski operating on a completed lane. Do not control from a slope-adjustment control or from the underlying material.

#### 2.3.4.3 Other Types of Finishing Equipment

Heavy duty vibratory truss screeds may be approved for use if successfully demonstrated on the test section to consolidate the slab full depth and without segregation. Clary screeds, rotating tube floats, or laser screeds will not be allowed on the project. Provide hand floats that are not less than 12 feet long and 6 inches wide and stiffened to prevent flexing and warping.

#### 2.3.4.4 Work Bridge

Provide a self-propelled work bridge capable of spanning the paving lane and supporting the workmen without excessive deflection.

#### 2.3.5 Texturing Equipment

Provide texturing equipment as specified below.

##### 2.3.5.1 Fabric Drag

Clean, reasonably new burlap measuring from 3 to 10 feet long, 2 feet wider than the width of the pavement, and securely attached to a separate wheel mounted frame spanning the paving lane or to one of the other similar pieces of equipment. Select dimension of burlap drag so that at least 3 feet of the material is in contact with the pavement.

#### 2.3.6 Curing Equipment

Provide equipment for applying membrane-forming curing compound mounted on a self-propelled frame that spans the paving lane. Constantly agitate the curing compound reservoir mechanically (not air) during operation and provide a means for completely draining the reservoir. Provide a spraying system that consists of a mechanically powered pump which maintains constant pressure during operation, an operable pressure gauge, and either a series of spray nozzles evenly spaced across the lane to provide uniformly overlapping coverage or a single spray nozzle which is mounted on a carriage which automatically traverses the lane width at a speed correlated with the forward movement of the overall frame. Protect all spray nozzles with wind screens. Calibrate the spraying system in accordance with [ASTM D2995](#), Method A, for the rate of application required in subpart CURING AND PROTECTION. Provide hand-operated sprayers powered by compressed air supplied by a mechanical air compressor. Immediately replace curing equipment if it fails to apply an even coating of compound at the specified rate.

#### 2.3.7 Sawing Equipment

Provide equipment for sawing joints and for other similar sawing of concrete consisting of standard diamond-type concrete saws mounted on a wheeled chassis which can be easily guided to follow the required alignment. Provide diamond tipped blades. If demonstrated to operate properly, abrasive blades may be used. Provide spares as required to maintain the required sawing rate. Early-entry saws may be used, subject to demonstration and approval. No change to the initial sawcut depth is permitted.

#### 2.3.8 Straightedge

Furnish one [12 foot](#) straightedge constructed of aluminum or magnesium alloy, having blades of box or box-girder cross section with flat bottom, adequately reinforced to insure rigidity and accuracy. Provide handles for operation on the pavement.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION FOR PAVING

##### 3.1.1 Weather Limitations

When windy conditions during paving appear probable, have equipment and material at the paving site to provide windbreaks, shading, fogging, or other action to prevent plastic shrinkage cracking or other damaging drying of the concrete.

##### 3.1.1.1 Inclement Weather

Do not commence placing operations when heavy rain or other damaging weather conditions appear imminent. At all times when placing concrete, maintain on-site sufficient waterproof cover and means to rapidly place it over all unhardened concrete or concrete that might be damaged by rain. Suspend placement of concrete whenever rain, high winds, or other damaging weather commences to damage the surface or texture of the placed unhardened concrete, washes cement out of the concrete, or changes the water content of the surface concrete. Immediately cover and protect all unhardened concrete from the rain or other damaging weather. Completely

remove and replace any slab damaged by rain or other weather full depth, by full slab width, to the nearest original joint.

#### 3.1.1.2 Hot Weather

Maintain required concrete temperature in accordance with [ACI 305R](#) to prevent evaporation rate from exceeding [0.2 pound of water per square foot](#) of exposed concrete per hour. Cool ingredients before mixing, place concrete during cooler night time hours, or use other suitable means to control concrete temperature and prevent rapid drying of newly placed concrete. Water is not allowed to be added after the initial introduction of mixing water except, when on arrival at the job site, the slump is less than specified and the water-cement ratio is less than that given as a maximum in the approved mixture. Additional water may be added to bring the slump within the specified range provided the approved water-cement ratio is not exceeded. Inject water into the head of the mixer (end opposite the discharge opening) drum under pressure, and turn the drum or blades a minimum of 30 additional revolutions at mixing speed. The addition of water to the batch at any later time is not allowed. After placement, use fog spray, apply monomolecular film, or use other suitable means to reduce the evaporation rate. Start curing when surface of fresh concrete is sufficiently hard to permit curing without damage. Cool underlying material by sprinkling lightly with water before placing concrete. Follow practices found in [ACI 305R](#).

#### 3.1.1.3 Prevention of Plastic Shrinkage Cracking

During weather with low humidity, and particularly with high temperature and appreciable wind, develop and institute measures to prevent plastic shrinkage cracks from developing. If plastic shrinkage cracking occurs, halt further placement of concrete until protective measures are in place to prevent further cracking. Periods of high potential for plastic shrinkage cracking can be anticipated by use of [ACI 305R](#). In addition to the protective measures specified in the previous paragraph, the concrete placement may be further protected by erecting shades and windbreaks and by applying fog sprays of water, the addition of monomolecular films, or wet covering. Apply monomolecular films after finishing is complete, do not use in the finishing process. Immediately commence curing procedures when such water treatment is stopped.

#### 3.1.1.4 Cold Weather

Do not place concrete when ambient temperature is below [40 degrees F](#) or when concrete is likely to be subjected to freezing temperatures within 24 hours. When authorized, when concrete is likely to be subjected to freezing within 24 hours after placing, heat concrete materials so that temperature of concrete when deposited is between [65 and 80 degrees F](#). Methods of heating materials are subject to approval. Do not heat mixing water above [165 degrees F](#). Remove lumps of frozen material and ice from aggregates before placing aggregates in mixer. Follow practices found in [ACI 306R](#).

#### 3.1.2 Conditioning of Underlying Material

Verify the underlying material, upon which concrete is to be placed is clean, damp, and free from debris, waste concrete or cement, frost, ice, and standing or running water. Prior to setting forms or placement of concrete, verify the underlying material is well drained and has been satisfactorily graded by string-line controlled, automated, trimming

machine and uniformly compacted in accordance with the applicable Section of these specifications. Test the surface of the underlying material to crown, elevation, and density in advance of setting forms or of concrete placement using slip-form techniques. Trim high areas to proper elevation. Fill and compact low areas to a condition similar to that of surrounding grade, or fill with concrete monolithically with the pavement. Low areas filled with concrete are not to be cored for thickness to avoid biasing the average thickness used for evaluation and payment adjustment. Rework and compact any underlying material disturbed by construction operations to specified density immediately in front of the paver. If a slipform paver is used, continue the same underlying material under the paving lane beyond the edge of the lane a sufficient distance that is thoroughly compacted and true to grade to provide a suitable trackline for the slipform paver and firm support for the edge of the paving lane.

### 3.1.3 Forms

Use steel forms, except that wood forms may be used for curves having a radius of 150 feet or less, and for fillets. Forms may be built up with metal or wood, added only to the base, to provide an increase in depth of not more than 25 percent. Provide forms with the base width not less than eight-tenths of the vertical height of the form, except that for forms 8 inches or less in vertical height, provide forms with a base width not less than the vertical height of the form. Provide wood forms adequate in strength and rigidly braced for curves and fillets. Set forms on firm material cut true to grade so that each form section when placed will be firmly in contact with the underlying layer for its entire base. Do not set forms on blocks or on built-up spots of underlying material. Before placing the concrete, coat the contact surfaces of forms with a non-staining mineral oil, non-staining form coating compound, biodegradable form release agent, or two coats of nitro-cellulose lacquer. Check and correct grade elevations and alignment of the forms immediately before placing concrete.

### 3.1.4 Reinforcement

#### 3.1.4.1 Dowel Bars

Install dowels with horizontal and vertical alignment plus or minus 1 inch. Except as otherwise specified, maintain location of dowels within a skew alignment of 1/4 inch over 1 foot length. Reject coatings which are perforated, cracked or otherwise damaged. While handling avoid scuffing or gouging of the coatings. Omit Dowels and tie bars when the center of the dowel or tie bar is located within a horizontal distance from an intersecting joint equal to or less than one-fourth of the slab thickness. Maintain dowels in position during concrete placement and curing. Before concrete placement, thoroughly grease the entire length of each dowel secured in a dowel basket or fixed form.

#### 3.1.4.2 Tie Bars

Install bars, accurately aligned horizontally and vertically, and to the tolerances shown on the drawings, at indicated locations. For slipform construction, insert bent tie bars by hand or other approved means.

#### 3.1.4.3 Setting Slab Reinforcement

Position reinforcement on suitable chairs prior to concrete placement. At



expansion, contraction and construction joints, place the reinforcement as indicated. Clean reinforcement free of mud, oil, scale or other foreign materials. Place reinforcement accurately and wire securely. Lap splices **12 inches** minimum. Maintain the bar spacing from ends and sides of slabs and joints as indicated.

### 3.2 MEASURING, MIXING, CONVEYING, AND PLACING CONCRETE

#### 3.2.1 Measuring

Conform to **ASTM C94/C94M**.

#### 3.2.2 Mixing

Conform to **ASTM C94/C94M**, except as modified herein. Begin mixing within 30 minutes after cement has been added to aggregates. When the air temperature is greater than **85 degrees F**, place concrete within 60 minutes. With approval, a hydration stabilizer admixture meeting the requirements of **ASTM C494/C494M** Type D, may be used to extend the placement time to 90 minutes. Additional water may be added to bring slump within required limits as specified in **ASTM C94/C94M**, provided that the specified water-cement ratio is not exceeded.

#### 3.2.3 Conveying

Conform to **ASTM C94/C94M**.

#### 3.2.4 Placing

Do not exceed a free vertical drop of **5 feet** from the point of discharge. Deposit concrete either directly from the transporting equipment or by conveyor on to the pre-wetted subgrade or subbase, unless otherwise specified. Deposit the concrete between the forms to an approximately uniform height. Place concrete continuously at a uniform rate, without damage to the grade and without unscheduled stops except for equipment failure or other emergencies. If an unscheduled stop occurs within **10 feet** of a previously placed expansion joint, remove concrete back to joint, repair any damage to grade, install a construction joint and continue placing concrete only after cause of the stop has been corrected.

### 3.3 PAVING

Construct pavement with paving and finishing equipment utilizing fixed forms or slipforms.

#### 3.3.1 Paving Plan

Submit for approval a paving plan identifying the following items:

- a. A description of the placing and protection methods proposed when concrete is to be placed in or exposed to hot, cold, or rainy weather conditions.
- b. A detailed paving sequence plan and proposed paving pattern showing all planned construction joints.
- c. Plan and equipment proposed to control alignment of formed or sawn joints within the specified tolerances.

### 3.3.2 Required Results

Operate the paver-finisher to produce a thoroughly consolidated slab throughout, true to line and grade within specified tolerances. Adjust the paver-finishing operation to produce a surface finish free of irregularities, tears, voids of any kind, and other discontinuities, with only a minimum of paste at the surface. Do not permit multiple passes of the paver-finisher. Produce a finished surface requiring no hand finishing, other than the use of cutting straightedges, except in very infrequent instances. Do not apply water, other than true fog sprays (mist), to the concrete surface during paving and finishing.

### 3.3.3 Operation

When the paver is operated between or adjacent to previously constructed pavement (fill-in lanes), make provisions to prevent damage to the previously constructed pavement, including keeping the existing pavement surface free of debris, and placing rubber mats beneath the paver tracks. Operate transversely oscillating screeds and extrusion plates to overlap the existing pavement the minimum possible, but in no case more than **8 inches**.

### 3.3.4 Consolidation

Immediately after spreading concrete, consolidate full depth with internal type vibrating equipment along the boundaries of all slabs regardless of slab thickness, and interior of all concrete slabs. For pavements less than **10 inches** thick, operate vibrators at mid-depth parallel with or at a slight angle to the base course. For thicker pavements, angle vibrators toward the vertical, with vibrator tip preferably about **2 inches** above the base course, and top of vibrator a few **inches** below pavement surface. Automatically control the vibrators or tamping units in front of the paver so that they stop immediately as forward motion ceases. Limit duration of vibration to that necessary to produce consolidation of concrete. Do not permit excessive vibration. Vibrate concrete in small, odd-shaped slabs or in locations inaccessible to the paver mounted vibration equipment with a hand-operated immersion vibrator operated from a bridge spanning the area. Do not operate vibrators at one location for more than 15 seconds. Do not use vibrators to transport or spread the concrete.

### 3.3.5 Fixed Form Paving

Spread and strike off concrete with with the paver. Shape the concrete to the specified and indicated cross section in one pass, and finish the surface and edges so that only a very minimum amount of hand finishing is required. Use single spud hand vibrators to consolidate the concrete adjacent to fixed forms as required to achieve a void-free formed edge. Do not allow vibrators to contact reinforcement, forms, or the grade during vibration.

### 3.3.6 Slipform Paving

Shape the concrete to the specified and indicated cross section in one pass, and finish the surface and edges so that only a very minimum amount of hand finishing is required. Do not install dowels by dowel inserters attached to the paver or by any other means of inserting the dowels into the plastic concrete. If a keyway is required, install a **26 gauge** thick metal keyway liner as the keyway is extruded. Protect the keyway liner to remain in place and become part of the joint.

### 3.4 JOINTS

#### 3.4.1 Contraction Joints

Hold dowels and tie bars in longitudinal and transverse contraction joints within the paving lane securely in place by means of rigid metal basket assemblies. Weld the dowels and tie bars to the assembly or hold firmly by mechanical locking arrangements that will prevent them from becoming distorted during paving operations. Anchor the basket assemblies securely in the proper location.

#### 3.4.2 Construction Joints - Fixed Form Paving

Install dowels and tie bars by the bonded-in-place method, supported by means of devices fastened to the forms. Do not permit installation by removing and replacing in preformed holes.

#### 3.4.3 Dowels Installed In Hardened Concrete

Install by bonding the dowels into holes drilled into the hardened concrete. Drill holes into the hardened concrete approximately  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch greater in diameter than the dowels. Bond the dowels in the drilled holes using epoxy resin injected at the back of the hole before installing the dowel and extruded to the collar during insertion of the dowel so as to completely fill the void around the dowel. Application by buttering the dowel is not permitted. Hold the dowels in alignment at the collar of the hole, after insertion and before the epoxy resin hardens, by means of a suitable metal or plastic collar fitted around the dowel. Check the vertical alignment of the dowels by placing the straightedge on the surface of the pavement over the top of the dowel and measuring the vertical distance between the straightedge and the beginning and ending point of the exposed part of the dowel. Where tie bars are required in longitudinal construction joints of slipform pavement, install bent tie bars at the paver, in front of the transverse screed or extrusion plate. If tie bars are required, construct a standard keyway and install the bent tie bars into the plastic concrete through a 26 gauge thick metal keyway liner. Do not install tie bars in preformed holes. Protect the keyway liner and maintain in place and become part of the joint. Before placement of the adjoining paving lane, straighten the tie bars, without spalling the concrete around the bar.

### 3.5 FINISHING CONCRETE

Start finishing operations immediately after placement of concrete. Use finishing machine, except hand finishing may be used in emergencies and for concrete slabs in inaccessible locations or of such shapes or sizes that machine finishing is impracticable. Immediately halt any operations which produce more than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch of mortar-rich surface (defined as deficient in plus U.S. No. 4 sieve size aggregate) and modify the equipment, mixture, or procedures. Finish pavement surface on both sides of a joint to the same grade. Finish formed joints from a securely supported transverse bridge. Provide hand finishing equipment for use at all times.

#### 3.5.1 Machine Finishing

Strike off and screed concrete to the required slope and cross-section by a power-driven transverse finishing machine. A transverse rotating tube

or pipe is not permitted. Maintain elevation of concrete such that, when consolidated and finished, pavement surface will be adequately consolidated and at the required grade. Equip finishing machine with a screed which is readily and accurately adjustable for changes in pavement slope and compensation for wear and other causes. Do not permit excessive operation over an area, which will result in an excess of mortar and water being brought to the surface.

#### 3.5.1.1 Equipment Operation

Maintain the travel of machine on the forms without lifting, wobbling, or other variation of the machine which tend to affect the precision of concrete finish. Keep the tops of the forms clean by a device attached to the machine. Maintain a uniform ridge of concrete ahead of the front screed for its entire length.

#### 3.5.1.2 Joint Finish

Before concrete is hardened, correct edge slump of pavement, exclusive of edge rounding, in excess of 0.25 inches. Finish concrete surface on each side of construction joints to the same plane, and correct deviations before newly placed concrete has hardened.

#### 3.5.1.3 Hand Finishing

Strike-off and screed surface of concrete to elevations slightly above finish grade so that when concrete is consolidated and finished, the pavement surface is at the indicated elevation. Vibrate entire surface until required compaction and reduction of surface voids is secured with a strike-off template. After initial finishing, further smooth and consolidate concrete by means of hand-operated longitudinal floats.

#### 3.5.2 Texturing

Before the surface sheen has disappeared and before the concrete hardens, provide a texture to the surface of the pavement as described herein. After curing is complete, thoroughly broom all textured surfaces to remove all debris. Finish the concrete in areas of recesses for tie-down anchors, lighting fixtures, and other outlets in the pavement to provide a surface of the same texture as the surrounding area.

##### 3.5.2.1 Burlap Drag Finish

Before concrete becomes non-plastic, finish the surface of the slab by dragging a strip of clean, wet burlap on the surface. Drag the surface so as to produce a finished surface with a fine granular or sandy texture without leaving disfiguring marks. Keep the burlap clean and saturated during use.

#### 3.5.3 Edging

At the time the concrete has attained a degree of hardness suitable for edging, carefully finish slab edges, including edges at formed joints, with an edge having a maximum radius of 1/8 inch. Clean by removing loose fragments and soupy mortar from corners or edges of slabs which have crumbled and areas which lack sufficient mortar for proper finishing. Refill voids solidly with a mixture of suitable proportions and consistency and refinish. Remove unnecessary tool marks and edges. Smooth remaining edges true to line.

### 3.6 CURING AND PROTECTION

Protect concrete adequately from injurious action by sun, rain, flowing water, frost, mechanical injury, tire marks and oil stains, and do not allow it to dry out from the time it is placed until the expiration of the minimum curing periods specified herein. Do not use membrane-forming compound on surfaces where its appearance would be objectionable, on surfaces to be painted, where coverings are to be bonded to concrete, or on concrete to which other concrete is to be bonded.

#### 3.6.1 Moist Curing

Maintain concrete to be moist-cured continuously wet for the entire curing period, or until curing compound is applied, commencing immediately after finishing. If forms are removed before the end of the curing period, provide curing on unformed surfaces, using suitable materials. Cure surfaces by ponding, by continuous sprinkling, by continuously saturated burlap or cotton mats, or by continuously saturated plastic coated burlap. Provide burlap and mats that are clean and free from any contamination and completely saturated before being placed on the concrete. Lap sheets to provide full coverage. Provide an approved work system to ensure that moist curing is continuous 24 hours per day and that the entire surface is wet.

#### 3.6.2 White-Burlap-Polyethylene Sheet

Wet entire exposed surface thoroughly with a fine spray of water, saturate burlap but do not have excessive water dripping off the burlap and then cover concrete with White-Burlap-Polyethylene Sheet, burlap side down. Lay sheets directly on concrete surface and overlap 12 inches. Make sheeting not less than 18 inches wider than concrete surface to be cured, and weight down on the edges and over the transverse laps to form closed joints. Repair or replace sheets when damaged during curing. Check daily to assure burlap has not lost all moisture. If moisture evaporates, resaturate burlap and re-place on pavement (limit re-saturation and re-placing to less than 10 minutes per sheet). Leave sheeting on concrete surface to be cured for at least 7 days.

#### 3.6.3 Liquid Membrane-Forming Compound Curing

Apply compound immediately after surface loses its water sheen and has a dull appearance and before joints are sawed. Agitate curing compound thoroughly by mechanical means during use and apply uniformly in a two-coat continuous operation by suitable power-spraying equipment. Apply a total coverage for the two coats at least one gallon of undiluted compound per 200 square feet to produce a uniform, continuous, coherent film that will not check, crack, or peel and free from pinholes or other imperfections. The application of curing compound by hand-operated, mechanical powered pressure sprayers is permitted only on odd widths or shapes of slabs and on concrete surfaces exposed by the removal of forms. When the application is made by hand-operated sprayers, apply a second coat in a direction approximately at right angles to the direction of the first coat. Apply an additional coat of compound immediately to areas where film is defective. Respray concrete surfaces that are subject to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after curing compound has been applied in the same manner.

#### 3.6.4 Protection of Treated Surfaces

After the initial saw cut is complete and the slurry has been removed, respray the area with curing compound or restore the white burlap polyethylene sheet to maintain a continuous curing environment in the area of the sawn joints. Keep concrete surfaces to which liquid membrane-forming compounds have been applied free from vehicular traffic and other sources of abrasion for not less than 72 hours. Foot traffic is allowed after 24 hours for inspection purposes. Maintain continuity of coating for entire curing period and repair damage to coating immediately.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.7.1 Sampling

Collect samples of fresh concrete in accordance with [ASTM C172/C172M](#) during each working day as required to perform tests specified herein. Make test specimens in accordance with [ASTM C31/C31M](#).

#### 3.7.2 Consistency Tests

Perform [concrete slump tests](#) in accordance with [ASTM C143/C143M](#). Take samples for slump determination from concrete during placement. Perform tests at the beginning of a concrete placement operation and for each batch (minimum) or every [20 cubic yards](#) (maximum) of concrete to ensure that specification requirements are met. In addition, perform tests each time test beams are made.

#### 3.7.3 Flexural Strength Tests

Test for [flexural strength](#) in accordance with [ASTM C78/C78M](#). Fabricate and cure four test specimens in accordance with [ASTM C31/C31M](#) for each set of tests. Test two specimens at 7 days, and the other two at 28 days. Concrete strength will be considered satisfactory when the minimum of the 28-day test results equals or exceeds the specified 28-day flexural strength, and no individual strength test is less than the tolerance indicated on Table 1. If the ratio of the 7-day strength test to the specified 28-day strength is less than 65 percent, make necessary adjustments for conformance. Fabricate, cure and test a minimum of one set of four beams for each shift of concrete placement. Remove concrete which is determined to be defective, based on the strength acceptance criteria therein, and replace with acceptable concrete.

#### 3.7.4 Air Content Tests

Test air-entrained concrete for [air content](#) at the same frequency as specified for slump tests. Determine percentage of air in accordance with [ASTM C231/C231M](#) on samples taken during placement of concrete in forms.

#### 3.7.5 Surface Testing

Use the profilograph method for all longitudinal testing, except for paving lanes less than [200 feet](#) in length. Use the straightedge method for transverse testing, for longitudinal testing where the length of each pavement lane is less than [200 feet](#), and at the ends of the paving limits for the project. Smoothness requirements do not apply over crowns, drainage structures, or similar penetrations. Maintain detailed notes of the testing results and submit a copy to the Government after each day's testing.

#### 3.7.5.1 Straightedge Testing Method

Test the surface of the pavement with the straightedge to identify all surface irregularities exceeding the tolerances specified in Table 1. Test the entire area of the pavement in both a longitudinal and a transverse direction on parallel lines approximately 15 feet apart. Hold the straightedge in contact with the surface and move ahead one-half the length of the straightedge for each successive measurement. Determine the amount of surface irregularity by placing the straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface, in the area between these two high points.

#### 3.7.5.2 "Bumps" (Must Grind Areas)

Reduce any bumps ("must grind" areas) shown on the profilograph trace which exceed 0.4 inch in height by diamond grinding in accordance with subparagraph Diamond Grinding until they do not exceed 0.3 inch when retested. Taper such diamond grinding in all directions to provide smooth transitions to areas not requiring diamond grinding.

#### 3.7.5.3 Diamond Grinding

Those performing diamond grinding are required to have a minimum of three years experience in diamond grinding of rigid concrete pavements. In areas not meeting the specified limits for surface smoothness and plan grade, reduce high areas to attain the required smoothness and grade, except as depth is limited below. Reduce high areas by diamond grinding the hardened concrete with an approved equipment after the concrete is at a minimum age of 14 days. Perform diamond grinding by sawing with an industrial diamond abrasive which is impregnated in the saw blades. Assemble the saw blades in a cutting head mounted on a machine designed specifically for diamond grinding that produces the required texture and smoothness level without damage to the concrete pavement or joint faces. Provide diamond grinding equipment with saw blades that are 1/8-inch wide, a minimum of 60 blades per 12 inches of cutting head width, and capable of cutting a path a minimum of 3 ft wide. Diamond grinding equipment that causes ravels, aggregate fractures, spalls or disturbance to the joints is not permitted. The maximum area corrected by diamond grinding the surface of the hardened concrete is 10 percent of the total area of a day's production. The maximum depth of diamond grinding is 1/4 inch. Provide diamond grinding machine equipped to flush and vacuum the pavement surface. Dispose of all debris from diamond grinding operations off Government property. Prior to diamond grinding, submit a [Diamond Grinding Plan](#) for review and approval. At a minimum, include the daily reports for the deficient areas, the location and extent of deficiencies, corrective actions, and equipment. Remove and replace all pavement areas requiring plan grade or surface smoothness corrections in excess of the limits specified in Table 1. Retexture pavement areas given a wire comb or tined texture, areas exceeding 25 square feet that have been corrected by diamond grinding by transverse grooving using an approved grooving machine of standard manufacture. Provide grooves that are 1/4 inch deep by 1/4 inch wide on 1-1/2 inch centers and carried into, and tapered to zero depth within the non-corrected surface, or match any existing grooves in the adjacent pavement. All areas in which diamond grinding has been performed are subject to the thickness tolerances specified in Table 1.

### 3.7.6 Plan Grade Testing and Conformance

Within 5 days after each day's paving, test the finished surface of the pavement area by running lines of levels at intervals corresponding with every longitudinal and transverse joint to determine the elevation at each joint intersection. Record the results of this survey and submit a copy to the Government at the completion of the survey.

### 3.7.7 Edge Slump

Test the pavement surface to determine edge slump immediately after the concrete has hardened sufficiently to permit walking thereon. Perform testing with a minimum 12 foot straightedge to reveal irregularities exceeding the edge slump tolerance specified in Table 1. Determine the vertical edge slump at each free edge of each slipformed paving lane constructed. Place the straightedge transverse to the direction of paving and the end of the straightedge located at the edge of the paving lane. Record measurements at 5 to 10 foot spacings, as directed, commencing at the header where paving was started. Initially record measurements at 5 foot intervals in each lane. When no deficiencies are present after 5 measurements, the interval may be increased. The maximum interval is 10 feet. When any deficiencies exist, return the interval to 5 feet. In addition to the transverse edge slump determination above, at the same time, record the longitudinal surface smoothness of the joint on a continuous line 1 inch back from the joint line using the minimum 12 foot straightedge advanced one-half its length for each reading. Perform other tests of the exposed joint face to ensure that a uniform, true vertical joint face is attained. Properly reference all recorded measurements in accordance with paving lane identification and stationing, and submit a report within 24 hours after measurement is made. Identify areas requiring replacement within the report.

### 3.7.8 Test for Pavement Thickness

Take full depth cores of 4 inch diameter of concrete pavement every 1,000 square feet in accordance with ASTM C42/C42M. Measure thickness in accordance with ASTM C1542/C1542M. Record and submit testing, inspection, and evaluation of each core for surface paste, uniformity of aggregate distribution, segregation, voids, cracks, and depth of reinforcement or dowel (if present). Moisten the core with water to visibly expose the aggregate and take a minimum of three photographs of the sides of the core, rotating the core approximately 120 degrees between photographs. Include a ruler for scale in the photographs. Submit plan view of location for each core.

### 3.7.9 Reinforcement

Inspect reinforcement prior to installation to verify it is free of loose flaky rust, loose scale, oil, mud, or other objectionable material.

### 3.7.10 Dowels

Inspect dowel placement prior to placing concrete to verify that dowels are of the size indicated, and are spaced, aligned and painted and oiled as specified. Do not permit dowels to exceed the tolerances shown in paragraph: DOWEL BARS.

-- End of Section --



SECTION 32 16 19

CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS AND SIDEWALKS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 182 (2005; R 2017) Standard Specification for  
Burlap Cloth Made from Jute or Kenaf and  
Cotton Mats

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C31/C31M (2021a) Standard Practice for Making and  
Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field

ASTM C94/C94M (2021a) Standard Specification for  
Ready-Mixed Concrete

ASTM C143/C143M (2020) Standard Test Method for Slump of  
Hydraulic-Cement Concrete

ASTM C171 (2020) Standard Specification for Sheet  
Materials for Curing Concrete

ASTM C172/C172M (2017) Standard Practice for Sampling  
Freshly Mixed Concrete

ASTM C173/C173M (2016) Standard Test Method for Air  
Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the  
Volumetric Method

ASTM C231/C231M (2017a) Standard Test Method for Air  
Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the  
Pressure Method

ASTM C309 (2019) Standard Specification for Liquid  
Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing  
Concrete

ASTM C920 (2018) Standard Specification for  
Elastomeric Joint Sealants

ASTM D1751 (2018) Standard Specification for  
Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for  
Concrete Paving and Structural  
Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient  
Bituminous Types)

ASTM D1752 (2018) Standard Specification for  
Preformed Sponge Rubber, Cork and Recycled  
PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete  
Paving and Structural Construction

ASTM D5893/D5893M (2016) Standard Specification for Cold  
Applied, Single Component, Chemically  
Curing Silicone Joint Sealant for Portland  
Cement Concrete Pavements

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC A117.1 COMM (2017) Standard And Commentary Accessible  
and Usable Buildings and Facilities

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Concrete

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Quality Control

1.3 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS, AND MACHINES

1.3.1 General Requirements

Plant, equipment, machines, and tools used in the work will be subject to approval and must be maintained in a satisfactory working condition at all times. Use equipment capable of producing the required product, meeting grade controls, thickness control and smoothness requirements as specified. Discontinue using equipment that produces unsatisfactory results. Allow the Contracting Officer access at all times to the plant and equipment to ensure proper operation and compliance with specifications.

1.3.2 Slip Form Equipment

Slip form paver or curb forming machines, will be approved based on trial use on the job and must be self-propelled, automatically controlled, crawler mounted, and capable of spreading, consolidating, and shaping the plastic concrete to the desired cross section in one pass.

1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Placing During Cold Weather

Do not place concrete when the air temperature reaches 40 degrees F and is falling, or is already below that point. Placement may begin when the air temperature reaches 35 degrees F and is rising, or is already above 40 degrees F. Make provisions to protect the concrete from freezing during

the specified curing period. If necessary to place concrete when the temperature of the air, aggregates, or water is below 35 degrees F, placement and protection must be approved in writing. Approval will be contingent upon full conformance with the following provisions. Prepare and protect the underlying material so that it is entirely free of frost when the concrete is deposited. Heat mixing water and aggregates as necessary to result in the temperature of the in-place concrete being between 50 and 85 degrees F. Methods and equipment for heating must be approved. Use only aggregates that are free of ice, snow, and frozen lumps before entering the mixer. Provide covering or other means as needed to maintain the concrete at a temperature of at least 50 degrees F for not less than 72 hours after placing, and at a temperature above freezing for the remainder of the curing period.

#### 1.4.2 Placing During Warm Weather

The temperature of the concrete as placed must not exceed 85 degrees F except where an approved retarder is used. Cool the mixing water and aggregates as necessary to maintain a satisfactory placing temperature. The placing temperature must not exceed 95 degrees F at any time.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONCRETE

Provide concrete conforming to the applicable requirements of ASTM C94/C94M except as otherwise specified. Concrete must have a minimum compressive strength of 3500 psi at 28 days. Size of aggregate must not exceed 1-1/2 inches. Submit copies of certified delivery tickets for all concrete used in the construction.

##### 2.1.1 Air Content

Use concrete mixtures that have an air content by volume of concrete of 5 to 7 percent, based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

##### 2.1.2 Slump

Use concrete with a slump of 3 inches plus or minus 1 inch for hand placed concrete or 1 inch plus or minus 1/2 inch for slipformed concrete as determined in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M.

#### 2.2 CONCRETE CURING MATERIALS

##### 2.2.1 Impervious Sheet Materials

Use impervious sheet materials conforming to ASTM C171, type optional, except that polyethylene film, if used, must be white opaque.

##### 2.2.2 Burlap

Use burlap conforming to AASHTO M 182.

##### 2.2.3 White Pigmented Membrane-Forming Curing Compound

Use white pigmented membrane-forming curing compound conforming to ASTM C309, Type 2.

## 2.3 CONCRETE PROTECTION MATERIALS

Use concrete protection materials consisting of a linseed oil mixture of equal parts, by volume, of linseed oil and either mineral spirits, naphtha, or turpentine. At the option of the Contractor, commercially prepared linseed oil mixtures, formulated specifically for application to concrete to provide protection against the action of deicing chemicals may be used, except that emulsified mixtures are not acceptable.

## 2.4 JOINT FILLER STRIPS

### 2.4.1 Contraction Joint Filler for Curb and Gutter

Use hard-pressed fiberboard contraction joint filler for curb and gutter.

### 2.4.2 Expansion Joint Filler, Premolded

Unless otherwise indicated, use 1/2 inch thick premolded expansion joint filler conforming to ASTM D1751 or ASTM D1752.

## 2.5 JOINT SEALANTS

Use cold-applied joint sealant conforming to ASTM C920 or ASTM D5893/D5893M.

## 2.6 FORM WORK

Design and construct form work to ensure that the finished concrete will conform accurately to the indicated dimensions, lines, and elevations, and within the tolerances specified. Use wood or steel forms that are straight and of sufficient strength to resist springing during depositing and consolidating concrete.

### 2.6.1 Wood Forms

Use forms that are surfaced plank, 2 inches nominal thickness, straight and free from warp, twist, loose knots, splits or other defects. Use forms with a nominal length of 10 feet. Radius bends may be formed with 3/4 inch boards, laminated to the required thickness.

### 2.6.2 Steel Forms

Use channel-formed sections with a flat top surface and welded braces at each end and at not less than two intermediate points. Use forms with interlocking and self-aligning ends. Provide flexible forms for radius forming, corner forms, form spreaders, and fillers as needed. Use forms with a nominal length of 10 feet and that have a minimum of 3 welded stake pockets per form. Use stake pins consisting of solid steel rods with chamfered heads and pointed tips designed for use with steel forms.

### 2.6.3 Sidewalk Forms

Use sidewalk forms that are of a height equal to the full depth of the finished sidewalk.

### 2.6.4 Curb and Gutter Forms

Use curb and gutter outside forms that have a height equal to the full depth of the curb or gutter. Use rigid forms for curb returns, except that benders or thin plank forms may be used for curb or curb returns with

a radius of 10 feet or more, where grade changes occur in the return, or where the central angle is such that a rigid form with a central angle of 90 degrees cannot be used. Back forms for curb returns may be made of 1-1/2 inch benders, for the full height of the curb, cleated together. In lieu of inside forms for curbs, a curb "mule" may be used for forming and finishing this surface, provided the results are approved.

## 2.7 Detectable Warning System

Detectable Warning Systems shown on the Contract plans are to meet requirements of ICC A117.1 COMM - Section 705.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

Construct subgrade to the specified grade and cross section prior to concrete placement.

#### 3.1.1 Sidewalk Subgrade

Place and compact the subgrade in accordance with Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK. Test the subgrade for grade and cross section with a template extending the full width of the sidewalk and supported between side forms.

#### 3.1.2 Curb and Gutter Subgrade

Place and compact the subgrade in accordance with Section 32 11 23 AGGREGATE BASE COURSES. Test the subgrade for grade and cross section by means of a template extending the full width of the curb and gutter. Use subgrade materials equal in bearing quality to the subgrade under the adjacent pavement.

#### 3.1.3 Maintenance of Subgrade

Maintain subgrade in a smooth, compacted condition in conformity with the required section and established grade until the concrete is placed. The subgrade must be in a moist condition when concrete is placed. Prepare and protect subgrade so that it is free from frost when the concrete is deposited.

### 3.2 FORM SETTING

Set forms to the indicated alignment, grade and dimensions. Hold forms rigidly in place by a minimum of 3 stakes per form placed at intervals not to exceed 4 feet. Use additional stakes and braces at corners, deep sections, and radius bends, as required. Use clamps, spreaders, and braces where required to ensure rigidity in the forms. Remove forms in a manner that will not injure the concrete. Do not use bars or heavy tools against the concrete when removing the forms. Promptly and satisfactorily repair concrete found to be defective after form removal. Clean forms and coat with form oil each time before concrete is placed. Wood forms may, instead, be thoroughly wetted with water before concrete is placed, except that with probable freezing temperatures, oiling is mandatory.

#### 3.2.1 Sidewalks

Set forms for sidewalks with the upper edge true to line and grade with an allowable tolerance of 1/8 inch in any 10 foot long section. After forms

are set, grade and alignment must be checked with a 10 foot straightedge. Sidewalks must have a transverse slope as indicated. Do not remove side forms less than 12 hours after finishing has been completed.

### 3.2.2 Curbs and Gutters

Remove forms used along the front of the curb not less than 2 hours nor more than 6 hours after the concrete has been placed. Do not remove forms used along the back of curb until the face and top of the curb have been finished, as specified for concrete finishing. Do not remove gutter forms while the concrete is sufficiently plastic to slump in any direction.

## 3.3 SIDEWALK CONCRETE PLACEMENT AND FINISHING

### 3.3.1 Formed Sidewalks

Place concrete in the forms in one layer. When consolidated and finished, the sidewalks must be of the thickness indicated. Use a strike-off guided by side forms after concrete has been placed in the forms to bring the surface to proper section to be compacted. Consolidate concrete by tamping and spading or with an approved vibrator. Finish the surface to grade with a strike off.

### 3.3.2 Concrete Finishing

After straightedging, when most of the water sheen has disappeared, and just before the concrete hardens, finish the surface with a wood or magnesium float or darby to a smooth and uniformly fine granular or sandy texture free of waves, irregularities, or tool marks. Produce a scored surface by brooming with a fiber-bristle brush in a direction transverse to that of the traffic, followed by edging.

### 3.3.3 Edge and Joint Finishing

Finish all slab edges, including those at formed joints, with an edger having a radius of  $1/8$  inch. Edge transverse joints before brooming. Eliminate the flat surface left by the surface face of the edger with brooming. Clean and solidly fill corners and edges which have crumbled and areas which lack sufficient mortar for proper finishing with a properly proportioned mortar mixture and then finish.

### 3.3.4 Surface and Thickness Tolerances

Finished surfaces must not vary more than  $5/16$  inch from the testing edge of a 10-foot straightedge. Permissible deficiency in section thickness will be up to  $1/4$  inch.

## 3.4 CURB AND GUTTER CONCRETE PLACEMENT AND FINISHING

### 3.4.1 Formed Curb and Gutter

Place concrete to the required section in a single lift. Consolidate concrete using approved mechanical vibrators. Curve shaped gutters must be finished with a standard curb "mule".

### 3.4.2 Curb and Gutter Finishing

Approved slipformed curb and gutter machines may be used in lieu of hand placement.

### 3.4.3 Concrete Finishing

Float and finish exposed surfaces with a smooth wood float until true to grade and section and uniform in texture. Brush floated surfaces with a fine-hair brush using longitudinal strokes. Round the edges of the gutter and top of the curb with an edging tool to a radius of  $1/2$  inch.

Immediately after removing the front curb form, rub the face of the curb with a wood or concrete rubbing block and water until blemishes, form marks, and tool marks have been removed. Brush the front curb surface, while still wet, in the same manner as the gutter and curb top. Finish the top surface of gutter to grade with a wood float.

### 3.4.4 Joint Finishing

Finish curb edges at formed joints as indicated.

### 3.4.5 Surface and Thickness Tolerances

Finished surfaces must not vary more than  $1/4$  inch from the testing edge of a 10-foot straightedge. Permissible deficiency in section thickness will be up to  $1/4$  inch.

## 3.5 SIDEWALK JOINTS

Construct sidewalk joints to divide the surface into rectangular areas. Space transverse contraction joints at a distance equal to the sidewalk width or 5 feet on centers, whichever is less, and continuous across the slab. Construct longitudinal contraction joints along the centerline of all sidewalks 10 feet or more in width. Construct transverse expansion joints at sidewalk returns and opposite expansion joints in adjoining curbs. Where the sidewalk is not in contact with the curb, install transverse expansion joints as indicated. Form expansion joints around structures and features which project through or into the sidewalk pavement, using joint filler of the type, thickness, and width indicated. Expansion joints are not required between sidewalks and curb that abut the sidewalk longitudinally.

### 3.5.1 Sidewalk Contraction Joints

Form contraction joints in the fresh concrete by cutting a groove in the top portion of the slab to a depth of at least one-fourth of the sidewalk slab thickness. Unless otherwise approved or indicated, either use a jointer to cut the groove or saw a groove in the hardened concrete with a power-driven saw. Construct sawed joints by sawing a groove in the concrete with a  $1/8$  inch blade. Provide an ample supply of saw blades on the jobsite before concrete placement is started. Provide at least one standby sawing unit in good working order at the jobsite at all times during the sawing operations.

### 3.5.2 Sidewalk Expansion Joints

Form expansion joints using  $1/2$  inch joint filler strips. Joint filler in expansion joints surrounding structures and features within the sidewalk may consist of preformed filler material conforming to ASTM D1752 or building paper. Hold joint filler in place with steel pins or other devices to prevent warping of the filler during floating and finishing. Immediately after finishing operations are completed, round joint edges using an edging tool having a radius of  $1/8$  inch. Remove any concrete over

the joint filler. At the end of the curing period, clean the top of expansion joints and fill with cold-applied joint sealant. Use joint sealant that is gray or stone in color. Thoroughly clean the joint opening before the sealing material is placed. Do not spill sealing material on exposed surfaces of the concrete. Apply joint sealing material only when the concrete at the joint is surface dry and atmospheric and concrete temperatures are above 50 degrees F. Immediately remove any excess material on exposed surfaces of the concrete and clean the concrete surfaces.

### 3.6 CURB AND GUTTER JOINTS

Construct curb and gutter joints at right angles to the line of curb and gutter.

#### 3.6.1 Contraction Joints

Construct contraction joints directly opposite contraction joints in abutting portland cement concrete pavements and spaced so that monolithic sections between curb returns will not be less than 5 feet nor greater than 15 feet in length.

- a. Construct contraction joints (except for slip forming) by means of 1/8 inch thick separators and of a section conforming to the cross section of the curb and gutter. Remove separators as soon as practicable after concrete has set sufficiently to preserve the width and shape of the joint and prior to finishing.
- b. When slip forming is used, cut the contraction joints in the top portion of the gutter/curb hardened concrete in a continuous cut across the curb and gutter, using a power-driven saw. Cut the contraction joint to a depth of at least one-fourth of the gutter/curb depth using a 1/8 inch saw blade.

#### 3.6.2 Expansion Joints

Form expansion joints by means of preformed expansion joint filler material cut and shaped to the cross section of curb and gutter. Construct expansion joints in curb and gutter directly opposite expansion joints of abutting portland cement concrete pavement using the same type and thickness of joints as joints in the pavement. Where curb and gutter do not abut portland cement concrete pavement, provide expansion joints at least 1/2 inch in width at intervals not less than 30 feet nor greater than 120 feet. Seal expansion joints immediately following curing of the concrete or as soon thereafter as weather conditions permit. Seal expansion joints and the top 1 inch depth of curb and gutter contraction-joints with joint sealant. Thoroughly clean the joint opening before the sealing material is placed. Do not spill sealing material on exposed surfaces of the concrete. Concrete at the joint must be surface dry and atmospheric and concrete temperatures must be above 50 degrees F at the time of application of joint sealing material. Immediately remove excess material on exposed surfaces of the concrete and clean concrete surfaces.

### 3.7 CURING AND PROTECTION

#### 3.7.1 General Requirements

Protect concrete against loss of moisture and rapid temperature changes



for at least 7 days from the beginning of the curing operation. Protect unhardened concrete from rain and flowing water. All equipment needed for adequate curing and protection of the concrete must be on hand and ready for use before actual concrete placement begins. Protect concrete as necessary to prevent cracking of the pavement due to temperature changes during the curing period.

#### 3.7.1.1 Mat Method

Cover the entire exposed surface with two or more layers of burlap. Overlap mats at least 6 inches. Thoroughly wet the mat with water prior to placing on concrete surface and keep the mat continuously in a saturated condition and in intimate contact with concrete for not less than 7 days.

#### 3.7.1.2 Impervious Sheeting Method

Wet the entire exposed surface with a fine spray of water and then cover with impervious sheeting material. Lay sheets directly on the concrete surface with the light-colored side up and overlapped 12 inches when a continuous sheet is not used. Use sheeting that is not less than 18 inches wider than the concrete surface to be cured. Secure sheeting using heavy wood planks or a bank of moist earth placed along edges and laps in the sheets. Satisfactorily repair or replace sheets that are torn or otherwise damaged during curing. Sheeting must remain on the concrete surface to be cured for not less than 7 days.

#### 3.7.1.3 Membrane Curing Method

Apply a uniform coating of white-pigmented membrane-curing compound to the entire exposed surface of the concrete as soon after finishing as the free water has disappeared from the finished surface. Coat formed surfaces immediately after the forms are removed and in no case longer than 1 hour after the removal of forms. Do not allow concrete surface to dry before application of the membrane. If drying has occurred, moisten the surface of the concrete with a fine spray of water and apply the curing compound as soon as the free water disappears. Apply curing compound in two coats by hand-operated pressure sprayers at a coverage of approximately 200 square feet/gallon for the total of both coats. Apply the second coat in a direction approximately at right angles to the direction of application of the first coat. The compound must form a uniform, continuous, coherent film that will not check, crack, or peel and must be free from pinholes or other imperfections. If pinholes, abrasion, or other discontinuities exist, apply an additional coat to the affected areas within 30 minutes. Respray concrete surfaces that are subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after the curing compound has been applied by the method and at the coverage specified above. Respray areas where the curing compound is damaged by subsequent construction operations within the curing period. Take precautions necessary to ensure that the concrete is properly cured at sawed joints, and that no curing compound enters the joints. Tightly seal the top of the joint opening and the joint groove at exposed edges before the concrete in the region of the joint is resprayed with curing compound. Use a method used for sealing the joint groove that prevents loss of moisture from the joint during the entire specified curing period. Provide approved standby facilities for curing concrete pavement at a location accessible to the jobsite for use in the event of mechanical failure of the spraying equipment or other conditions that might prevent correct application of the membrane-curing compound at the proper time. Adequately protect concrete surfaces to which membrane-curing compounds have been applied during the entire curing period from pedestrian and

vehicular traffic, except as required for joint-sawing operations and surface tests, and from other possible damage to the continuity of the membrane.

### 3.7.2 Backfilling

After curing, remove debris and backfill, grade, and compact the area adjoining the concrete to conform to the surrounding area in accordance with lines and grades indicated.

### 3.7.3 Protection

Protect completed concrete from damage until accepted. Repair damaged concrete and clean concrete discolored during construction. Remove and reconstruct concrete that is damaged for the entire length between regularly scheduled joints. Refinishing the damaged portion will not be acceptable. Dispose of removed material as directed.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Submit copies of all test reports within 24 hours of completion of the test.

### 3.8.1 General Requirements

Perform the inspection and tests described and meet the specified requirements for inspection details and frequency of testing. Based upon the results of these inspections and tests, take the action and submit reports as required below, and additional tests to ensure that the requirements of these specifications are met.

### 3.8.2 Concrete Testing

#### 3.8.2.1 Strength Testing

Take concrete samples in accordance with [ASTM C172/C172M](#) not less than once a day nor less than once for every 250 cubic yards of concrete placed. Mold cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C31/C31M](#) for strength testing by an approved laboratory. Each strength test result must be the average of 2 test cylinders from the same concrete sample tested at 28 days, unless otherwise specified or approved. Concrete specified on the basis of compressive strength will be considered satisfactory if the averages of all sets of three consecutive strength test results equal or exceed the specified strength, and no individual strength test result falls below the specified strength by more than 500 psi.

#### 3.8.2.2 Air Content

Determine air content in accordance with [ASTM C173/C173M](#) or [ASTM C231/C231M](#). Use [ASTM C231/C231M](#) with concretes and mortars made with relatively dense natural aggregates. Make two tests for air content on randomly selected batches of each class of concrete placed during each shift. Make additional tests when excessive variation in concrete workability is reported by the placing foreman or the Government inspector. Notify the placing foreman if results are out of tolerance. The placing foreman must take appropriate action to have the air content corrected at the plant. Additional tests for air content will be performed on each truckload of material until such time as the air content is within the tolerance specified.

### 3.8.2.3 Slump Test

Perform two slump tests on randomly selected batches of each class of concrete for every 250 cubic yards, or fraction thereof, of concrete placed during each shift. Perform additional tests when excessive variation in the workability of the concrete is noted or when excessive crumbling or slumping is noted along the edges of slip-formed concrete.

### 3.8.3 Thickness Evaluation

Determine the anticipated thickness of the concrete prior to placement by passing a template through the formed section or by measuring the depth of opening of the extrusion template of the curb forming machine. If a slip form paver is used for sidewalk placement, construct the subgrade true to grade prior to concrete placement. The thickness will be determined by measuring each edge of the completed slab.

### 3.8.4 Surface Evaluation

Provide finished surfaces for each category of the completed work that are uniform in color and free of blemishes and form or tool marks.

## 3.9 SURFACE DEFICIENCIES AND CORRECTIONS

### 3.9.1 Thickness Deficiency

When measurements indicate that the completed concrete section is deficient in thickness by more than 1/4 inch the deficient section will be removed, between regularly scheduled joints, and replaced.

### 3.9.2 High Areas

In areas not meeting surface smoothness and plan grade requirements, reduce high areas either by rubbing the freshly finished concrete with carborundum brick and water when the concrete is less than 36 hours old or by grinding the hardened concrete with an approved surface grinding machine after the concrete is 36 hours old or more. The area corrected by grinding the surface of the hardened concrete must not exceed 5 percent of the area of any integral slab, and the depth of grinding must not exceed 1/4 inch. Remove and replace pavement areas requiring grade or surface smoothness corrections in excess of the limits specified.

### 3.9.3 Appearance

Exposed surfaces of the finished work will be inspected by the Contracting Officer and deficiencies in appearance will be identified. Remove and replace areas which exhibit excessive cracking, discoloration, form marks, or tool marks or which are otherwise inconsistent with the overall appearances of the work.

## 3.10 DETECTABLE WARNING SYSTEM

Install Detectable Warning Systems required by Contract plans in accordance with ICC A117.1 COMM, Section 705, and by manufacturers' installation instructions.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 31 13.53

HIGH-SECURITY FENCES (CHAIN LINK AND ORNAMENTAL) AND GATES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A116	(2011) Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated, Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric
ASTM A121	(2013) Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016a) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A392	(2011a; R 2017) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM A702	(2013) Standard Specification for Steel Fence Posts and Assemblies, Hot Wrought
ASTM A780/A780M	(2020) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM A824	(2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Marcellled Tension Wire for Use With Chain Link Fence
ASTM C94/C94M	(2021a) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM F567	(2014a) Standard Practice for Installation of Chain Link Fence
ASTM F626	(2014) Standard Specification for Fence Fittings
ASTM F883	(2013) Padlocks
ASTM F900	(2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Industrial and Commercial Swing Gates
ASTM F1043	(2018) Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Fence Framework
ASTM F1083	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe,

Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc Coated (Galvanized)  
Welded, for Fence Structures

ASTM F1184

(2016) Industrial and Commercial  
Horizontal Slide Gates

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fence Installation Drawings; G

### SD-03 Product Data

Fabric

Posts

Post Caps

Sleeves

Tension Wire

Barbed Wire

Barbed Wire Supporting Arms

Latches

Hinges

Stops

Keepers

Rollers

Padlocks

Wire Ties

### SD-07 Certificates

Chain Link Fence

Fabric

Barbed Wire

Gate Hardware and Accessories

Concrete

### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to site in an undamaged condition. Store materials elevated off of the ground to protect against oxidation caused by ground contact.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPONENTS

#### 2.1.1 Chain Link Fence Fabric

##### 2.1.1.1 General

Provide [ASTM A392](#), Class 1, zinc-coated steel wire with minimum coating weight of [1.2 ounces](#) of zinc per square [foot](#) of coated surface. Fabricate fence [fabric](#) of 9 gauge wire woven in [2 inch](#) mesh conforming to [ASTM A116](#). Provide twisted and barbed fabric on the top selvage and knuckled on the bottom selvage.

##### 2.1.2 Posts

##### 2.1.2.1 Metal Posts for [Chain Link Fence](#)

Provide posts conforming to [ASTM F1083](#), zinc-coated. Group IA, with external coating Type A steel pipe. Group IC steel pipe, zinc-coated with external coating Type A or Type B and Group II, roll-formed steel sections, meeting the strength and coating requirements of [ASTM F1043](#) and [ASTM A702](#). Provide sizes as shown on the drawings. Use line posts and terminal (corner, gate, and pull) posts of the same designation throughout the fence. Provide gate post for the gate type specified subject to the limitation specified in [ASTM F900](#) and/or [ASTM F1184](#).

##### 2.1.2.2 Accessories

- a. Provide accessories conforming to [ASTM F626](#). Coat ferrous accessories with zinc.
- b. Provide truss rods (with turnbuckles or other means of adjustment)for each terminal post.
- c. Provide [barbed wire supporting arms](#) of the 45 degree outward angle 3-strand arm type and of the design required for the post furnished. Secure arms by riveting.
- d. Furnish [post caps](#) in accordance with manufacturer's standard accessories.
- e. Provide 9 gauge steel tie wire for attaching fabric to rails, braces, and posts and match the coating of the fence fabric. Use tie wires for attaching fabric to [tension wire](#) on high security fences made from [16 gage](#) stainless steel. Provide double loop tie wires [6.5 inches](#) in length. Provide miscellaneous hardware coatings which conform to [ASTM A153/A153M](#) unless modified.

### 2.1.3 Chain Link Gates

#### 2.1.3.1 Gate Assembly

Provide gate assembly conforming to [ASTM F900](#) and/or [ASTM F1184](#) of the type and swing shown. Provide gate frames conforming to strength and coating requirements of [ASTM F1083](#) for Group IA, steel pipe, with external coating Type A, nominal pipe size (NPS) 1-1/2. Provide gate frames conforming to strength and coating requirements of [ASTM F1043](#), for Group IC, steel pipe with external coating Type A or Type B, nominal pipe size (NPS) 1-1/2. Use gate fabric that matches the specified chain link fabric.

#### 2.1.3.2 Gate Leaves

For gate leaves, more than [8 feet](#) wide, provide either intermediate members and diagonal truss rods or tubular members as necessary to provide rigid construction, free from sag or twist. For gate leaves less than [8 feet](#) wide, provide truss rods or intermediate braces. Provide intermediate braces on all gate frames with an electro-mechanical lock. Attach fabric to the gate frame by method standard with the manufacturer. Welding is not an acceptable method for attaching fabric to gate frames.

#### 2.1.3.3 Gate Hardware and Accessories

Submit manufacturer's catalog data. Furnish and install [latches](#), [hinges](#), [stops](#), [keepers](#), [rollers](#), and other hardware items as required for the operation of the gate. All items are required to match the material characteristics of the fence system being installed. Arrange latches for padlocking so that the padlock will be accessible from both sides of the gate. Provide stops for holding the gates in the open position. For high security applications, extend each end member of gate frames sufficiently above the top member to carry three strands of barbed wire in horizontal alignment with barbed wire strands on the fence.

### 2.1.4 Padlocks

Provide padlocks conforming to [ASTM F883](#), Type P01, Options A, B, and Gand, Grade 6. Size [1-3/4 inch](#). Key all padlocks into master key system as specified in Section [08 71 00](#) DOOR HARDWARE.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

### 2.2.1 Wire

#### 2.2.1.1 Wire Ties

Submit samples as specified. Provide wire ties constructed of the same material as the fencing fabric.

#### 2.2.1.2 Barbed Wire

Provide barbed wire conforming to [ASTM A121](#) zinc-coated, Type Z, Class 3, or aluminum-coated, Type A, with 12.5 gauge wire with 14 gauge, round, 4-point barbs spaced no more than [5 inches](#) apart.

#### 2.2.1.3 Tension Wire

Provide Type I or Type II tension wire, Class 4 coating, in accordance

with [ASTM A824](#).

### 2.2.2 Concrete

[ASTM C94/C94M](#), using [3/4 inch](#) maximum size aggregate, and having minimum compressive strength of [3000 psi](#) at 28 days. Use grout consisting of one part portland cement to three parts clean, well-graded sand and the minimum amount of water to produce a workable mix.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

Perform complete installation conforming to [ASTM F567](#).

#### 3.1.1 Line and Grade

Install fence to the lines and grades indicated. Clear the area on either side of the fence line to the extent indicated. Space line posts equidistant at intervals not exceeding [10 feet](#). Set terminal (corner, gate, and pull) posts whenever abrupt changes in vertical and horizontal alignment are encountered. Provide continuous fabric between terminal posts; however, ensure runs between terminal posts do not exceed [500 feet](#). Repair any damage to galvanized surfaces, including welding, with paint containing zinc dust in accordance with [ASTM A780/A780M](#).

#### 3.1.2 Excavation

Excavate holes to depths indicated. Clear all post holes of loose material and spread waste material where directed. Eliminate ground surface irregularities along the fence line to the extent necessary to maintain a [2 inch](#) clearance between the bottom of the fabric and finish grade.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### 3.2.1 Installation Drawings

Submit complete [Fence Installation Drawings](#) for review and approval by the Contracting Officer prior to shipment. Submit drawing details that include, but are not limited to the following information: Fence Installation Drawings, Location of gate, corner, end, and pull posts, Gate Assembly, Turnstiles, and [Gate Hardware and Accessories](#). Install fence system per approved drawings.

#### 3.2.2 Security Fencing

Install new security fencing, remove existing security fencing, and perform related work to provide continuous security for facility. Schedule and fully coordinate work with Contracting Officer.

#### 3.2.3 Posts

##### 3.2.3.1 Earth and Bedrock

- a. Set posts plumb and in alignment. Except where solid rock is encountered, set posts in concrete to the depth indicated on the drawings. Where solid rock is encountered with no overburden, set posts to a minimum depth of [18 inches](#) in rock. Where solid rock is



covered with an overburden of soil or loose rock, set posts to the minimum depth indicated on the drawing unless a penetration of 18 inches in solid rock is achieved before reaching the indicated depth, in which case terminate depth of penetration. Grout all portions of posts set in rock.

- b. Set portions of posts not set in rock in concrete from the rock to ground level. Set posts in holes not less than the diameter shown on the drawings. Make diameters of holes in solid rock at least 1 inch greater than the largest cross section of the post. Thoroughly consolidate concrete and grout around each post, free of voids and finished to form a dome. Allow concrete and grout to cure for 72 hours prior to attachment of any item to the posts. Group II line posts may be mechanically driven, for temporary fence construction only, if rock is not encountered. Set driven posts to a minimum depth of 3 feet and protect with drive caps when setting.
- c. Test fence post rigidity by applying a 50 pound force on the post, perpendicular to the fabric, at 5 feet above ground. Ensure post movement measured at the point where the force is applied is less than or equal to 3/4 inch from the relaxed position. Test every tenth post for rigidity. When a post fails this test, make further tests on the next four posts on either side of the failed post. Remove, replace, and retest all failed parts at the Contractor's expense.

#### 3.2.3.2 Concrete Slabs and Walls

When installed in concrete slabs or walls, set posts in zinc-coated sleeves, to a minimum depth of 12 inches. Fill sleeve joint with lead, nonshrink grout, or other approved material. Set posts for support of removable fence sections in sleeves that provide a tight sliding joint and hold posts aligned and plumb without use of lead or setting material.

#### 3.2.4 Rails

Bolt bottom rail to double rail ends and securely fasten double rail ends to the posts. Peen bolts to prevent easy removal. Install bottom rail before chain link fabric.

#### 3.2.5 Fabric

- a. Set fabric height at 7 feet.
- b. Install chain link fabric on the side of the post indicated. Attach fabric to terminal posts with stretcher bars and tension bands. Space bands at approximately 15 inch intervals. Install fabric and pull taut to provide a smooth and uniform appearance free from sag, without permanently distorting the fabric diamond or reducing the fabric height. Fasten fabric to line posts at approximately 15 inch intervals and fastened to all rails and tension wires at approximately 24 inch intervals.
- c. Cut fabric by untwisting and removing pickets. Accomplish splicing by weaving a single picket into the ends of the rolls to be joined. Install the bottom of the fabric 2 plus or minus 1/2 inch above the ground.
- d. After the fabric installation is complete, exercise the fabric by applying a 50 pound push-pull force at the center of the fabric

between posts; use a 30 pound pull at the center of the panel to ensure fabric deflection of not more than 2.5 inches when pulling fabric from the post side of the fence. Every second fence panel is required to meet this requirement. Resecure and retest all failed panels at the Contractor's expense.

### 3.2.6 Supporting Arms

Install barbed wire supporting arms and barbed wire as indicated on the drawings and as recommended by the manufacturer. Anchor supporting arms with 3/8 inch diameter plain pin rivets or, at the Contractor's option, with studs driven by low-velocity explosive-actuated tools for steel, wrought iron, ductile iron, or malleable iron. Do not use explosive-actuated tool to drive studs into gray iron or other material that can be fractured. Use a minimum of two studs per support arm. Pull barbed wire taut and attach to the arms with clips or other means that will prevent easy removal.

### 3.2.7 Gate Installation

- a. Install gates at the locations shown. Mount gates to swing as indicated. Install latches, stops, and keepers as required.
- b. Attach padlocks to gates or gate posts with chains. Weld or otherwise secure hinge pins, and hardware assembly to prevent removal.

### 3.2.8 Grounding

- a. Ground fencing as indicated on drawings and specified.
- b. Ground fences crossed by overhead powerlines in excess of 600 volts and ground all electrical equipment attached to the fence.
- c. Ground fences on each side of all gates, at each corner, at the closest approach to each building located within 50 feet of the fence, and where the fence alignment changes more than 15 degrees. Ensure grounding locations are located no more than 650 feet apart. Bond each gate panel with a flexible bond strap to its gate post. Ground fences crossed by powerlines of 600 volts or more at or near the point of crossing and at distances not exceeding 150 feet on each side of crossing.
- d. Provide ground conductor consisting of No. 8 AWG solid copper wire. Use grounding electrodes that measures 3/4 inch by 10 foot long and are a copper-clad steel rod. Drive electrodes into the earth so that the top of the electrode is at least 6 inches below the grade. Where driving is impracticable, bury electrodes a minimum of 12 inches deep and radially from the fence. Install the top of the electrode to be less than 2 feet or more than 8 feet from the fence. Clamp ground conductor to the fence and electrodes with bronze grounding clamps to create electrical continuity between fence posts, fence fabric, and ground rods. Measure total resistance of the fence to ground and ensure it is not greater than 25 ohms.

## 3.3 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

### 3.3.1 Cleanup

Remove waste fencing materials and other debris from the work site each

Automated Multipurpose Training Range (MPTR)  
Fort Liberty, North Carolina

23B3001

workday.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 32 23.13

SEGMENTAL CONCRETE BLOCK RETAINING WALL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 252 (2009; R 2017) Standard Specification for  
Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Pipe

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C136/C136M (2019) Standard Test Method for Sieve  
Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates

ASTM C1372 (2017) Standard Specification for Dry-Cast  
Segmental Retaining Wall Units

ASTM D448 (2012; R 2017) Standard Classification for  
Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge  
Construction

ASTM D698 (2012; E 2014; E 2015) Laboratory  
Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using  
Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/cu. ft.  
(600 kN-m/cu. m.))

ASTM D1556/D1556M (2015; E 2016) Standard Test Method for  
Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place  
by Sand-Cone Method

ASTM D1557 (2012; E 2015) Standard Test Methods for  
Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of  
Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000  
ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup>) (2700 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>)

ASTM D2487 (2017; E 2020) Standard Practice for  
Classification of Soils for Engineering  
Purposes (Unified Soil Classification  
System)

ASTM D2488 (2017; E 2018) Standard Practice for  
Description and Identification of Soils  
(Visual-Manual Procedure)

ASTM D4595 (2017) Standard Test Method for Tensile  
Properties of Geotextiles by the  
Wide-Width Strip Method

ASTM D4873/D4873M	(2017) Standard Guide for Identification, Storage, and Handling of Geosynthetic Rolls and Samples
ASTM D6938	(2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
NATIONAL CONCRETE MASONRY ASSOCIATION (NCMA)	
NCMA TR127B	(2010) Design Manual for Segmental Retaining Walls

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

### 1.2.1 Blocks

Blocks, for the purpose of this specification, refers to segmental concrete retaining wall units.

### 1.2.2 Drainage Aggregate

Granular soil or aggregate placed within, between, and/or immediately behind segmental concrete units.

### 1.2.3 Fill

Soil or aggregate placed in, behind, or below the wall.

### 1.2.4 Reinforced Fill

Soil placed and compacted within the neat line volume of reinforcement as outlined on the plans.

### 1.2.5 Retained Fill

Soil placed and compacted behind the reinforced fill.

### 1.2.6 Reinforcement

Geogrid or a geotextile products manufactured for use as reinforcing in segmental block retaining walls. Steel products are not allowed.

### 1.2.7 Long Term Design Strength

The long term design strength (LTDS) is:

$$LTDS = T_{ult} / (RF_D * RF_{ID} * RF_{CR})$$

where:

$T_{ult}$  is the ultimate strength  
 $RF_D$  is the reduction factor for chemical and biological durability  
 $RF_{ID}$  is the reduction factor for installation damage  
 $RF_{CR}$  is the reduction factor for creep

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL

PROCEDURES:

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop Drawings; G

#### SD-03 Product Data

Segmental Concrete Units; G

#### SD-04 Samples

Segmental Concrete Units; G

Geogrid Reinforcement; G

#### SD-05 Design Data

Survey And Grade Results; G

Calculations; G

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Soil Testing; G

#### SD-07 Certificates

Supplier Qualifications

Manufacturer's Representative

Geogrid Reinforcement; G

### 1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

#### 1.4.1 Contractor Qualifications

Furnish components and equipment from a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of similar material, design and workmanship. Submit descriptive technical data on the blocks, wall caps, masonry adhesive, reinforcement, geotextile filter materials and equipment to be used. Include all material properties specified under PART 2 PRODUCTS. Include a copy of any standard manufacturer's warranties for the products. Provide standard products with satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years before award of this contract. Submit documentation to demonstrate the job foreman or the company directly responsible for the wall installation has completed a minimum of 10 segmental concrete retaining wall projects and has at least 2 years experience.

#### 1.4.2 Supplier Qualifications

Submit documentation showing that the installer and supplier meet the qualifications listed. To be considered acceptable, demonstrate experience in the supply of similar size and types of segmental retaining walls on previous projects.

#### 1.4.3 Manufacturer's Representative

Provide a qualified and experienced representative from the block or reinforcement manufacturer who is available to consult and conduct site visits on an as-needed basis during the wall construction at least once during construction.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Check products upon delivery to ensure that the proper material has been received and is undamaged. For geosynthetics, follow the guidelines presented in ASTM D4873/D4873M.

#### 1.5.1 Segmental Concrete Units and Wall Caps

Protect blocks from damage and exposure to cement, paint, excessive mud, and like materials. Check materials upon delivery to assure that the block dimensions are within the tolerances specified.

#### 1.5.2 Geosynthetic Labeling

Label each roll with the manufacturer's name, product identification, roll dimensions, lot number, and date manufactured.

#### 1.5.3 Geosynthetic Handling

Handle and unload geosynthetic rolls by hand, or with load carrying straps, a fork lift with a stinger bar, or an axial bar assembly. Do not drag, lift by one end, lift by cables or chains, or drop to the ground any geosynthetic rolls.

#### 1.5.4 Geosynthetic Storage

Protect geosynthetics from cement, paint, excessive mud, chemicals, sparks and flames, temperatures in excess of 160 degrees F, and any other environmental condition that may degrade the physical properties. If stored outdoors, elevate rolls from the ground surface. Protect geosynthetics, except for extruded grids, with an opaque waterproof cover. Deliver to the site in a dry and undamaged condition. Do not expose geotextiles to direct sunlight for more than 7 days.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

This work element includes engineering services in addition to the construction requirements. Provide engineering services that include design of the wall in accordance with the National Concrete Masonry Association design method, and providing shop drawings indicating all features of the complete design. Provide engineering services that include analysis of the wall for all modes of stability and shop drawings indicating all features of the complete design.

The contract drawings show the minimum design requirements for the retaining walls. The contractor shall furnish and install walls meeting the most stringent requirements.

#### 2.1.1.1 Design Requirements

Complete all stability analyses in accordance with either the NCMA TR127B. Design the segmental retaining wall system under the direction of a professional engineer registered in the state of construction. Affix engineer's stamp to all drawings and calculations.

#### 2.1.1.2 Design Parameters

Include in all calculations the determination of long term design strength of reinforcement specific to this project in accordance with the NCMA TR127B. Base the ultimate strength or index strength on the minimum average roll value tensile strength of the product using the wide width strength test in ASTM D4595. Submit design calculations, including computer output data, program documentation, and all items described under PARAGRAPH: SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALL DESIGN. Itemize list of each reduction factor and include backup data to justify each reduction factor included in the calculations. Include analysis of all failure modes listed in the NCMA TR127B. Include a clear outline of material properties and assumptions.

##### 2.1.2.1 Basis of Design

- a. Concrete blocks - 2' x 2' x 6' as detailed on the contract drawings.
- b. Geogrid - StrataGrid SG150 and SG200.
- c. Reinforced/Retained/Foundation Soil - Unit weight of 125 pcf and friction angle of 30 degrees.
- d. Leveling Pad Soil - Unit weight of 130 pcf and friction angle of 40 degrees.
- e. Unit-Unit Interface Properties - Since no interface shear testing has been performed for this block, the unit/unit interface shear properties assume a block to block interface friction of 0.6 or a corresponding friction angle of 31 degrees. It is also assumed that the concrete alignment key at the top of the block will provide a shear force of at least 100 lb/ft.
- f. Geosynthetic-SRW Unit Connection Strength - Since no connection strength testing has been performed for this block/geogrid combination, the connection strength properties assume a positive connection, meaning that the geogrid will rupture before pulling out of the block. The rupture strength is assumed to be the long-term design strength of the geogrid as calculated for the non-seismic condition.
- g. No live load or dead load surcharge.
- h. Wall inclination - 0 degrees.
- i. Peak Ground Acceleration, PGA - 0.085g.

##### 2.1.2.2 External Stability Design Requirements

As a minimum requirement, ensure the length of the reinforcing at the base of the wall is no less than 0.7 times the total height of the blocks.

##### 2.1.2.3 Seismic Design Requirements

Complete the seismic stability analysis in accordance with NCMA TR127B.



#### 2.1.2.4 Global Stability Design Requirements

Use reinforcement lengths at least as long as the lengths shown on the drawings.

#### 2.1.3 Layout

Show on the [shop drawings](#) (fabrication and installation drawings) all information needed to fabricate and erect the walls including the leveling pad elevations; the shape and dimensions of wall elements; the number, size, type, and [details of the soil reinforcing system and anchorage](#); and identification of areas requiring coping. Include with the shop drawings all items described under paragraph SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALL DESIGN. If approved by the Contracting Officer, shop drawings may consist of marked up contract drawings showing exact dimensions for the blocks supplied, required coping, and other minor revisions. The design and layout of the internal reinforcement are subject to the following:

- a. Incorporate all features indicated in the contract documents in the final design and construction.
- b. The leveling pad elevations may vary, as long as they are no higher than the embedment depth profile.
- c. Run each reinforcement level as continuous as practical throughout the profile. If a geotextile filter is present, layout the reinforcement so that interference with the geotextile is minimized.
- d. Identify any reinforcement not placed with the machine direction as the design reinforcement direction on the shop drawings.
- e. Do not combine geogrid and geotextile, nor products from different manufacturers, within one wall. Limit the number of reinforcement products to avoid confusion in placement. For walls under 12 feet high, use reinforcement of the same grade and strength (i.e. design with one reinforcement strength).

### 2.2 COMPONENTS

#### 2.2.1 [Segmental Concrete Units](#)

The blocks specified herein are commonly referred to as "bin blocks", "mafia blocks", "knob blocks", or "wall blocks" by concrete companies and are normally cast from leftover concrete material. The concrete used to manufacture these blocks shall be minimum 3000 psi concrete mix at 28 days. Concrete shall meet the requirements of Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Precast blocks come in a variety of sizes, but the sizes indicated on the drawings are to be considered the minimum size block allowed on this project. Contractor shall provide lifting eyes similar to those shown on the drawings that are capable of sustaining loads associated with lifting and moving the blocks. Blocks placed as the top block shall be cast without the key and are called cap blocks. No other reinforcing is specifically required. Key design (used to lock the blocks together as they are stacked) may be modified to match the design of local pre-cast companies. Any modifications to the design of the blocks must be designed by a professional engineer in the state of construction.

### 2.2.2 Geogrid Reinforcement

Provide a geosynthetic manufactured for reinforcement applications consisting of a regular network of integrally connected polymer tensile elements with aperture geometry sufficient to permit significant mechanical interlock with the surrounding soil, aggregate, or other fill materials. Ensure the geogrid structure is dimensionally stable and able to retain its geometry under manufacture, transport and installation. Ensure the geogrid is manufactured with 100 percent virgin resin consisting of polyethylene, polypropylene, or polyester, and with a maximum of 5 percent in-plant regrind material. Provide polyester resin with a minimum molecular weight of 25,000 and a carboxyl end group number less than 30. Stabilize polyethylene and polypropylene with long term antioxidants.

### 2.2.3 Reinforcement Properties

The reinforcement indicated must meet the property requirements listed in Table 1. Reinforcement strength requirements represent minimum average roll values in the machine direction.

The reinforcement indicated must meet the property requirements listed below. Submit affidavit certifying that the reinforcement meets the project specifications. Ensure the affidavit is signed by an official authorized to certify on behalf of the manufacturer and is accompanied by a mill certificate that verifies physical properties were tested during manufacturing and lists the manufacturer's quality control testing. If the affidavit is dated after award of the contract and/or is not specific to the project, attach a statement certifying that the affidavit addressed to the wholesale company is representative of the material supplied. Include in the documents a statement confirming that all purchased resin used to produce reinforcement is virgin resin. Include in the mill certificate the tensile strength tested in accordance with [ASTM D4595](#). Reinforcement strength requirements represent minimum average roll values in the machine direction.

#### 2.2.3.1 Type 1 Geogrid

Type 1 geogrid shall meet the requirements of StrataGrid SG150 or approved equal with the following properties:

1. Tult = 1,875 lb/ft
2. RFD = 1.10
3. RFID = 1.25
4. RFCR = 1.65
5. Ci = 0.70
6. Cds = 0.70

#### 2.2.3.2 Type 2 Geogrid

Type 2 geogrid shall meet the requirements of StrataGrid SG200 or approved equal with the following properties:

1. Tult = 3,600 lb/ft
2. RFD = 1.10
3. RFID = 1.25
4. RFCR = 1.55
5. Ci = 0.70
6. Cds = 0.70

#### 2.2.3.3 Long Term Design Strength

Base the long term design strength on reduction factors for installation damage and durability that are applicable to the fill that will be used. Minimum reduction factors for durability include: 1.1 for polyethylene and polypropylene geosynthetics, 1.15 for coated polyester geogrids, and 1.6 for polyester geotextiles. Use a creep reduction factor consistent with the test procedure used for determining the ultimate strength.

#### 2.2.4 Geotextile Filter

Provide geotextiles meeting the requirements of Section 31 05 19.13 GEOTEXTILES FOR EARTHWORK.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

#### 2.3.1 Soils and Aggregates

For all material placed as fill, classify material by ASTM D2487 as GW, GP, GC, GM, SP, SM, SC, CL, ML, or SW. Ensure all material used is free of ice; snow; frozen earth; trash; debris; sod; roots; organic matter; contamination from hazardous, toxic or radiological substances; or stones larger than 3 inches in any dimension. Obtain material entirely from one borrow source, unless the Contracting Officer determines that quality control is adequate and the alternate source produces material that is similar in gradation, texture, and interaction with the reinforced and retained fill. Supply any testing required by the Contracting Officer to evaluate alternate sources. Provide materials of a character and quality satisfactory for the purpose intended.

##### 2.3.1.1 Drainage Aggregate

Meet the requirements of ASTM D448, size No.7.

##### 2.3.1.2 Aggregate Base Material

For the wall leveling pads, meet the requirements of Section 32 11 23 AGGREGATE BASE COURSES.

#### 2.3.2 Drainage Pipe

Provide corrugated polyethylene pipe drainage pipe meeting requirements of AASHTO M 252.

#### 2.3.3 COMPOSITE DRAINAGE BOARD

Composite drainage board shall have a minimum core thickness of 0.40 inch and a minimum flow capacity of 15 GPM per foot of width at 3600 PSF, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4716. Subject to compliance with requirements, drainage board shall be one of the following:

- a. Amerdrain 500, American Wick Drain
- b. Aquadrain 15X, CETCO Building Materials Group
- c. Battle Drain II, Thrace-LINQ
- d. C-Drain Sheet W-180, Contech Construction Products, Inc.
- e. MiraDRAIN 6000XL, Carlisle Coatings and Waterproofing

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

Examine site prior to installation. Perform classification of soil materials in accordance with ASTM D2488. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to revise the Contractor classifications. In the case of disagreement, the Contracting Officer's classification governs unless the soils are classified in accordance with ASTM D2487. All testing completed by the Contractor in conjunction with soil material classification is incidental to the contract work.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

Prepare the leveling pad and reinforced fill zone to bear on undisturbed native soils, or acceptably placed and compacted fill. In the event that it is necessary to remove material to a depth greater than specified or to place fill below the leveling pad not otherwise provided for in the contract, notify the Contracting Officer prior to work and an adjustment in the contract price will be considered in accordance with the contract.

#### 3.2.1 Excavation

Excavate foundation soil as required for leveling pad dimensions and reinforcement placement shown on the construction drawings. Stockpile material for backfilling in a neat and orderly manner at a sufficient distance from the banks of the excavation to avoid overloading and to prevent slides or caving. Perform excavation and fill in a manner and sequence that will provide proper drainage at all times. Dispose of surplus material, waste material, and material that does not meet specifications, including any soil which is disturbed by the Contractor's operations or softened due to exposure to the elements and water.

#### 3.2.2 Stockpiles

Keep stockpiles of all material to be incorporated into the work in a neat and well drained condition, giving due consideration to drainage at all times. Clear, grade and seal the ground surface at stockpile locations. Stockpile topsoil separately from suitable backfill material. Protect stockpiles of aggregates and granular soils from contamination which may destroy the quality and fitness of the stockpiled material. If the Contractor fails to protect the stockpiles, and any material becomes frozen, saturated, intermixed with other materials, or otherwise out of specification or unsatisfactory for the use intended, then remove and replace affected materials with new material from approved sources at no additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.2.3 Leveling Pad

##### 3.2.3.1 Aggregate Base Leveling Pad

Compact the subgrade below the leveling pad 95% laboratory maximum density. Place the aggregate base material in lifts not exceeding 6 inches. If the subgrade or aggregate base pumps, bleeds water, or cracks during compaction, notify the Contracting Officer and, if no other changes are directed, replace the aggregate with a concrete leveling pad.

### 3.2.3.2 Concrete Leveling Pad

Ensure tolerances in screeding are sufficient to place the blocks directly on the leveling pad without mortar, pointing, or leveling course between the blocks and leveling pad.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

### 3.3.1 Block Installation

Construct the wall system components in accordance with the approved shop drawings. Do not incorporate damaged blocks into the retaining wall.

- a. Begin block placement at the lowest leveling pad elevation. Place the blocks in full contact with the leveling pad. Place each course of block sequentially for the entire wall alignment to maintain a level working platform for layout of reinforcement and placement of fill.
- b. Survey the grade and alignment of the first course and furnish the [Survey and Grade Results](#) to the Contracting Officer prior to placing the second course. Include a string line, offset from a base line, or suitable provisions that can be reproduced for quality assurance.
- c. Place the blocks with the edges in tight contact. Maintain the vertical joints with a minimum [4 inch](#) overlap on the underlying block. Adjust coping as required to keep block alignment with a full depth saw cut. No splitting is allowed.
- d. Stacking of blocks prior to filling any lower course of block with drainage aggregate is not allowed.

### 3.3.2 Reinforcement Installation

- a. Before placing reinforcement, compact the subgrade or subsequent lift of fill and grade level with the top of the blocks. Ensure the surface is smooth and free of windrows, sheepsfoot impressions, and rocks.
- b. Place reinforcement at the elevations and to the extent shown on the construction drawings and the approved shop drawing submittal. Orient reinforcement with the design strength axis perpendicular to the wall face. Spliced connections between shorter pieces of reinforcement are not allowed. Place reinforcement strips immediately next to adjacent strips to provide 100 percent coverage.
- c. Install the reinforcement in tension. Pull the reinforcement taut and anchor with staples or stakes prior to placing the overlying lift of fill. Pull the reinforcement to ensure tension is uniform along the length of the wall and consistent between layers.
- d. Cover all reinforcement completely with soil so that reinforcement panels do not contact in overlaps. Where the wall bends, place a veneer of fill to a nominal thickness of [3 inches](#) to separate overlapping reinforcement.

### 3.3.3 Fill Placement

- a. Complete fill placement, including drainage aggregate, to the top of each course of facing blocks prior to stacking the subsequent course

of blocks.

- b. Place reinforced fill from the wall back toward the fill area to ensure that the reinforcement remains taut. Place, spread, and compact fill in such manner that minimizes the development of wrinkles in or movement of the reinforcement.
- c. A minimum fill thickness of 6 inches is required prior to operation of vehicles over the reinforcement. Avoid sudden braking and sharp turning. Do not turn tracked equipment within the reinforced fill zone to prevent tracks from displacing the fill and damaging the reinforcement. Do not operate construction equipment directly upon the reinforcement as part of the planned construction sequence. Rubber tired equipment may operate directly on the reinforcement if: the Contractor submits information documenting testing of equipment operating on a similar geogrid product on similar soils, the travel is infrequent, equipment travels slow, turning is minimized, and no damage or displacement to the reinforcement is observed.
- d. Place and tamp drainage aggregate directly behind, between, and within the cells of the facing units. Achieve compaction of the drainage aggregate by at least two passes on each lift with a vibratory plate compactor. Take care not to contact or chip the blocks with the compactor. Compact aggregate placed within the block cores and recesses by hand tamping and rodding.
- e. At the end of each day, slope the last lift of fill away from the wall in a manner that will allow drainage and direct runoff away from the wall face.

#### 3.3.4 Compaction

Do not place fill on surfaces that contain mud, frost, organic soils, fill soils that have not met compaction requirements, or where the Contracting Officer determines that unsatisfactory material remains in or under the fill. Spread fill and compact in lifts not exceeding the height of one course of blocks.

Compact reinforced and retained fill to 95 percent of the Modified Proctor Density. Exercise care in the compaction process to avoid misalignment of the facing blocks. Do not use heavy compaction equipment (including vibratory drum rollers) within 10 feet from the wall face. The Contractor should consider building the target berms before the retaining wall so as not to displace the wall with the use of heavy compaction equipment including vibrating drum rollers.

##### 3.3.4.1 Degree of Compaction

Degree of compaction required is expressed as a percentage of the maximum density obtained by the test procedure presented in ASTM D698. The maximum density is hereafter abbreviated as the "Standard Proctor" value.

##### 3.3.4.2 Moisture Control

Maintain control of moisture in the fill to provide acceptable compaction. Do not disk and plow in the reinforced fill zone. Adjust moisture content of cohesive soils at the borrow source before placement. Add water directly to the reinforced fill zone only under conditions where the soil has sufficient porosity and capillarity to provide uniform

moisture throughout the fill during compaction.

### 3.3.5 Composite Drainage Board Placement

Composite drainage board shall be attached to blocks with contact adhesive, double-sided tape, or concrete nails, as recommended by the manufacturer.

Cut drainage board to fit between geogrid. Install drainage board so as to minimize space between boards across geogrid. Attempt to achieve contact between upper and lower boards to minimize intrusion of soil.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

### 3.4.1 Soil Testing

All testing expenses are the Contractor's responsibility. Inspect and approve testing laboratories in accordance with Section 01 45 00.00 10 QUALITY CONTROL prior to commencement of testing. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to direct the location and select the material for samples to be tested and to direct where and when moisture-density tests are performed. Use nuclear density testing equipment in general accordance with ASTM D6938.

#### 3.4.1.1 Transmittal

Submit test results to the Contracting Officer daily. Include test results as a part of contractor's daily report, taking care to note any deficiencies and ask for direction on corrective action required. Furnish of field testing results to the Contracting Officer on a frequent and regular basis, as directed.

#### 3.4.1.2 Corrective Action

Tests of materials which do not meet the contract requirements (failing test) do not count as part of the required testing. Retest each failure at the same location the failing test was taken. If testing indicates material does not meet the contract requirements, do not place the material represented by the failing test in the contract work or recompact the failing material. It is the responsibility of the Contracting Officer to determine quantity of material represented by the failing test up to the quantity represented by the testing frequency. The Contractor may increase testing frequency in the vicinity of a failing test in order to reduce removal requirements, as approved by the Contracting Officer. Such increases in testing frequency are at the Contractor's expense and at no additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.4.1.3 Testing Schedule

##### 3.4.1.3.1 Moisture-Density Relations

ASTM D1557. One test for each material variation.

##### 3.4.1.3.2 In-Place Densities

ASTM D1556/D1556M or ASTM D6938. Not less than 1 test for each 2 vertical feet per 300 linear feet along wall face.

#### 3.4.1.3.3 Sieve Analysis

ASTM C136/C136M. Drainage Aggregate, 1 test for each source.

#### 3.4.2 Drainage Pipe

Place drain pipe as indicated on the drawings. Lay drain lines to true grades and alignment with a continuous fall in the direction of flow. Keep the interior of the pipe clean from soil and debris; and cap open ends as necessary.

#### 3.4.3 Construction Tolerances

##### 3.4.3.1 Horizontal

Ensure the top of wall is within 3 inches of the plan location.

##### 3.4.3.2 Vertical

Ensure the top of wall elevations is within 0.1 feet above to 0.1 feet below the prescribed top of wall elevations indicated.

##### 3.4.3.3 Plumbness and Alignment

No wall batter is allowed. The wall must be fully vertical.

##### 3.4.3.4 Block Defects

The blocks will be accepted on the basis of tolerances specified in ASTM C1372.

##### 3.4.3.5 Block Gaps

Ensure gaps between adjacent blocks do not exceed 1/8 inches.

#### 3.5 PROTECTION

Protect work against damage from subsequent operations. Remove disturbed or displaced blocks and replace to conform to all requirements of this section. Do not incorporate damaged material into the wall. Upon completion of wall erection, clean the wall face to remove any loose soil deposits or stains.

-- End of Section --



SECTION 32 92 19

SEEDING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C602 (2020) Agricultural Liming Materials

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

AMS Seed Act (1940; R 1988; R 1998) Federal Seed Act

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Stand of Turf

95 percent ground cover of the established species.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK applies to this section for pesticide use and plant establishment requirements, with additions and modifications herein.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Wood Cellulose Fiber Mulch

Fertilizer

Include physical characteristics, and recommendations.

SD-07 Certificates

State Certification and Approval for Seed

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

### 1.5.1 Delivery

#### 1.5.1.1 Seed Protection

Protect from drying out and from contamination during delivery, on-site storage, and handling.

#### 1.5.1.2 Fertilizer and Lime Delivery

Deliver to the site in original, unopened containers bearing manufacturer's chemical analysis, name, trade name, trademark, and indication of conformance to state and federal laws. Instead of containers, fertilizer and lime may be furnished in bulk with certificate indicating the above information.

### 1.5.2 Storage

#### 1.5.2.1 Seed, Fertilizer and Lime Storage

Store in cool, dry locations away from contaminants.

#### 1.5.2.2 Topsoil

Prior to stockpiling topsoil, treat growing vegetation with application of appropriate specified non-selective herbicide. Clear and grub existing vegetation three to four weeks prior to stockpiling topsoil.

#### 1.5.2.3 Handling

Do not drop or dump materials from vehicles.

## 1.6 TIME RESTRICTIONS AND PLANTING CONDITIONS

### 1.6.1 Restrictions

Do not plant when the ground is frozen, snow covered, muddy, or when air temperature exceeds 90 degrees Fahrenheit.

## 1.7 TIME LIMITATIONS

### 1.7.1 Seed

Apply seed within twenty four hours after seed bed preparation.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SEED

#### 2.1.1 Classification

Provide State-certified seed of the latest season's crop delivered in original sealed packages, bearing producer's guaranteed analysis for percentages of mixtures, purity, germination, weedseed content, and inert material. Label in conformance with AMS Seed Act and applicable state seed laws. Wet, moldy, or otherwise damaged seed will be rejected.

### 2.1.2 Seed Mixtures

<u>Season</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Common Name</u>	<u>Rate (lb/ac)</u>
Permanent (Cool)	1 September to 28 February	Kentucky 31 Tall Fescue	50
		Common Bermuda, hulled	25
		Common Bermuda, unhulled	25
Permanent (Warm)	1 March to 31 August	Kentucky 31 Tall Fescue	50
		Common Bermuda, hulled	50
Temporary (Cool)	1 September to 28 February	Winter Wheat	120
Temporary (Warm)	1 March to 31 August	German, Brown Top, or Fox Tail Millet	65

Proportion seed mixtures by weight. Temporary seeding must later be replaced by permanent season plantings for a permanent stand of grass. The same requirements of turf establishment for permanent seasons apply for temporary seeding.

### 2.2 TOPSOIL

Topsoil shall meet the requirements of Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK.

### 2.3 SOIL CONDITIONERS

Add conditioners to topsoil as required to bring into compliance with "composition" standard for topsoil as specified herein.

#### 2.3.1 Lime

Commercial grade dolomitic limestone containing a calcium carbonate equivalent (C.C.E.) as specified in ASTM C602 of not less than 100 percent.

#### 2.3.2 Aluminum Sulfate

Commercial grade.

### 2.4 FERTILIZER

#### 2.4.1 Granular Fertilizer

Organic or synthetic, granular controlled release fertilizer containing the following minimum percentages, by weight, of plant food nutrients:

- 10 percent available nitrogen
- 20 percent available phosphorus
- 20 percent available potassium

#### 2.4.2 Hydroseeding Fertilizer

Controlled release fertilizer, to use with hydroseeding and composed of pills coated with plastic resin to provide a continuous release of

nutrients for at least 6 months and containing the following minimum percentages, by weight, of plant food nutrients.

- 10 percent available nitrogen
- 20 percent available phosphorus
- 20 percent available potassium

## 2.5 MULCH

Mulch must be free from noxious weeds, mold, and other deleterious materials.

### 2.5.1 Straw

Stalks from oats, wheat, rye, barley, or rice. Furnish in air-dry condition and of proper consistency for placing with commercial mulch blowing equipment. Straw must contain no fertile seed.

### 2.5.2 Hay

Hay shall be native hay, sudan-grass hay, broomsedge hay, or other herbaceous mowings. Air-dry condition and of proper consistency for placing with commercial mulch blowing equipment. Hay must be sterile, containing no fertile seed.

### 2.5.3 Wood Cellulose Fiber Mulch

Use recovered materials of either paper-based (100 percent post-consumer content) or wood-based (100 percent total recovered content) hydraulic mulch. Processed to contain no growth or germination-inhibiting factors and dyed an appropriate color to facilitate visual metering of materials application. Composition on air-dry weight basis: 9 to 15 percent moisture, pH range from 5.5 to 8.2. Use with hydraulic application of grass seed and fertilizer.

## 2.6 WATER

Source of water must be approved by Contracting Officer and of suitable quality for irrigation, containing no elements toxic to plant life.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

#### 3.1.1 EXTENT OF WORK

Provide soil preparation prior to planting (including soil conditioners as required), fertilizing, seeding, and surface topdressing of all newly graded finished earth surfaces, unless indicated otherwise, and at all areas inside or outside the limits of construction that are disturbed by the Contractor's operations.

##### 3.1.1.1 Topsoil

Provide 4 inches of off-site topsoil or on-site topsoil to meet indicated finish grade. After areas have been brought to indicated finish grade, incorporate fertilizer, pH adjusters, soil conditioners, etc. into soil a minimum depth of 4 inches by disking, harrowing, tilling or other method approved by the Contracting Officer. Remove debris and stones larger than

3/4 inch in any dimension remaining on the surface after finish grading. Correct irregularities in finish surfaces to eliminate depressions. Protect finished topsoil areas from damage by vehicular or pedestrian traffic.

#### 3.1.1.2 Soil Conditioner Application Rates

Apply soil conditioners at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site. For bidding purposes only apply at rates for the following:

Lime 3000 pounds per acre.

#### 3.1.1.3 Fertilizer Application Rates

Apply fertilizer at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site. For bidding purposes only apply at rates for the following:

Organic Granular Fertilizer 850 pounds per acre.

Synthetic Fertilizer 850 pounds per acre.

Hydroseeding Fertilizer 850 pounds per acre.

The fertilizer should be either slow time release or applied in two applications, half at time of planting and second half after permanent seed germinates.

### 3.2 SEEDING

#### 3.2.1 Seed Application Seasons and Conditions

Immediately before seeding, restore soil to proper grade. Do not seed when ground is muddy frozen, snow covered, or in an unsatisfactory condition for seeding. If special conditions exist that may warrant a variance in the above seeding dates or conditions, submit a written request to the Contracting Officer stating the special conditions and proposed variance. Apply seed within twenty four hours after seedbed preparation. Sow seed by approved sowing equipment. Sow one-half the seed in one direction, and sow remainder at right angles to the first sowing.

#### 3.2.2 Seed Application Method

Seeding method must be broadcasted and drop seeding, drill seeding, or hydroseeding.

##### 3.2.2.1 Broadcast and Drop Seeding

Seed must be uniformly broadcast at the rates per paragraph entitled "Seed Mixtures". Use broadcast or drop seeders. Sow one-half the seed in one direction, and sow remainder at right angles to the first sowing. Cover seed uniformly to a maximum depth of 1/4 inch in clay soils and 1/2 inch in sandy soils by means of spike-tooth harrow, cultipacker, raking or other approved devices.

##### 3.2.2.2 Drill Seeding

Seed must be drilled at the rates per paragraph entitled "Seed Mixtures".

Use cultipacker seeders or grass seed drills. Drill seed uniformly to average depth of [1/2 inch](#).

#### 3.2.2.3 Hydroseeding

First, mix water and fiber. Wood cellulose fiber, paper fiber, or recycled paper must be applied as part of the hydroseeding operation. Fiber must be added at [2,000 pounds, dry weight, per acre](#) or the manufacturer's recommendation, whichever is greater. Then add and mix seed and fertilizer to produce a homogeneous slurry. Seed must be mixed to ensure broadcasting at the rates per paragraph entitled "Seed Mixtures". When hydraulically sprayed on the ground, material must form a blotter like cover impregnated uniformly with grass seed.

Hydroseeding should be applied in two applications. The first application will consist of 1/3 of the mulch and 2/3 of the seed. The second application will consist of 2/3 of the mulch and 1/3 of the seed. The mulch will include a tackifier and will be applied at the rate of 2,000 pounds per acre or the manufacturer's recommendation, whichever is greater.

#### 3.2.3 Mulching

##### 3.2.3.1 Hay or Straw Mulch

Hay or straw mulch must be spread uniformly at the rate of [2 tons per acre leaving no bare spot larger than a quarter](#). Mulch must be spread by hand, blower-type mulch spreader, or other approved method. Mulching must be started on the windward side of relatively flat areas or on the upper part of steep slopes, and continued uniformly until the area is covered. The mulch must not be bunched or clumped. Sunlight must not be completely excluded from penetrating to the ground surface. All areas installed with seed must be mulched on the same day as the seeding. Mulch must be anchored immediately following spreading.

##### 3.2.3.2 Mechanical Anchor

Mechanical anchor must be a V-type-wheel land packer; a scalloped-disk land packer designed to force mulch into the soil surface; or other suitable equipment. Not permitted on slopes steeper than 3:1 H:V.

##### 3.2.3.3 Asphalt Adhesive Tackifier

Asphalt adhesive tackifier must be sprayed at a rate between [10 to 13 gallons per 1000 square feet](#). Sunlight must not be completely excluded from penetrating to the ground surface. Pay particular attention to the edges of areas, crests of ridges, and banks to prevent wind damage.

##### 3.2.3.4 Asphalt Adhesive Coated Mulch

Hay or straw mulch may be spread simultaneously with asphalt adhesive applied at a rate between [10 to 13 gallons per 1000 square feet](#), using power mulch equipment which must be equipped with suitable asphalt pump and nozzle. The adhesive-coated mulch must be applied evenly over the surface. Sunlight must not be completely excluded from penetrating to the ground surface.

#### 3.2.4 Rolling

Immediately after seeding, firm entire area except for slopes in excess of

3 to 1 with a roller not exceeding 90 pounds for each foot of roller width. If seeding is performed with cultipacker-type seeder or by hydroseeding, rolling may be eliminated.

### 3.2.5 Watering

Start watering areas seeded as required by temperature and wind conditions. Apply water at a rate sufficient to insure thorough wetting of soil to a depth of 2 inches without run off. During the germination process, seed is to be kept actively growing and not allowed to dry out.

### 3.3 PROTECTION OF TURF AREAS

Immediately after turfing, protect area against traffic and other use.

### 3.4 RESTORATION

Restore to original condition existing turf areas which have been damaged during turf installation operations at the Contractor's expense. Keep clean at all times at least one paved pedestrian access route and one paved vehicular access route to each building. Clean other paving when work in adjacent areas is complete.

### 3.5 MAINTENANCE

#### 3.5.1 Satisfactory Stand of Grass

A stand of turf is considered acceptable when the new growing spouts of permanent grass are visible at the surface showing not less than 20 seedlings of permanent grass at least 2 inches long in each square foot, where no gaps larger than 4 inches in diameter occur anywhere in the seeded area, and where the total bare spots do not exceed 2% of the total seeded area.

#### 3.5.2 Maintenance During Establishment Period

Maintenance of the seeded areas shall include protecting embankments and ditches from surface erosion; maintaining erosion control materials and mulch; protecting installed areas from traffic; mowing; watering; and post-fertilization.

#### 3.5.3 Mowing

The Contractor will mow all seeded areas on the project site to a height of 4 inches at the completion of this contract.

#### 3.5.4 Post-Fertilization

After the permanent grass has been accepted, and between the dates of 15 April and 15 October, apply 425 pounds of approved fertilizer per acre.

#### 3.5.5 Repair or Reinstall

Unsatisfactory stand of grass plants and mulch shall be repaired or reinstalled, and eroded areas shall be repaired until a satisfactory stand of grass results.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 33 40 00

STORMWATER UTILITIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A48/A48M	(2003; R 2021) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A536	(1984; R 2019; E 2019) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM B26/B26M	(2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings
ASTM C32	(2013; R 2017) Standard Specification for Sewer and Manhole Brick (Made from Clay or Shale)
ASTM C55	(2017) Standard Specification for Concrete Building Brick
ASTM C62	(2017) Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
ASTM C76	(2020) Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C76M	(2020) Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe (Metric)
ASTM C139	(2017) Standard Specification for Concrete Masonry Units for Construction of Catch Basins and Manholes
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C270	(2019a; E 2019) Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry



ASTM C425	(2021) Standard Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings
ASTM C443	(2020) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets
ASTM C443M	(2020) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets (Metric)
ASTM C478/C478M	(2020) Standard Specification for Circular Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections
ASTM C923/C923M	(2020) Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes and Laterals
ASTM C990	(2009; R 2019) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes, and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants
ASTM C990M	(2009; R 2019) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes, and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants (Metric)
ASTM D1751	(2018) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D1752	(2018) Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber, Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction
ASTM D3212	(2020) Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-07 Certificates

Hydrostatic Test on Watertight Joints; G

Frame and Cover or Gratings; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Placing Pipe and Box Culvert; G

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.3.1 Delivery and Storage

Inspect materials delivered to site for damage and unload and store materials with minimum handling. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep the inside of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris. Before, during, and after installation, protect plastic pipe and fittings from any environment that would result in damage or deterioration to the material. Keep a copy of the manufacturer's instructions available at the construction site at all times and follow these instructions unless directed otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Store solvents, solvent compounds, lubricants, elastomeric gaskets, and any similar materials required to install plastic pipe in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and discard if the storage period exceeds the recommended shelf life. Discard solvents in use when the recommended pot life is exceeded.

1.3.2 Handling

Handle materials in a manner that ensures delivery to the trench in sound, undamaged condition. Carry pipe to the trench.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE FOR CULVERTS AND STORM DRAINS

Pipe sizes for culverts and storm drains are indicated on the drawings.

2.1.1 Concrete Pipe

2.1.1.1 Reinforced Culvert and Storm Drain Pipe

Manufactured in accordance with and conforming to ASTM C76M ASTM C76, Class III unless otherwise noted on the contract drawings..

2.2 PIPE JOINTS

Provide joints that have been tested for and meet the requirements of paragraph HYDROSTATIC TEST ON WATERTIGHT JOINTS.

2.2.1 Concrete Pipe

2.2.1.1 Rubber Gasket Joints

Provide rubber gasket joints of a design and physical requirements conforming to ASTM C443.

2.2.1.2 Preformed Flexible Sealant Joints

Provide joints made with preformed flexible joint sealant conforming to ASTM C990.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

### 2.3.1 Concrete

Unless otherwise specified, provide concrete and reinforced concrete conforming to the requirements for 3000 [psi](#) concrete under Section [03 30 00](#) CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Provide air content by volume of concrete mixture, based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer, of 5 to 7 percent when maximum size of coarse aggregate exceeds [1-1/2 inches](#). Determine air content in accordance with [ASTM C231/C231M](#). Provide a minimum concrete covering over steel reinforcing of not less than [1 inch](#) thick for covers and not less than [1-1/2 inches](#) thick for walls and flooring. For concrete deposited directly against the ground, provide a covering thickness of at least [3 inches](#) between steel and ground. Provide expansion-joint filler material conforming to [ASTM D1751](#), or [ASTM D1752](#), or provide be resin-impregnated fiberboard conforming to the physical requirements of [ASTM D1752](#).

### 2.3.2 Mortar

Mortar is not allowed for pipe joints. Provide mortar for pipe connections to drainage structures conforming to [ASTM C270](#), Type M, except that the maximum placement time will be 1 hour. Provide a sufficient quantity of water in the mixture to produce a stiff workable mortar but in no case may the quantity exceed [5 gallons](#) of water per sack of cement. Use water that is clean and free of harmful acids, alkalis, and organic impurities. Use the mortar within 30 minutes after the ingredients are mixed with water.

### 2.3.3 Precast Concrete Segmental Blocks

Provide precast concrete segmental block conforming to [ASTM C139](#), not more than [8 inches](#) thick, not less than [8 inches](#) long, and of such shape that joints can be sealed effectively and bonded with cement mortar.

### 2.3.4 Brick

Provide brick conforming to [ASTM C62](#), Grade SW; [ASTM C55](#), Grade S-I or S-II; or [ASTM C32](#), Grade MS. Provide mortar for jointing and plastering consisting of one part portland cement and two parts fine sand. Lime may be added to the mortar in a quantity not more than 25 percent of the volume of cement. Provide joints that are completely filled and that are smooth and free from surplus mortar on the inside of the structure. Plaster brick structures with [1/2 inch](#) of mortar over the entire outside surface of the walls. Lay brick in stretcher courses with a header course every sixth course for square or rectangular structures. Lay brick radially with every sixth course a stretcher course for round structures.

### 2.3.5 Precast Reinforced Concrete Manholes

Provide precast reinforced concrete manholes conforming to [ASTM C478/C478M](#). Provide joints between precast concrete risers and tops that are made with flexible watertight, rubber-type gaskets meeting the requirements of paragraph PIPE JOINTS.

### 2.3.6 Frame and Cover or Gratings

Provide frame and cover or gratings made of cast gray iron, [ASTM A48/A48M](#), Class 35B; cast ductile iron, [ASTM A536](#), Grade 65-45-12; or cast aluminum,

ASTM B26/B26M, Alloy 356.0-T6.

#### 2.3.7 Steel Ladder

Provide a steel ladder where the depth of the storm drainage structure exceeds 12 feet. Provide ladders not less than 16 inches in width, with 3/4 inch diameter rungs spaced 12 inches apart. Provide two stringers that are a minimum 3/8 inch thick and 2-1/2 inches wide. Galvanize ladders and inserts after fabrication in conformance with ASTM A123/A123M.

#### 2.3.8 Resilient Connectors

Provide flexible, watertight connectors conforming to ASTM C923/C923M for connecting pipe to manholes and inlets.

### 2.4 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

#### 2.4.1 Hydrostatic Test on Watertight Joints

Perform a hydrostatic test on the watertight joint types as proposed. This test will be conducted at the plant or by an independent laboratory. Only one sample joint of each type needs testing; however, if the sample joint fails because of faulty design or workmanship, an additional sample joint may be tested.

##### 2.4.1.1 Concrete, Clay, PVC, PE, SRPE and PP Pipe

Provide joints in reinforced and nonreinforced concrete pipe meeting the performance requirements in ASTM C990M ASTM C990 or ASTM C443M ASTM C443. Provide joints in clay pipe meeting the test requirements in ASTM C425. Provide joints in PVC, PE, SRPE, and PP plastic pipe meeting the test requirements in ASTM D3212.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXCAVATION FOR PIPE CULVERTS, BOX CULVERTS, STORM DRAINS, AND DRAINAGE STRUCTURES

Excavate trenches, excavate for appurtenances and backfill for culverts and storm drains, in accordance with the applicable portions of Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK and the requirements specified below.

#### 3.1.1 Trenching

Excavate trenches to the width indicated on the drawings or as specified herein. Trench width should permit satisfactory jointing and thorough tamping of the bedding material under and around the pipe. Place sheeting and bracing, where required, within the trench width as specified, without any overexcavation.

#### 3.1.2 Removal of Rock

Replace rock in either ledge or boulder formation with suitable materials to provide a compacted earth cushion. Provide a compacted earth cushion between unremoved rock and the pipe with a thickness of at least 8 inches or 1/2 inch for each foot of fill over the top of the pipe, whichever is greater, but not more than three-fourths the nominal diameter of the pipe. Maintain the cushion under the bell as well as under the straight portion of the pipe where bell-and-spigot pipe is used. Provide a

compacted earth cushion between unremoved rock and the box culvert of at least 8 inches in thickness for concrete box culverts. Excavate rock as specified and defined in Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK.

### 3.1.3 Removal of Unstable Material

Where wet or otherwise unstable soil incapable of properly supporting the pipe or box culvert, as determined by the Contracting Officer, is unexpectedly encountered in the bottom of a trench, remove such material to the depth required and replace with select granular material to the proper grade. Compact select granular material as specified in paragraph FINAL BACKFILL. When removal of unstable material is due to the fault or neglect of the Contractor while performing shoring and sheeting, water removal, or other specified requirements, perform such removal and replacement at no additional cost to the Government.

## 3.2 BEDDING AND INITIAL BACKFILL

Provide a firm bedding foundation of uniform density throughout the entire length of the pipe or box culvert.

### 3.2.1 Concrete Pipe

Use select granular material conforming to Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK for haunch and bedding material. Compact haunch and outer bedding to at least 90 percent laboratory maximum density and place in layers not exceeding 6 inch loose thickness for compaction by hand-operated compactors and 200 mm 8 inches for other than hand-operated machines. Loosely place middle bedding and do not compact. After the pipe has been properly bedded, place haunch material, at a moisture content that will facilitate compaction, evenly along both sides of the pipe and thoroughly compact each layer with mechanical tampers or rammers to the springline of the pipe. Thoroughly compact the haunch material under the haunches of the pipe. For bell and spigot pipe, form a depression in bedding material for bells so entire barrel of pipe is uniformly supported. Minimize the length, depth, and width of bell depressions to that required for properly making the particular type of joint.

#### 3.2.1.1 Trenches

After the pipe has been properly bedded and haunch material placed to the midpoint (springline) of the pipe, backfill and compact the remainder of the trench by spreading and rolling or compacting by mechanical rammers or tampers in layers not exceeding 6 inches. Test for density as necessary to ensure conformance to the compaction requirements specified below. Leave untreated sheeting in place beneath structures or pavements.

#### 3.2.1.2 Fill Sections

For pipe placed in fill sections, uniformly spread fill material longitudinally on both sides of the pipe in layers not exceeding 6 inches in compacted depth, and compact by rolling parallel with pipe or by mechanical tamping or ramming. Prior to commencing normal filling operations, the crown width of the fill at a height of 12 inches above the top of the pipe must extend a distance of not less than twice the outside pipe diameter on each side of the pipe or 12 feet, whichever is less. After the backfill has reached at least 12 inches above the top of the pipe, place and thoroughly compact the remainder of the fill in layers not exceeding 8 inches.

### 3.3 PLACING PIPE AND BOX CULVERT

Submit printed copies of the pipe or box culvert manufacturer's recommended pipe or box culvert installation procedures prior to installation. Thoroughly examine each section of pipe or box culvert before being laid; do not use defective or damaged pipe. Protect plastic pipe, excluding SRPE pipe, from exposure to direct sunlight prior to laying, if necessary to maintain adequate pipe stiffness and meet installation deflection requirements. Lay pipelines to the grades and alignment indicated. Provide proper facilities for lowering sections of pipe into trenches. Do not lay pipe in water or when trench conditions or weather are unsuitable for such work. Divert drainage or dewater trenches during construction as necessary.

#### 3.3.1 Concrete, Clay, PVC, Ribbed PVC, Ductile Iron Pipe

Lay pipe proceeding upgrade with spigot ends of bell-and-spigot pipe and tongue ends of tongue-and-groove pipe pointing in the direction of the flow.

#### 3.3.2 Elliptical and Elliptical Reinforced Concrete Pipe

Place pipe so that the manufacturer's reference lines, designating the top of the pipe, are within 5 degrees of a vertical plane through the longitudinal axis of the pipe. Prevent damage to or misalignment of the pipe during backfilling operations.

#### 3.3.3 Multiple Culverts

Where multiple lines of pipe are installed, adjacent sides of pipe must be at least half the nominal pipe diameter or 3 feet apart, whichever is less.

### 3.4 JOINTING

#### 3.4.1 Concrete and Clay Pipe

##### 3.4.1.1 Flexible Watertight Joints

Use lubricants, cements, adhesives, and other special installation requirements for gaskets and jointing materials as recommended by the manufacturer. When lubricants, cements, or adhesives are used, only apply on surfaces that are clean and dry. Affix gaskets and jointing materials to the pipe not more than 24 hours prior to the installation of the pipe, and protect from the sun, blowing dust, and other deleterious agents at all times. Inspect gaskets and jointing materials before installing the pipe; remove and replace any loose or improperly affixed gaskets and jointing materials. Align the pipe with the previously installed pipe, and push the joint home. If the gasket becomes visibly dislocated when joining sections of pipe, remove the pipe and remake the joint.

### 3.5 DRAINAGE STRUCTURES

#### 3.5.1 Manholes and Inlets

Construct manholes of precast reinforced concrete. Construct inlets of precast or cast in place reinforced concrete. Provide manholes and inlets complete with frames and covers or gratings; and with fixed galvanized steel ladders as indicated. The wall along the line where steel ladders

are installed must be vertical for its entire length. Adequately anchor ladders to the wall by means of steel inserts spaced not more than 6 feet vertically, and install to provide at least 6 inches of space between the wall and the rungs. Make pipe connections to concrete manholes and inlets with flexible, watertight connectors.

### 3.5.2 Walls and Headwalls

Construct walls and headwalls as indicated.

### 3.6 FINAL BACKFILL

Backfill trenches with satisfactory material deposited in layers of a maximum of 8 inches loose thickness and compacted to 90 percent of maximum density for cohesive soils and 95 percent of maximum density for cohesionless soils in accordance with Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK. Testing is the responsibility of the Contractor and will be performed at no additional cost to the Government. Unless otherwise specified, determine field in-place density of final backfill at a frequency of one test per 200 linear feet, or fraction thereof, of each lift of backfill. Submit test results in accordance with Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK. Do not displace or damage pipe or box when compacting final backfill by rolling or operating heavy equipment parallel with the pipe or box. Movement of construction machinery over a culvert or storm drain at any stage of construction will be at the Contractor's risk. Repair or replace any damaged pipe. Protect concrete pipes with a minimum of 3 feet of cover prior to permitting heavy construction equipment to pass over them during construction.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.7.1 Tests

Testing is the responsibility of the Contractor. Perform all testing and retesting at no additional cost to the Government.

#### 3.7.2 Repair of Defects

##### 3.7.2.1 Concrete Pipe

Replace pipes having cracks with a width greater than 0.1 inches.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

Protect storm drainage piping and adjacent areas from superimposed and external loads during construction.

### 3.9 WARRANTY PERIOD

Pipe segments found to have defects during the warranty period must be replaced with new pipe and retested.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 33 46 16

SUBDRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D3034	(2016) Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D4632/D4632M	(2015a) Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles
ASTM F758	(2014) Smooth-Wall Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Underdrain Systems for Highway, Airport, and Similar Drainage
ASTM F949	(2020) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with a Smooth Interior and Fittings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-04 Samples

Geotextile

Pipe and Pipe Fittings

SD-06 Test Reports

Geotextile JP-8 Fuel Resistance Test

SD-07 Certificates

Geotextile

Pipe and Pipe Fittings



### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

#### 1.3.1 Delivery and Storage

Inspect materials delivered to site for damage; unload, and store with minimum handling. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep the inside of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris. Keep, during shipment and storage, geotextile wrapped in burlap or similar heavy duty protective covering. Protect the geotextile from mud, soil, dust, and debris. Do not store geotextile materials in direct sunlight. Install plastic pipe within 6 months from the date of manufacture unless otherwise approved.

#### 1.3.2 Handling

Handle materials in such a manner as to ensure delivery to the trench in sound undamaged condition. Carry pipe to the trench.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE FOR SUBDRAINS

Submit samples of [pipe and pipe fittings](#), before starting the work. Provide type and sizes of subdrain pipe indicated. Submit certifications from the manufacturers attesting that materials meet specification requirements. Certificates are required for drain pipe and fittings.

#### 2.1.1 Plastic

Provide plastic pipe containing ultraviolet inhibitor to provide protection from exposure to direct sunlight. Provide pipe with with bell and spigot or solvent cement joints. Provide manufacturer's standard type fittings conforming to the indicated specification.

##### 2.1.1.1 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) and Fittings

[ASTM D3034](#), [ASTM F949](#) or [ASTM F758](#), Type PS 46.

##### 2.1.1.2 Pipe Perforations

Provide pipe perforations with a minimum water inlet area of [0.5 square inch per linear foot](#) and as specified below.

##### 2.1.1.2.1 Circular Perforations in Plastic Pipe

Cleanly cut circular holes not more than [3/8 inch](#) or less than [3/16 inch](#) in diameter and arrange in rows parallel to the longitudinal axis of the pipe. Provide pipe with perforations spaced uniformly along rows. Unless otherwise recommended by the pipe manufacturer, provide pipe with rows approximately [1-1/2 inches](#) apart and arranged in a staggered pattern so that all perforations lie at the midpoint between perforations in adjacent rows. Space the rows over not more than 155 degrees of circumference. Provide pipe that is not perforated for a length equal to the depth of the socket at the spigot or tongue end and provide perforations that continue at uniform spacing over the entire length of the pipe.

### 2.2 GEOTEXTILE

Provide geotextile meeting the requirements in Section [31 05 19.13](#)

## GEOTEXTILES FOR EARTHWORK.

Submit samples of geotextile and certifications from the manufacturers attesting that geotextile meets specification requirements.

### 2.3 DRAINAGE LAYER MATERIAL

Provide drainage layer material meeting the requirements in Section 32 11 23 BASE COURSE DRAINAGE LAYERS

### 2.4 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

#### 2.4.1 Geotextile JP-8 Fuel Resistance Test

Immerse five unaged geotextile samples, 4 (plus or minus 0.2) by 6 (plus or minus 0.2) inches in JP-8 fuel at room temperature for a period of 7 days. Test each sample for tensile strength and elongation in accordance with ASTM D4632/D4632M. Provide geotextile with a strength in any direction of not less than 85 percent of the strength specified in paragraph GEOTEXTILE.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXCAVATION AND BEDDING FOR SUBDRAIN SYSTEMS

Excavate trenches, including the removal of rock and unstable material, in accordance with Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK. Bedding material shall be placed in the trench as indicated or as required as replacement materials used in those areas where unstable materials were removed. Compaction of the bedding material shall be as specified for cohesionless material in Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK.

### 3.2 MANHOLES AND FLUSHING AND OBSERVATION RISERS

#### 3.2.1 Flushing and Observation Risers

Install flushing and observation riser pipes with frames and covers at the locations indicated. Construct risers of non-perforated plastic pipe. Join riser pipes to the subdrain system as indicated.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF GEOTEXTILE AND PIPE FOR SUBDRAINS

#### 3.3.1 Installation of Geotextile

##### 3.3.1.1 Trench Lining and Overlaps

Grade trenches to be lined with geotextile to obtain smooth side and bottom surfaces so that the geotextile will not bridge cavities in the soil or be damaged by projecting rock. Lay the geotextile flat but not stretched on the soil, and secure it with anchor pins in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Overlap at least 6 to 12 inches, and secure with anchor pins along the overlaps.

#### 3.3.2 Installation of Pipe for Subdrains

##### 3.3.2.1 Pipelaying

Install pipe in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Thoroughly examine each section of pipe before being laid; do not use

defective or damaged pipe. Do not lay pipe when the trench conditions or weather is unsuitable for such work. Remove water from trenches by sump pumping or other approved methods. Lay the pipe to the grades and alignment as indicated. Bed the pipe to the established gradeline. Center perforations on the bottom of the pipe. Lay bell-and-spigot type with the bell ends upstream. Approval of all in-place pipes by the Contracting Officer is required prior to backfilling.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FILTER MATERIAL AND BACKFILLING FOR PERFORATED SUBDRAINS

After perforated pipe for subdrains has been laid, inspected, and approved, place filter material around and over the pipe to the depth indicated. Place the filter material in layers not to exceed 8 inches thick. Thoroughly compact each layer using mechanical tampers or rammers.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 33 48 00

BIORETENTION AREAS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS  
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 43 (2005; R 2009) Standard Specification for  
Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge  
Construction

AASHTO M 278 (2015) Standard Specification for Class  
PS46 Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C33/C33M (2018) Standard Specification for Concrete  
Aggregates

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Planting Soil Source; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Water; G

Planting Soil Sieve Analysis; G

Standard Soil Test; G

Organic Matter Test; G

Soluble Salts Test; G

Standard Infiltration Rate Test; G

1.3 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

Bioretention areas are small landscaped basins intended to provide water quality management by filtering stormwater runoff before release into stormdrain systems. This work consists of installing bioretention areas as specified and as shown. This work must include the necessary

materials, labor, supervision, and equipment for installation of a complete system. Coordinate this Section with Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK, and Section 32 92 19 SEEDING.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, INSPECTION, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Store the materials in designated areas, as recommended by the manufacturer, and protected from the elements, direct exposure, and damage. Do not drop containers from trucks. Material must be free of defects that would void required performance or warranty. Plants must be inspected upon arrival at the jobsite for conformity to species and quality.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PLANTINGS

Plantings must be of the species, size, quantity, and location as shown.

#### 2.2 WATER

Water sources of water must be of suitable quality for irrigation and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to use.

#### 2.3 MULCHES TOPDRESSING

Shredded hardwood, free from noxious weeds, mold, and other deleterious materials. The mulch must be aged a minimum of six months.

#### 2.4 PLANTING SOIL

The soil must be a uniform mix, free of stones, stumps, roots, and other similar objects larger than one inch. Other materials or substances that may be harmful to plant growth, or prove a hindrance to the planting or maintenance operations must not be mixed or dumped within the bioretention area. The planting soil must be free of noxious weeds.

##### 2.4.1 Planting Soil Composition

The planting soil must be salvaged or furnished. The planting soil must contain the following components:

Sand	85 percent
Fines (silt/clay)	8 percent
Organic matter (peat moss)	3 - 5 percent

At least 45 calendar days prior to the start of construction of bioretention areas, submit the Planting Soil Source and Planting Soil Sieve Analysis for approval.

##### 2.4.2 Criteria for Planting Soil

Test the planting soil and ensure it meets the following criteria:

pH	5.2 - 7.0
Organic Matter	3 - 5 percent
Magnesium	35 pounds per acre (lb/ac)
Phosphorus P205	75 lb/ac
Potassium K20	85 lb/ac
Soluble Salts	not to exceed 500 parts per million (ppm)
Permeability	Two inches per hour

Each bioretention area must have a minimum of one test set, submitted for approval. Each test set must consist of the [Standard Soil Test](#) for pH, phosphorus, magnesium and potassium, an [Organic Matter Test](#), a [Soluble Salts Test](#), and [Standard Infiltration Rate Test](#). All testing results must come from the same testing facility.

If the pH falls outside the acceptable range, it may be modified with lime (to raise) or iron sulfate plus sulfur (to lower). The lime or iron sulfate must be mixed uniformly into the planting soil prior to use in the bioretention area.

If the planting soil does not meet the minimum requirement for magnesium, it may be modified with magnesium sulfate. Likewise, if the planting soil does not meet the minimum requirements for potassium, it may be modified with potash. Magnesium sulfate and potash must be mixed uniformly into the planting soil prior to use in the bioretention area.

## 2.5 UNDERDRAIN GRAVEL

The underdrain gravel must meet the gradation requirements of [AASHTO M 43](#), No. 57 stone.

## 2.6 UNDERDRAIN PIPING

The underdrain piping must comply with [AASHTO M 278](#).

## 2.7 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRIC

Provide geotextile in accordance with Section [31 05 19.13](#) GEOTEXTILES FOR EARTHWORK.

## 2.8 SAND

Sand must comply with [ASTM C33/C33M](#). Sand substitutions such as Diabase and Graystone #10 are not acceptable. Calcium carbonated and dolomitic sand substitutions are not acceptable. Do not use "rock dust" for sand.

# PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.1 COMPACTION AND BACKFILLING

Compaction of the base of the bioretention area and the required backfill must be minimized to the maximum extent. When possible, use excavation

hoes to remove the original soil. If bioretention areas are excavated using a loader, use wide track or marsh track equipment or light equipment with turf type tires. Use of equipment with narrow tracks or narrow tires, rubber tires with large lugs, or high pressure tires will cause excessive compaction resulting in reduced infiltration rates and storage volumes and is not acceptable. Compaction will significantly contribute to design failure.

Alleviate compaction at the base of the bioretention area by using a primary tilling operation such as a chisel plow, ripper, or subsoiler. These tilling operations must refracture the soil profile to a depth of 6-12 inches. Substitute methods must be approved by the Government prior to use. Rototillers typically do not till deep enough to reduce the effects of compaction from heavy equipment.

When backfilling the bioretention area, place soil in lifts of 12 to 24 inches. Do not use heavy equipment within the bioretention area. Heavy equipment can be used around the perimeter of the basin to supply soils and sand. Grade bioretention materials to final grade by hand or with light equipment.

### 3.2 UNDERDRAINS

Provide underdrains as shown. Cap the ends of underdrain pipes not terminating in a drainage structure or cleanout/well.

The underdrain pipe must be constructed at a minimum slope of 0.25 percent or as shown. Place the cleanouts/observation wells of non-perforated pipe vertically in the bioretention area as shown. Connect the cleanouts/wells to the perforated underdrain with the appropriate manufactured connections. Extend the cleanouts/wells three inches above the grade elevation, and cap with a screw cap. Cleanouts/observation wells must be the same diameter as the underdrain pipe served.

### 3.3 PLANT INSTALLATION

Mulch around individual plants only. Plant the root ball so 1/8 of the ball is above the final grade surface. Keep the root stock of the plant material moist during transport and on-site storage. The diameter of the planting pit must be at least six inches larger than the diameter of the planting ball. Set and maintain the plant straight during the entire planting process. Thoroughly water ground bed cover after installation.

#### 3.3.1 Bracing Trees

Brace the trees using 2-inch by 2-inch stakes as necessary and for the first growing season only. Stakes are to be equally spaced on the outside of the tree ball.

#### 3.3.2 Fertilizer

The topsoil specifications provide enough organic material to adequately supply nutrients from natural cycling. The primary function of the bioretention area is to improve water quality. Adding fertilizers defeats, or at a minimum impedes this goal. Only add fertilizer if wood chips or mulch is used to amend the soil. Rototill urea fertilizer at a rate of 2 pounds per 1000 square feet.

### 3.4 CONSTRUCTION SEQUENCE

- a. Install erosion and sediment control devices as shown.
- b. Grade site to elevations shown. Stabilize grading except for the bioretention areas.
- c. Finish paving the roadways and parking lots.
- d. Complete permanent seeding. Use a continuous sod border on the bioretention area sideslopes to facilitate soil stabilization.
- e. Remove trapped/accumulated sediments from bioretention area locations.
- f. Excavate bioretention areas to proposed invert depth and scarify the existing soil surfaces, taking care not to compact the in-situ materials.
- g. Place geotextile fabric on bottom and sides of bioretention area with a 6- to 12-inch overlap. Place #57 stone layer and install underdrains and cleanouts as shown. Place geotextile fabric atop stone layer.
- h. Backfill bioretention areas with planting soil as shown and as specified. Overfilling is recommended to account for settlement.
- i. Presoak the planting soil prior to planting vegetation to allow for settlement. This can be done by water truck or allowing water to enter the pit from a rain event.
- j. Excavate or fill to achieve proper design grade, leaving space for the upper layer of surface cover, (i.e. river gravel, mulch, and/or topsoil that will bring the surface to final grade and ready for planting.
- k. Plant vegetation specified in the landscape plan for bioretention area.
- l. Mulch and install erosion protection at entrance points. Remove erosion and sediment control devices after the site is stabilized, and in accordance with the Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan.

-- End of Section --



SECTION 33 71 02

UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| ASTM B1 | (2013) Standard Specification for<br>Hard-Drawn Copper Wire   |
| ASTM B3 | (2013) Standard Specification for Soft or<br>Annealed Copper Wire   |
| ASTM B8 | (2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for<br>Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors,<br>Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft |

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| IEEE 81              | (2012) Guide for Measuring Earth<br>Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth<br>Surface Potentials of a Ground System |
| IEEE C2              | (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)<br>National Electrical Safety Code  |
| IEEE Stds Dictionary | (2009) IEEE Standards Dictionary: Glossary<br>of Terms & Definitions  |

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

- |          |  |
|----------|--|
| NETA ATS | (2021) Standard for Acceptance Testing<br>Specifications for Electrical Power<br>Equipment and Systems |
|----------|--|

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| ANSI C119.1 | (2016) Electric Connectors - Sealed<br>Insulated Underground Connector Systems<br>Rated 600 Volts                             |
| NEMA RN 1   | (2005; R 2013) Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC)<br>Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel<br>Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit |
| NEMA TC 2   | (2020) Standard for Electrical Polyvinyl<br>Chloride (PVC) Conduit  |
| NEMA TC 9   | (2020) Standard for Fittings for Polyvinyl  |

Chloride (PVC) Plastic Utilities Duct for  
Underground Installation

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020;  
ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA  
20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA  
20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA  
20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14;  
TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022)  
National Electrical Code

SOCIETY OF CABLE TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENGINEERS (SCTE)

ANSI/SCTE 77 (2013) Specification for Underground  
Enclosure Integrity

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-758 (2012b) Customer-Owned Outside Plant  
Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

RUS Bull 1751F-644 (2002) Underground Plant Construction

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 6 (2007; Reprint Sep 2019) UL Standard for  
Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel

UL 44 (2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables

UL 83 (2017; Reprint Mar 2020) UL Standard for  
Safety Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and  
Cables

UL 94 (2013; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic  
Materials for Parts in Devices and  
Appliances

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for  
Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 486A-486B (2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for  
Safety Wire Connectors

UL 510 (2020) UL Standard for Safety Polyvinyl  
Chloride, Polyethylene and Rubber  
Insulating Tape

UL 514A (2013; Reprint Aug 2017) UL Standard for  
Safety Metallic Outlet Boxes

UL 514B (2012; Reprint May 2020) Conduit, Tubing  
and Cable Fittings

UL 651	(2011; Reprint Mar 2020) UL Standard for Safety Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings
UL 854	(2020) Standard for Service-Entrance Cables
UL 1242	(2006; Reprint Aug 2020) Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit -- Steel

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in [IEEE Stds Dictionary](#).
- b. In the text of this section, the words conduit and duct are used interchangeably and have the same meaning.
- c. In the text of this section, "medium voltage cable splices," and "medium voltage cable joints" are used interchangeably and have the same meaning.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES](#):

### [SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Composite/Fiberglass Handholes; G](#)

[Protective Devices and Coordination Study; G](#)

Submit the study with protective device equipment submittals. No time extension or similar contract modifications will be granted for work arising out of the requirements for this study. Approval of protective devices proposed will be based on recommendations of this study. The Government will not be held responsible for any changes to equipment, device ratings, settings, or additional labor for installation of equipment or devices ordered or procured prior to approval of the study.

### [SD-06 Test Reports](#)

[Field Acceptance Checks and Tests; G](#)

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### 1.4.1 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in

these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship must be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of **IEEE C2** and **NFPA 70** unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

#### 1.4.2 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items must be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

##### 1.4.2.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

##### 1.4.2.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable, unless specified otherwise.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUIT, DUCTS, AND FITTINGS

#### 2.1.1 Rigid Metal Conduit

**UL 6.**

##### 2.1.1.1 Rigid Metallic Conduit, PVC Coated

**NEMA RN 1**, Type A40, except that hardness must be nominal 85 Shore A durometer, dielectric strength must be minimum **400 volts per mil** at 60 Hz, and tensile strength must be minimum **3500 psi**.

#### 2.1.2 Intermediate Metal Conduit

**UL 1242.**

##### 2.1.2.1 Intermediate Metal Conduit, PVC Coated

**NEMA RN 1**, Type A40, except that hardness must be nominal 85 Shore A durometer, dielectric strength must be minimum **400 volts per mil** at 60 Hz, and tensile strength must be minimum **3500 psi**.

#### 2.1.3 Plastic Conduit for Direct Burial and Riser Applications

**UL 651** and **NEMA TC 2**, EPC-40 or EPC-80.

#### 2.1.4 Plastic Duct for Concrete Encasement

Provide Type EPC-40 per [UL 651](#) and [NEMA TC 2](#).

#### 2.1.5 Duct Sealant

[UL 94](#), Class HBF. Provide high-expansion urethane foam duct sealant that expands and hardens to form a closed, chemically and water resistant, rigid structure. Sealant must be compatible with common cable and wire jackets and capable of adhering to metals, plastics and concrete. Sealant must be capable of curing in temperature ranges of [35 degrees F to 95 degrees F](#). Cured sealant must withstand temperature ranges of [-20 degrees F to 200 degrees F](#) without loss of function.

#### 2.1.6 Fittings

##### 2.1.6.1 Metal Fittings

[UL 514B](#).

##### 2.1.6.2 PVC Conduit Fittings

[UL 514B](#), [UL 651](#).

##### 2.1.6.3 PVC Duct Fittings

[NEMA TC 9](#).

##### 2.1.6.4 Outlet Boxes for Steel Conduit

Outlet boxes for use with rigid steel conduit must be cast-metal cadmium or zinc-coated if of ferrous metal with gasketed closures and must conform to [UL 514A](#).

### 2.2 LOW VOLTAGE INSULATED CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

Insulated conductors must be rated 600 volts and conform to the requirements of [NFPA 70](#), including listing requirements. Wires and cables manufactured more than 24 months prior to date of delivery to the site are not acceptable. Service entrance conductors must conform to [UL 854](#), type USE.

#### 2.2.1 Conductor Types

All conductors must be copper.

#### 2.2.2 Conductor Material

Unless specified or indicated otherwise or required by [NFPA 70](#), wires in conduit, other than service entrance, must be 600-volt, Type THWN/THHN conforming to [UL 83](#) or Type XHHW conforming to [UL 44](#). Copper conductors must be annealed copper complying with [ASTM B3](#) and [ASTM B8](#).

#### 2.2.3 Jackets

Provide multiconductor cables with an overall PVC outer jacket.

#### 2.2.4 Direct Buried

Single and multi-conductor cables shall be a type identified for direct burial. Cable will consist of 3 THW, THWN, or XHHW insulated stranded copper conductors and a bare copper grounding conductor. The power cable shall be filled to round with non-hygroscopic fillers, and enclosed with a tight fitting heavy neoprene or PVC jacket suitable for direct buried.

#### 2.2.5 In Duct

Cables must be single-conductor cable.

#### 2.2.6 Cable Marking

Insulated conductors must have the date of manufacture and other identification imprinted on the outer surface of each cable at regular intervals throughout the cable length.

Identify each cable by means of a fiber, laminated plastic, or non-ferrous metal tags in each handhole, junction box, and each terminal. Each tag must contain the following information; cable type, conductor size, circuit number, circuit voltage, cable destination and phase identification.

Color code conductors. Provide conductor identification within each enclosure where a tap, splice, or termination is made. Conductor identification must be by color-coded insulated conductors, plastic-coated self-sticking printed markers, colored nylon cable ties and plates, heat shrink type sleeves, or colored electrical tape. Properly identify control circuit terminations. Color must be green for grounding conductors and white for neutrals; except where neutrals of more than one system are installed in same raceway or box, other neutrals may be white with a different colored (not green) stripe for each. Color of ungrounded conductors in different voltage systems are as follows:

- a. 120/240 volt, single phase: Black and red

### 2.3 LOW VOLTAGE WIRE CONNECTORS AND TERMINALS

Provide a uniform compression over the entire conductor contact surface. Use solderless terminal lugs on stranded conductors.

- a. For use with copper conductors: [UL 486A-486B](#).

### 2.4 LOW VOLTAGE SPLICES

Provide splices in conductors with a compression connector on the conductor and by insulating and waterproofing using one of the following methods which are suitable for continuous submersion in water and comply with [ANSI C119.1](#).

#### 2.4.1 Heat Shrinkable Splice

Provide heat shrinkable splice insulation by means of a thermoplastic adhesive sealant material applied in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 2.4.2 Cold Shrink Rubber Splice

Provide a cold-shrink rubber splice which consists of EPDM rubber tube which has been factory stretched onto a spiraled core which is removed during splice installation. The installation must not require heat or flame, or any additional materials such as covering or adhesive. It must be designed for use with inline compression type connectors, or indoor, outdoor, direct-burial or submerged locations.

#### 2.5 TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING

Provide telecommunications cabling in accordance with Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP).

#### 2.6 TAPE

##### 2.6.1 Insulating Tape

UL 510, plastic insulating tape, capable of performing in a continuous temperature environment of 80 degrees C.

##### 2.6.2 Buried Warning and Identification Tape

Provide detectable tape.

#### 2.7 PULL ROPE

Plastic or flat pull line (bull line) having a minimum tensile strength of 200 pounds.

#### 2.8 GROUNDING AND BONDING

##### 2.8.1 Driven Ground Rods

Provide copper-clad steel ground rods conforming to UL 467 not less than 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet in length. Sectional type rods may be used for rods 20 feet or longer.

##### 2.8.2 Grounding Conductors

Stranded-bare copper conductors must conform to ASTM B8, Class B, soft-drawn unless otherwise indicated. Solid-bare copper conductors must conform to ASTM B1 for sizes No. 8 and smaller. Insulated conductors must be of the same material as phase conductors and green color-coded, except that conductors must be rated no more than 600 volts. Aluminum is not acceptable.

#### 2.9 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

Provide concrete in accordance with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. In addition, provide concrete for encasement of underground ducts with 3000 psi minimum 28-day compressive strength. Concrete associated with electrical work for other than encasement of underground ducts must be 4000 psi minimum 28-day compressive strength unless specified otherwise.

## 2.10 UNDERGROUND STRUCTURES

### 2.10.1 Composite/Fiberglass Handholes and Covers

ANSI/SCTE 77. Provide handholes and covers of polymer concrete, reinforced with heavy weave fiberglass with a design load (Tier rating) appropriate for or greater than the intended use. All covers are required to have the Tier level rating embossed on the surface which must not exceed the design load of the box.

### 2.11 PROTECTIVE DEVICES AND COORDINATION

Provide protective devices and coordination as specified in Section 26 28 01.00 10 COORDINATED POWER SYSTEM PROTECTION.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Install equipment and devices in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and with the requirements and recommendations of NFPA 70 and IEEE C2 as applicable. In addition to these requirements, install telecommunications in accordance with TIA-758 and RUS Bull 1751F-644.

### 3.2 CABLE INSPECTION

Inspect each cable reel for correct storage positions, signs of physical damage, and broken end seals prior to installation. If end seal is broken, remove moisture from cable prior to installation in accordance with the cable manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.3 CABLE INSTALLATION PLAN AND PROCEDURE

Obtain from the manufacturer an installation manual or set of instructions which addresses such aspects as cable construction, insulation type, cable diameter, bending radius, cable temperature limits for installation, lubricants, coefficient of friction, conduit cleaning, storage procedures, moisture seals, testing for and purging moisture, maximum allowable pulling tension, and maximum allowable sidewall bearing pressure. Install cable strictly in accordance with the cable manufacturer's recommendations and the approved installation plan.

### 3.4 UNDERGROUND FEEDERS SUPPLYING BUILDINGS

Terminate underground feeders supplying building at a point 5 feet outside the building and projections thereof, except that conductors must be continuous to the terminating point indicated. Coordinate connections of the feeders to the service entrance equipment. Provide PVC, Type EPC-40IMCRGS conduit from the supply equipment to a point 5 feet outside the building and projections thereof. Protect ends of underground conduit with plastic plugs until connections are made.

Encase the underground portion of the conduit in a concrete envelope and bury as specified for underground duct with concrete encasement.

### 3.5 DIRECT BURIAL CABLE SYSTEM

Direct-bury cables in the earth below the frostline as indicated to the



requirements of **NFPA 70** and **IEEE C2**, whichever is more stringent.

### 3.5.1 Trenching

Excavate trenches for direct-burial cables to provide a minimum cable cover below finished grade for power conductors as indicated on the drawings. When rock is encountered, remove to a depth of at least **3 inches** below the cable and fill the space with sand or clean earth free from particles larger than **1/4 inch**. Bottoms of trenches must be smooth and free of stones and sharp objects. Where materials in bottoms of trenches are other than sand, a **3 inch** layer of sand must be laid first and compacted to approximate densities of surrounding firm soil. Trenches must be not less than **8 inches** wide, and must be in straight lines between cable markers. Do not use cable plows. Bends in trenches must have a radius consistent with the cable manufacturer's published minimum cable bending radius for the cable installed.

### 3.5.2 Cable Installation

Unreel cables along the sides of or in trenches and carefully place on sand or earth bottoms. Pulling cables into direct-burial trenches from a fixed reel position is not permitted, except as required to pull cables through conduits under paving or roads.

Where two or more cables are laid parallel in the same trench, space cables laterally at not less than **3 inches** apart, except that communication cable must be separated from power cable by a minimum distance of **12 inches**.

Where direct-burial cables cross under roads or other paving exceeding **5 feet** in width, install such cables in concrete-encased ducts. Extend ducts at least **5 feet** beyond each edge of any paving. Cables may be pulled into duct from a fixed reel where suitable rollers are provided in the trench. Where direct burial cable transitions to duct-enclosed cable, center direct-burial cables in duct entrances, and a waterproof nonhardening mastic compound must be used to facilitate such centering. If paving are in place where cables are to be installed, coated rigid steel conduits driven under the paving may be used in lieu of concrete-encased ducts. Prevent damage to conduit coatings by providing ferrous pipe jackets or by predrilling. Where cuts are made in any paving, restore the paving and subbase to their original condition. Where cable is placed in duct (e.g. under paved areas, or roads), slope ducts to drain.

### 3.5.3 Splicing

Provide cables in one piece without splices between connections except where the distance exceeds the lengths in which cables are manufactured. Where splices are required, provide splices designed and rated for direct burial.

### 3.5.4 Bends

Bends in cables must have an inner radius not less than those specified in **NFPA 70** for the type of cable, or manufacturer's recommendation.

### 3.5.5 Horizontal Slack

Leave approximately **3 feet** of horizontal slack in the ground on each end

of cable runs, on each side of connection boxes, and at points where connections are brought above ground. Where cable is brought above ground, leave additional slack to make necessary connections.

### 3.5.6 Identification Slabs

Provide a slab at each change of direction of cable, over the ends of ducts or conduits which are installed under paved areas and roadways. Identification slabs must be concrete, approximately 20 inches square by 6 inches thick, set flat in the ground so that top surface projects not less than 3/4 inch, nor more than 1 1/4 inches above ground. Concrete must have a compressive strength of not less than 3000 psi and have a smooth troweled finish on exposed surface. Inscribe an identifying legend such as "electric cable," "telephone cable," "splice," or other applicable designation on the top surface of the slab before concrete hardens. Inscribe circuit identification symbols on slabs as indicated. Letters or figures must be approximately 2 inches high and grooves must be approximately 1/4 inch in width and depth. Install slabs so that the side nearest the inscription on top includes an arrow indicating the side nearest the cable. Provide color, type and depth of warning tape as specified.

## 3.6 UNDERGROUND CONDUIT AND DUCT SYSTEMS

### 3.6.1 Requirements

Run conduit in straight lines except where a change of direction is necessary. Provide numbers and sizes of ducts as indicated.

Perform changes in ductbank direction as follows:

- a. Short-radius manufactured 90-degree duct bends may be used only for pole or equipment risers, unless specifically indicated as acceptable.
- b. The minimum manufactured bend radius must be 18 inches for ducts of less than 3 inch diameter, and 36 inches for ducts 3 inches or greater in diameter.
- c. As an exception to the bend radius required above, provide field manufactured longsweep bends having a minimum radius of 25 feet for a change of direction of more than 5 degrees, either horizontally or vertically, using a combination of curved and straight sections. Maximum manufactured curved sections allowed for use in field manufactured longsweep bend: 30 degrees.

### 3.6.2 Treatment

Keep ducts clean of concrete, dirt, or foreign substances during construction. Make field cuts requiring tapers with proper tools and match factory tapers. Use a coupling recommended by the duct manufacturer whenever an existing duct is connected to a duct of different material or shape. Store ducts to avoid warping and deterioration with ends sufficiently plugged to prevent entry of any water or solid substances. Thoroughly clean ducts before being laid. Store plastic ducts on a flat surface and protected from the direct rays of the sun.

### 3.6.3 Conduit Cleaning

As each conduit run is completed, for conduit sizes 3 inches and larger,

draw a flexible testing mandrel approximately 12 inches long with a diameter less than the inside diameter of the conduit through the conduit. After which, draw a stiff bristle brush through until conduit is clear of particles of earth, sand and gravel; then immediately install conduit plugs. For conduit sizes less than 3 inches, draw a stiff bristle brush through until conduit is clear of particles of earth, sand and gravel; then immediately install conduit plugs.

#### 3.6.4 Jacking and Drilling Under Roads and Structures

Conduits to be installed under existing paved areas which are not to be disturbed, and under roads, must be zinc-coated, rigid steel, jacked into place. Where ducts are jacked under existing pavement, install rigid steel conduit because of its strength. To protect the corrosion-resistant conduit coating, predrilling or installing conduit inside a larger iron pipe sleeve (jack-and-sleeve) is required. Separators or spacing blocks must be made of steel, concrete, plastic, or a combination of these materials placed not farther apart than 4 feet on centers. Hydraulic jet method must not be used.

#### 3.6.5 Galvanized Conduit Concrete Penetrations

Galvanized conduits which penetrate concrete (slabs, pavement, and walls) in wet locations must be PVC coated and extend from at least 2 inches within the concrete to the first coupling or fitting outside the concrete (minimum of 6 inches from penetration).

#### 3.6.6 Multiple Conduits

Separate multiple conduits by a minimum distance of 3 inches, except that light and power conduits must be separated from control, signal, and telephone conduits by a minimum distance of 12 inches. Stagger the joints of the conduits by rows (horizontally) and layers (vertically) to strengthen the conduit assembly. Provide plastic duct spacers that interlock vertically and horizontally. Spacer assembly must consist of base spacers, intermediate spacers, ties, and locking device on top to provide a completely enclosed and locked-in conduit assembly. Install spacers per manufacturer's instructions, but provide a minimum of two spacer assemblies per 10 feet of conduit assembly.

#### 3.6.7 Conduit Plugs and Pull Rope

Provide new conduit indicated as being unused or empty with plugs on each end. Plugs must contain a weephole or screen to allow water drainage. Provide a plastic pull rope having 3 feet of slack at each end of unused or empty conduits.

#### 3.6.8 Conduit and Duct Without Concrete Encasement

Depths to top of the conduit must be not less than 24 inches below finished grade. Provide not less than 3 inches clearance from the conduit to each side of the trench. Grade bottom of trench smooth; where rock, soft spots, or sharp-edged materials are encountered, excavate the bottom for an additional 3 inches, fill and tamp level with original bottom with sand or earth free from particles, that would be retained on a 1/4 inch sieve. The first 6 inch layer of backfill cover must be sand compacted as previously specified. The rest of the excavation must be backfilled and compacted in 3 to 6 inch layers. Provide color, type and depth of warning tape as specified.

#### 3.6.8.1 Encasement Under Roads and Structures

Under roads and paved areas, install conduits in concrete encasement of rectangular cross-section providing a minimum of 3 inch concrete cover around ducts. Extend concrete encasement at least 5 feet beyond the edges of paved areas and roads. Depths to top of the concrete envelope must be not less than 24 inches below finished grade.

#### 3.6.9 Duct Encased in Concrete

Construct underground duct lines of individual conduits encased in concrete. Depths to top of the concrete envelope must be not less than 18 inches below finished grade, except under roads and pavement, concrete envelope must be not less than 24 inches below finished grade. Do not mix different kinds of conduit in any one duct bank. Concrete encasement surrounding the bank must be rectangular in cross-section and provide at least 3 inches of concrete cover for ducts. Separate conduits by a minimum concrete thickness of 3 inches. Before pouring concrete, anchor duct bank assemblies, prevent floating during concrete pouring by driving reinforcing rods adjacent to duct spacer assemblies and attaching the rods to the spacer assembly. Provide steel reinforcing in the concrete envelope as indicated. Provide color, type and depth of warning tape as specified.

##### 3.6.9.1 Partially Completed Duct Banks

During construction wherever a construction joint is necessary in a duct bank, prevent debris such as mud, and, and dirt from entering ducts by providing suitable conduit plugs. Fit concrete envelope of a partially completed duct bank with reinforcing steel extending a minimum of 2 feet back into the envelope and a minimum of 2 feet beyond the end of the envelope. Provide one No. 4 bar in each corner, 3 inches from the edge of the envelope. Secure corner bars with two No. 3 ties, spaced approximately one foot apart. Restrain reinforcing assembly from moving during concrete pouring.

#### 3.7 CABLE PULLING

Test existing duct lines with a mandrel and thoroughly swab out to remove foreign material before pulling cables. Pull cables down grade with the feed-in point at the manhole or buildings of the highest elevation. Use flexible cable feeds to convey cables through manhole opening and into duct runs. Do not exceed the specified cable bending radii when installing cable under any conditions, including turnups into switches, transformers, switchgear, switchboards, and other enclosures. Cable with wire shield must have a bending radius not less than 12 times the overall diameter of the completed cable. If basket-grip type cable-pulling devices are used to pull cable in place, cut off the section of cable under the grip before splicing and terminating.

##### 3.7.1 Cable Lubricants

Use lubricants that are specifically recommended by the cable manufacturer for assisting in pulling jacketed cables.

#### 3.8 CONDUCTORS INSTALLED IN PARALLEL

Group conductors such that each conduit of a parallel run contains one

Phase A conductor, one Phase B conductor, one Phase C conductor, and one neutral conductor.

### 3.9 LOW VOLTAGE CABLE SPLICING AND TERMINATING

Make terminations and splices with materials and methods as indicated or specified herein and as designated by the written instructions of the manufacturer. Do not allow the cables to be moved until after the splicing material has completely set. Make splices in underground distribution systems only in accessible locations such as manholes, handholes, or aboveground termination pedestals.

### 3.10 CABLE END CAPS

Cable ends must be sealed at all times with coated heat shrinkable end caps. Cables ends must be sealed when the cable is delivered to the job site, while the cable is stored and during installation of the cable. The caps must remain in place until the cable is spliced or terminated. Sealing compounds and tape are not acceptable substitutes for heat shrinkable end caps. Cable which is not sealed in the specified manner at all times will be rejected.

### 3.11 GROUNDING SYSTEMS

**NFPA 70** and **IEEE C2**, except provide grounding systems with a resistance to solid earth ground not exceeding 25 ohms.

#### 3.11.1 Grounding Electrodes

Provide cone pointed driven ground rods driven full depth plus 6 inches, installed to provide an earth ground of the appropriate value for the particular equipment being grounded.

If the specified ground resistance is not met, provide an additional ground rod in accordance with the requirements of **NFPA 70** (placed not less than 6 feet from the first rod). Should the resultant (combined) resistance exceed the specified resistance, measured not less than 48 hours after rainfall, notify the Contracting Officer immediately.

#### 3.11.2 Grounding Connections

Make grounding connections which are buried or otherwise normally inaccessible, by exothermic weld or compression connector.

- a. Make exothermic welds strictly in accordance with the weld manufacturer's written recommendations. Welds which are "puffed up" or which show convex surfaces indicating improper cleaning are not acceptable. Mechanical connectors are not required at exothermic welds.
- b. Make compression connections using a hydraulic compression tool to provide the correct circumferential pressure. Tools and dies must be as recommended by the manufacturer. An embossing die code or other standard method must provide visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on the ground wire.

#### 3.11.3 Grounding Conductors

Provide bare grounding conductors, except where installed in conduit with associated phase conductors. Ground cable sheaths, cable shields,

conduit, and equipment with No. 6 AWG. Ground other noncurrent-carrying metal parts and equipment frames of metal-enclosed equipment.

#### 3.11.4 Ground Cable Crossing Expansion Joints

Protect ground cables crossing expansion joints or similar separations in structures and pavements by use of approved devices or methods of installation which provide the necessary slack in the cable across the joint to permit movement. Use stranded or other approved flexible copper cable across such separations.

#### 3.11.5 Fence Grounding

Provide grounding for fences as indicated.

### 3.12 EXCAVATING, BACKFILLING, AND COMPACTING

Provide in accordance with NFPA 70.

#### 3.12.1 Reconditioning of Surfaces

##### 3.12.1.1 Unpaved Surfaces

Restore to their original elevation and condition unpaved surfaces disturbed during installation of duct or direct burial cable. Preserve sod and topsoil removed during excavation and reinstall after backfilling is completed. Replace sod that is damaged by sod of quality equal to that removed. When the surface is disturbed in a newly seeded area, re-seed the restored surface with the same quantity and formula of seed as that used in the original seeding, and provide topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, or mulching.

##### 3.12.1.2 Paving Repairs

Where trenches, pits, or other excavations are made in existing roadways and other areas of pavement where surface treatment of any kind exists, restore such surface treatment or pavement the same thickness and in the same kind as previously existed, except as otherwise specified, and to match and tie into the adjacent and surrounding existing surfaces.

### 3.13 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

Provide concrete in accordance with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

#### 3.13.1 Concrete Slabs (Pads) for Equipment

Unless otherwise indicated, the slab must be at least 8 inches thick, reinforced with a 6 by 6 - W2.9 by W2.9 mesh, placed uniformly 4 inches from the top of the slab. Place slab on a 6 inch thick, well-compacted gravel base. Top of concrete slab must be approximately 4 inches above finished grade with gradual slope for drainage. Edges above grade must have 1/2 inch chamfer. Slab must be of adequate size to project at least 8 inches beyond the equipment.

Stub up conduits, with bushings, 2 inches into cable wells in the concrete pad. Coordinate dimensions of cable wells with transformer cable training areas.

### 3.13.2 Sealing

When the installation is complete, seal all conduit and other entries into the equipment enclosure with an approved sealing compound. Seals must be of sufficient strength and durability to protect all energized live parts of the equipment from rodents, insects, or other foreign matter.

### 3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### 3.14.1 Performance of Field Acceptance Checks and Tests

Perform in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and include the following visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests, performed in accordance with **NETA ATS**.

##### 3.14.1.1 Low Voltage Cables, 600-Volt

Perform tests after installation of cable, splices and terminations and before terminating to equipment or splicing to existing circuits.

###### a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Inspect exposed cable sections for physical damage.
- (2) Verify that cable is supplied and connected in accordance with contract plans and specifications.
- (3) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections.
- (4) Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
- (5) Visually inspect jacket and insulation condition.
- (6) Inspect for proper phase identification and arrangement.

###### b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform insulation resistance tests on wiring No. 6 AWG and larger diameter using instrument which applies voltage of approximately 1000 volts dc for one minute.
- (2) Perform continuity tests to insure correct cable connection.

##### 3.14.1.2 Grounding System

###### a. Visual and mechanical inspection

Inspect ground system for compliance with contract plans and specifications.

###### b. Electrical tests

Perform ground-impedance measurements utilizing the fall-of-potential method in accordance with **IEEE 81**. On systems consisting of interconnected ground rods, perform tests after interconnections are complete. On systems consisting of a single ground rod perform tests before any wire is connected. Take measurements in normally dry weather, not less than 48 hours after rainfall. Use a portable ground

resistance tester in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to test each ground or group of grounds. The instrument must be equipped with a meter reading directly in ohms or fractions thereof to indicate the ground value of the ground rod or grounding systems under test. Provide site diagram indicating location of test probes with associated distances, and provide a plot of resistance vs. distance.

#### 3.14.2 Follow-Up Verification

Upon completion of acceptance checks and tests, show by demonstration in service that circuits and devices are in good operating condition and properly performing the intended function. As an exception to requirements stated elsewhere in the contract, the Contracting Officer must be given 5 working days advance notice of the dates and times of checking and testing.

.... -- End of Section --



SECTION 33 82 00

TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP)

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- ASTM B1 (2013) Standard Specification for Hard-Drawn Copper Wire
- ASTM B8 (2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft
- ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

- IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms
- IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code

INSULATED CABLE ENGINEERS ASSOCIATION (ICEA)

- ICEA S-87-640 (2016) Optical Fiber Outside Plant Communications Cable; 4th Edition
- ICEA S-98-688 (2012) Broadband Twisted Pair Telecommunication Cable, Aircore, Polyolefin Insulated, Copper Conductors Technical Requirements
- ICEA S-99-689 (2012) Broadband Twisted Pair Telecommunication Cable Filled, Polyolefin Insulated, Copper Conductors Technical Requirements

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

- NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; ERTA 20-3 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4; TIA 20-5; TIA 20-6; TIA 20-7; TIA 20-8; TIA 20-9; TIA 20-10; TIA 20-11; TIA 20-12; TIA 20-13; TIA 20-14; TIA 20-15; TIA 20-16; ERTA 20-4 2022) National Electrical Code

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3 (2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-455-78-B (2020c) FOTP-78 Optical Fibres - Part 1-40: Measurement Methods and Test Procedures - Attenuation

TIA-455-107 (1999a) FOTP-107 Determination of Component Reflectance or Link/System Return Loss using a Loss Test Set

TIA-472D000 (2007b) Fiber Optic Communications Cable for Outside Plant Use

TIA-492CAAA (1998; R 2002) Detail Specification for Class IVa Dispersion-Unshifted Single-Mode Optical Fibers

TIA-526-7 (2015a; R 2022) Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant, Adoption of IEC 61280-4-2 edition 2: Fibre-Optic Communications Subsystem Test Procedures - Part 4-2: Installed Cable Plant - Single-Mode Attenuation and Optical Return Loss Measurement

TIA-568.1 (2020e) Commercial Building Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard

TIA-568.2 (2018d) Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards

TIA-568.3 (2016d; Add 1 2019) Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard

TIA-569 (2019e; Add 1 2022) Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces

TIA-590 (1997a) Standard for Physical Location and Protection of Below Ground Fiber Optic Cable Plant

TIA-606 (2021d) Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Cabling Infrastructure

TIA-607 (2019d) Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises

TIA-758 (2012b) Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard

TIA/EIA-455 (1998b) Standard Test Procedure for Fiber Optic Fibers, Cables, Transducers,

Sensors, Connecting and Terminating  
Devices, and Other Fiber Optic Components

TIA/EIA-455-204

(2000) Standard for Measurement of  
Bandwidth on Multimode Fiber

TIA/EIA-598

(2014D; Add 2 2018) Optical Fiber Cable  
Color Coding

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

RUS 1755

Telecommunications Standards and  
Specifications for Materials, Equipment  
and Construction

RUS Bull 345-65

(1985) Shield Bonding Connectors (PE-65)

RUS Bull 345-72

(1985) Filled Splice Closures (PE-74)

RUS Bull 1751F-640

(1995) Design of Buried Plant, Physical  
Considerations

RUS Bull 1751F-643

(2002) Underground Plant Design

RUS Bull 1751F-815

(1979) Electrical Protection of Outside  
Plant

RUS Bull 1753F-201

(1997) Acceptance Tests of  
Telecommunications Plant (PC-4)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 83

(2017; Reprint Mar 2020) UL Standard for  
Safety Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and  
Cables

UL 510

(2020) UL Standard for Safety Polyvinyl  
Chloride, Polyethylene and Rubber  
Insulating Tape

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 27 10 00, BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM, 1.3  
DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms  
used in this specification shall be as defined in TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2,  
TIA-568.3, TIA-569, TIA-606, and IEEE 100 and herein.

1.3.1 Entrance Facility (EF) (Telecommunications)

An entrance to the building for both private and public network service  
cables (including antennae) including the entrance point at the building  
wall and continuing to the entrance room or space.

1.3.2 Entrance Room (ER) (Telecommunications)

A centralized space for telecommunications equipment that serves the  
occupants of a building. Equipment housed therein is considered distinct

from a telecommunications room because of the nature of its complexity.

#### 1.3.3 Building Distributor (BD)

A distributor in which the building backbone cables terminate and at which connections to the campus backbone cables may be made. (International expression for intermediate cross-connect - (IC).)

#### 1.3.4 Pathway

A physical infrastructure utilized for the placement and routing of telecommunications cable.

### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The telecommunications outside plant consists of cable, conduit, manholes, poles, etc. required to provide signal paths from the closest point of presence to the new facility, including free standing frames or backboards, interconnecting hardware, terminating cables, lightning and surge protection modules at the entrance facility. The work consists of providing, testing and making operational cabling, interconnecting hardware and lightning and surge protection necessary to form a complete outside plant telecommunications system for continuous use.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Telecommunications Outside Plant; G

Telecommunications Entrance Facility Drawings; G

In addition to Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide shop drawings in accordance with paragraph SHOP DRAWINGS.

#### SD-03 Product Data

Wire and Cable; G

Cable Splices, and Connectors; G

Closures; G

Master Target Data Panels; G

Target Data Panels; G

Data Cable Breakout Box; G

Spare Parts; G

Submittals shall include the manufacturer's name, trade name,

place of manufacture, and catalog model or number. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references. Should manufacturer's data require supplemental information for clarification, the supplemental information shall be submitted as specified in paragraph REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS and as required for certificates in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Pre-installation Tests; G

Acceptance Tests; G

Outside Plant Test Plan; G

#### SD-07 Certificates

Telecommunications Contractor Qualifications; G

Key Personnel Qualifications; G

Minimum Manufacturer's Qualifications; G

#### SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Cable Tensions; G

Fiber Optic Splices; G

Submit instructions prior to installation.

#### SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Factory Reel Test Data; G

#### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Telecommunications Outside Plant (OSP), Data Package 5; G

Commercial off-the-shelf manuals shall be provided for operation, installation, configuration, and maintenance of products provided as a part of the telecommunications outside plant (OSP). Submit operations and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. In addition to requirements of Data package 5, include the requirements of paragraphs TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT SHOP DRAWINGS and TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENTRANCE FACILITY DRAWINGS.

#### SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Record Documentation; G

In addition to other requirements, provide in accordance with paragraph RECORD DOCUMENTATION.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### 1.6.1 Shop Drawings

Include wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Wiring diagrams shall identify circuit terminals and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Drawings shall indicate adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices. Submittals shall include the nameplate data, size, and capacity. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references.

#### 1.6.1.1 Telecommunications Outside Plant Shop Drawings

Provide Outside Plant Design in accordance with [TIA-758](#) and [RUS Bull 1751F-643](#) for underground system design. Provide T0 shop drawings that show the physical and logical connections from the perspective of an entire campus, such as actual building locations, exterior pathways and backbone cabling on plan view drawings, major system nodes, and related connections on the logical system drawings in accordance with [TIA-606](#). Drawings shall include wiring and schematic diagrams for fiber optic and copper cabling and splices, copper conductor gauge and pair count, fiber pair count and type, pathway duct and innerduct arrangement, associated construction materials, and any details required to demonstrate that cable system has been coordinated and will properly support the switching and transmission system identified in specification and drawings. Provide Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD) approved drawings of the telecommunications outside plant. Update existing telecommunication Outside Plant T0 drawings to include information modified, deleted or added as a result of this installation in accordance with [TIA-606](#). The [telecommunications outside plant \(OSP\)](#) shop drawings shall be included in the operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6.1.2 Telecommunications Entrance Facility Drawings

Provide T3 drawings for EF Telecommunications as specified in the paragraph TELECOMMUNICATIONS SPACE DRAWINGS of Section [27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEMS](#). The telecommunications entrance facility shop drawings shall be included in the operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.6.2 Telecommunications Qualifications

Work under this section shall be performed by and the equipment shall be provided by the approved telecommunications contractor and key personnel. Qualifications shall be provided for: the telecommunications system contractor, the telecommunications system installer, the supervisor (if different from the installer), and the cable splicing and terminating personnel. A minimum of 30 days prior to installation, submit documentation of the experience of the telecommunications contractor and of the key personnel.

#### 1.6.2.1 Telecommunications Contractor Qualifications

The telecommunications contractor shall be a firm which is regularly and

professionally engaged in the business of the applications, installation, and testing of the specified telecommunications systems and equipment. The telecommunications contractor shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems that include outside plant and broadband cabling within the past 3 years. Submit documentation for a minimum of three and a maximum of five successful telecommunication system installations for the telecommunications contractor. Each of the key personnel shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems in accordance with TIA-758 within the past 3 years.

#### 1.6.2.2 Key Personnel Qualifications

Provide key personnel who are regularly and professionally engaged in the business of the application, installation and testing of the specified telecommunications systems and equipment. There may be one key person or more key persons proposed for this solicitation depending upon how many of the key roles each has successfully provided. Each of the key personnel shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems within the past 3 years.

Cable splicing and terminating personnel assigned to the installation of this system or any of its components shall have training in the proper techniques and have a minimum of 3 years experience in splicing and terminating the specified cables. Modular splices shall be performed by factory certified personnel or under direct supervision of factory trained personnel for products used.

Supervisors and installers assigned to the installation of this system or any of its components shall have factory or factory approved certification from each equipment manufacturer indicating that they are qualified to install and test the provided products.

Submit documentation for a minimum of three and a maximum of five successful telecommunication system installations for each of the key personnel. Documentation for each key person shall include at least two successful system installations provided that are equivalent in system size and in construction complexity to the telecommunications system proposed for this solicitation. Include specific experience in installing and testing telecommunications outside plant systems, including broadband cabling, and provide the names and locations of at least two project installations successfully completed using optical fiber and copper telecommunications cabling systems. All of the existing telecommunications system installations offered by the key persons as successful experience shall have been in successful full-time service for at least 18 months prior to the issuance date for this solicitation. Provide the name and role of the key person, the title, location, and completed installation date of the referenced project, the referenced project owner point of contact information including name, organization, title, and telephone number, and generally, the referenced project description including system size and construction complexity.

Indicate that all key persons are currently employed by the telecommunications contractor, or have a commitment to the telecommunications contractor to work on this project. All key persons shall be employed by the telecommunications contractor at the date of issuance of this solicitation, or if not, have a commitment to the telecommunications contractor to work on this project by the date that the bid was due to the Contracting Officer.

Note that only the key personnel approved by the Contracting Officer in the successful proposal shall do work on this solicitation's telecommunications system. Key personnel shall function in the same roles in this contract, as they functioned in the offered successful experience. Any substitutions for the telecommunications contractor's key personnel requires approval from The Contracting Officer.

#### 1.6.2.3 Minimum Manufacturer's Qualifications

Cabling, equipment and hardware manufacturers shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the manufacturing, assembly, and factory testing of components which comply with, TIA-568.1, TIA-568.2 and TIA-568.3. In addition, cabling manufacturers shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the manufacturing and factory testing of cabling which comply with ICEA S-87-640, ICEA S-98-688, and ICEA S-99-689.

#### 1.6.3 Outside Plant Test Plan

Prepare and provide a complete and detailed test plan for field tests of the outside plant including a complete list of test equipment for the copper conductor and optical fiber cables, components, and accessories for approval by the Contracting Officer. Include a cut-over plan with procedures and schedules for relocation of facility station numbers without interrupting service to any active location. Submit the plan at least 30 days prior to tests for Contracting Officer approval. Provide outside plant testing and performance measurement criteria in accordance with TIA-568.1 and RUS Bull 1753F-201. Include procedures for certification, validation, and testing that includes fiber optic link performance criteria.

#### 1.6.4 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship and shall be the manufacturer's latest standard design that has been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for at least 1 year prior to bid opening. The 1-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 1-year period. Products supplied shall be specifically designed and manufactured for use with outside plant telecommunications systems. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

##### 1.6.4.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 1-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 3000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is provided.

##### 1.6.4.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.



#### 1.6.5 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

##### 1.6.5.1 Independent Testing Organization Certificate

In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. The certificate shall state that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Ship cable on reels with a minimum overage of 10 percent. Radius of the reel drum shall not be smaller than the minimum bend radius of the cable. Wind cable on the reel so that unwinding can be done without kinking the cable. Two meters of cable at both ends of the cable shall be accessible for testing. Attach permanent label on each reel showing length, cable identification number, cable size, cable type, and date of manufacture. Provide water resistant label and the indelible writing on the labels. Apply end seals to each end of the cables to prevent moisture from entering the cable. Reels with cable shall be suitable for outside storage conditions when temperature ranges from minus 40 degrees C to plus 65 degrees C, with relative humidity from 0 to 100 percent. Equipment, other than cable, delivered and placed in storage shall be stored with protection from weather, humidity and temperature variation, dirt and dust, or other contaminants in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE

##### 1.8.1 Record Documentation

Provide the activity responsible for telecommunications system maintenance and administration a single complete and accurate set of record documentation for the entire telecommunications system with respect to this project.

Provide T5 drawings including documentation on cables and termination hardware in accordance with TIA-606. T5 drawings shall include schedules to show information for cut-overs and cable plant management, patch panel layouts, cross-connect information and connecting terminal layout as a minimum. T5 drawings shall be provided in hard copy format and on electronic media using Windows based computer cable management software. A licensed copy of the cable management software including documentation, shall be provided. Update existing record documentation to reflect campus distribution T0 drawings and T3 drawing schedule information modified, deleted or added as a result of this installation. Provide the following T5 drawing documentation as a minimum:

- a. Cables - A record of installed cable shall be provided in accordance with TIA-606. The cable records shall include the required data fields for each cable and complete end-to-end circuit report for each complete circuit from the assigned outlet to the entry facility in accordance with TIA-606. Include manufacture date of cable with submittal.
- b. Termination Hardware - Provide a record of installed patch panels, cross-connect points, and terminating block arrangements and type in accordance with TIA-606. Documentation shall include the required data fields as a minimum in accordance with TIA-606.
- c. Provide laminated copies of downrange network layout including cross-connects, connected panels, modem locations and target connections. Install these drawings on the inside of each TJB, DBB and MTDP.

Provide record documentation as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM.

#### 1.8.2 Spare Parts

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA, provide a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, and a list of spare parts recommended for stocking. Spare parts shall be provided no later than the start of field testing.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

Products supplied shall be specifically designed and manufactured for use with outside plant telecommunications systems.

#### 2.2 TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENTRANCE FACILITY

##### 2.2.1 Fiber Optic Terminations

Provide fiber optic cable terminations as specified in 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM.

#### 2.3 ENCLOSURES

##### 2.3.1 Master Target Data Panels

NEMA 4 rated panels, wall-mounted type, 16 gauge galvanized steel, minimum, treated to resist corrosion. Factory powder coated white. Panel shall have wall brackets, rolled flange around opening perimeter, seamless gasket on the cover, hinged cover with removable pin and stainless steel fast operating captive clamps. Panel shall have metal backplate to secure components inside the enclosure. See drawings for additional panel

information including dimensions.

### 2.3.2 Target Data Panels

NEMA 4 rated panels, wall-mounted type, 16 gauge galvanized steel, minimum, treated to resist corrosion. Factory powder coated white. Panel shall have wall brackets, rolled flange around opening perimeter, seamless gasket on the cover, hinged cover with removable pin and stainless steel fast operating captive clamps. Panel shall have metal backplate to secure components inside the enclosure. See drawings for additional panel information including dimensions.

### 2.3.3 Data Cable Breakout Box

NEMA 4 rated panels, wall-mounted type, 16 gauge galvanized steel, minimum, treated to resist corrosion. Factory powder coated white. Panel shall have wall brackets, rolled flange around opening perimeter, seamless gasket on the cover, hinged cover with removable pin and stainless steel fast operating captive clamps. Panel shall have metal backplate to secure components inside the enclosure. See drawings for additional panel information including dimensions.

## 2.4 CLOSURES

### 2.4.1 Copper Conductor Closures

#### 2.4.1.1 Underground Cable Closures

- a. Direct burial: Provide buried closure suitable for enclosing a straight, butt, and branch splice in a container into which can be poured an encapsulating compound. Closure shall have adequate strength to protect the splice and maintain cable shield electrical continuity in the buried environment. Encapsulating compound shall be reenterable and shall not alter the chemical stability of the closure. Provide filled splice cases in accordance with [RUS Bull 345-72](#).
- b. In vault or manhole: Provide underground closure suitable to house a straight, butt, and branch splice in a protective housing into which can be poured an encapsulating compound. Closure shall be of suitable thermoplastic, thermoset, or stainless steel material supplying structural strength necessary to pass the mechanical and electrical requirements in a vault or manhole environment. Encapsulating compound shall be reenterable and shall not alter the chemical stability of the closure. Provide filled splice cases in accordance with [RUS Bull 345-72](#).

### 2.4.2 Fiber Optic Closures

#### 2.4.2.1 Direct Burial

Provide buried closure suitable to house splice organizer in protective housing into which can be poured an encapsulating compound. Closure shall have adequate strength to protect the splice and maintain cable shield electrical continuity, when metallic, in buried environment. Encapsulating compound shall be reenterable and shall not alter chemical stability of the closure.

#### 2.4.2.2 In Vault or Manhole

Provide underground closure suitable to house splice organizer in a protective housing into which can be poured an encapsulating compound. Closure shall be of thermoplastic, thermoset, or stainless steel material supplying structural strength necessary to pass the mechanical and electrical requirements in a vault or manhole environment. Encapsulating compound shall be reenterable and shall not alter the chemical stability of the closure.

### 2.5 CABLE SPLICES, AND CONNECTORS

#### 2.5.1 Fiber Optic Cable Splices

Provide fiber optic cable splices and splicing materials for fusion methods at locations shown on the construction drawings. The splice insertion loss shall be 0.05 dB maximum when measured in accordance with TIA-455-78-B using an Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (OTDR). Splices shall be designed for a return loss of 40.0 db max for single mode fiber when tested in accordance with TIA-455-107. Physically protect each fiber optic splice by a splice kit specially designed for the splice.

#### 2.5.2 Fiber Optic Splice Organizer

Provide splice organizer suitable for housing fiber optic splices in a neat and orderly fashion. Splice organizer shall allow for a minimum of 3 feet of fiber for each fiber within the cable to be neatly stored without kinks or twists. Splice organizer shall accommodate individual strain relief for each splice and allow for future maintenance or modification, without damage to the cable or splices. Provide splice organizer hardware, such as splice trays, protective glass shelves, and shield bond connectors in a splice organizer kit.

#### 2.5.3 Shield Connectors

Provide connectors with a stable, low-impedance electrical connection between the cable shield and the bonding conductor in accordance with RUS Bull 345-65.

### 2.6 CONDUIT

Provide conduit as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

### 2.7 PLASTIC INSULATING TAPE

UL 510.

### 2.8 WIRE AND CABLE

#### 2.8.1 Copper Conductor Cable

Solid copper conductors, covered with an extruded solid insulating compound. Insulated conductors shall be twisted into pairs which are then stranded or oscillated to form a cylindrical core. For special high frequency applications, the cable core shall be separated into compartments. Cable shall be completed by the application of a suitable core wrapping material, a corrugated copper or plastic coated aluminum

shield, and an overall extruded jacket. Telecommunications contractor shall verify distances between splice points prior to ordering cable in specific cut lengths. Gauge of conductor shall determine the range of numbers of pairs specified; 24 gauge. Copper conductor shall conform to the following:

#### 2.8.1.1 Underground

Provide filled cable meeting the requirements of ICEA S-99-689 and RUS 1755.390.

#### 2.8.2 Fiber Optic Cable

Provide single-mode, 8/125-um, 0.10 aperture 1310 nm fiber optic cable in accordance with TIA-492CAAA, TIA-472D000, and ICEA S-87-640 including any special requirements made necessary by a specialized design. Provide optical fibers as indicated. Fiber optic cable shall be specifically designed for outside use with loose buffer construction. Provide fiber optic color code in accordance with TIA/EIA-598.

##### 2.8.2.1 Strength Members

Provide central, non-metallic strength members with sufficient tensile strength for installation and residual rated loads to meet the applicable performance requirements in accordance with ICEA S-87-640. The strength member is included to serve as a cable core foundation to reduce strain on the fibers, and shall not serve as a pulling strength member.

##### 2.8.2.2 Shielding or Other Metallic Covering

Provide dual tape covering or shield in accordance with ICEA S-87-640.

##### 2.8.2.3 Performance Requirements

Provide fiber optic cable with optical and mechanical performance requirements in accordance with ICEA S-87-640.

#### 2.8.3 Grounding and Bonding Conductors

Provide grounding and bonding conductors in accordance with RUS 1755.200, TIA-607, IEEE C2, and NFPA 70. Solid bare copper wire meeting the requirements of ASTM B1 for sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded bare copper wire meeting the requirements of ASTM B8, for sizes No. 6 AWG and larger. Insulated conductors shall have 600-volt, Type TW insulation meeting the requirements of UL 83.

#### 2.9 CABLE TAGS IN MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND VAULTS

Provide tags for each telecommunications cable or wire located in manholes, handholes, and vaults. Cable tags shall be polyethylene in accordance with TIA-606. Handwritten labeling is unacceptable.

##### 2.9.1 Polyethylene Cable Tags

Provide tags of polyethylene that have an average tensile strength of 3250 pounds per square inch; and that are 0.08 inch thick (minimum), non-corrosive non-conductive; resistive to acids, alkalis, organic solvents, and salt water; and distortion resistant to 170 degrees F. Provide 0.05 inch (minimum) thick black polyethylene tag holder. Provide

a one-piece nylon, self-locking tie at each end of the cable tag. Ties shall have a minimum loop tensile strength of 175 pounds. The cable tags shall have black block letters, numbers, and symbols one inch high on a yellow background. Letters, numbers, and symbols shall not fall off or change positions regardless of the cable tags' orientation.

## 2.10 BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE

Provide fiber optic media marking and protection in accordance with TIA-590. Provide color, type and depth of tape as specified in paragraph BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE in Section 31 00 00, EARTHWORK.

## 2.11 GROUNDING BRAID

Provide grounding braid that provides low electrical impedance connections for dependable shield bonding in accordance with RUS 1755.200. Braid shall be made from flat tin-plated copper.

## 2.12 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

## 2.13 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

Provide laminated plastic nameplates in accordance with ASTM D709 for each patch panel, protector assembly, rack, cabinet and other equipment or as indicated on the drawings. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic, 0.125 inch thick, white with black center core. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be one by 2.5 inches. Lettering shall be a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.

## 2.14 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

### 2.14.1 Factory Reel Test Data

Test 100 percent OTDR test of FO media at the factory in accordance with TIA-568.1 and TIA-568.3. Use TIA-526-7 for single mode fiber. Calibrate OTDR to show anomalies of 0.2 dB minimum. Enhanced performance filled OSP copper cables, referred to as Broadband Outside Plant (BBOSP), shall meet the requirements of ICEA S-99-689. Enhanced performance air core OSP copper cables shall meet the requirements of ICEA S-98-688. Submit test reports, including manufacture date for each cable reel and receive approval before delivery of cable to the project site.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Install all system components and appurtenances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and as indicated. Provide all necessary interconnections, services, and adjustments required for a complete and operable telecommunications system.

### 3.1.1 Contractor Damage

Promptly repair indicated utility lines or systems damaged during site preparation and construction. Damages to lines or systems not indicated, which are caused by Contractor operations, shall be treated as "Changes" under the terms of the Contract Clauses. When Contractor is advised in writing of the location of a nonindicated line or system, such notice shall provide that portion of the line or system with "indicated" status in determining liability for damages. In every event, immediately notify the Contracting Officer of damage.

### 3.1.2 Cable Inspection and Repair

Handle cable and wire provided in the construction of this project with care. Inspect cable reels for cuts, nicks or other damage. Damaged cable shall be replaced or repaired to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer. Reel wraps shall remain intact on the reel until the cable is ready for placement.

### 3.1.3 Direct Burial System

Installation shall be in accordance with **RUS Bull 1751F-640**. Under railroad tracks, paved areas, and roadways install cable in conduit encased in concrete. Slope ducts to drain. Excavate trenches by hand or mechanical trenching equipment. Provide a minimum cable cover **as indicated on the drawings**. Trenches shall be not less than **6 inches** wide and in straight lines between cable markers. Do not use cable plows. Bends in trenches shall have a radius of not less than **36 inches**. Where two or more cables are laid parallel in the same trench, space laterally at least **3 inches** apart. When rock is encountered, remove it to a depth of at least **3 inches** below the cable and fill the space with sand or clean earth free from particles larger than **1/4 inch**. Do not unreel and pull cables into the trench from one end. Cable may be unreel on grade and lifted into position. Provide color, type and depth of warning tape as specified in paragraph BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE in Section **31 00 00** EARTHWORK.

#### 3.1.3.1 Cable Placement

- a. Separate cables crossing other cables or metal piping from the other cables or pipe by not less than **3 inches** of well tamped earth. Do not install circuits for communications under or above traffic signal loops.
- b. Cables shall be in one piece without splices between connections except where the distance exceeds the lengths in which the cable is furnished.
- c. Avoid bends in cables of small radii and twists that might cause damage. Do not bend cable and wire in a radius less than 10 times the outside diameter of the cable or wire.
- d. Leave a horizontal slack of approximately **3 feet** in the ground on each end of cable runs, on each side of connection boxes, and at points where connections are brought aboveground. Where cable is brought aboveground, leave additional slack to make necessary connections.

### 3.1.3.2 Identification Slabs

Provide a marker at each change of direction of the cable, over the ends of ducts or conduits which are installed under paved areas and roadways and over each splice. Identification markers shall be of concrete, approximately 20 inches square by 6 inches thick.

### 3.1.3.3 Backfill for Rocky Soil

When placing cable in a trench in rocky soil, the cable shall be cushioned by a fill of sand or selected soil at least 2 inches thick on the floor of the trench before placing the cable or wire. The backfill for at least 4 inches above the wire or cable shall be free from stones, rocks, or other hard or sharp materials which might damage the cable or wire. If the buried cable is placed less than 48 inches in depth, a protective cover of concrete shall be used.

### 3.1.4 Cable Protection

Provide direct burial cable protection in accordance with NFPA 70 and as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Galvanized conduits which penetrate concrete (slabs, pavement, and walls) shall be PVC coated and shall extend from the first coupling or fitting outside either side of the concrete minimum of 6 inches per 12 inches burial depth beyond the edge of the surface where cable protection is required; all conduits shall be sealed on each end. Where additional protection is required, cable may be placed in galvanized iron pipe (GIP) sized on a maximum fill of 40 percent of cross-sectional area, or in concrete encased 4 inches PVC pipe. Conduit may be installed by jacking or trenching. Trenches shall be backfilled with earth and mechanically tamped at 6 inches lift so that the earth is restored to the same density, grade and vegetation as adjacent undisturbed material.

#### 3.1.4.1 Cable End Caps

Cable ends shall be sealed at all times with coated heat shrinkable end caps. Cables ends shall be sealed when the cable is delivered to the job site, while the cable is stored and during installation of the cable. The caps shall remain in place until the cable is spliced or terminated. Sealing compounds and tape are not acceptable substitutes for heat shrinkable end caps. Cable which is not sealed in the specified manner at all times will be rejected.

### 3.1.5 Underground Duct

Provide underground duct and connections to existing manholes, and existing ducts as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION with any additional requirements as specified herein.

### 3.1.6 Reconditioning of Surfaces

Provide reconditioning of surfaces as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

### 3.1.7 Penetrations

Caulk and seal cable access penetrations in walls, ceilings and other parts of the building. Seal openings around electrical penetrations through fire resistance-rated wall, partitions, floors, or ceilings.



### 3.1.8 Cable Pulling

Test duct lines with a mandrel and swab out to remove foreign material before the pulling of cables. Avoid damage to cables in setting up pulling apparatus or in placing tools or hardware. Do not step on cables when entering or leaving the manhole. Do not place cables in ducts other than those shown without prior written approval of the Contracting Officer. Roll cable reels in the direction indicated by the arrows painted on the reel flanges. Set up cable reels on the same side of the manhole as the conduit section in which the cable is to be placed. Level the reel and bring into proper alignment with the conduit section so that the cable pays off from the top of the reel in a long smooth bend into the duct without twisting. Under no circumstances shall the cable be paid off from the bottom of a reel. Check the equipment set up prior to beginning the cable pulling to avoid an interruption once pulling has started. Use a cable feeder guide of suitable dimensions between cable reel and face of duct to protect cable and guide cable into the duct as it is paid off the reel. As cable is paid off the reel, lubricate and inspect cable for sheath defects. When defects are noticed, stop pulling operations and notify the Contracting Officer to determine required corrective action. Cable pulling shall also be stopped when reel binds or does not pay off freely. Rectify cause of binding before resuming pulling operations. Provide cable lubricants recommended by the cable manufacturer. Avoid bends in cables of small radii and twists that might cause damage. Do not bend cable and wire in a radius less than 10 times the outside diameter of the cable or wire.

#### 3.1.8.1 Cable Tensions

Obtain from the cable manufacturer and provide to the Contracting Officer, the maximum allowable pulling tension. This tension shall not be exceeded.

#### 3.1.8.2 Pulling Eyes

Equip cables 1.25 inches in diameter and larger with cable manufacturer's factory installed pulling-in eyes. Provide cables with diameter smaller than 1.25 inches with heat shrinkable type end caps or seals on cable ends when using cable pulling grips. Rings to prevent grip from slipping shall not be beaten into the cable sheath. Use a swivel of 3/4 inch links between pulling-in eyes or grips and pulling strand.

#### 3.1.8.3 Installation of Cables in Manholes, Handholes, and Vaults

Do not install cables utilizing the shortest route, but route along those walls providing the longest route and the maximum spare cable lengths. Form cables to closely parallel walls, not to interfere with duct entrances, and support cables on brackets and cable insulators at a maximum of 4 feet. In existing manholes, handholes, and vaults where new ducts are to be terminated, or where new cables are to be installed, modify the existing installation of cables, cable supports, and grounding as required with cables arranged and supported as specified for new cables. Identify each cable with corrosion-resistant embossed metal tags.

### 3.1.9 Cable Splicing

#### 3.1.9.1 Fiber Optic Splices

Fiber optic splicing shall be in accordance with manufacturer's

recommendation and shall exhibit an insertion loss not greater than 0.2 dB for fusion splices. Mechanical splices are not allowed.

#### 3.1.10 Surge Protection

All cables and conductors, except fiber optic cable, which serve as communication lines through off-premise lines, shall have surge protection installed at each end which meet the requirements of RUS Bull 1751F-815.

#### 3.1.11 Grounding

Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with RUS 1755.200, TIA-607, IEEE C2, and NFPA 70. Ground exposed noncurrent carrying metallic parts of telephone equipment, cable sheaths, cable splices, and terminals.

##### 3.1.11.1 Telecommunications Master Ground Bar (TMGB)

The TMGB is the hub of the basic telecommunications grounding system providing a common point of connection for ground from outside cable, CD, and equipment. Establish a TMGB for connection point for cable stub shields to connector blocks and CD protector assemblies as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

##### 3.1.11.2 Incoming Cable Shields

Shields shall not be bonded across the splice to the cable stubs. Ground shields of incoming cables in the EF Telecommunications to the TMGB.

#### 3.1.12 Cut-Over

All necessary transfers and cut-overs, shall be accomplished by the telecommunications contractor.

### 3.2 LABELING

#### 3.2.1 Labels

Provide labeling for new cabling and termination hardware located within the facility in accordance with TIA-606. Handwritten labeling is unacceptable. Stenciled lettering for cable and termination hardware shall be provided using thermal ink transfer process.

#### 3.2.2 Cable Tag Installation

Install cable tags for each telecommunications cable or wire located in manholes, handholes, and vaults including each splice. Tag new wire and cable provided under this contract and existing wire and cable which are indicated to have splices and terminations provided by this contract. The labeling of telecommunications cable tag identifiers shall be in accordance with TIA-606. Do not provide handwritten letters. Install cable tags so that they are clearly visible without disturbing any cabling or wiring in the manholes, handholes, and vaults.

#### 3.2.3 Termination Hardware

Label patch panels, distribution panels, connector blocks and protection modules using color coded labels with identifiers in accordance with TIA-606.

### 3.3 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Provide ferrous metallic enclosure finishes in accordance with the following procedures. Ensure that surfaces are dry and clean when the coating is applied. Coat joints and crevices. Prior to assembly, paint surfaces which will be concealed or inaccessible after assembly. Apply primer and finish coat in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 3.3.1 Cleaning

Clean surfaces in accordance with [SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3](#).

#### 3.3.2 Priming

Prime with a two component polyamide epoxy primer which has a bisphenol-A base, a minimum of 60 percent solids by volume, and an ability to build up a minimum dry film thickness on a vertical surface of [5.0 mils](#). Apply in two coats to a total dry film thickness of [5 to 8 mils](#).

#### 3.3.3 Finish Coat

Finish with a two component urethane consisting of saturated polyester polyol resin mixed with aliphatic isocyanate which has a minimum of 50 percent solids by volume. Apply to a minimum dry film thickness of [2 to 3 mils](#). Color shall be the manufacturer's standard.

### 3.4 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Provide the Contracting Officer 10 working days notice prior to each test. Provide labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing. Correct defective material and workmanship disclosed as the results of the tests. Furnish a signed copy of the test results to the Contracting Officer within 3 working days after the tests for each segment of construction are completed. Perform testing as construction progresses and do not wait until all construction is complete before starting field tests.

#### 3.5.1 [Pre-Installation Tests](#)

Perform the following tests on cable at the job site before it is removed from the cable reel. For cables with factory installed pulling eyes, these tests shall be performed at the factory and certified test results shall accompany the cable.

##### 3.5.1.1 Cable Capacitance

Perform capacitance tests on at least 10 percent of the pairs within a cable to determine if cable capacitance is within the limits specified.

##### 3.5.1.2 Loop Resistance

Perform DC-loop resistance on at least 10 percent of the pairs within a

cable to determine if DC-loop resistance is within the manufacturer's calculated resistance.

#### 3.5.1.3 Pre-Installation Test Results

Provide results of pre-installation tests to the Contracting Officer at least 5 working days before installation is to start. Results shall indicate reel number of the cable, manufacturer, size of cable, pairs tested, and recorded readings. When pre-installation tests indicate that cable does not meet specifications, remove cable from the job site.

#### 3.5.2 Acceptance Tests

Perform acceptance testing in accordance with [RUS Bull 1753F-201](#) and as further specified in this section. Provide personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies necessary to perform required testing. Notification of any planned testing shall be given to the Contracting Officer at least 14 days prior to any test unless specified otherwise. Testing shall not proceed until after the Contractor has received written Contracting Officer's approval of the test plans as specified. Test plans shall define the tests required to ensure that the system meets technical, operational, and performance specifications. The test plans shall define milestones for the tests, equipment, personnel, facilities, and supplies required. The test plans shall identify the capabilities and functions to be tested. Provide test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Measurements shall be tabulated on a pair by pair or strand by strand basis.

##### 3.5.2.1 Copper Conductor Cable

[All category 6 copper cables shall be terminated with RJ-45 connectors and the following tests shall be logged for the test report.](#)

Perform the following acceptance tests in accordance with [TIA-758](#):

- a. Wire map (pin to pin continuity)
- b. Continuity to remote end
- c. Crossed pairs
- d. Reversed pairs
- e. Split pairs
- f. Shorts between two or more conductors

[For DSL \(non-ethernet\) cables in enclosures with terminal blocks ONLY: Upon passed acceptance tests, all RJ-45 connectors shall be removed, cable pairs shall be terminated on terminal blocks. Test re-terminated DSL cables for continuity to remote end and reversed pairs.](#)

##### 3.5.2.2 Fiber Optic Cable

Test fiber optic cable in accordance with [TIA/EIA-455](#) and as further specified in this section. Two optical tests shall be performed on all optical fibers: Optical Time Domain Reflectometry (OTDR) Test, and Attenuation Test. In addition, a Bandwidth Test shall be performed on all

multimode optical fibers. These tests shall be performed on the completed end-to-end spans which include the near-end pre-connectorized single fiber cable assembly, outside plant as specified, and the far-end pre-connectorized single fiber cable assembly.

- a. OTDR Test: The OTDR test shall be used to determine the adequacy of the cable installations by showing any irregularities, such as discontinuities, micro-bendings or improper splices for the cable span under test. Hard copy fiber signature records shall be obtained from the OTDR for each fiber in each span and shall be included in the test results. The OTDR test shall be measured in both directions. A reference length of fiber, 66 feet minimum, used as the delay line shall be placed before the new end connector and after the far end patch panel connectors for inspection of connector signature. Conduct OTDR test and provide calculation or interpretation of results in accordance with TIA-526-7 for single-mode fiber. Splice losses shall not exceed 0.05 db.
- b. Attenuation Test: End-to-end attenuation measurements shall be made on all fibers, in both directions, using a 1310 nanometer light source at one end and the optical power meter on the other end to verify that the cable system attenuation requirements are met in accordance with TIA-526-7 for single-mode fiber optic cables. The measurement method shall be in accordance with TIA-455-78-B. Attenuation losses shall not exceed 0.5 db/km at 1310 nm and 1550 nm for single-mode fiber.
- c. Bandwidth Test: The bandwidth shall be measured in both directions on all fibers. The bandwidth measurements shall be in accordance with TIA/EIA-455-204. The OTDR test shall be measured in both directions. A reference length of fiber will be at least 100 meters. Splice losses shall be 0.05 dB per I3A.

### 3.5.3 Soil Density Tests

- a. Determine soil-density relationships as specified for soil tests in Section 31 00 00 EARTHWORK.

-- End of Section --